

# IEEE Standard for IP-XACT, Standard Structure for Packaging, Integrating, and Reusing IP within Tool Flows

IEEE Computer Society

Sponsored by the  
Design Automation Standards Committee

---

IEEE  
3 Park Avenue  
New York, NY 10016-5997  
USA

IEEE Std 1685™-2014  
(Revision of  
IEEE Std 1685-2009)



**IEEE Std 1685™ -2014**  
(Revision of  
IEEE Std 1685-2009)

# **IEEE Standard for IP-XACT, Standard Structure for Packaging, Integrating, and Reusing IP within Tool Flows**

Sponsor

**Design Automation Standards Committee  
of the  
IEEE Computer Society**

Approved 12 June 2014

**IEEE-SA Standards Board**

Contributed updates to IEEE Std 1685-2009 from the Accellera Systems Initiative IP-XACT Working Group are acknowledged.

**Abstract:** Conformance checks for eXtensible Markup Language (XML) data designed to describe electronic systems are formulated by this standard. The meta-data forms that are standardized include components, systems, bus interfaces and connections, abstractions of those buses, and details of the components including address maps, register and field descriptions, and file set descriptions for use in automating design, verification, documentation, and use flows for electronic systems. A set of XML schemas of the form described by the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C®) and a set of semantic consistency rules (SCRs) are included. A generator interface that is portable across tool environments is provided. The specified combination of methodology-independent meta-data and the tool-independent mechanism for accessing that data provides for portability of design data, design methodologies, and environment implementations.

**Keywords:** abstraction definitions, address space specification, bus definitions, design environment, EDA, electronic design automation, electronic system level, ESL, IEEE 1685™, implementation constraints, IP-XACT, register transfer level, RTL, SCRs, semantic consistency rules, TGI, tight generator interface, tool and data interoperability, use models, XML design meta-data, XML schema

---

The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.  
3 Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5997, USA

Copyright © 2014 by The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.  
All rights reserved. Published 12 September 2014. Printed in the United States of America.

IEEE is a registered trademark in the U.S. Patent & Trademark Office, owned by The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Incorporated.

AMBA is a registered trademark of ARM Limited.  
SystemC is a registered trademark of Open SystemC Initiative, Inc.  
Verilog is a registered trademark of Cadence Design Systems, Inc.  
W3C is a registered trademark of the World Wide Web Consortium.  
XMLSpy is a registered trademark of Altova GmbH.

PDF: ISBN 978-0-7381-9226-0 STD98727  
Print: ISBN 978-0-7381-9227-7 STDPD98727

*IEEE prohibits discrimination, harassment, and bullying.  
For more information, visit <http://www.ieee.org/web/aboutus/whatis/policies/9-26.html>.  
No part of this publication may be reproduced in any form, in an electronic retrieval system or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.*

## **Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Standards Documents**

IEEE documents are made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers, or a reference to this page, appear in all standards and may be found under the heading "Important Notice" or "Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Standards Documents."

### **Notice and Disclaimer of Liability Concerning the Use of IEEE Standards Documents**

IEEE Standards documents (standards, recommended practices, and guides), both full-use and trial-use, are developed within IEEE Societies and the Standards Coordinating Committees of the IEEE Standards Association ("IEEE-SA") Standards Board. IEEE ("the Institute") develops its standards through a consensus development process, approved by the American National Standards Institute ("ANSI"), which brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve the final product. Volunteers are not necessarily members of the Institute and participate without compensation from IEEE. While IEEE administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the consensus development process, IEEE does not independently evaluate, test, or verify the accuracy of any of the information or the soundness of any judgments contained in its standards.

IEEE does not warrant or represent the accuracy or content of the material contained in its standards, and expressly disclaims all warranties (express, implied and statutory) not included in this or any other document relating to the standard, including, but not limited to, the warranties of: merchantability; fitness for a particular purpose; non-infringement; and quality, accuracy, effectiveness, currency, or completeness of material. In addition, IEEE disclaims any and all conditions relating to: results; and workmanlike effort. IEEE standards documents are supplied "AS IS" and "WITH ALL FAULTS."

Use of an IEEE standard is wholly voluntary. The existence of an IEEE standard does not imply that there are no other ways to produce, test, measure, purchase, market, or provide other goods and services related to the scope of the IEEE standard. Furthermore, the viewpoint expressed at the time a standard is approved and issued is subject to change brought about through developments in the state of the art and comments received from users of the standard.

In publishing and making its standards available, IEEE is not suggesting or rendering professional or other services for, or on behalf of, any person or entity nor is IEEE undertaking to perform any duty owed by any other person or entity to another. Any person utilizing any IEEE Standards document, should rely upon his or her own independent judgment in the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the appropriateness of a given IEEE standard.

IN NO EVENT SHALL IEEE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO: PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE PUBLICATION, USE OF, OR RELIANCE UPON ANY STANDARD, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE AND REGARDLESS OF WHETHER SUCH DAMAGE WAS FORESEEABLE.

## **Translations**

The IEEE consensus development process involves the review of documents in English only. In the event that an IEEE standard is translated, only the English version published by IEEE should be considered the approved IEEE standard.

## **Official statements**

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with the IEEE-SA Standards Board Operations Manual shall not be considered or inferred to be the official position of IEEE or any of its committees and shall not be considered to be, or be relied upon as, a formal position of IEEE. At lectures, symposia, seminars, or educational courses, an individual presenting information on IEEE standards shall make it clear that his or her views should be considered the personal views of that individual rather than the formal position of IEEE.

## **Comments on standards**

Comments for revision of IEEE Standards documents are welcome from any interested party, regardless of membership affiliation with IEEE. However, IEEE does not provide consulting information or advice pertaining to IEEE Standards documents. Suggestions for changes in documents should be in the form of a proposed change of text, together with appropriate supporting comments. Since IEEE standards represent a consensus of concerned interests, it is important that any responses to comments and questions also receive the concurrence of a balance of interests. For this reason, IEEE and the members of its societies and Standards Coordinating Committees are not able to provide an instant response to comments or questions except in those cases where the matter has previously been addressed. For the same reason, IEEE does not respond to interpretation requests. Any person who would like to participate in revisions to an IEEE standard is welcome to join the relevant IEEE working group.

Comments on standards should be submitted to the following address:

Secretary, IEEE-SA Standards Board  
445 Hoes Lane  
Piscataway, NJ 08854 USA

## **Laws and regulations**

Users of IEEE Standards documents should consult all applicable laws and regulations. Compliance with the provisions of any IEEE Standards document does not imply compliance to any applicable regulatory requirements. Implementers of the standard are responsible for observing or referring to the applicable regulatory requirements. IEEE does not, by the publication of its standards, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

## **Copyrights**

IEEE draft and approved standards are copyrighted by IEEE under U.S. and international copyright laws. They are made available by IEEE and are adopted for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of engineering practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, IEEE does not waive any rights in copyright to the documents.

## **Photocopies**

Subject to payment of the appropriate fee, IEEE will grant users a limited, non-exclusive license to photocopy portions of any individual standard for company or organizational internal use or individual, non-commercial use only. To arrange for payment of licensing fees, please contact Copyright Clearance Center, Customer Service, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923 USA; +1 978 750 8400. Permission to photocopy portions of any individual standard for educational classroom use can also be obtained through the Copyright Clearance Center.

## **Updating of IEEE Standards documents**

Users of IEEE Standards documents should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of amendments, corrigenda, or errata. An official IEEE document at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document together with any amendments, corrigenda, or errata then in effect.

Every IEEE standard is subjected to review at least every ten years. When a document is more than ten years old and has not undergone a revision process, it is reasonable to conclude that its contents, although still of some value, do not wholly reflect the present state of the art. Users are cautioned to check to determine that they have the latest edition of any IEEE standard.

In order to determine whether a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance of amendments, corrigenda, or errata, visit the IEEE-SA Website at <http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/xpl/standards.jsp> or contact IEEE at the address listed previously. For more information about the IEEE SA or IEEE's standards development process, visit the IEEE-SA Website at <http://standards.ieee.org>.

## **Errata**

Errata, if any, for all IEEE standards can be accessed on the IEEE-SA Website at the following URL: <http://standards.ieee.org/findstds/errata/index.html>. Users are encouraged to check this URL for errata periodically.

## **Patents**

Attention is called to the possibility that implementation of this standard may require use of subject matter covered by patent rights. By publication of this standard, no position is taken by the IEEE with respect to the existence or validity of any patent rights in connection therewith. If a patent holder or patent applicant has filed a statement of assurance via an Accepted Letter of Assurance, then the statement is listed on the IEEE-SA Website at <http://standards.ieee.org/about/sasb/patcom/patents.html>. Letters of Assurance may indicate whether the Submitter is willing or unwilling to grant licenses under patent rights without compensation or under reasonable rates, with reasonable terms and conditions that are demonstrably free of any unfair discrimination to applicants desiring to obtain such licenses.

Essential Patent Claims may exist for which a Letter of Assurance has not been received. The IEEE is not responsible for identifying Essential Patent Claims for which a license may be required, for conducting inquiries into the legal validity or scope of Patents Claims, or determining whether any licensing terms or conditions provided in connection with submission of a Letter of Assurance, if any, or in any licensing agreements are reasonable or non-discriminatory. Users of this standard are expressly advised that determination of the validity of any patent rights, and the risk of infringement of such rights, is entirely their own responsibility. Further information may be obtained from the IEEE Standards Association.

## Participants

The IP-XACT Standardization Working Group is entity based. At the time this standard was completed, the IP-XACT Standardization Working Group had the following membership:

**Mark Noll, Chair**  
**Erwin de Kock, Vice Chair**  
**David Courtright, Secretary**  
**Joe Daniels, Technical Editor**

David Courtright  
Joe Daniels  
Edwin Dankert  
Jean-Michel Fernandez

Jeffery Griffiths  
Stephane Guntz  
Prashant Karandikar

Erwin de Kock  
Mark Noll  
Kamlesh Pathak  
Richard Weber

The following members of the entity balloting committee voted on this standard. Balloters may have voted for approval, disapproval, or abstention.

Accellera Organization, Inc.  
Advanced Micro Devices (AMD)  
Cadence Design Systems, Inc.  
Duolog Ltd.

MAGILLEM LLC  
Mentor Graphics  
NXP Semiconductors

Semifore, Inc.  
STMicroelectronics  
Synopsys, Inc.  
Texas Instruments Incorporated

When the IEEE-SA Standards Board approved this standard on 12 June 2014, it had the following membership:

**John Kulick, Chair**  
**Jon Walter Rosdahl, Vice-chair**  
**Richard H. Hulett, Past Chair**  
**Konstantinos Karachalios, Secretary**

Peter Balma  
Farooq Bari  
Ted Burse  
Clint Chaplain  
Stephen Dukes  
Jean-Philippe Faure  
Gary Hoffman

Michael Janezic  
Jeffrey Katz  
Joseph L. Koepfinger\*  
David Law  
Hung Ling  
Oleg Logvinov  
Ted Olsen  
Glenn Parsons

Ron Peterson  
Adrian Stephens  
Peter Sutherland  
Yatin Trivedi  
Phil Winston  
Don Wright  
Yu Yuan

\* Member Emeritus

Also included are the following nonvoting IEEE-SA Standards Board liaisons:

Richard DeBlasio, *DOE Representative*  
Michael Janezic, *NIST Representative*

Don Messina  
*IEEE-SA Content Publishing*

Joan Woolery  
*IEEE-SA Standards Technical Community*

## Introduction

This introduction is not part of IEEE Std 1685-2014, IEEE Standard for IP-XACT, Standard Structure for Packaging, Integrating, and Reusing IP within Tool Flows.

The purpose of this standard is to provide the electronic design automation (EDA), semiconductor, electronic design intellectual property (IP) provider, and system design communities with a well-defined and unified specification for the meta-data that represents the components and designs within an electronic system. The goals of this specification are to enable delivery of compatible IP descriptions from multiple IP vendors; to improve the importing and exporting of complex IP bundles to, from, and between EDA tools for system on chip (SoC) design environments (DEs); to improve the expression of configurable IP by using IP meta-data; and to improve the provision of EDA vendor-neutral IP creation and configuration scripts (*generators*). The data and data access specification is designed to coexist and enhance the hardware description languages (HDLs) presently used by designers while providing capabilities lacking in those languages.

The SPIRIT Consortium, which originally developed the IP-XACT standard before merging with Accellera, was a consortium of electronic system, IP provider, semiconductor, and EDA companies. IP-XACT enables a productivity boost in design, transfer, validation, documentation, and use of electronic IP and covers components, designs, interfaces, and details thereof. The data specified by IP-XACT is extensible in locations specified in the schema.

IP-XACT enables the use of a unified structure for the meta specification of a design, components, interfaces, documentation, and interconnection of components. This structure can be used as the basis of both manual and automatic methodologies. IP-XACT specifies the tight generator interface (TGI) for access to the data in a vendor-independent manner.

This standardization project provides electronic design engineers with a well-defined standard that meets their requirements in structured design and validation and enables a step function increase in their productivity. This standardization project will also provide the EDA industry with a standard to which they can adhere and that they can support in order to deliver their solutions in this area.

Accellera has prepared a set of bus and abstraction definitions for several common buses. It is expected, over time, that standards groups and manufacturers who define buses will include IP-XACT eXtensible Markup Language (XML) bus and abstraction definitions in their set of deliverables. Until that time, and to cover existing useful buses, a set of bus and abstraction definitions for common buses has been created.

A set of reference bus and abstraction definitions allows many vendors who define IP using these buses to easily interconnect IP together. Accellera posts these definitions for use by its members, with no warranty of suitability, but in the hope that they will be useful. Accellera will, from time to time, update these files and, if a standards body wishes to take over the work of definition, will transfer that work to that body.

These reference bus and abstraction definition templates (with comments and examples) are available from the public area of the Accellera Web site.<sup>a</sup>

---

<sup>a</sup>Available at <http://www.accellera.org>.

## Contents

1.	Overview.....	1
1.1	Scope .....	1
1.2	Purpose.....	2
1.3	Design environment .....	2
1.4	IP-XACT–enabled implementations.....	6
1.5	Conventions used .....	7
1.6	Use of color in this standard.....	12
1.7	Contents of this standard.....	12
2.	Normative references.....	13
3.	Definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations.....	15
3.1	Definitions.....	15
3.2	Acronyms and abbreviations.....	20
4.	Interoperability use model .....	21
4.1	Roles and responsibilities.....	21
4.2	IP-XACT IP exchange flows.....	22
5.	Interface definition descriptions .....	25
5.1	Definition descriptions .....	25
5.2	Bus definition .....	26
5.3	Abstraction definition.....	28
5.4	Ports.....	29
5.5	Wire ports.....	30
5.6	Qualifiers.....	31
5.7	Wire port group .....	32
5.8	Wire port mode (and mirrored mode) constraints.....	33
5.9	Transactional ports .....	34
5.10	Transactional port group .....	36
5.11	Extending bus and abstraction definitions .....	37
5.12	Clock and reset handling .....	38
6.	Component descriptions .....	41
6.1	Component .....	41
6.2	Interfaces .....	43
6.3	Interface interconnections .....	44
6.4	Complex interface interconnections.....	46
6.5	Bus interfaces .....	48
6.6	Indirect interfaces .....	58
6.7	Component channels .....	59
6.8	Address spaces .....	60
6.9	Memory maps.....	68
6.10	Remapping .....	79
6.11	Registers .....	81
6.12	Models.....	95

6.13	Component generators.....	122
6.14	Choices.....	124
6.15	File sets.....	125
6.16	White box elements.....	131
6.17	White box element reference.....	133
6.18	CPUs.....	134
6.19	Reset types.....	135
7.	Design descriptions.....	137
7.1	Design.....	137
7.2	Design component instances .....	138
7.3	Design interconnections .....	139
7.4	Active, hierarchical, monitored, and monitor interfaces .....	141
7.5	Design ad hoc connections .....	144
7.6	Port references.....	146
8.	Abstractor descriptions .....	149
8.1	Abstractor .....	149
8.2	Abstractor interfaces .....	151
8.3	Abstractor models .....	152
8.4	Abstractor views.....	152
8.5	Abstractor ports .....	153
8.6	Abstractor wire ports .....	155
8.7	Abstractor generators .....	156
9.	Generator chain descriptions .....	159
9.1	generatorChain .....	159
9.2	generatorChainSelector .....	161
9.3	generatorChain component selector .....	162
9.4	generatorChain generator .....	163
10.	Design configuration descriptions .....	165
10.1	Design configuration .....	165
10.2	designConfiguration .....	166
10.3	interconnectionConfiguration.....	167
10.4	abstractorInstance.....	168
10.5	viewConfiguration.....	169
11.	Catalog descriptions.....	171
11.1	catalog .....	171
11.2	ipxactFile.....	173
12.	Addressing .....	175
12.1	Calculating the bit address of a bit in a memory map.....	175
12.2	Calculating the bus address at the slave bus interface .....	177
12.3	Calculating the address at the indirect interface.....	177
12.4	Address modifications of a channel .....	178
12.5	Addressing in the master .....	178

12.6 Address translation in a bridge.....	178
13. Data visibility.....	180
13.1 Mapped address bits mask.....	180
13.2 Address modifications of an interconnection.....	180
13.3 Bit steering in a channel.....	180
13.4 Visibility of bits.....	181
Annex A (informative) Bibliography .....	185
Annex B (normative) Semantic consistency rules.....	187
Annex C (normative) Common elements and concepts .....	217
Annex D (normative) Types .....	251
Annex E (normative) SystemVerilog expressions.....	253
Annex F (normative) Tight generator interface .....	267
Annex G (informative) External bus with an internal/digital interface .....	459
Annex H (informative) Bridges and channels .....	461
Annex I (informative) Examples .....	471

# **IEEE Standard for IP-XACT, Standard Structure for Packaging, Integrating, and Reusing IP within Tool Flows**

***IMPORTANT NOTICE: IEEE Standards documents are not intended to ensure safety, security, health, or environmental protection, or ensure against interference with or from other devices or networks. Implementers of IEEE Standards documents are responsible for determining and complying with all appropriate safety, security, environmental, health and interference protection practices and all applicable laws and regulations.***

***This IEEE document is made available for use subject to important notices and legal disclaimers. These notices and disclaimers appear in all publications containing this document and may be found under the heading “Important Notice” or “Important Notices and Disclaimers Concerning IEEE Documents.” They can also be obtained on request from IEEE or viewed at <http://standards.ieee.org/IPR/disclaimers.html>.***

## **1. Overview**

This clause explains the scope and purpose of this standard; gives an overview of the basic concepts, major semantic components, and conventions used in this standard; and summarizes its contents.

### **1.1 Scope**

This standard describes an eXtensible Markup Language (XML) schema<sup>1</sup> for meta-data documenting *intellectual property* (IP) used in the development, implementation, and verification of electronic systems. This schema provides both a standard method to document IP that is compatible with automated integration techniques and a standard method (generators) for linking tools into a *system development* framework, enabling a more flexible, optimized development environment. Tools compliant with this standard will be able to interpret, configure, integrate, and manipulate IP blocks that comply with the IP meta-data description. The standard is independent of any specific design processes. It does not cover behavioral characteristics of the IP that are not relevant to integration.

---

<sup>1</sup>Information on references can be found in [Clause 2](#).

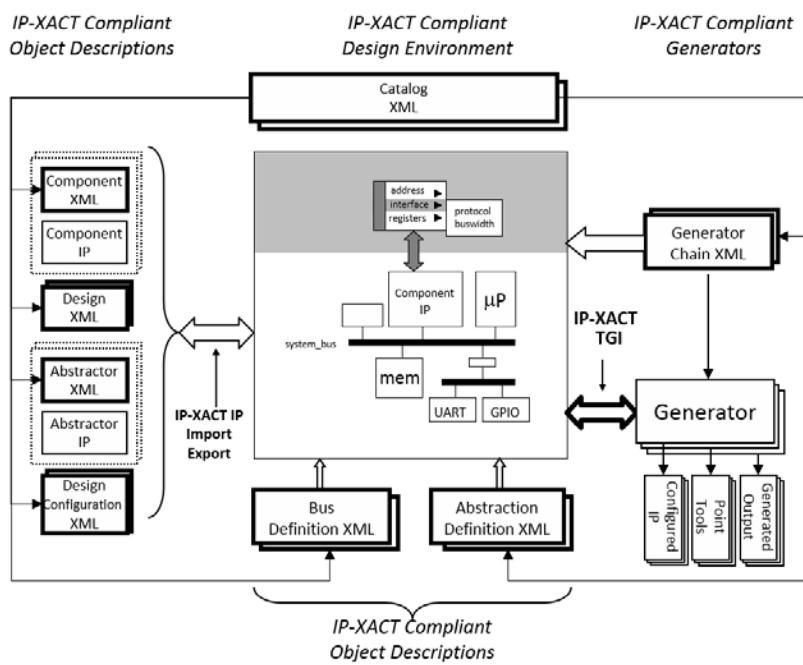
## 1.2 Purpose

This standard enables the creation and exchange of IP in a highly automated design environment.

## 1.3 Design environment

The IP-XACT specification is a mechanism to express and exchange information about design IP and its required configuration.<sup>2</sup> While the IP-XACT description formats are the core of this standard, describing the IP-XACT specification in the context of its basic use model, the design environment (DE), more readily depicts the extent and limitations of the semantic intent of the data. The DE coordinates a set of tools and IP, or expressions of that IP (e.g., models), through the creation and maintenance of meta-data descriptions of the system on chip (SoC) so that its system design and implementation flows are efficiently enabled and reuse centric.

The use of the IP-XACT–specified formats and interfaces are shown, in **bold**, in [Figure 1](#) and described in the following subclauses.



**Figure 1—IP-XACT design environment**

### 1.3.1 IP-XACT design environment

A DE enables the designer to work with IP-XACT design IP through a coordinated front-end and IP design database. These tools create and manage the top-level meta-description of system design and may provide two basic types of services: *design capture*, which is the expression of design configuration by the IP provider and design intent by the IP user, and *design build*, which is the creation of a design (or design model) to those intentions.

<sup>2</sup>IP-XACT uses the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C<sup>®</sup>) standard for the XML version 1.0 data (<http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/>). The valid format of that XML data is described in a *schema* by using the Schema Description Language described therein. W3C is a registered trademark of the World Wide Web Consortium.

As part of design capture, a system design tool shall recognize the structure and configuration options of imported IP. In the case of *structure*, this implies both the structure of the design (e.g., how specific pin-outs refer to lines in the hardware description language (HDL) code) as well as the structure of the IP package (e.g., where design descriptions and related generators are provided in the packaged IP data-structure). In the case of *configuration*, this is the set of options for handling the imported IP (e.g., setting the base address and offset, bus width) that may be expressed as configurable parameters in the IP-XACT meta-data.

As part of design build, generators may be provided internally by a system design tool to achieve the required IP integration or configuration, or they may be provided externally (e.g., by an IP provider) and launched by the system design tool as appropriate.

The *system design tool set* defines a DE where the support for conceptual context and management of IP-XACT meta-data resides. However, the IP-XACT specifications make no requirements upon system design tool architecture or a tool's internal data structures. To be considered IP-XACT enabled, a system design tool shall support the import/export of IP expressed with valid IP-XACT meta-data for both component IP and designs, and it needs to support the tight generator interface (TGI) for interfacing with external generators (to the DE).

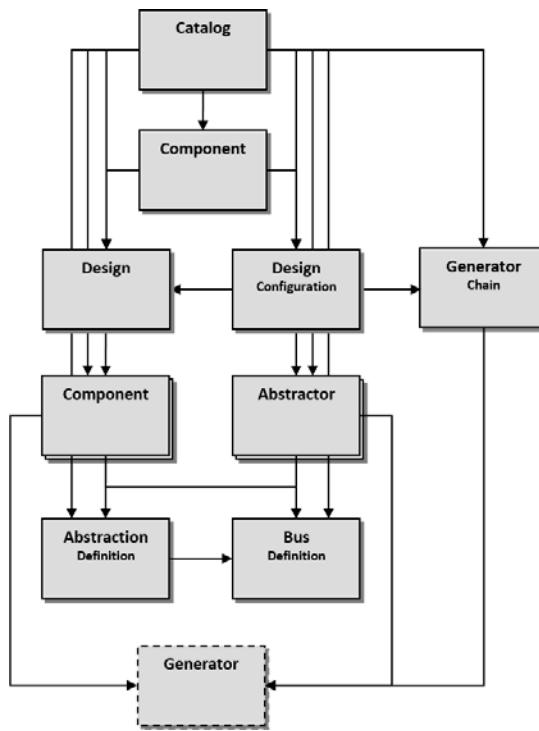
### 1.3.2 IP-XACT object descriptions

The IP-XACT schema is the core of the IP-XACT specification. There are eight top-level schema definitions. Each schema definition can be used to create object descriptions of the corresponding types:

- A *bus definition* description defines the type attributes of an bus.
- An *abstraction definition* description defines the representation attributes of a bus.
- A *component* description defines an IP or interconnect structure.
- A *design* description defines the configuration of and interconnection between components.
- An *abstractor* description defines an adaptor between interfaces of two different abstractions.
- A *generator chain* description defines the grouping and ordering of generators.
- A *design configuration* description defines additional configuration information for a generator chain or design description.
- A *catalog* description provides a mapping between IP-XACT VLNVs (see [1.3.3](#)) and the physical location of the IP-XACT file defining the IP-XACT object with the given VLVN.

### 1.3.3 Object interactions

An object description contains a unique identifier in the header. The identifier in IP-XACT terms is called a *VNV* after the four elements that define its value: vendor, library, name, and version. See [C.25](#) for further details on a VNV. This VNV is used to create a reference from one description to another. The links between these objects are illustrated in [Figure 2](#). The arrows (A → B) illustrate a reference of one object to another (e.g., reference of object B from object A).



**Figure 2—IP-XACT object interactions**

#### 1.3.4 IP-XACT generators

Generators are executable objects (e.g., scripts or binary programs) that may be integrated within a DE (referred to as *internal*) or provided separately as an executable (referred to as *external*). Generators may be provided as part of an IP package (e.g., for configurable IP, such as a bus-matrix generator) or as a way of wrapping point tools for interaction with a DE (e.g., an external design netlister, external design checker).

An internal generator may perform a wide variety of tasks and may access IP-XACT-compliant meta-data by any method a DE supports. IP-XACT does not describe these protocols.

An *external generator* (often referred to as a *TGI generator*) is an executable program or script invoked from within a DE to query or configure design descriptions and their related component and abstracter descriptions. External generators can use the TGI to access their IP-XACT meta-data descriptions (as currently loaded into the DE) and perform the various operations associated with those descriptions. In addition, external generators shall only operate upon IP-XACT-compliant meta-data through the defined TGI; see [1.3.6](#).

Generators can be referenced from a component, abstracter, or generator chain description. Generators can also be grouped and ordered in generator chain descriptions and in chain descriptions contained inside other chain descriptions. This sequencing of generators is *critical* for providing script-based support for SoC flow creation.

#### 1.3.5 IP-XACT design environment interfaces

There are two interfaces expressed in [Figure 1](#): from the DE to the external IP libraries and from the DE to the generators. In the former case, the IP-XACT specifications are *neutral* regarding the design tool

interfaces to IP repositories. Being able to read and write IP with IP-XACT meta-data is required; however, the *formal interaction* between an external IP repository and a DE is not specified. In the latter case, the interface between the DE and a generator is the TGI; see [1.3.6](#).

### **1.3.6 Tight generator interface**

The *tight generator interface* (TGI) is the method a generator uses to access a design or component description in a DE-independent and generator-language-independent manner. Therefore, a generator running on two different DEs produces the same results. The DE and the generator communicate with each other by sending messages utilizing the Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP)<sup>3</sup> specified in the Web Services Description Language (WSDL).<sup>4</sup> SOAP provides a simple means for sending XML-format messages using the Hypertext Transfer Protocol (HTTP) or other transport protocols. IP-XACT supports using HTTP or a file protocol.

The SOAP messages passed between the generator and the DE allow the generator to get all information about the design interconnections (which contain components and abstractors), provide set information for any configurable elements in a component or abstractor, and make simple modifications of the design description. For additional details on the DE generator invocation and the SOAP messages passed between the generator and the DE, see [Annex F](#).

### **1.3.7 Design intellectual property**

IP-XACT is structured around the concept of IP reuse. *Electronic design intellectual property*, or IP, is a term used in the electronic design automation (EDA) community to refer to a reusable collection of design specifications that represent the behavior, properties, and/or description of the design in various media. The name IP is partially derived from the common practice of considering a collection of this type to be the intellectual property of one party. Both hardware and software collections are encompassed by this term.

These collections may include the following:

- a) Design objects—This collection can include the following:
  - 1) Transaction-level modeling (TLM) descriptions: SystemC® and SystemVerilog<sup>5</sup>
  - 2) Fixed HDL descriptions: Verilog®, VHDL<sup>6</sup>
  - 3) Configurable HDL descriptions (e.g., bus-fabric generators)
  - 4) Design models for register transfer level (RTL) and transactional simulation (e.g., compiled core models)
  - 5) HDL-specified verification IP (VIP) (e.g., basic stimulus generators and checkers)
- b) IP views—This collection is a list of different views (levels of description and/or languages) to describe the IP object. In IP-XACT, these views include the following:
  - 1) Design view: RTL Verilog or VHDL, flat or hierarchical components
  - 2) Simulation view: model views, targets, simulation directives, etc.
  - 3) Documentation view: standard, user guide, etc.

---

<sup>3</sup>Available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part1/>.

<sup>4</sup>Available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/wsdl>.

<sup>5</sup>SystemC is a registered trademark of Open SystemC Initiative, Inc. in the United States and other countries. Verilog is a registered trademark of Cadence Design Systems, Inc. in the United States and/or other jurisdictions. This information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute an endorsement by the IEEE of these products. Equivalent products may be used if they can be shown to lead to the same results.

<sup>6</sup>See Footnote 5.

*IP-XACT XML meta-data descriptions* provide a standardized way of collecting much of the structural information contained in the file sets. IP-XACT also can contain the information that identifies the appropriate files included in a collection to be used for different parts of the design process.

## 1.4 IP-XACT-enabled implementations

Complying with the rules outlined in this subclause allows providers of tools, IP, or generators to class their products as *IP-XACT enabled*. Conversely, any violation of these rules removes that naming right. This subclause first introduces the set of metrics for measuring the valid use of the specifications. It then specifies when those validity checks are performed by the various classes of products and providers: DEs, point tools, IPs, and generators.

- a) Parse validity
  - 1) Parsing correctness: Ability to read all IP-XACT descriptions.
  - 2) Parsing completeness: Cannot require information that could be expressed in an IP-XACT format to be specified in a non-IP-XACT format. Processing of all information present in an IP-XACT document is not required.
- b) Description validity
  - 1) Schema correctness: IP is described using XML files that conform to the IP-XACT schema.
  - 2) Usage completeness: Extensions to the IP-XACT schema shall be used only to express information that cannot otherwise be described in IP-XACT.
- c) Semantic validity
  - 1) Semantic correctness: Adheres to the semantic interpretations of IP-XACT data described in this standard.
  - 2) Semantic completeness: Obeys all the semantic consistency rules (SCRs) described in [Annex B](#).

These validity rules can be combined with the product class-specific rules to cover the full IP-XACT-enabled space. The following subclauses describe the rules a provider has to check to claim a product is IP-XACT enabled.

An IP-XACT-enabled DE or point tool may read descriptions based on multiple versions of the IP-XACT schema. If the DE or point tool does provide this capability, the effect shall be as if all of the descriptions had been translated to the highest schema version supported by the given tool. This is required for semantic consistency. Schema version translation can be done in a number of different ways, but the most common is to leverage the eXtensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT)<sup>7</sup> provided with the IP-XACT schema image. In addition, a DE or point tool may preserve information in the initial description for use outside of the scope of the IP-XACT specification.

### 1.4.1 Design environments

An IP-XACT-enabled DE shall

- Follow the parse validity requirements shown in [1.4](#).
- Create IP that is IP-XACT enabled.
- Modify any existing IP-XACT descriptions without losing any preexisting information. In particular, it shall preserve any vendor extension data included in the existing IP-XACT description.
- Be able to invoke IP-XACT-enabled generators with **apiType** of **none** (see [6.13.2](#)).

<sup>7</sup>Available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt>.

An IP-XACT–TGI–enabled DE shall be considered as enabled as follows:

- For the base TGI, if it supports all generators utilizing the `TGI_2014_BASE apiType` (see [6.13.2](#)).
- For the extended TGI, if it supports all generators utilizing the `TGI_2014_BASE` or `TGI_2014_EXTENDED apiTypes` (see [6.13.2](#)).

### 1.4.2 Point tools

A point tool is a tool that has a particular, rather than a general, set of capabilities. In contrast to an IP-XACT–enabled DE (see [1.4.1](#)), an IP-XACT–enabled point tool shall

- Follow the parse validity requirements shown in [1.4](#).
- Create IP that is IP-XACT enabled.
- Modify any existing IP-XACT descriptions without losing any preexisting information. In particular, it shall preserve any vendor extension data included in the existing IP-XACT description.

### 1.4.3 IPs

An IP-XACT–enabled IP shall

- Have an IP-XACT description that follows the description and semantic validity requirements shown in [1.4](#).
- Use IP-XACT–enabled generators for any generators associated with this IP.

XML descriptions compliant with IP-XACT shall provide a namespace reference to the `index.xsd` schema file, not to any of the other files in the release.

### 1.4.4 Generators

An IP-XACT–enabled generator shall

- Create IP that is IP-XACT enabled.
- Modify any existing IP-XACT descriptions without losing any preexisting information. In particular, it shall preserve any vendor extension data included in the existing IP-XACT description.
- Communicate with the DE that invoked it only through the IP-XACT TGI (see [Annex F](#)).

## 1.5 Conventions used

The conventions used throughout the document are included here.

IP-XACT is case-sensitive.

### 1.5.1 Visual cues (meta-syntax)

**Bold** shows required keywords and/or special characters, e.g., `addressSpace`. For the initial definitional use (per element), keywords are shown in **boldface-red text**, e.g, `bitsInLau` (see also [1.6](#)).

**Bold italics** shows group names or data types, e.g., `nameGroup` or `boolean`. For definitions of types, see [Annex D](#).

**Courier** shows examples, external command names, directories and files, etc., e.g., address `0x0` is on `D[31:0]`.

### 1.5.2 Notational conventions

The keywords *required*, *shall*, *shall not*, *should*, *should not*, *recommended*, *may*, and *optional* in this standard are to be interpreted as described in IETF RFC-2119 [B5].<sup>8</sup>

### 1.5.3 Syntax examples

Any syntax examples shown in this standard are for information only and are intended only to illustrate the use of such syntax (see also [Annex I](#)).

### 1.5.4 Graphics used to document the schema

The W3C Web site<sup>9</sup> specifies the XML schema language used to define the IP-XACT XML schemas. Normative details for compliance to the IP-XACT standard are contained in the schema files. Within this document, pictorial representations of the information in the schema files *illustrate* the structure of the schema and *define* any constraints of the standard. With the exception of visibility issues, the information in the figures and the schema files is intended to be identical (for a fully annotated version of the schema files; see IP-XACT Schema [B9]). Where the figures and schema are in conflict, the XML schema file shall take precedence.<sup>10</sup>

#### 1.5.4.1 Elements and attributes

The *element* is the fundamental building block on which this standard is based. An element may be either a *leaf element*, which is a container for information, or a *branch element*, which may contain further branch elements or leaf elements.

A leaf or branch element may also contain *attributes*. Attributes are containers for information within the containing element.

#### 1.5.4.2 Types

A *type* is a designation of the format for the contents of an element or attribute. There are two different styles of types that can be defined. A type may be assigned to a leaf element or an attribute. This type is called a *simpleType* and defines the format of data that may be stored in this container. A type may also be assigned to a branch element. This type is called a *complexType* and defines further elements and attributes contained in the branch element.

#### 1.5.4.3 Groups

A group is a collection of elements or attributes, which allow the same collection of items to be referenced consistently in many places. There are two different types of groups that can be defined. A *group* is a combination of leaf or branch elements; an *attributeGroup*, a simple list of attributes. The names assigned to either group have no representation in the resulting description.

---

<sup>8</sup>The number in brackets correspond to the numbers of the bibliography in [Annex A](#).

<sup>9</sup>Available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xmlschema/>.

<sup>10</sup>The graphics for this document have been generated by taking “screen-shots” of the various files as they are displayed in Altova’s XML environment XMLSpy®. XMLSpy is a registered trademark of Altova GmbH. This information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute an endorsement by the IEEE of this product. Equivalent products may be used if they can be shown to lead to the same results.

#### 1.5.4.4 Namespace

Each element, attribute, type, or group has a name, which is preceded by a namespace-prefix and separated from the name by a colon (:). For the examples in [1.5.4.5](#), xyz is used as the namespace-prefix for all of the items whereas this standard uses ipxact. Within the text of this standard, the namespace-prefix is not written when describing an item; it is shown only in examples.

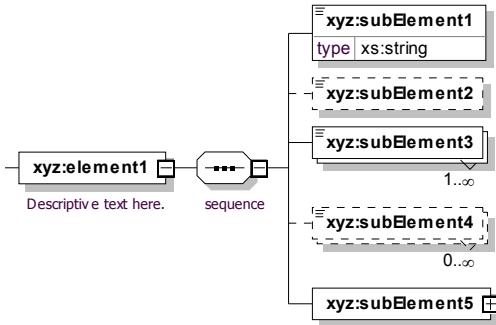
#### 1.5.4.5 Diagrams

The diagrams used throughout this standard graphically detail the organization of elements and attributes.

NOTE—For brevity, the `xml:id` attribute (see [C.27](#)) has been removed from all diagrams.<sup>11</sup>

##### 1.5.4.5.1 Elements and sequences

[Figure 3](#) shows the sequence-compositor. At the left is a branch element, **element1**, with some descriptive text below. **element1** is connected to a sequence-compositor. The sequence-compositor defines the order the subelements appear in the branch element. **subElement1** shall appear first inside of **element1**. This is followed by **subElement2**, **subElement3**, **subElement4**, and **subElement5** before closing **element1**.

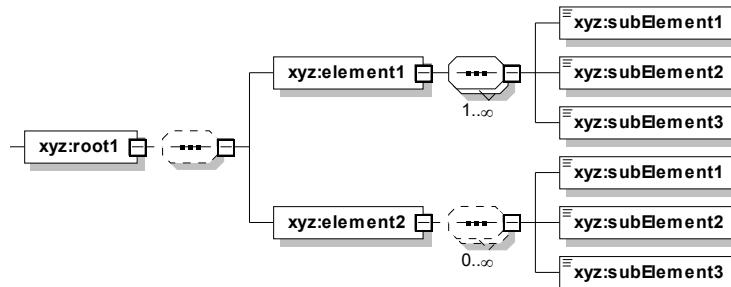


**Figure 3—Sequence-compositor**

- a) **subElement1** is a mandatory element, as indicated by the solid line of the containing box. The type of the data contained in this element is set to *string*, and it has a default value of *ip-xact* if the element is present but left empty.
- b) **subElement2** is an optional element, as indicated by the dashed-line of the containing box.
- c) **subElement3** is a mandatory element that may appear multiple times, indicated by the double-solid line of the containing box. The number of times the element may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the element.
- d) **subElement4** is an optional element that may appear multiple times, as indicated by the double-dashed line of the containing box. The number of times the element may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the element.
- e) **subElement5** is a mandatory branch element that contains further elements inside, as indicated by the small plus sign (+) in the small box on the right.

<sup>11</sup>Notes in text, tables, and figures are given for information only and do not contain requirements needed to implement the standard.

[Figure 4](#) shows variations of a sequence-compositor. **root1** is connected to an optional sequence-compositor, as indicated by the symbol being drawn with a dashed line. **element1** may appear first inside of **root1**; if it does, it shall be followed by **element2**. Each subelement is connected to a sequence-compositor.

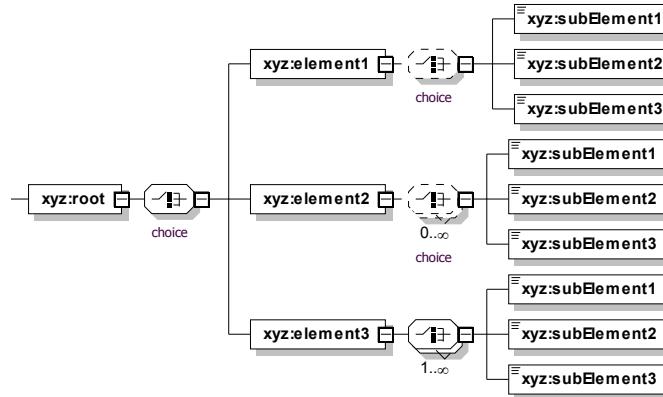


**Figure 4—Sequence-compositor variations**

- **element1** may contain one or more of the following sequences in the following order: **subElement1** and **subElement2** and **subElement3**. The number of times the sequence-compositor may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the symbol. If the range is greater than 1, the sequence-compositor symbol is drawn with double lines.
- **element2** is optional and may contain zero or more of the following sequences in the following order: **subElement1** and **subElement2** and **subElement3**. The number of times the sequence-compositor may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the symbol. If the range starts at 0 and the maximum is greater than 1, the sequence-compositor symbol is drawn with double-dashed lines.

#### 1.5.4.5.2 Elements and choices

[Figure 5](#) shows the variations of the choice-compositor. **root** is connected to a choice-compositor. The choice-compositor specifies that one of the elements on the right side shall be chosen. **root** may contain one of the following: **element1**, **element2**, or **element3**. Each subelement is connected to a choice-compositor.



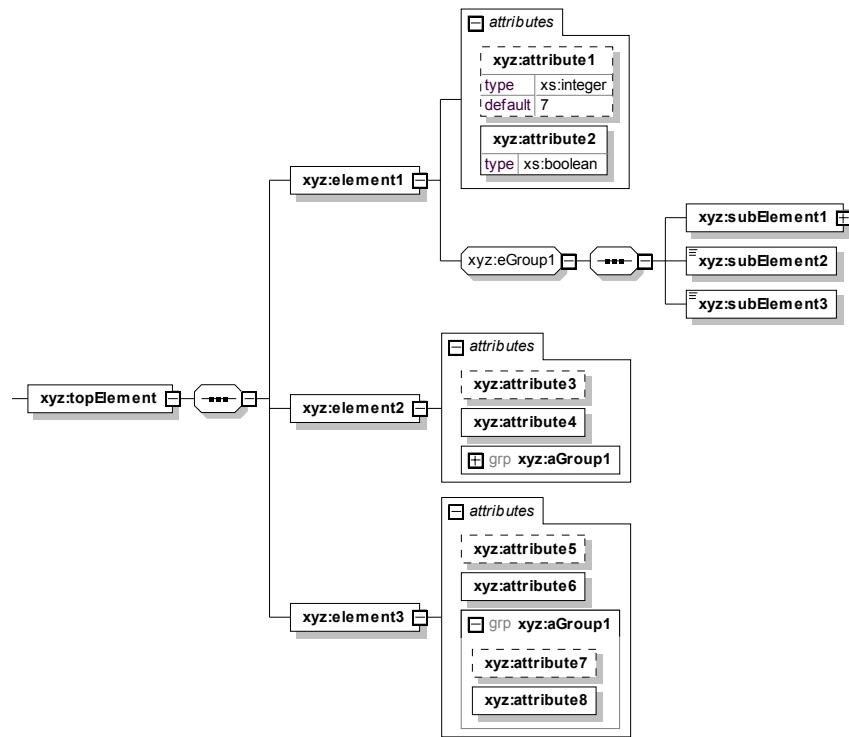
**Figure 5—Choice-compositor variations**

- a) **element1** may contain one of the following: **subElement1**, **subElement2**, or **subElement3**, as indicated by the symbol being drawn with a dashed line.
- b) **element2** may contain any (0 or more) of the following: **subElement1**, **subElement2**, or **subElement3** in any order. The number of times the choice-compositor may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the symbol. If the range starts at 0, the choice-compositor is drawn with dashed lines.

- c) **element3** may contain one or more of the following: **subElement1**, **subElement2**, or **subElement3** in any order. The number of times the choice-compositor may appear is indicated by the range of the numbers listed below the symbol. If the range is greater than 1, the choice-compositor is drawn with double lines.

#### 1.5.4.5.3 Elements, attributes, groups, and attributeGroups

[Figure 6](#) shows the use of attributes, groups, and attributeGroups. **element1** contains two attributes, shown in the tab-shaped box labeled *attributes*. **attribute1** is optional, as indicated by the dashed containing box, and is of type **integer** with a default value of 7 if the attribute is not present. **attribute2** is a required attribute, as indicated by the solid containing box, and is of type **boolean** with no default. The ordering in which **attribute1** and **attribute2** appear inside **element1** is irrelevant.

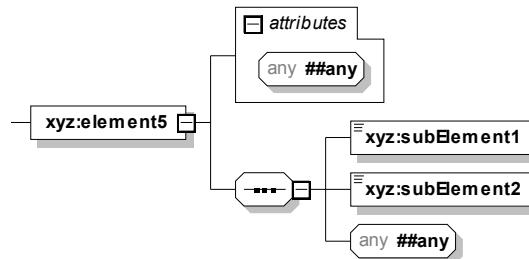


**Figure 6—Attributes, groups, and attributeGroups**

- eGroup1** is an element group inside **element1**. This group contains three subelements, and the group symbol can be replaced by a solid line. The name of the group has no representation in the resulting output description. An element group can be optional, as indicated by a dashed outline (not shown), and it can also have a range, as indicated by numbers below the group symbol (not shown).
- aGroup1** is an **attributeGroup** inside **element2** and **element3**. This **attributeGroup** contains two attributes, **attribute7** and **attribute8**. Inside **element2**, the **attributeGroup** is shown in its collapsed form, as indicated by the small plus sign (+) inside the small box. Inside **element3**, the **attributeGroup** is shown in its expanded form, as indicated by the small minus sign (-) inside the small box. **element2** contains four attributes: **attribute3**, **attribute4**, **attribute7**, and **attribute8**. **element3** also contains four attributes: **attribute5**, **attribute6**, **attribute7**, and **attribute8**. The name of the **attributeGroup** has no representation in the resulting description.

#### 1.5.4.5.4 Wildcards

**Figure 7** shows the use of wildcards. A *wildcard* is depicted by the rounded box with the **any ##any** text. Wildcards indicate that any well-formed attribute or element may be inserted into the containing element.



**Figure 7—Wildcards**

#### 1.6 Use of color in this standard

This standard uses a minimal amount of color to enhance readability. The coloring is not essential and does not affect the accuracy of this standard when viewed in pure black and white. The places where color is used are the following:

- Cross references that are hyperlinked to other portions of this standard are shown in [underlined-blue text](#) (hyperlinking works when this standard is viewed interactively as a PDF file).
- In the formal language definitions, syntactic keywords and tokens are shown in **boldface-red text**.

#### 1.7 Contents of this standard

The organization of the remainder of this standard is as follows:

- [Clause 2](#) provides references to other applicable standards that are assumed or required for this standard.
- [Clause 3](#) defines terms, acronyms, and abbreviations used throughout the different specifications contained in this standard.
- [Clause 4](#) defines the interoperability use model.
- [Clause 5](#) defines the bus and abstraction definitions.
- [Clause 6](#) defines the component and interconnect models.
- [Clause 7](#) defines the designs and their connections.
- [Clause 8](#) defines the abstractor model between abstraction definitions.
- [Clause 9](#) defines the generator chain.
- [Clause 10](#) defines the design and generator chain configuration.
- [Clause 11](#) defines the catalog feature.
- [Clause 12](#) defines addressing.
- [Clause 13](#) defines data visibility.
- Annexes. Following Clause 13 are a series of annexes.

## 2. Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document (i.e., they must be understood and used; therefore, each referenced document is cited in text and its relationship to this document is explained). For dated references, only the edition cited applies. For undated references, the latest edition of the referenced document (including any amendments or corrigenda) applies.

eXtensible Markup Language (XML) schema specification, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-0/>; <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>; <http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/>.

eXtensible Markup Language (XML) version 1.0 specification, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/>.

eXtensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT) version 1.0 specification, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/xslt>.

IEEE Std 1800<sup>TM</sup>, Standard for SystemVerilog-Unified Hardware Design, Specification, and Verification Language.<sup>12, 13</sup>

Simple Object Access Protocol (SOAP) version 1.2 specification, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/soap12-part1/>.

Web Services Description Language (WSDL) version 1.1 specification, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/wsdl>.

*XML schema NameChar definition*, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#NT-NameChar>.

*XML schema NameStartChar definition*, available from the W3C Web site at <http://www.w3.org/TR/REC-xml/#NT-NameStartChar>.

---

<sup>12</sup>IEEE publications are available from The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (<http://standards.ieee.org/>).

<sup>13</sup>The IEEE standards or products referred to in this clause are trademarks of The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.



### 3. Definitions, acronyms, and abbreviations

For the purposes of this document, the following terms and definitions apply. *The IEEE Standards Dictionary Online* should be consulted for terms not defined in this clause.<sup>14</sup>

#### 3.1 Definitions

**abstraction definition:** An object that describes a representation of a bus interface, including details of the ports this type of bus interface may have and the constraints that apply to these ports.

**abstractor:** A top-level IP-XACT element used to convert between two bus interfaces having different abstraction types and sharing the same bus type.

**active interface:** An interface that participates in the transactions.

**ad hoc connection:** A direct connection between two or more ports without the use of bus interfaces.

**application programmers interface (API):** A method for accessing design data and meta-data in a procedural way.

**bridge:** A mechanism to model the internal relationship between master interfaces and slave interfaces inside a component. Bridges explicitly describe the internal point-to-point connections between the component interfaces. A bridge can have multiple address spaces, supports memory mapping and remapping, and can have only direct interfaces. *Syn:* **bus bridge**.

**broadcast:** An interface connection type where one interface connects to multiple other interfaces.

**bus:** A collection of ports used to connect blocks connected to it involving both hardware and software protocols.

**bus definition:** An object that describes the type properties for a bus, such as the maximum masters allowed or if one bus expands upon the definition of another.

**bus interface:** The interface of an intellectual property (IP) to an interconnection. Components are connected together by linking the bus interfaces together. The three different classes of bus interfaces, master, slave, and system, have two flavors: direct and mirrored.

**catalog:** An object that defines a mapping from IP-XACT Vendor Library Name Version (VLNV) to the physical file in which the IP-XACT object is defined.

**channel:** A mechanism to model the internal relationship between mirrored-slave interfaces and mirrored-master interfaces inside a component. A channel can also represent a simple wiring interconnection or a more complex structure, such as a bus. A channel can have only one address space. Channel interfaces are always mirrored interfaces. A channel supports memory mapping and remapping.

**component:** An object containing IP-XACT meta-data for an intellectual property (IP). Components are used to describe computing cores, peripherals, and bussing structures. *Syn:* **component description**.

**configurable element:** An element in an IP-XACT description that can be set to a new value by a user, generator, or dependency equation. This includes all elements with a resolve attribute of user or generated.

<sup>14</sup>*The IEEE Standards Dictionary Online* subscription is available at [http://www.ieee.org/portal/innovate/products/standard/standards\\_dictionary.html](http://www.ieee.org/portal/innovate/products/standard/standards_dictionary.html).

**configurable intellectual property (IP):** IP that contains configurable elements and/or an IP-specific generator capable of creating new components from the configured component and updating the design with the new version of the component. *Syn:* **configurable component**.

**configuration:** Replacing the parameter values with values specified in `configurableElementValue` elements. This includes evaluating each `IsPresent` element value and then treating the containing element as not present if the expression evaluates to 0. Certain semantic rules apply only after this processing.

NOTE—See [C.10](#).

**constraint:** A limitation on a part of the system that needs to be satisfied for the system to be correct. Timing constraints are often specified on ports, requiring that during a given clock cycle the value of the port becomes stable in a certain time period and remains stable for a certain time period relative to a particular clock edge.

**constraint set:** Constraints defined in groups to associate different constraints with different views of the component.

**design:** An IP-XACT description of a system or subsystem listing its components and the connections between these components.

**design configuration:** A design description that contains non-essential ancillary information for generators, the active or current view selected for instances in the design, and configurable information defined in vendor extensions. It references a design description, can specify a view for the component instances and abstractors for each interconnection, and can configure generator chains. *Syn:* **configuration**.

**design database:** Working storage for both meta-data and component information that helps create and verify systems and subsystems.

**design environment (DE):** A software tool or set of tools that manages the access to IP-XACT objects, coordinates the execution of generator chains, and provides an application programmers interface (API) between generators and IP-XACT objects.

**electronic design intellectual property (IP):** In the electronic design community, a reusable collection of design specifications that represent the behavior, properties, and/or description of the design in various media. The name IP is partially derived from the common practice of considering a collection of this type to be the intellectual property of one party. Both hardware and software collections are encompassed by this term. IP utilized in the context of a system on chip (SoC) design or design flow may include specifications; design models; design implementation descriptions; verification coordinators, stimulus generators, checkers, and assertion/constraint descriptions; soft design objects (such as embedded software and real-time operating systems); and design and verification flow information and scripts. IP-XACT distinguishes between fixed IP and configurable IP.

**endianness:** The system of ordering bytes in computer memory where big endian is the most significant byte at the lowest memory address and little endian is the least significant byte at the lowest memory address.

**eXtensible Markup Language (XML):** A simple, very flexible text format derived from Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML).

NOTE—See ISO/IEC 8879 [\[B15\]](#).

**eXtensible Stylesheet Language Transformations (XSLT):** A language for transforming eXtensible Markup Language (XML) documents into other XML documents.

**fixed intellectual property (IP):** IP that has no elements that are configured by the design environment (DE) or set by industry de facto tools.

**generator:** An external application that can communicate with a design environment (DE) using the tight generator interface (TGI) to complete a specific task. Common examples include documentation generation, design data manipulation (adding/removing/updating IP-XACT elements), and flow automation.

**generator chain:** A hierarchical list of generators used to define the order for executing generators. A design flow can be represented by a generator chain.

**generator group:** A symbolic name assigned to a generator to enable generator selection.

**generator invocation:** A method of running an application at a defined phase in the generator group with a given number of elements.

**hardware description language (HDL) path:** A hierarchical path to a memory mapped object (register or memory) within a design. HDL paths facilitate back-door accesses. In IP-XACT, a view-specific HDL path can be defined for each memory mapped object. HDL paths are stored in a distributed manner across the memory map hierarchy using an accessHandle.

NOTE—See [C.1](#).

**hierarchical component:** A component that has one or more **views** that reference IP-XACT design or design configuration descriptions.

**hierarchical family of bus interfaces:** A hierarchical family of bus interfaces is a set of bus interfaces composed of a hierarchical bus interface and all its hierarchical descendants.

**hierarchical family of components:** A hierarchical family of components is a component and all its hierarchical descendants.

**indirect interface:** The access mechanism for an indirectly accessible memory map. This includes defining indirect address and data fields along with addressing information.

**indirectly accessible memory map:** A memory map whose contents cannot be accessed at a fixed address via a bus interface and, instead, are indirectly accessible via indirect address and data fields. A bus interface accesses an indirectly accessible memory map via reads and writes to indirect address and data fields.

**initiative:** An abstract description of port modes (requires, provides, both, or phantom) used for transaction-level modeling (TLM).

**intellectual property (IP) integrator:** A party in the design process who receives IP and subsystems and combines them into a larger system.

**intellectual property (IP) platform architect:** The creator of platform-based architectures.

**intellectual property (IP) provider:** The creator and supplier of IP.

**intellectual property (IP) repository:** The database of IP.

**interconnection:** The point-to-point connection between two or more bus interfaces.

**leaf component:** A component that does not contain any views that reference IP-XACT design or design configuration descriptions.

**master interface:** The bus interface that initiates a transaction (like a read or write) on a bus.

**memory map:** A block of memory in a component (which may be accessible through a slave interface).

**meta-data:** A tool-interpretable way of describing information, such as the design history, locality, association, configuration options, and integration requirements of an object as well as constraints against an object.

**mirror interface:** An interface that has the same (or similar) ports as its related direct bus interface, but whose port directions are reversed. Therefore, a port that is an input on a direct bus interface would be an output in the matching mirror interface.

**monitor interface:** An interface used in verification that is not a master, slave, or system interface.

**multi-layer buses:** Buses that have to be modeled as component bridges with direct interfaces or as a hierarchical component.

**objects:** XML descriptions of the following types: catalogs, components, designs, busDefinitions, abstractionDefinitions, abstractors, designConfigurations, and generatorChains. To be able to be uniquely referenced, each object has an unique identifier called its Vendor Library Name Version (VLDN).

**opaque bridge:** A bus interconnect component that may modify the address space of a master bus interface of one bus type to the memory map of a slave bus interface of another bus type and does not allow direct access to any components residing on that address space. An opaque bridge has the opaque attribute equal to true.

**phantom port:** A port that exists only in an IP-XACT component; it does not exist on any hardware description language (HDL) or transaction-level modeling (TLM) component.

**phase number:** The sequence in which generators should be fired.

**platform:** Architectural (sub)system framework.

**platform consumer:** The user/group that builds a system on chip (SoC) based on a particular platform.

**platform provider:** The user/group that develops and delivers platforms to platform consumers.

**platform rules:** Rules that define how components interface with a specific platform.

**port:** The interface items of a component. These interface items allow dynamic exchange of information. Connections between ports may be specified by using ad hoc connections or by including them in bus interfaces connected together by interconnections.

**schema:** A means for defining the structure, content, and semantics of eXtensible Markup Language (XML) documents.

**segment:** A portion of an addressSpace, defined with an address offset and range.

**semantic consistency rules (SCRs):** Additional rules applied to an eXtensible Markup Language (XML) description that cannot be expressed in the schema. Typically, these are rules between elements in multiple XML descriptions.

**slave interface:** The bus interface that terminates or consumes a transaction initiated by a master interface. Slave interfaces often contain information about the registers accessible through the slave interface.

**system interface:** An interface that is neither a master nor slave interface and allows specialized (or non-standard) connections to a bus (e.g., clock).

**tight generator interface (TGI):** An interface used to manipulate values of elements and attributes for IP-XACT-compliant XML.

**transactional port:** A port that has an initiative and a kind or a type definition (which can specify the data type of the port). Transactional ports are used for high-level modeling.

**transaction-level modeling (TLM):** An abstraction level higher than register transfer level (RTL), used for specifying, simulating, verifying, implementing, and evaluating system on chip (SoC) designs.

**transparent bridge:** A bus interconnect component that modifies the address space of a master bus interface of one bus type to the memory map of a slave bus interface of another bus type with directly addressable access to any components residing on that address space. A transparent bridge has the opaque attribute equal to false.

**use model:** A process method of working with a tool.

**user interface:** Methods of interacting between a tool and its user.

**validation:** The process of proving the correctness of construction of a set of components.

**Vendor Library Name Version (VLNV):** The unique identifier assigned to each top-level IP-XACT object and specified in each eXtensible Markup Language (XML) file.

**verification:** The process of proving the behavior of a set of connected components.

**verification intellectual property (VIP):** Components included in a design for verification purposes.

**view:** An implementation of a component. A component may have multiple views, each with its own function in the design flow.

**virtual register:** A collection of fields, overlaid on top of a memory, usually in an array. The semantics and layout of virtual registers come from an agreement between the software and hardware. Virtual registers are modeled in IP-XACT by creating register instances within addressBlocks with usage memory. The child elements of a virtual register are restricted to a subset of the overall register element.

NOTE—See [6.11.2](#).

**virtual register file:** A grouping of virtual registers. A virtual register file is modeled using the registerFile element in an addressBlock element with usage of memory. The children of virtual register files shall be virtual.

NOTE—See [6.11.6](#).

**wire connections:** Connections that connect wire ports.

**wire port:** A port that describes binary values or an array of binary values. Wire ports can have a direction: in, out, or inout.

### 3.2 Acronyms and abbreviations

API	application programmers interface
DE	design environment
EDA	electronic design automation
HDL	hardware description language
HTTP	Hypertext Transfer Protocol
IP	(electronic design) intellectual property
LAU	least addressable unit (of memory)
RAM	random access memory
ROM	read-only memory
RTL	register transfer level (design)
SCR	semantic consistency rule
SOAP	Simple Object Access Protocol
SoC	system on chip
TGI	tight generator interface
TLM	transaction-level modeling
VIP	verification IP
VLVN	Vendor Library Name Version
WSDL	Web Services Description Language
XML	eXtensible Markup Language
XSLT	eXtensible Stylesheet Language Transformations

## 4. Interoperability use model

To introduce the use model for the IP-XACT specifications, it is first necessary to identify specific roles and responsibilities within the model and then relate these to how the IP-XACT specifications impact their interactions. All or some of the roles can be mixed within a single organization, e.g., some EDA providers are also providing IP, a component IP provider can also be a platform provider, and an IP system design provider may also be a consumer.

### 4.1 Roles and responsibilities

For this standard, the roles and responsibilities are restricted to the scope of IP-XACT HDL and TLM system design.

#### 4.1.1 Component IP provider

A component IP provider is a person, group, or company creating IP components or subsystems for integration into a SoC design. These IPs can be hardware components (e.g., processors, memories, buses), verification components, and/or hardware-dependent software elements. They may be provided as source files or in a compiled form (i.e., simulation model). An IP is usually provided with a functional description, a timing description, some implementation or verification constraints, and some parameters to characterize (or configure) the IP. All these types of characterization data may be described as meta-data compliant with the IP-XACT schema. Elements not already provided in the base schema can be provided using namespace extensibility mechanisms of the specification.

The IP provider can use one or more EDA tools to create/refine/debug IP. During this process, the IP provider may export and re-import its design from one environment to another. The IP-XACT IP descriptions need to enable this exchange for component IP.

At some point, this IP can be transferred to customers, partners, and external EDA tool suppliers by using IP-XACT-compliant XML. IP can be characterized as *fixed IP* or *configurable IP*.

#### 4.1.2 SoC design IP provider

A SoC design IP provider is a person, group, or company that integrates and validates IP provided by one or more IP providers to build system platforms, which are complete and validated systems or subsystems. Like the IP provider, the platform provider can use EDA tools to create/refine/debug its platform, but at some point the IP needs to be exchanged with others (e.g., customers, partners, other EDA tools). To do so, the platform IP has to be expressed in the IP-XACT-specified format as a hierarchical component.

#### 4.1.3 SoC design IP consumer

A SoC design IP consumer is a person, group, or company that configures and generates system applications based on platforms supplied by SoC design IP providers. These platforms are complete system designs or subsystems. Like the platform provider, the platform consumer can use EDA tools to create/refine/debug its system application and/or configure the design architecture. To do so, the EDA tool needs to support any platform IP expressed in the IP-XACT-specified format.

#### 4.1.4 Design tool supplier

A design tool supplier is a group or company that provides tools to verify and/or implement an IP or platform IP. There are three major tools (which could be combined) provided in a system flow:

- Platform builder (or *system design environment*) tools: these help to assemble a platform with some automation (e.g., automatic generation of interconnect).

- Verification point tools: these handle functional and timing simulation, verification, analysis, debugging, co-simulation, co-verification, and acceleration.
- Implementation point tools: these handle synthesizing, floor-planing, place, routing, etc.

The EDA provider needs to be able to import IP-XACT component or system IP libraries from multiple sources and export them in the same format.

Further, IP-XACT EDA tools need to recognize, associate, and launch generators that may be provided by a generator or IP provider in support of configurable IP bundles. The imported IP might need to be created and/or modified by the tool and then exported back (e.g., to be exchanged with other EDA vendor tools) to satisfy the customer design flow.

To further support any generators supplied with IP bundles, the IP-XACT DE tools need to be able to recognize and interface with generator-wrapped point tools. These may be provided by another EDA provider or by the IP designer/consumer as part of a company's internal design and verification flow. In general, these support specialized design-automation features, such as architectural-rule checking.

## 4.2 IP-XACT IP exchange flows

This subclause describes a typical IP exchange flow that the IP-XACT specifications technically support between the roles defined in [4.1](#). By way of example, the following specific exchange flow can benefit from use of the IP-XACT specification:

The component IP provider generates an IP-XACT XML package and sends it to a SoC design tool (EDA tool supplier) or directly to a platform (i.e., SoC design IP) provider. The EDA tool supplier imports IP-XACT XML IP and generates platform IP and/or updates (configures) the IP components. The platform provider generates a configurable platform IP and exports it in IP-XACT XML format, which the end user imports to build system applications. The platform provider can also generate its own platform IP into IP-XACT format and send it to the EDA provider.

Although many different possible IP exchange flows exist, from the user's viewpoint, there are three main use models, as follows:

- IP (component or SoC design) provider use model
- Generator (IP provider and design tool) provider use model
- SoC design tool provider use model

### 4.2.1 Component or SoC design IP provider use model

The IP provider (a hardware component IP designer or platform IP architect) can use IP-XACT to package IP in a standard and reusable format. The first step consists in creating an IP-XACT XML package (XML plus any IP views) to export the IP database in a valid format. To express this IP as an IP-XACT IP, the IP provider needs to parse the entire design description tree (which is composed of files of different types: HDL source files, data sheets, interfaces, parameters, etc.) and package it into an IP-XACT XML format. This can be a manual step (by directly editing IP-XACT-compliant XML) or an automated one (using scripts to generate schema-compliant IP-XACT XML).

Once the IP has been packaged in an IP-XACT format, the IP provider can use a SoC design tool to write/debug/simulate/implement the IP.

#### 4.2.2 Generator provider use model

The author of a generator expects to interact with the SoC design tool through a fixed interface during well-defined times in the design life cycle: when components are instantiated or modified or when a generator chain is started.

Generators are used within the SoC design tool to extend its capabilities: wrapping a point tool, e.g., a simulator; wiring up IP within the design; or checking the design is correct or maybe modifying the design. Many of these features may be supplied by the IP author and handled by generators embedded in the IP itself.

Consequently, there are at least two groups of generator providers: IP vendors who supply generators that are written specifically to support their IP and generic generator authors who wish to extend the features available within the SoC design tool. This latter group will be mainly SoC design tool vendors at first, but will also come to include third-party generator vendors.

#### 4.2.3 System design tool provider use model

The system design tool takes IP-XACT components and designs as input, configures them, and loads them into its own database format. Then it can automate some tasks, such as creating the platform, generating the component interconnect and bus fabric, and generating or updating the IP-XACT IP as an output (by providing new or updated XML with the attached information, e.g., new source files, parameters, documentation).

Customer design flows are usually composed of a chain of different tools from the same or different EDA vendors (e.g., when an EDA provider is not providing the entire tool chain to cover all the user flow or the customer is selecting the best-in-class point tools). To address this requirement, the EDA vendor providing an IP-XACT-enabled tool needs to read and produce the IP-XACT-specified format and then utilize and implement the interfaces defined by IP-XACT documents. In this use model, each SoC design tool uses its own generators (possibly utilizing the IP-XACT TGI) to build and update its internal meta-data state and export to an IP-XACT format. Then the IP-XACT description can be imported by another IP-XACT-enabled EDA tool.



## 5. Interface definition descriptions

### 5.1 Definition descriptions

In IP-XACT, a group of ports that together perform a function are described by a set of elements and attributes split across two descriptions: a bus definition and an abstraction definition. These two descriptions are referenced by components or abstractors in their bus or abstractor interfaces.

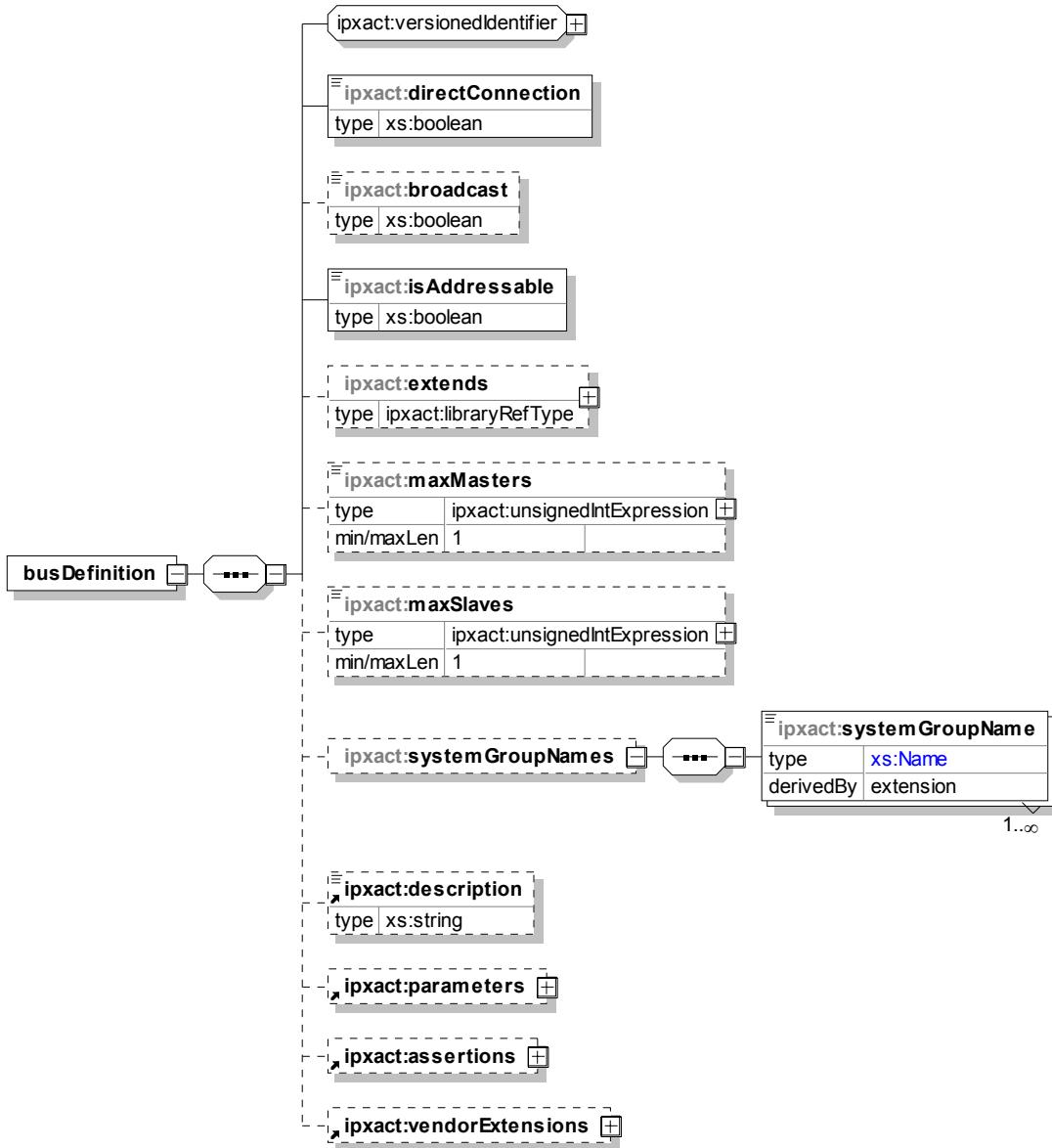
The *bus definition* description contains the high-level attributes of the interface, including items such as the connection method and indication of addressing.

The *abstraction definition* contains the low-level attributes of the interface, including items such as the name, direction, and width of the ports. This is a list of logical ports that may appear on a bus interface for that bus type. Multiple abstractions definitions can be associated with a single bus definition. See [6.5](#).

## 5.2 Bus definition

### 5.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **busDefinition** element, which is one of the top-level elements in the IP-XACT specification used to describe the high-level aspects of a bus.



### 5.2.2 Description

The top-level **busDefinition** element describes the high-level aspects of a bus or interconnect. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- The **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier; it consists of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- directConnection** (mandatory; type: **boolean**) specifies what connections are allowed. A value of **true** specifies these interfaces may be connected in a direct master-to-slave fashion. A value of **false**

- indicates only non-mirror to mirror type connections are allowed (i.e., master–mirroredMaster, slave–mirroredSlave, or system–mirroredSystem).
- c) **broadcast** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: *false*) indicates this bus definition supports *broadcast mode*, i.e., bus interfaces using this definition support one-to-many interface connections.
  - d) **isAddressable** (mandatory; type: *boolean*) specifies the bus has addressing information. A value of **true** specifies these interfaces contain addressing information and a memory map can be traced through this interface. A value of **false** indicates these interfaces do not contain any traceable addressing information. See also [6.3](#).
  - e) **extends** (optional; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies whether this definition is an extension from another bus definition. See also [5.11](#).
  - f) **maxMasters** (optional; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) specifies the maximum number of masters that can appear in a **channel** element containing bus interfaces using this bus definition. If the **maxMasters** element is not present, the number of allowed masters is unbounded.
  - g) **maxSlaves** (optional; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) specifies the maximum number of slaves that can appear in a **channel** element containing bus interfaces using this bus definition. If the **maxSlaves** element is not present, the number of allowed slaves is unbounded.
  - h) **systemGroupNames** (optional) defines an unbounded list of **systemGroupName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) elements, which in turn define the possible group names to be used under an **onSystem** element in an abstraction definition. The definition of the group names in the bus definition allows multiple abstraction definitions to indicate which system interfaces match each other. The **systemGroupName** shall be unique with the containing **systemGroupNames** element.
    - i) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the interface.
    - j) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this bus definition. See [C.18](#).
    - k) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
    - l) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the interface. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.3](#), [SCR 1.10](#), [SCR 1.12](#), [SCR 2.17](#), [SCR 3.18](#), and [SCR 6.16](#).

## 5.3 Abstraction definition

### 5.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **abstractionDefinition** element, which is one of the top-level elements in the IP-XACT specification used to describe the low-level aspects of a bus.



### 5.3.2 Description

The **abstractionDefinition** element describes the low-level aspects of a bus or interconnect. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) The **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier; it consists of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- b) **busType** (mandatory; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies the bus definition that this abstraction defines. See also [5.11](#).
- c) **extends** (optional; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies whether this definition is an extension from another abstraction definition. The extending abstraction definition may change the definition of logical ports, add new ports, or mark existing logical ports illegal (to disallow their use). See also [5.11](#).
- d) **ports** (mandatory) is a list of logical ports; see [5.4](#).
- e) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the interface.
- f) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this bus definition. See [C.18](#).
- g) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- h) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the interface. See [C.24](#).

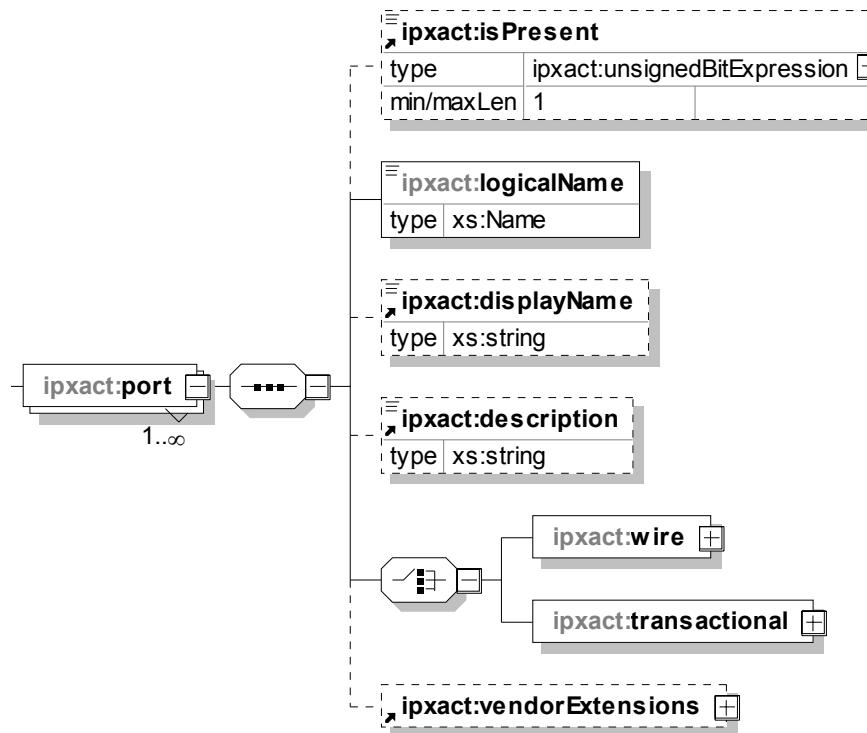
The **abstractionDefinition** element contains a list of logical ports that define a representation of the bus type to which it refers. A port can be a wire port (see [5.7](#)) or a transactional port (see [5.9](#)). A *wire port* carries logic information or an array of logic information. A *transactional port* carries information that is represented at a higher level of abstraction.

See also [SCR 1.10](#), [SCR 1.12](#), [SCR 1.14](#), [SCR 3.1](#), [SCR 3.15](#), [SCR 3.16](#), and [SCR 6.11](#).

## 5.4 Ports

### 5.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **ports** element, which appears as part of the **abstractionDefinition** element within an abstraction definition. This is different from the **ports** element that appears as part of the **model** element within components.



### 5.4.2 Description

A **port** element defines the logical port information for the containing abstraction definition. It contains the following elements:

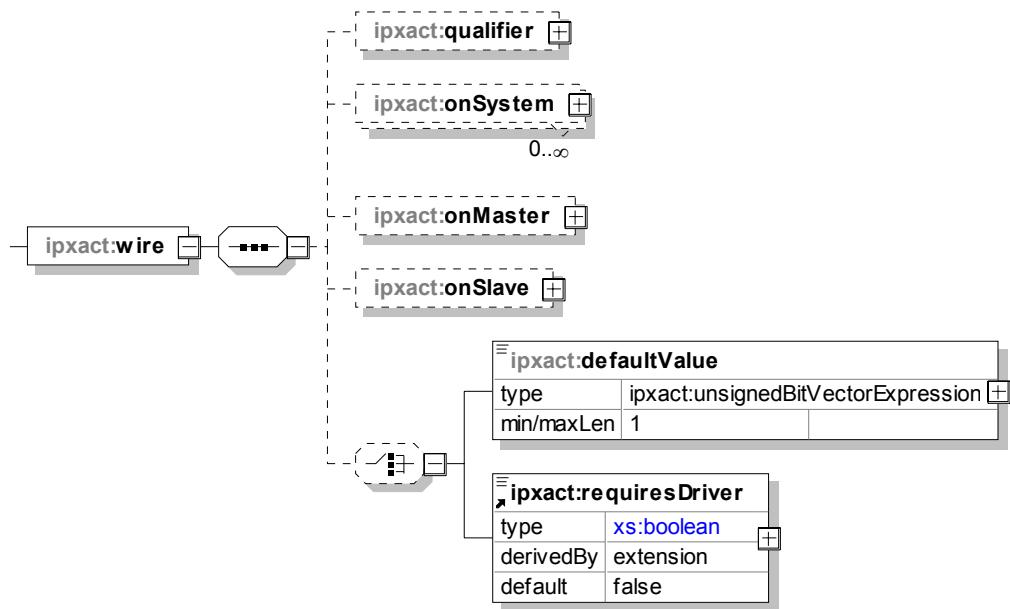
- a) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- b) **logicalName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) gives a name to the logical port that can be used later in component description when the mapping is done from a logical abstraction definition port to the components physical port. The **logicalName** shall be unique within the **abstractionDefinition**.
- c) **displayName** (optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the port.
- d) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the port.

- e) Each **port** also requires a **wire** element or a **transactional** element to further describe the details about this port. See [5.5](#) or [5.9](#), respectively. A **wire** style port is a port that carries logic values or an array of logic values. A **transactional** style port is a port that carries any other type of information, typically used for TLM.
- f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the port. See [C.24](#).

## 5.5 Wire ports

### 5.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **wire** element, which may appear as part of the **port** element within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port**).



### 5.5.2 Description

A **wire** element represents a port that carries logic values or an array of logic values. This logical wire port may provide optional constraints for a wire port, to which it is mapped inside a component or abstractor's **busInterface**. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **qualifier** (optional) indicates which type of information this wire port carries. See [5.6](#).
- b) **onSystem** (optional) defines constraints, e.g., timing constraints, for this wire port if it is present in a system bus interface with a matching group name.
  - 1) The **group** (mandatory) attribute indicates the group name for the wire port. It distinguishes between different sets of system interfaces. Usually, all the arbiter ports are processed together, or all the clock or reset ports are processed together. So, this is really a mechanism to specify any sort of non-standard bus interface capabilities for the interconnect. The type of this element is **Name**.
  - 2) The group **wirePort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.7](#).
- c) **onMaster** (optional) defines constraints for this wire port when present in a master bus interface. The group **wirePort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.7](#).

- d) **onSlave** (optional) defines constraints for this wire port when present in a slave bus interface. The group **wirePort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.7](#).
- e) A wire may also contain one of the following elements:
  - 1) **defaultValue** (type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) contains the default logic value for this wire port. This value is applied when the **busInterface** is connected, this logical port is not connected, and there is no ad hoc connection to the corresponding physical port.
  - 2) **requiresDriver** (type: *boolean*; default: *false*) specifies whether the port requires a driver when used in a completed design. If this element is not present, its effective value is *false*, indicating this port does not require a driver. When set to *true*, the attribute **driverType** further qualifies what driver type is required: **any** (any logic signal or value), **clock** (a repeating type waveform), or **singleshot** (a non-repeating type waveform). If **driverType** is not present, its effective value is **any**.

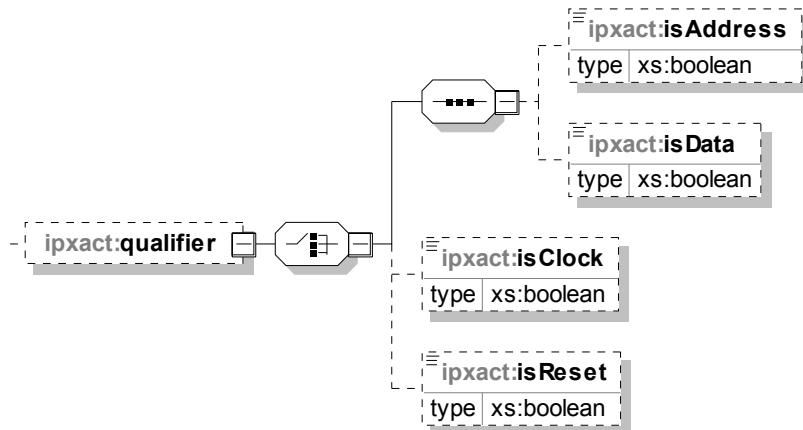
NOTE—The **onMaster**, **onSlave**, and **onSystem** elements associated with each logical port provide optional constraints. If any of these is missing, there are no constraints for how the port appears on interfaces with that mode (master, system, or slave). A port may appear in any system interface group unless its presence is marked as illegal for that group. The abstraction definition author has the choice of how far to constrain the definitions. Generally speaking, more constraints in the definitions reduce implementation flexibility for whoever is creating IP with interface that conforms to the abstraction definition.

See also [SCR 6.12](#) and [SCR 6.14](#).

## 5.6 Qualifiers

### 5.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **qualifier** element, which may appear as part of the **wire** element within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port/wire**).



### 5.6.2 Description

The **qualifier** element indicates which type of information a wire port carries. It contains the following elements:

- a) **isAddress** (optional; type: *boolean*), when *true*, specifies the port contains address information. This **qualifier** may be paired with the **isData** element (e.g., used with serial protocols). See also [Clause 12](#).
- b) **isData** (optional; type: *boolean*), when *true*, specifies the port contains data information. This data resides in registers defined in the memory map referenced by the interface. The width defined by the

port on each side of the two connected bus interfaces can be used to determine which portions of the data may be lost or gained (tied off to defaults) during transfers if the two widths do not match. This **qualifier** may be paired with the **isAddress** element (e.g., used with serial protocols). See also [Clause 12](#).

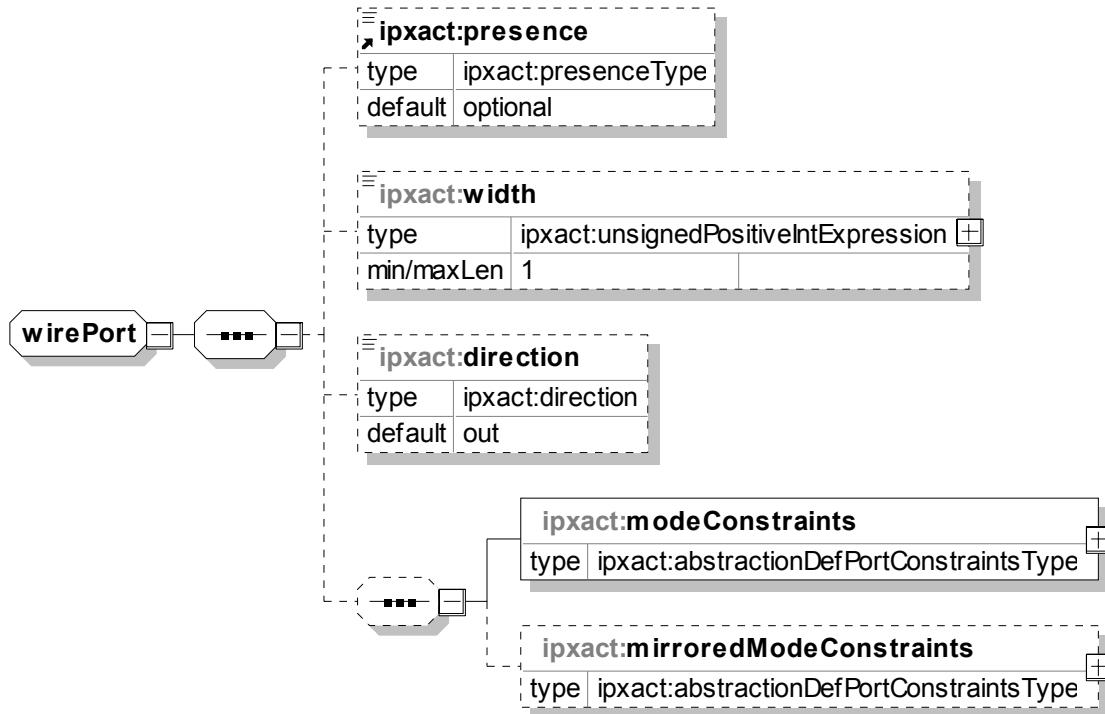
- c) **isClock** (optional; type: *boolean*), when **true**, specifies this port is a clock for this bus interface, i.e., it provides a repeating pattern that the interface uses to implement the protocol. No method of processing is implied with this tag. This tag shall be applied only to pure clock ports. This **qualifier** shall not be combined with other qualifiers.
- d) **isReset** (optional; type: *boolean*), when **true**, specifies this port is a reset for this bus interface., i.e., it provides the necessary input to put the interface into a known state. No method of processing is implied with this tag. This tag should be applied only to pure reset ports. This **qualifier** shall not be combined with other qualifiers.

See also [SCR 6.16](#), [SCR 9.1](#), [SCR 9.2](#), and [SCR 12.8](#).

## 5.7 Wire port group

### 5.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **wirePort** group, which may appear as part of the **onSystem**, **onMaster**, or **onSlave** element within a **wire** element within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port/wire/onmode**).



### 5.7.2 Description

The **wirePort** group specifies what elements are used in a **wire** port. It contains the following elements:

- presence** (optional; default: **optional**) provides the capability to require or forbid a port from appearing in a **busInterface**. The three possible values are **illegal**, **required**, or **optional**. If this element is not present, its effective value is **optional**.
- width** (optional; type: **unsignedPositiveIntExpression** (see [C.3.9](#))) represents the number of logical bits that are required to represent this port. When mapping to this logical port in a **busInterface/portmap**, the numbering shall start from 0 to width-1. If **width** is not specified, the component shall define the number of bits in this port, but the logical portmap numbering shall still start at 0. If necessary, logical bit 0 shall be the least significant bit.
- direction** (optional; default: **out**) restricts the direction of the port relative to the non-mirrored interface (see [6.2](#)). The three possible values are **in**, **out**, or **inout**.
- Each **wirePort** group can also have a sequence of **modeConstraints** and **mirroredModeConstraints** specifying the default synthesis constraints associated with this logical port. The **modeConstraints** apply to this port if it appears in a non-mirrored *mode* bus interface (see [5.8](#)). Any **mirroredModeConstraints** apply to this port if it appears in a mirrored-*mode* bus interface (see [5.8](#)).

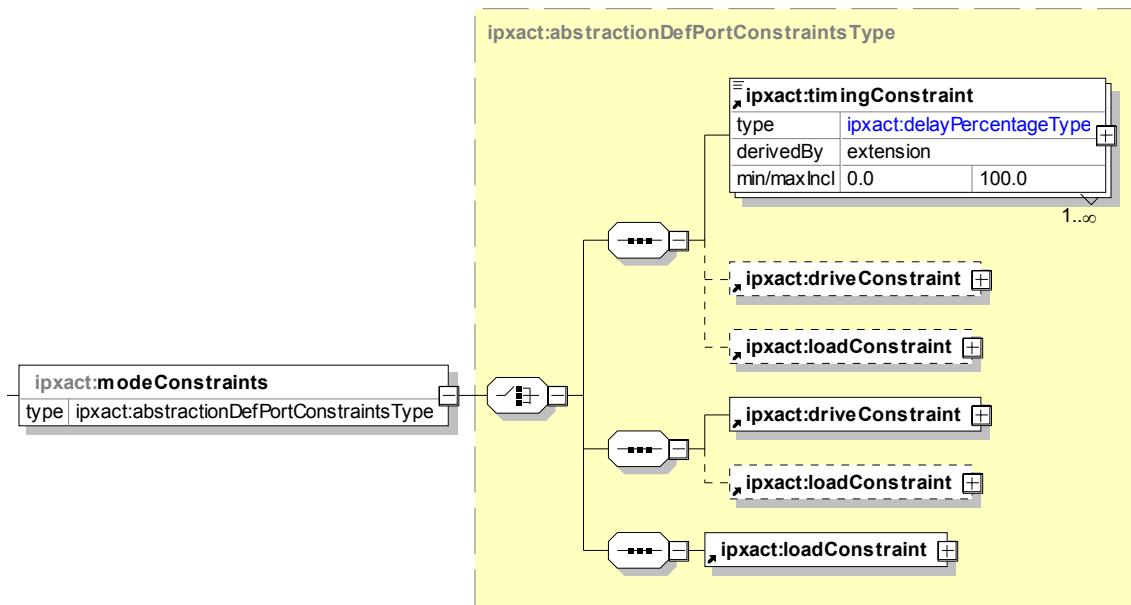
If **mirroredModeConstraints** are not specified, the **modeConstraints** also apply to this port in a mirrored-*mode* bus interface.

See also [SCR 6.5](#), [SCR 6.6](#), [SCR 6.7](#), and [SCR 6.17](#).

## 5.8 Wire port **mode** (and mirrored mode) constraints

### 5.8.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **modeConstraints** and **mirroredModeConstraints** elements, which may appear within an **onMaster**, **onSlave**, or **onSystem** element within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port/wire/onmode**).



### 5.8.2 Description

The **abstractionDefPortConstraintsType** type definition (used to define **modeConstraints** and **mirroredModeConstraints**) defines any default implementation constraints associated with the containing wire port of the abstraction definition. It contains one or more of the following elements:

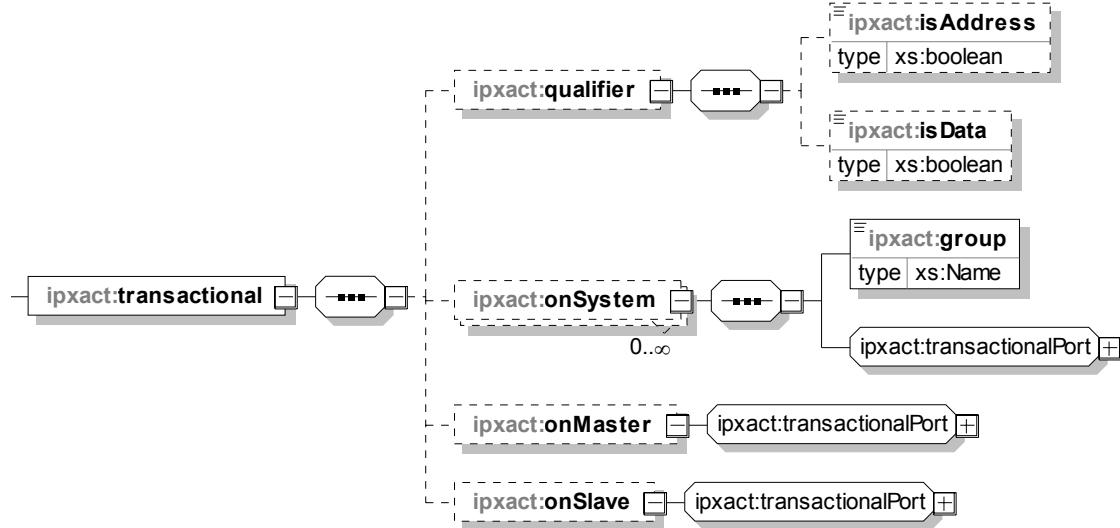
- a) **timingConstraint** (optional) element defines a technology-independent timing constraint associated with the containing wire port. See [6.12.14](#).
- b) **driveConstraint** (optional) element defines a technology-independent drive constraint associated with the containing wire port. See [6.12.14](#).
- c) **loadConstraint** (optional) element defines a technology-independent load constraint associated with the containing wire port. See [6.12.14](#).

The constraints contained within the **modeConstraints** element are applied to the corresponding physical ports in a component only when the physical port does not have any constraints defined within its own port element and no standard design constraint (SDC) file is associated with the component. For example, if it appears inside an **onMaster** element, the constraints apply when the port appears in a master interface. If the **modeConstraints** element is immediately followed by a **mirroredModeConstraints** element, the constraints defined in the **modeConstraints** element apply only when the port is used in a non-mirrored *mode* interface and the constraints defined in the **mirroredModeConstraints** element are used when the port is used in a mirrored mode interface. Otherwise, the constraints apply when the port appears in a *mode* interface or a mirrored-*mode* interface.

## 5.9 Transactional ports

### 5.9.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **transactional** element, which may appear within a **port** within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port**).



### 5.9.2 Description

The **transactional** element defines a logical transactional port of the abstraction definition. This logical transactional port may provide optional constraints for a transactional port, to which it is mapped inside a component or abstractor's **busInterface**. The **transactional** element also contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) The **qualifier** (optional) element indicates which type of information this transactional port carries. It contains either or both of the following elements:
  - 1) **isAddress** (optional; type: *boolean*) specifies the port contains address information.
  - 2) **isData** (optional; type: *boolean*) specifies the port contains data information.
- b) **onSystem** (optional) defines constraints for this transactional port if it is present in a system bus interface with a matching group name.
  - 1) The **group** (type: *Name*) attribute indicates the group name for the transactional port. It distinguishes between different sets of system interfaces. Usually, all the arbiter ports are processed together, or all the clock or reset ports are processed together. So, this is really a mechanism to specify any sort of non-standard bus interface capabilities for the interconnect. The **group** name shall match the one specified in the bus definition **systemGroupName**.
  - 2) The group **transactionalPort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.10](#).
- c) **onMaster** (optional) defines constraints for this transactional port when present in a master bus interface. The group **transactionalPort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.10](#).
- d) **onSlave** (optional) defines constraints for this transactional port when present in a slave bus interface. The group **transactionalPort** specifies what elements are used in this port. See [5.10](#).

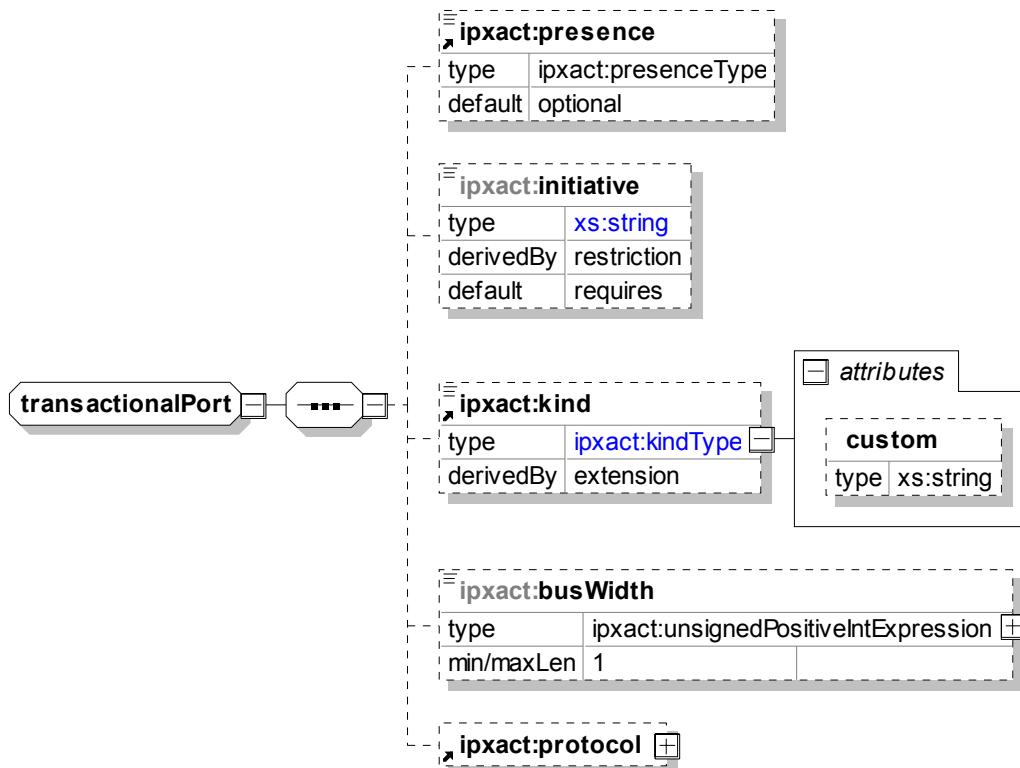
NOTE—The **onMaster**, **onSlave**, and **onSystem** elements associated with each logical port provide optional constraints. If any of these is missing, there are no constraints for how the port appears on interfaces with that mode (master, system, or slave). If no **onSystem** constraint is specified with a particular group, there are no constraints for system interfaces in that group. The abstraction definition author has the choice of how far to constrain the definitions. Generally speaking, more constraints in the definitions reduce implementation flexibility for whoever is creating IP with interface that conform to the abstraction definition.

See also [SCR 6.13](#), [SCR 6.14](#), and [SCR 6.16](#).

## 5.10 Transactional port group

### 5.10.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **transactionalPort** group, which may appear within an **onMaster**, **onSlave**, or **onSystem** element within an abstraction definition (**abstractionDefinition/ports/port/transactional/onmode**).



### 5.10.2 Description

A **transactionalPort** group contains elements defining constraints associated with a transactional logical port within an **abstractionDefinition**. It contains the following elements:

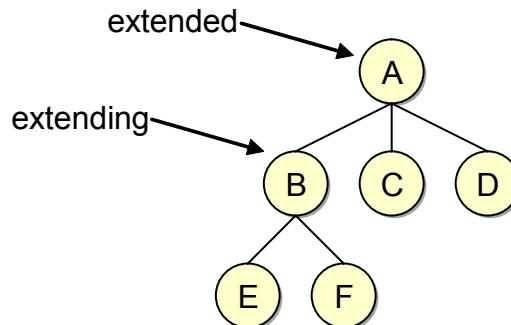
- a) **presence** (optional; default: **optional**) provides the capability to require or forbid a port to appear in a **busInterface**. Its three possible values are **illegal**, **required**, or **optional**. If this element is not present, its effective value is **optional**.
- b) **initiative** (optional; type: **string**; default: **requires**) defines the type of access: **requires**, **provides**, or **both**. For example, a SystemC **sc\_port** is defined using **requires**, since it requires a SystemC interface.
- c) **kind** (optional) specifies the transactional port's type. It can take one of the following enum values: **tlm\_port**, **tlm\_socket**, **simple\_socket**, **multi\_socket**, or **custom**. When **custom**, a *name* can be specified in the **custom** attribute. Also, the **tlm\_port** should be used only for TLM1 notation; the other enum values should be used for TLM2 sockets.
- d) **busWidth** (optional; type **unsignedPositiveIntExpression** (see [C.3.9](#))) specifies the data width in bits, e.g., 32 or 64.
- e) **protocol** (optional) defines how the information is transported by the transactional port. (see [6.12.18](#)).

See also [SCR 6.2](#), [SCR 6.3](#), [SCR 6.4](#), [SCR 6.8](#), and [SCR 6.17](#).

## 5.11 Extending bus and abstraction definitions

### 5.11.1 Extending bus definitions

Bus definitions may use the **extends** element to create a family of compatible interconnectable bus definitions. A bus definition (B) extends another existing bus definition (A) by specifying the **extends** element in the B bus definition's element list. Bus definition B is referred to as the *extending bus definition*, and bus definition A is referred to as the *extended bus definition*. For two bus definitions related by the **extends** relation to be interconnectable, they need to be in a direct line of descent in the hierarchical *extension tree*, as illustrated in [Figure 8](#).

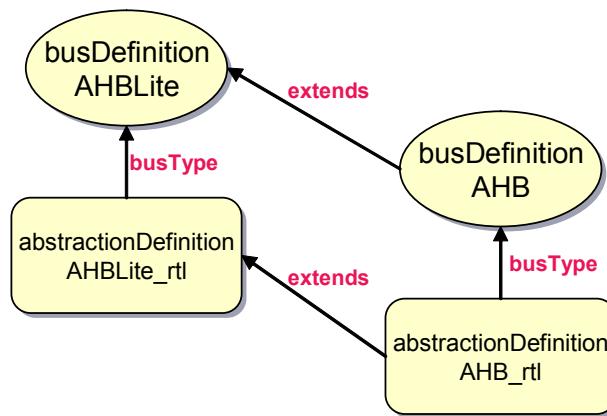


**Figure 8—Extends relation hierarchy tree**

In [Figure 8](#), bus definition B extends bus definition A. Bus interfaces of bus definition E shall be connected only with bus interfaces of bus definitions E, B, and A. By the same token, bus interfaces of bus definition F shall be connected only with bus interfaces of bus definitions F, B, and A.

### 5.11.2 Extending abstraction definitions

The **abstractionDefinition** that references the *extended busDefinition* via the **busType** element is referred to as the *extended abstractionDefinition*. The bus definition writer shall supply an **abstractionDefinition** that references the *extending busDefinition*, and it is referred to as the *extending abstractionDefinition*. The *extending abstractionDefinition* shall reference the *extended abstractionDefinition* via its **extends** element. An example of extending is shown in [Figure 9](#).<sup>15</sup>



**Figure 9—Example of extending**

<sup>15</sup>AHB = AMBA® high-speed bus. AMBA is an open specification on-chip backbone for interconnecting IP blocks. AMBA is a registered trademark of ARM Limited. This information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute an endorsement by the IEEE of this product. Equivalent products may be used if they can be shown to lead to the same results.

The *extending* bus definition and abstraction definition pair shall be able to stand on its own independent of the *extended* bus definition and abstraction definition pair; therefore, all the elements and attributes of the *extended* bus definition and abstraction definition pair shall be specified in the *extending* bus definition and abstraction definition pair. Also, all the ports in the *extended* abstraction definition shall be explicitly defined in the *extending* abstraction definition. Some of the elements and attributes of the *extending* bus definition and abstraction definition pair may be modified from the *extended* bus definition and abstraction definition pair, while others may not.

See also [SCR 3.16](#).

### 5.11.3 Modifying definitions

[Table 1](#) specifies which elements and attributes may be modified in a bus definition. The *Modifiable* column should be checked after elaboration.

**Table 1—Elements of *extending* bus definition**

Item	Modifiable	Note
<b>directConnection</b>	No	
<b>broadcast</b>	No	
<b>isAddressable</b>	No	
<b>maxMasters</b>	Yes	Smaller number applies when connecting interfaces of extended bus definitions.
<b>maxSlaves</b>	Yes	Smaller number applies when connecting interfaces of extended bus definitions.
<b>systemGroupNames</b>	Yes	New group names may be added; group names not specified are not allowed by this bus definition.
<b>description</b>	Yes	
<b>parameters</b>	Yes	
<b>assertions</b>	Yes	
<b>vendorExtensions</b>	Yes	

[Table 2](#) specifies which elements and attributes may be modified in an abstraction definition. The *Modifiable* column should be checked after elaboration.

**Table 2—Elements of *extending* abstraction definition**

Item	Modifiable	Note
<b>ports</b>	Yes	See <a href="#">Table 3</a> and <a href="#">SCR 6.11</a> .
<b>description</b>	Yes	
<b>parameters</b>	Yes	
<b>assertions</b>	Yes	
<b>vendorExtensions</b>	Yes	

The *extending* abstraction definition may add new ports, and the *extending* abstraction definition may mark certain ports as illegal to disallow their use. [Table 3](#) specifies which port elements may be modified when extending bus definitions. The *Modifiable* column should be checked after elaboration.

**Table 3—Elements of a port in an *extending* abstraction definition**

Item	Modifiable	Note
<b>logicalName</b>	No	Changing this name implies a port that is different from the one in the <i>extended abstractionDefinition</i> .
<b>requiresDriver</b>	Yes	
<b>isAddress</b>	No	
<b>isData</b>	No	
<b>isClock</b>	No	
<b>isReset</b>	No	
<b>onSystem/group</b>	Yes	
<b>presence</b>	Yes	
<b>width</b>	Yes	
<b>direction</b>	No	
<b>modeConstraints</b>	Yes	
<b>mirroredModeConstraints</b>	Yes	
<b>defaultValue</b>	Yes	This default can be used to set a value for the extended abstraction definition logical port, if this port is not mapped or its presence is marked as illegal.
<b>initiative</b>	No	
<b>kind</b>	No	
<b>busWidth</b>	No	
<b>protocol</b>	No	
<b>vendorExtensions</b>	Yes	

## 5.12 Clock and reset handling

Abstraction definitions shall include all the logical ports that can participate in the protocol of the bus; bus interfaces also need to map to the component all the logical ports that participate in the protocol of that bus interface subject to its **presence** (see [5.7.2](#)).

This requirement applies to clock and reset ports as much as it does to other ports. If the protocol of a bus is dependent on a clock or reset port, the abstraction definition for that bus shall include that clock or reset port. Similarly if the bus protocol at a bus interface is dependent on a particular clock or reset port, the port map of that bus interface shall include that port. The clock or reset port, however, does not need to exist as a port of the component implementation, since it may be mapped to a phantom port of the component (see [6.12.20.2](#)). Also, since multiple bus ports may be mapped to a single component port (and component ports

may also participate in ad hoc connections), the clock routing is not required to match or be defined by the bus infrastructure.

If the clock and reset ports are associated with the protocol of a bus interface, the special purpose clock or reset **busInterface** (see [6.5.1](#)) can be referenced from any bus interface using the **clockInterfaceRef** and **resetInterfaceRef** subelements.

In some cases, a component may have clock or reset ports that are not associated with and do not participate in the protocol of any bus interface, but do provide a clock or reset to the internal logic of the component instead, e.g., a processor clock. In such cases, the clock port should be included in a special purpose clock or reset bus interface, with an appropriate special purpose bus type, or not be mapped into any interface and connected using ad hoc connections instead.

## 6. Component descriptions

### 6.1 Component

An IP-XACT *component* is used to describe the meta-data associated with any IP that can be instantiated in a design. Examples include IP such as cores (e.g., processors, co-processors, DSPs), peripherals (e.g., memories, DMA controllers, timers, UART), buses (e.g., simple buses, multi-layer buses, cross bars, network on chip), or any other IP block that can be instantiated in a design. An IP-XACT component can be of two kinds: static or configurable. A DE cannot change a *static component*. A *configurable* (or *parameterized*) *component* has configurable elements (such as parameters) that can be configured by the DE, and these elements may also configure the RTL or TLM model.

An IP-XACT component can be a hierarchical object or a leaf object. *Leaf components* do not contain other IP-XACT components, while *hierarchical components* contain other IP-XACT sub-components. This can be recursive by having hierarchical components that contain hierarchical components, etc.—leading to the concept of *hierarchy depth*. The IP being described may have a completely different hierarchical arrangement in terms of its implementation in RTL or TLM to that of its IP-XACT description. So, a description of a large IP component may be made up of many levels of hierarchy, but its IP-XACT description need be only a leaf object as that completely describes the IP. On the other hand, some IP can be described only in terms of a hierarchical IP-XACT description, no matter what the arrangement of the implementation hierarchy.

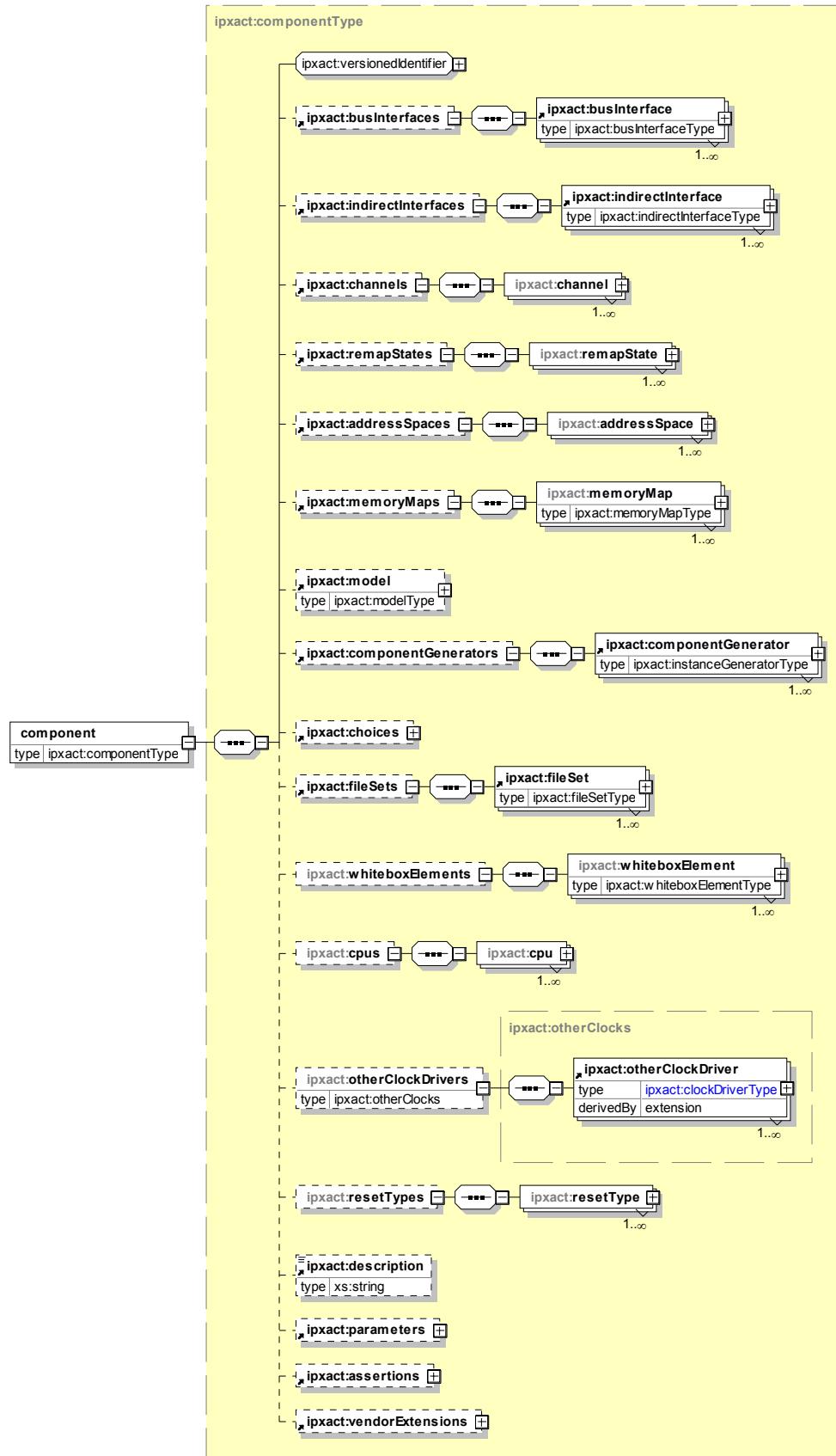
#### 6.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **component** element, which is one of the top-level elements in the IP-XACT specification used to describe a component.

#### 6.1.2 Description

Each element of a **component** is detailed in the rest of this subclause; the main sections of a **component** are as follows:

- a) **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier; it consists of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- b) **busInterfaces** (optional) specifies all the interfaces for this component. A **busInterface** is a grouping of ports related to a function, typically a bus, defined by a bus definition and abstraction definition. See [6.5](#).
- c) **indirectInterfaces** (optional) specifies access points and access information for any indirect memory maps. See [6.6](#).
- d) **channels** (optional) specifies the interconnection between interfaces inside of the component. See [6.7](#).
- e) **remapStates** (optional) specifies the combination of logic states on the component ports and translates them into a logical name for use by logic that controls the defined address map. See [6.10.2](#).
- f) **addressSpaces** (optional) specifies the addressable area as seen from **busInterfaces** with an interface mode of **master** or from **cpus**. See [6.8.1](#).
- g) **memoryMaps** (optional) specifies the addressable area as seen from **busInterfaces** with an interface mode of **slave**. See [6.9](#).
- h) **model** (optional) specifies all the different views, ports, and model configuration parameters of the component. See [6.12](#).
- i) **componentGenerators** (optional) specifies a list of generator programs attached to this component. See [6.13](#).



- j) **choices** (optional) specifies multiple enumerated lists. These lists are referenced by other sections of this component description. See [6.14](#).
- k) **fileSets** (optional) specifies groups of files and possibly their function for reference by other sections of this component description. See [6.15](#).
- l) **whiteboxElements** (optional) specifies all the different locations in the component that can be accessed for verification purposes. See [6.16](#).
- m) **cpus** (optional) indicates this component contains programmable processors. See [6.18](#).
- n) **otherClockDrivers** (optional) specifies any clock signals that are referenced by implementation constraints, but are not external ports of the component. See [6.12.16](#).
- o) **resetTypes** (optional) specifies user-defined reset types referenced within field reset elements. See [6.19](#).
- p) **description** (optional) allows a textual description of the component. The **description** element is of type **string**.
- q) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this component. See [C.18](#).
- r) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- s) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the component. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.10](#).

## 6.2 Interfaces

Each IP component normally identifies one or more bus interfaces. *Bus interfaces* are groups of ports that belong to an identified bus type (i.e., a reference to a **busDefinition** (see [5.2](#)) and abstraction types (i.e., references to **abstractionDefinitions** (see [5.3](#))). The purpose of the bus interface is to map the physical ports of the component to the logical ports of the abstraction definitions. This mapping provides more information about the interface.

There are seven possible modes for a bus interface. A bus interface may be a master, slave, or system interface and may be direct or mirrored. The seventh interface mode is the monitor mode. A monitor interface can be used to connect IP into the design for verification.

### 6.2.1 Direct interface modes

A *master interface* is the interface mode that initiates a transaction (like a read or write) on a bus. Master interfaces tend to have *associated address spaces*.

A *slave interface* is the interface mode that terminates or consumes a transaction initiated by a master interface. Slave interfaces often contain information about the registers that are accessible through the slave interface.

A *system interface* is neither a master nor slave interface; this interface mode allows specialized (or non-standard) connections to a bus, such as external arbiters. System interfaces can be used to handle situations not covered by the bus specification or deviations from the bus specification standard.

The following guidelines also apply to the direct interface modes:

- If a port participates in the protocol of the master or slave interfaces, it shall be included in master and slave interfaces. System interfaces often contain some of the same ports as master or slave interfaces.

- Some buses have specialized sideband ports. If these are tied or related to the standard ports in the bus (as opposed to being completely stand-alone), these ports should have some sort of **system** element designator in the bus definition.

### 6.2.2 Mirrored interface modes

As the name suggests, a *mirrored interface* has the same (or similar) ports to its related direct bus interface, but each port's direction or initiative is reversed. So a port that is an input on a direct bus interface would be an output in the matching mirrored interface. A mirrored bus interface (like its direct counterpart) supports the master, slave, and system interface modes.

### 6.2.3 Monitor interface modes

A *monitor interface* connects to a master, slave, system, mirrored-master, mirrored-slave, or mirrored-system for observation. The connection shall not modify the connected interfaces. A monitor interface is identified by using the **monitor** element in the interface definition and specifying the type of active interface being monitored (e.g., master, slave).

## 6.3 Interface interconnections

IP-XACT provides for three different types of connections between interfaces. A *direct connection* is a connection between a master interface and a slave interface. A *mirrored-non-mirrored connection* is a connection between a direct interface and its corresponding mirrored interface (i.e., slave and mirrored-slave). A *monitor connection* is a connection between any interface type (other than monitor) and a monitor interface. It is not possible to connect two mirrored interfaces.

All interconnections are described in a top-level design object. See [7.1](#).

### 6.3.1 Direct connection

A direct connection is a connection between a master interface and a slave interface. This connection is typically a point-to-point connection, but may be broadcast (one-to-many) under certain conditions (see [6.3.4](#)). More complex connection schemes with direct connections are also possible with the use of a component containing a **bridge** element(s).

See also [SCR 2.2](#), [SCR 2.11](#), [SCR 2.12](#), [SCR 2.13](#), and [SCR 2.14](#).

### 6.3.2 Mirrored-non-mirrored connection

A mirrored-non-mirrored connection is a connection between a master interface and a mirrored-master interface, a slave interface and a mirrored-slave interface, or a system interface and a mirrored-system interface. These connections are typically point-to-point, but may be broadcast (one-to-many) under certain conditions (see [6.3.4](#)). More complex connection schemes with mirrored-non-mirrored connections are also possible with the use of a component containing a **channel** element.

See also [SCR 2.2](#), [SCR 2.13](#), and [SCR 2.14](#).

### 6.3.3 Monitor connection

A monitor connection is a connection between a monitor interface and any other interface mode: master, mirrored-master, slave, mirrored-slave, system, or mirrored-system interface. The monitor interface is defined for only one mode and can be used only with that specific mode. Monitor connections are purely for non-intrusive observation of an interface. These connections are single-point-to-multi-point connections:

the single point being the interface to be monitored and the multi-point being the monitor interface. More than one monitor may be attached to the same interface. The monitor connection shall meet the following:

- a) The connection of a monitor interface shall not count as a connected interface in the determination of the maximum master or maximum slave calculations.
- b) The direction or initiative of ports in a monitor interface cannot be specified in an abstraction definition. All wire ports on a monitor interface shall be treated as having a logical direction of **in**. A monitor interface connected to any active interface shall see the values on the wire ports of the active interface as inputs on its ports regardless of the direction they have on the active interface. All transactional ports on a monitor interface shall be treated as having a logical initiative of **provides**.

See also [SCR 2.2](#), [SCR 4.6](#), and the SCRs in [Table B.4](#).

#### 6.3.4 Broadcast connections

IP-XACT interface connections are typically point-to-point, but broadcast (one-to-many) interface connections are allowed when the following conditions are met:

- a) The **busDefinition** associated with the connected interfaces has the **broadcast** element set to **true**.
- b) For each referenced logical port, the connections implied by connecting the associated physical ports so not result in the creation of a signal with multiple drivers.

See also [SCR 2.17](#).

#### 6.3.5 Interface logical to physical port mapping

An interface on a component can have multiple port-maps per abstraction-type to associate the physical ports on the component with the logical ports in the abstraction definition. This mapping is what provides the extra information needed to enable a higher level of design.

A *physical port* defined in a component is assigned a physical port name and optionally can be assigned a **left** and a **right** element to represent a vector. The **left** element indicates the first boundary; the **right** element, the second boundary. **left** may be larger than **right**, and that **left** may be the most significant bit (MSB) or least significant bit (LSB) (the **right** being the opposite). The **left** and **right** elements are the (bit) rank of the left-most and right-most bits of the port.

A *logical port* defined in an abstraction definition is assigned a logical port name and, optionally, a width. The logical port is assigned a numbering from **width-1** down to **0** if the width is present. If the width is not present, the logical port number shall have a lower bound of **0** and does not have an upper bound.

##### 6.3.5.1 Mapping rules

Mapping rules describe the assignment of logical bit numbers to physical bit numbers.

- a) First, apply all the rules defined in [B.1.7](#) to determine the logical and physical ranges.
- b) The mapping is logical.left-> physical.left down to logical.right-> physical.right.

##### 6.3.5.2 Physical interconnections

With all logical bits having been assigned from the abstraction definition to physical port, it is a simple matter to describe the physical connections that result from an interface connection. All connections are made purely based on the logical bit assignment. Like logical bit numbers from each interface are connected. The alignment is always such that logical bit **0** from interface A connects to logical bit **0** from interface B, logical bit **1** from interface A connects to logical bit **1** from interface B, and so on.

## 6.4 Complex interface interconnections

There are two constructs used to connect interfaces of standard components together (traditional components, usually with *master* and *slave* interfaces): a channel and a bridge. These constructs are encapsulated into components. Not only does the **channel** or **bridge** component provide a connection between standard components, but it also provides information on the addressing and data flow. With this information, it is possible to construct things such as a memory map for the system.

A *channel* identifies interfaces in a component that connect a component's master, slave, and system interfaces on the same bus. All masters connected to a channel see each slave at the same physical address. On a channel, only one master may initiate transactions at a time. This does not preclude bus protocols that utilize pipelining or out-of-order completion. A bus that has addresses that are simultaneously seen differently from different masters or a bus that allows transactions from different masters to be simultaneously initiated may be represented only using bus bridges, not channels.

A *bridge* is an interface between two separate buses, which may be of the same or different types. Such a component has at least one master interface (onto the peripheral bus) and one slave interface (onto the main system bus). Crossbar bus infrastructure (e.g., an ARM Multilayer AMBA) is also treated as a component containing bus bridges—such examples might have multiple master and multiple slave interfaces.

### 6.4.1 Channel

A *channel* is a general name that denotes the collection of connections between multiple internal bus interfaces. The memory map between these connections is restricted so that, for example, a generator can be called to automatically compute all the address maps for the complete design. A channel can represent a simple wiring interconnect or a more complex structure such as a bus.

A channel also encapsulates the connection between master and slave components. A channel is the construct that represents the bus infrastructure and allows transactions initiated by a master interface to be completed by a slave interface.

The following rules apply for using channels:

- a) A slave connected to a channel has the same address as seen from all masters connected to this channel. Therefore, the slave addresses (as seen by each master) are consistent for the system. As a consequence, all slave interfaces connected to a channel see the same address (if they do not, they are connected to different channels).
- b) A channel supports memory mapping and remapping (see [6.9](#), [6.10](#), [Clause 10](#), and [H.3](#)).

See also [SCR 3.2](#).

### 6.4.2 Bridge

Some buses can be modeled using a component as a bridge. A *bridge* is a component that physically links one or more master bus interfaces to a slave bus interface and logically connects the master address space(s) to a slave memory map having two bus types on each side. This component has at least one master bus interface and at least one slave bus interface, each for different protocols, and the bridge translates any signals between them. The slave bus's interface definition references a memory-map that contains **subspaceMaps** (references master-interfaces (see [6.9.9](#))), or the definition contains a **transparentBridge** element (or a set of them (see [6.5.4.2](#))) to designate the corresponding master bus interface(s). There are two different types of bridges defined in IP-XACT: transparent and opaque. See also [Annex H](#).

The bridge relationship is *transparent* (a **transparentBridge** element is used (see [6.5.4.2](#))) when the address space on the bridged master bus interface is a decoded subset of the main address space, as seen through the bus bridge's slave bus interface. In this case, a slave component connected on the bridged master side shall reserve an address block on the main memory map seen on the bridging slave side. If nothing is attached to the bridged master bus interface, then no address block is reserved on the main memory map.

The bridge relationship is *opaque* (the referenced memory-map contains **subspaceMaps** (see [6.9.9](#))) when the address space on the bridged master bus interface is not directly accessible to the main address space, as seen from the channel to which the slave bus interface is connected. In this case, the bridging component occupies a single address block, which is the size of its slave bus interface, reserved on the memory map of the masters attached to the main bus channel.

The following rules apply for using bridges:

- a) A slave interface can bridge to multiple address spaces. Specifically, a bridge shall have one or more master interfaces, and each master interface may have an address space associated with that interface.
- b) A bridge can have only direct interfaces. As a consequence, a bridge can directly connect to another component (e.g., master interface to slave interface connection) under the conditions defined in [6.3.1](#). Or it can connect to a channel (e.g., master interface to mirrored-master interface).
- c) A bridge supports memory mapping and remapping (see [6.9](#), [6.10](#), [Clause 10](#), and [H.3](#)).

The transfer of addressing information from the slave interface to the master interface of a bridge is done through the address space assigned to the master interface. This address space defines the visible address range from this master interface.

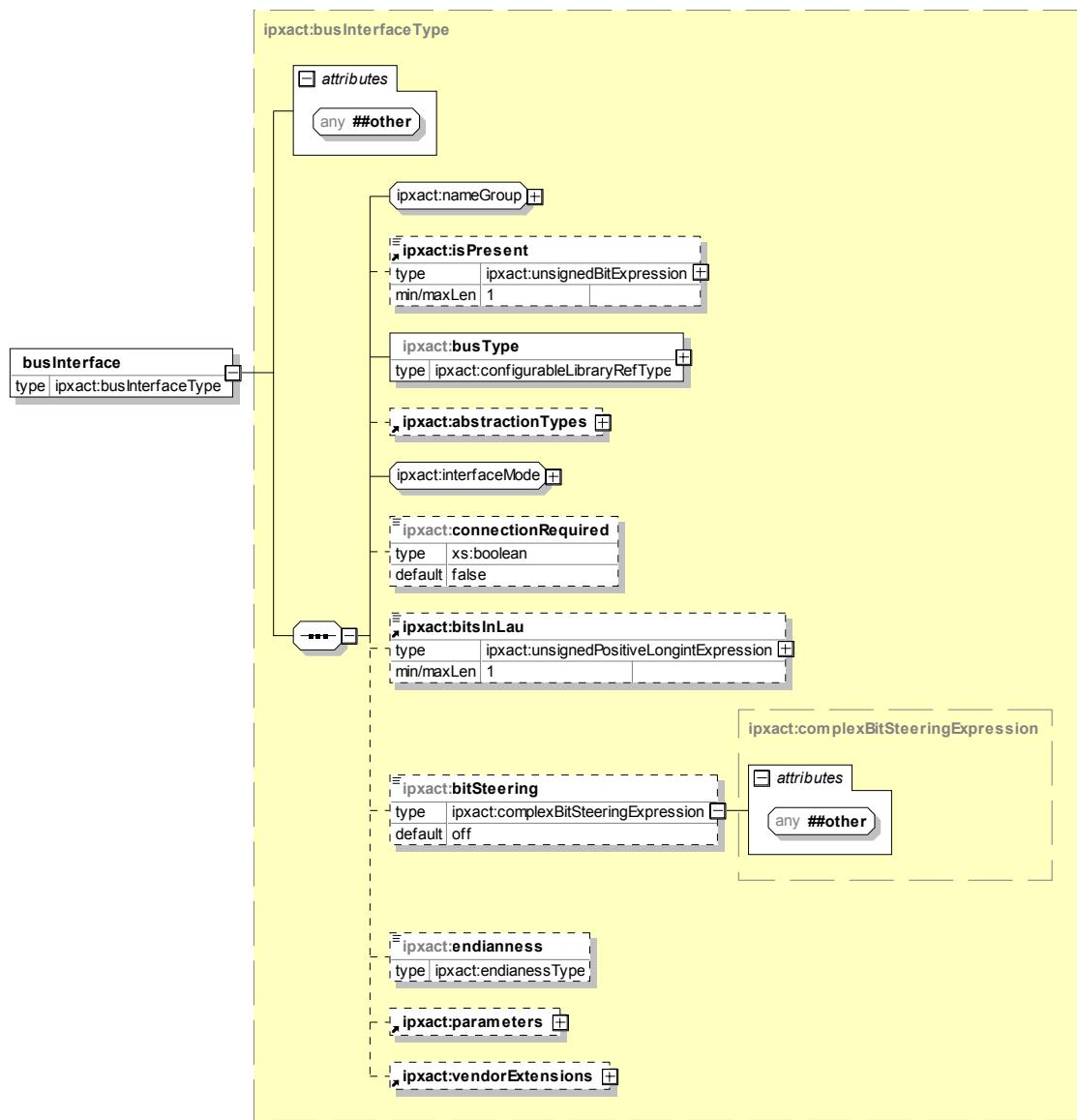
See also [SCR 15.4](#).

## 6.5 Bus interfaces

### 6.5.1 busInterface

#### 6.5.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **busInterfaces** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



#### 6.5.1.2 Description

Bus interfaces enable individual ports that appear on the component to be grouped together into a meaningful, known protocol. When the protocol is known, a lot of additional information can be written down about the characteristics of that interface.

The **busInterfaces** element contains an unbounded list of **busInterface** elements; therefore, a **component** may have multiple bus interfaces of the same or different types. Each **busInterface** element defines

properties of this specific interface in a component. The **busInterface** element also allows for vendor attributes to be applied. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **component** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **busType** (mandatory; type: *configurableLibraryRefType* (see [C.6](#))) specifies the bus definition that this bus interface is referenced. A bus definition (see [5.2](#)) describes the high-level attributes of a bus description.
- d) **abstractionTypes** (optional) specifies the abstraction definitions of the containing **busInterface**. An abstraction definition describes the low-level attributes of a bus (see [5.3](#)). The **abstractionTypes** element defines a list of **abstractionType** elements. Each abstraction type defines a particular abstraction being used for one or more views and the port mapping associated with the use of that particular abstraction. See [6.5.6](#).
- e) **interfaceMode** group describes further information on the *mode* for this interface. There are seven possible modes for an interface: master, slave, mirroredMaster, mirroredSlave, system, mirroredSystem, and monitor. See [6.5.2](#).
- f) **connectionRequired** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**), if **true**, specifies when this component is integrated; this interface shall be connected to another interface for the integration to be valid. If **false**, this interface may be left unconnected. If this element is not present, its effective value is **false**.
- g) **bitsInLau** (optional; type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#)); default: **8**) describes the number of data bits that are addressable by the least significant address bit in the bus interface. It is appropriate to specify this element only for interfaces that are addressable.
- h) **bitSteering** (optional; default: **off**) designates if this interface has the ability to dynamically align data on different byte channels on a data bus. This element shall be specified only for interfaces that are addressable. The **bitSteering** element is a choice of two values: **on** indicating this interface uses data steering logic and **off** indicating this interface does not use data steering logic. The **bitSteering** element is of a type that is **on**, **off**, or an expression that evaluates to **on** or **off**.  
If these values appear within an expression they are assumed to be parameter ID references. However if they appear as a simple name, they are assumed to be the literal name **on** or **off** with their implied special meanings.
- i) **endianness** (optional) indicates the endianness of the bus interface. The two choices are **big** for big-endian and **little** for little-endian. If this element is not present, its effective value is **little**. See also [6.5.1.2.1](#).
- j) **parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter data value(s) for this bus interface. See [C.18](#).
- k) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this bus interface. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.4](#), [SCR 2.14](#), [SCR 2.15](#), [SCR 5.24](#), [SCR 5.25](#), [SCR 9.4](#), [SCR 9.5](#), and [SCR 9.6](#).

### 6.5.1.2.1 Endianness

Endianness is defined under the **busInterface** element of the component. There are (only) two legal values (**big** and **little**) to specify the **endianness**.

- *Big endian* (**big**) means the most significant byte of any multi-byte data field is stored at the lowest memory address, which is also the address of the larger field.
- *Little endian* (**little**) means the least significant byte of any multi-byte data field is stored at the lowest memory address, which is also the address of the larger field.

NOTE—The description of endianness is byte-centric as that is the most common least addressable unit (LAU). However, this description generally applies to any size LAU.

### 6.5.1.2.2 Big-endianness

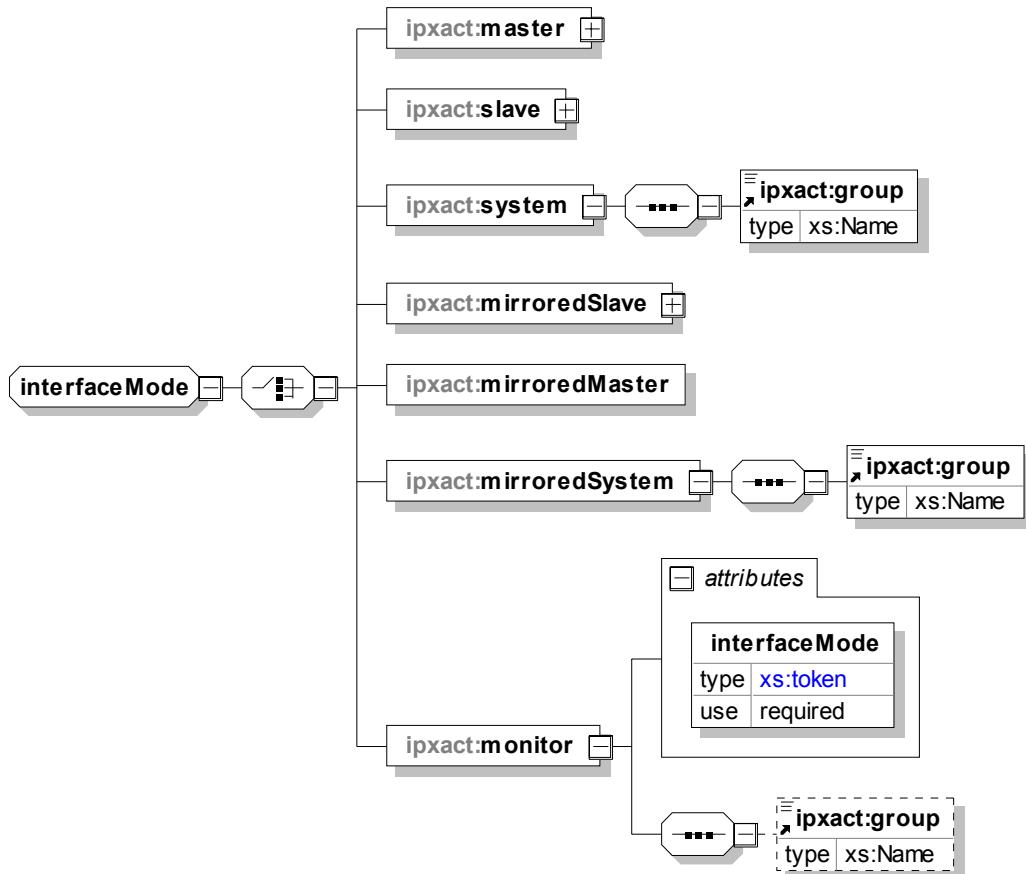
There are at least two ways for big-endianness to manifest itself: byte-invariant and word-invariant (also known as *middle-endian*). The difference is that if data is stored as *word-invariant*, the data is stored differently for transfers larger than a byte, for example,

- a) Byte invariant: A word access to address 0x0 is on D[31:0]. The MSB is D[7:0], the LSB is D[31:24].
- b) Word invariant: A word access to address 0x0 is on D[31:0]. The MSB is D[31:24], the LSB byte is D[7:0].
- c) In IP-XACT, the interpretation of big-endian is the byte-invariant style.

### 6.5.2 Interface modes

#### 6.5.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *interfaceMode* group, which appears as a group inside the **busInterface** element.



### 6.5.2.2 Description

The **busInterface**'s mode designates the purpose of the **busInterface** on this component. There are seven possible modes: three pairs of standard functional interfaces and their mirrored counterparts, and a monitor interface for VIP.

The **interfaceMode** group shall contain one of the following elements:

- a) A **master** interface mode (sometimes also known as an *initiator*) is one that initiates transactions. See [6.5.3](#).
- b) A **slave** interface mode (sometimes also known as a *target*) is one that responds to transactions. See [6.5.4](#).
- c) A **system** interface mode is used for some classes of interfaces that are standard on different bus types, but do not fit into the master or slave category.

The **group** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute for the **system** element defines the name of the group to which this system interface belongs.

- d) A **mirroredSlave** interface mode is the mirrored version of a slave interface and can provide addition address offsets to the connected slave interface. See [6.5.5](#).
- e) A **mirroredMaster** interface mode is the mirrored version of a master interface.
- f) A **mirroredSystem** interface mode is the mirrored version of a system interface.

The **group** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute for the **mirroredSystem** element defines the name of the group to which this **mirroredSystem** interface belongs.

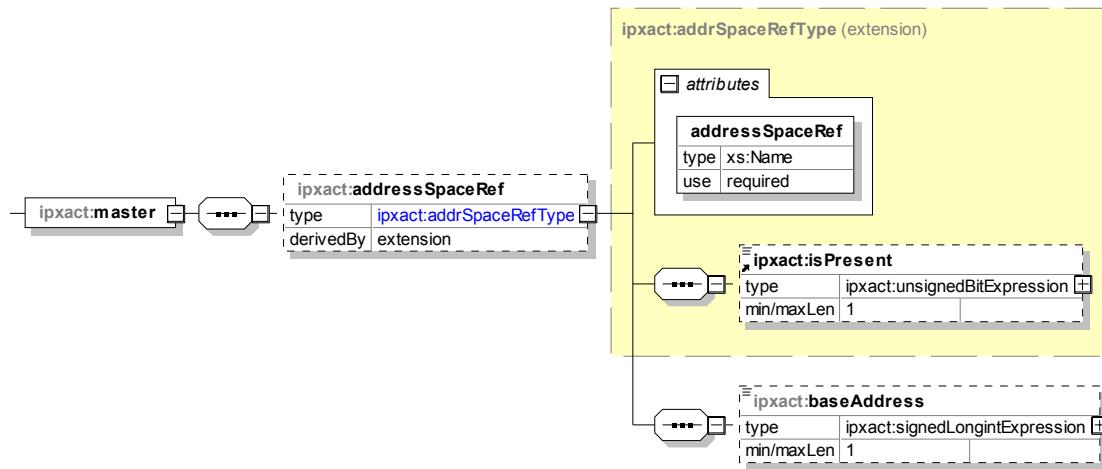
- g) A **monitor** interface mode is a special interface that can be used for verification. This monitor interface mode is used to gather data from other interfaces. See [6.3.3](#).
  - 1) The **interfaceMode** (mandatory type: *token*) attribute defines the interface mode to which this monitor interface can be connected: **master**, **slave**, **system**, **mirroredMaster**, **mirroredSlave**, or **mirroredSystem**.
  - 2) The **group** (optional type: *Name*) element is required if the **interfaceMode** attribute is set to **system** or **mirroredSystem**. This element defines the name of the system group for this monitor interface.

See also [SCR 2.13](#), [SCR 4.3](#), [SCR 4.4](#), and [SCR 6.15](#).

### 6.5.3 Master interface

#### 6.5.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **master** element, which appears as an element inside the *interfaceMode* group inside **busInterface** element.



#### 6.5.3.2 Description

A **master** interface (also known as an *initiator*) is one that initiates transactions. The **master** element contains the following elements and attributes. **addressSpaceRef** (optional) element contains attributes and subelements to describe information about the range of addresses with which this master interface can generate transactions.

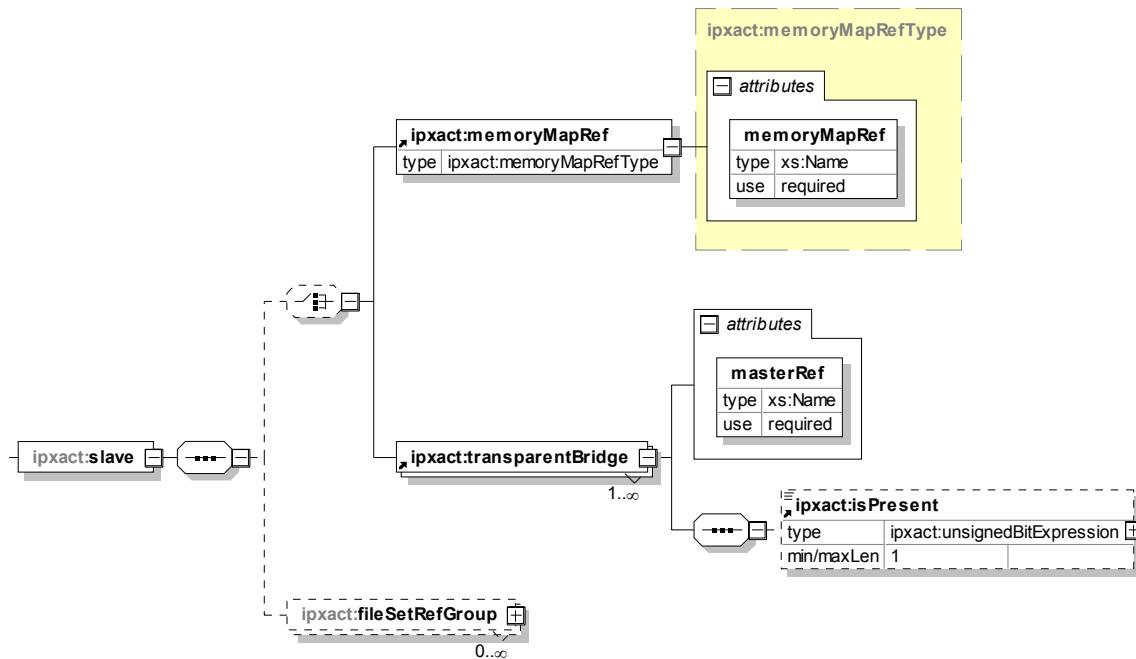
- a) **addressSpaceRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute references a name of an address space defined in the containing description. The address space shall define the range and width for transaction on this interface. See [6.8.1.2](#).
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **baseAddress** (optional; type: *signedLongintExpression*, [C.3.2](#)) specifies the starting address of the address space. The address space numbering normally starts at 0. Some address spaces may use *offset addressing* (starting at a number other than 0) so the base address element can be used to designate this information.

See also [SCR 9.1](#), [SCR 15.7](#), and [SCR 15.14](#).

## 6.5.4 Slave interface

### 6.5.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **slave** element, which appears as an element inside the *interfaceMode* group inside **busInterface** element.



### 6.5.4.2 Description

A **slave** interface (sometimes also known as a *target*) is one that responds to transactions. The memory map reference points to information about the range of registers, memory, or other address blocks accessible through this slave interface. This slave interface can also be used in a bridge application to “bridge” a transaction from a slave interface to a master interface.

- a) A **slave** can contain one of the following subelements:
  - 1) **memoryMapRef** contains an attribute that references a memory map.  
The **memoryMapRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute references a name of a memory map defined in the containing description. The memory map contains information about the range of registers, memory, or other address blocks. See [6.9](#).
  - 2) **transparentBridge** is an unbounded list of references to master interfaces. If the interface is of a bus definition that is addressable, a **transparentBridge** element may be included. A *transparent bridge* is one in which all addressing entering the slave interface exits the above referenced master interface without any modifications.
    - i) The **masterRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute shall reference a master interface (see [6.5.3](#)) in the containing description.
    - ii) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
  - b) **fileSetRefGroup** (optional) element is an unbounded list of the references to file sets contained in this component. These file set references are associated with this slave interface. This element allows each slave port to reference a unique **fileSet** element (see [6.15](#)) and can further be used to reference a software driver, which can be made different for each slave port.

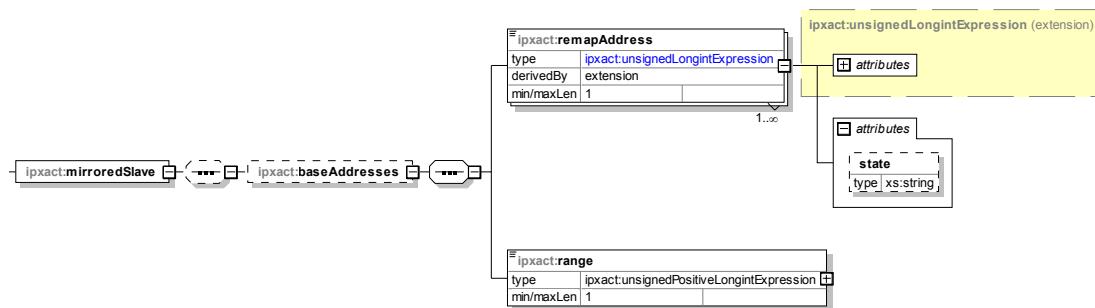
- 1) **group** (optional; type: *Name*) element allows the definition of a group name for the **fileSetRefGroup**.
- 2) **fileSetRef** (optional) is an unbounded list of references to a **fileSet** by **name** within the containing document or another document referenced by the **VNV**. See [C.7](#).

See also [SCR 3.6](#), [SCR 9.2](#), and [SCR 15.9](#).

## 6.5.5 Mirrored slave interface

### 6.5.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **mirroredSlave** element, which appears as an element inside the **interfaceMode** group inside **busInterface** element.



### 6.5.5.2 Description

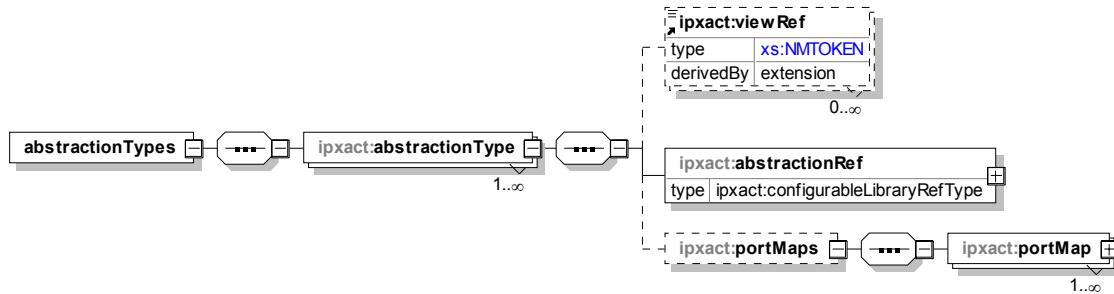
A **mirroredSlave** interface is used to connect to a **slave** interface. The **mirroredSlave** interface may contain additional address information in the **baseAddresses** (optional) element.

- a) **remapAddress** (mandatory; type: **unsignedLongintExpression** (see [C.3.8](#))) element is an unbounded list that specifies the address offset to apply to the connected slave interface. The **remapAddress** is expressed as the number of addressable units based on the size of an addressable unit as defined inside the containing **busInterface/bitsInLau** element.  
The **state** (optional; type: **string**) attribute references a defined state in the component and identifies the **remapState/name** to which the **remapAddress** and **range** apply. See [6.10.2](#).
- b) **range** (mandatory; type: **unsignedPositiveLongintExpression** (see [C.3.10](#))) specifies the address range to apply to the connected **slave** interface.

## 6.5.6 Abstraction types

### 6.5.6.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **abstractionTypes** element, which appears within an **abstractorInterface** description.



### 6.5.6.2 Description

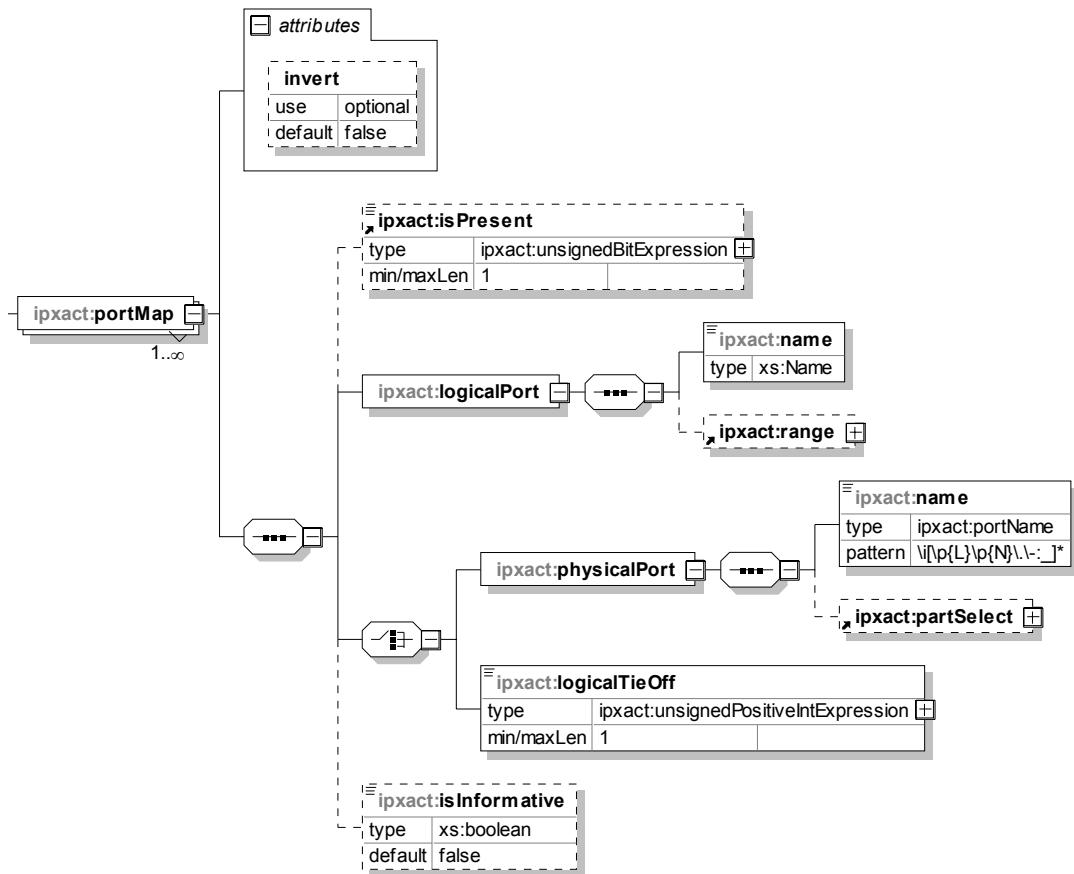
The **abstractionTypes** element specifies the abstraction definition where this bus interface is referenced. Each **abstractionType** contains the following elements:

- a) **viewRef** (optional; type: *NMTOKEN*) specifies the views to which the **abstractionType** applies. See [C.26](#).
- b) **abstractionRef** (mandatory; type: *configurableLibraryRefType* (see [C.6](#))) is a reference to an abstraction description for this abstractor instance.
- c) **portMaps** (optional) describes the mapping between the abstraction definition's logical ports and the abstractor's physical ports. See [6.5.7](#).

## 6.5.7 Port map

### 6.5.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **portMaps** element, which appears as an element inside **busInterface** element.



### 6.5.7.2 Description

Each **portMap** element describes the mapping between the logical ports, defined in the referenced abstraction definition, to the physical ports, defined in the containing component description.

- a) **invert** (optional; default: **false**) specifies connections to the indicated physical port shall be logically inverted.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **logicalPort** (mandatory) contains the information on the logical port from the abstraction definition.
  - 1) **name** (mandatory; type: **Name**) specifies the logical port name. The name shall be a name of a logical port in the referenced abstraction definition that is defined as legal for this interface mode.
  - 2) **range** (optional) is used for a vectored logical port to specify the indices of the logical port mapping. See [C.22](#).

- d) **portMap** also contains one of the following:
  - 1) **physicalPort** (type: *Name*) contains information on the physical port contained in the component.
    - i) **name** (mandatory) specifies the physical port name. The name shall be a name of a port in the containing component.
    - ii) **partSelect** (optional) is used for a physical port (vectored, arrayed, or both) to specify the indices of the physical port mapping. See [C.20](#).
  - 2) **logicalTieOff** (type: *unsignedPositiveIntExpression* (see [C.3.9](#))) indicates the physical connection for this logical port is the specified constant value (instead of a physical port.)
- e) **isInformative** (optional; type *boolean*; default: **false**) when **true**, specifies this **portMap** is used only for information purposes. No connections will be made to the referenced physical port.

The same physical port may be mapped to a number of different logical ports on the same or different bus interfaces, and the same logical port may be mapped to a number of different physical ports. For port mapping rules, see [6.3.5.1](#).

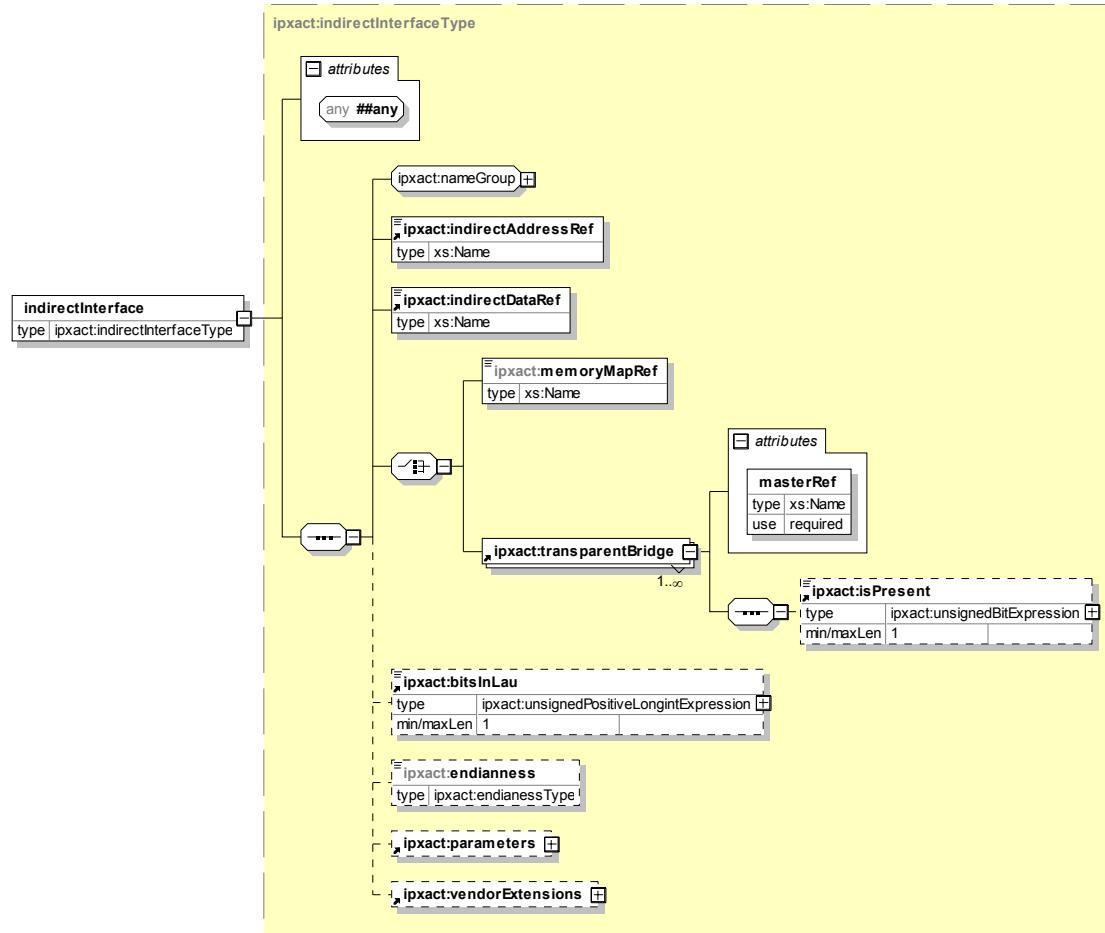
See also [SCR 6.1](#), [SCR 6.2](#), [SCR 6.3](#), [SCR 6.4](#), [SCR 6.5](#), [SCR 6.6](#), [SCR 6.7](#), [SCR 6.12](#), [SCR 6.13](#), [SCR 6.18](#), [SCR 6.19](#), [SCR 6.20](#), [SCR 6.21](#), [SCR 6.22](#), [SCR 6.23](#), [SCR 15.2](#), and [SCR 15.3](#).

## 6.6 Indirect interfaces

The contents of an indirectly accessible memory map are not accessible at a fixed address via a bus interface. A bus interface accesses an indirectly accessible memory map via reads and writes to fields the bus interface can directly access.

### 6.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **indirectInterfaces** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.6.2 Description

The **indirectInterfaces** element contains an unbounded list of **indirectInterface** elements. Each **indirectInterface** element defines the access details for an indirectly accessible memory map element.

- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **indirectInterface** element.
- indirectAddressRef** (mandatory; type: **Name**) references the register field used for addressing the indirectly accessible memory map. The referenced field is usually directly accessible via a bus interface.

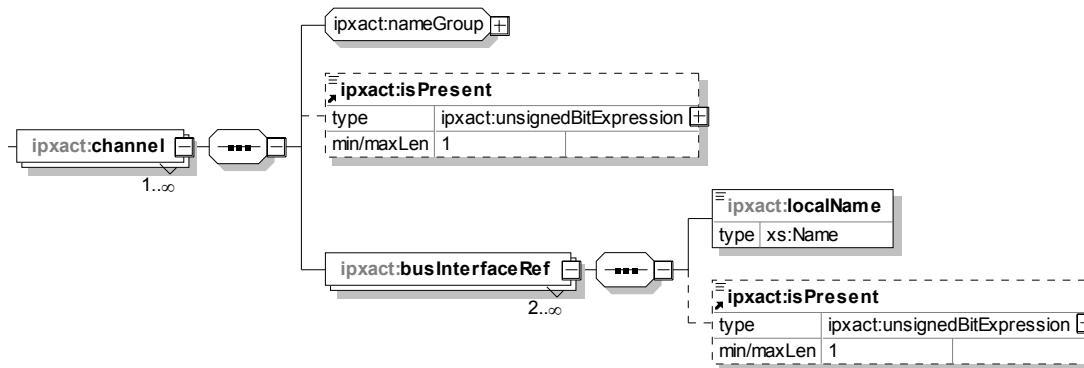
- c) **indirectDataRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references the register field used for read/write access for the indirectly accessible memory map. The reference is to a unique **fieldID** (see [6.11.8.2](#)). The field is usually accessible via a standard bus interface.
- d) An **indirectInterface** element contains either a **memoryMapRef** element or one or more **transparentBridge** elements.
  - 1) **memoryMapRef** (type: *Name*) references a name of a memory map defined in the containing description. This memory map is indirectly accessible.
  - 2) **transparentBridge** is an unbounded list of references to master interfaces. If the interface is of a bus definition that is addressable, a **transparentBridge** element may be included. A *transparent bridge* is one in which all addressing entering the slave interface exits the above referenced master interface without any modifications.
    - i) The **masterRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute shall reference a master interface (see [6.5.3](#)) in the containing description.
    - ii) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- e) **bitsInLau** (optional; type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#)); default: 8) describes the number of data bits that are addressable by the least significant address bit in the bus interface.
- f) **endianness** (optional) indicates the endianness of the indirect interface. The two choices are **big** for big-endian and **little** for little-endian. If this element is not present, its effective value is **little**. See also [6.5.1.2.1](#).
- g) **parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter data value(s) for this indirect interface. See [C.18](#).
- h) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this indirect interface. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 9.9](#), [SCR 9.10](#), and [SCR 9.11](#).

## 6.7 Component channels

### 6.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **channels** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



## 6.7.2 Description

The **channels** element contains an unbounded list of **channel** elements. Each **channel** element contains a list of all the mirrored bus interfaces in the containing component that belong to the same channel.

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **channels** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **busInterfaceRef** (mandatory) is an unbound list of references (a minimum of two) to mirrored bus interfaces in the containing component. Each mirrored bus interface in a component may be referenced in any channel at most once. The order of this list may be used by the DE in some way and shall be maintained. See [6.5.1](#).
  - 1) **localName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) specifies the name of a mirrored bus interface within this channel.

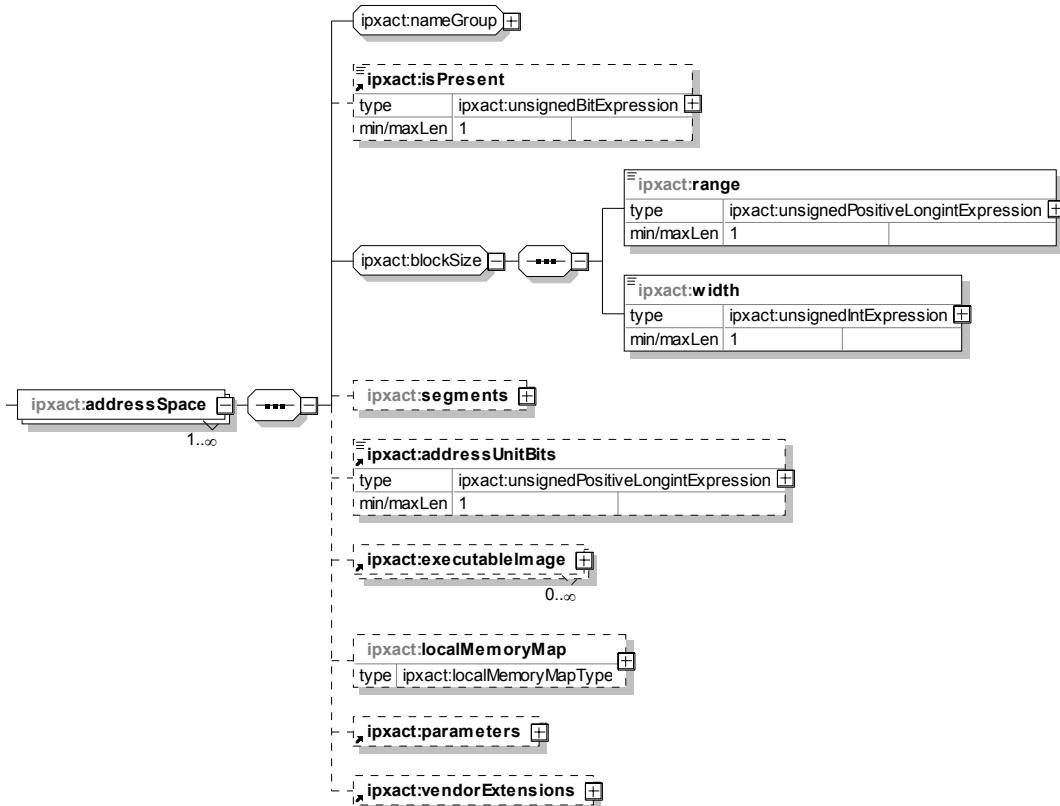
## 6.8 Address spaces

An address space is defined as a logical addressable space of memory. Each master interface can be assigned a logical address space. Address spaces are effectively the programmer's view looking out from a master interface. Some components may have one address space associated with more than one master interface (for instance, a processor that has a system bus and a fast memory bus). Other components (for instance, Harvard architecture processors) may have multiple address spaces associated with multiple master interfaces—one for instruction and the other for data.

## 6.8.1 addressSpaces

### 6.8.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **addressSpaces** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.8.1.2 Description

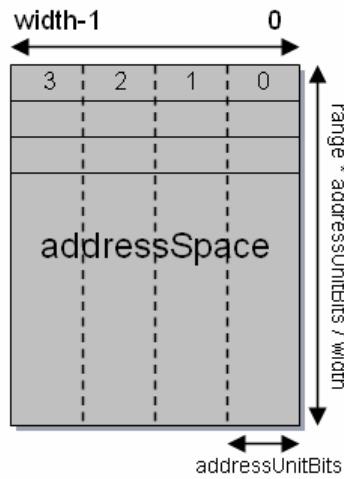
The **addressSpaces** element contains an unbounded list of **addressSpace** elements. Each **addressSpace** element defines a logical address space seen by a master bus interface. It contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **addressSpaces** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **blockSize** group includes the following:
  - 1) **range** (mandatory; type: **unsignedPositiveLongintExpression** (see [C.3.10](#))) gives the address range of an address space. See [C.22](#).
  - 2) **width** (mandatory) is the bit width of a row in the address space. The type of this element is set to **nonNegativeInteger**. The **width** element is of type **unsignedIntExpression**; see [C.3.7](#).
- d) **segments** (optional) describes a portion of the address space starting at an address offset and continuing for a given range. A **segment** can be referenced by a **subspaceMap**. See [6.8.2](#).
- e) **addressUnitBits** (optional; type: **unsignedPositiveLongintExpression** (see [C.3.10](#))) defines the number of data bits in each address increment of the address space. If this element is not present, it is presumed to be 8.

- f) **executableImage** (optional) describes the details of an executable image that can be loaded and executed in this address space on the processor to which this master bus interface belongs. See [6.8.3](#).
- g) **localMemoryMap** (optional) describes a local memory map that is seen exclusively by this master bus interface viewing this address space. See [6.8.6](#).
- h) **parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter data value(s) for this address space. See [C.18](#).
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this address space. See [C.24](#).

The **range** and **width** elements are related by the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{number\_of\_bits\_in\_block} &= \text{addressUnitBits} \times \text{range} \\ \text{number\_of\_rows\_in\_block} &= \text{number\_of\_bits\_in\_block} / \text{width} \end{aligned}$$

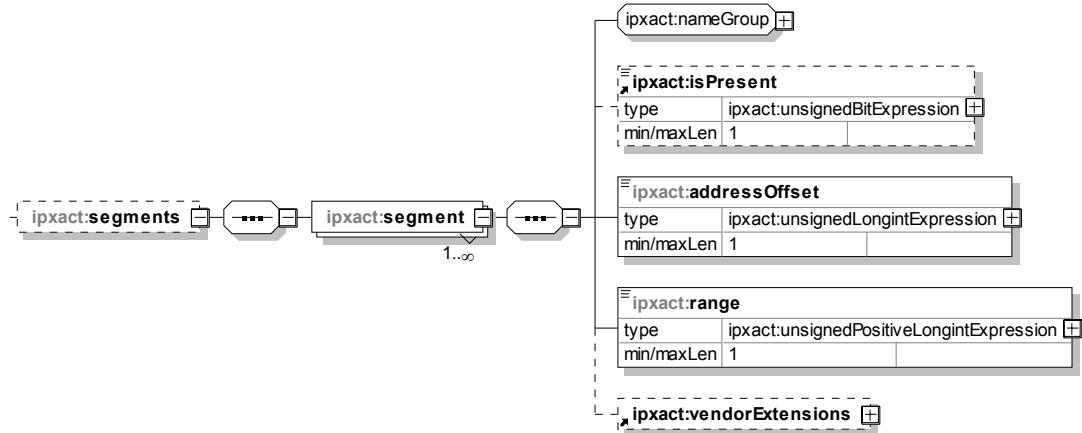


See also [SCR 9.3](#) and [SCR 9.7](#).

## 6.8.2 Segments

### 6.8.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **segments** element, which may appear inside an **addressSpace** element.



### 6.8.2.2 Description

The **segments** element contains an unbounded list of **segment** elements. Each **segment** describes the location and size of an area in the containing **addressSpace**. The **segment** element contains the following elements:

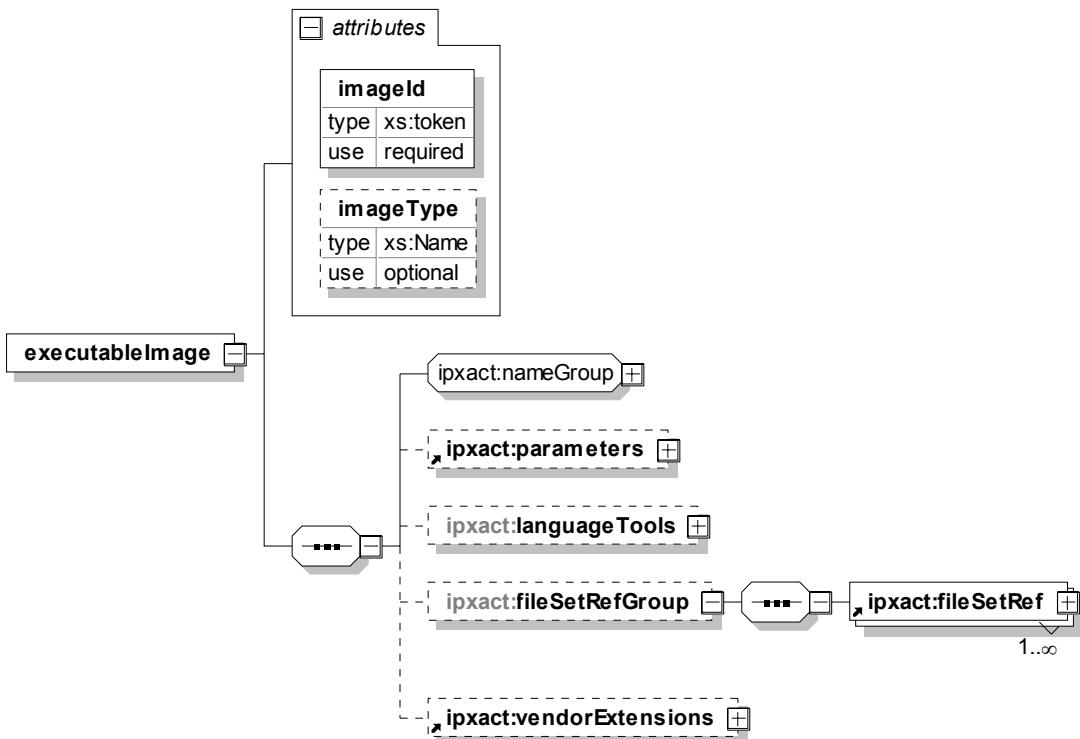
- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **segments** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **addressOffset** (mandatory; type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) describes, in addressing units from the containing **addressSpace/addressUnitBits** element, the offset from the start of the **addressSpace**.
- d) **range** (mandatory; type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))) gives the address range of an address space segment. This is expressed as the number of addressable units of the address space segment. The size of an addressable unit is defined inside the **addressUnitBits** element.
- e) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this address space. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 9.7](#).

### 6.8.3 executableImage

#### 6.8.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **executableImage** element, which may appear inside an **addressSpace** element.



### 6.8.3.2 Description

The **executableImage** element describes the details of an executable image that can be loaded and executed in this address space on the processor to which this master bus interface belongs and contains the following attributes and elements:

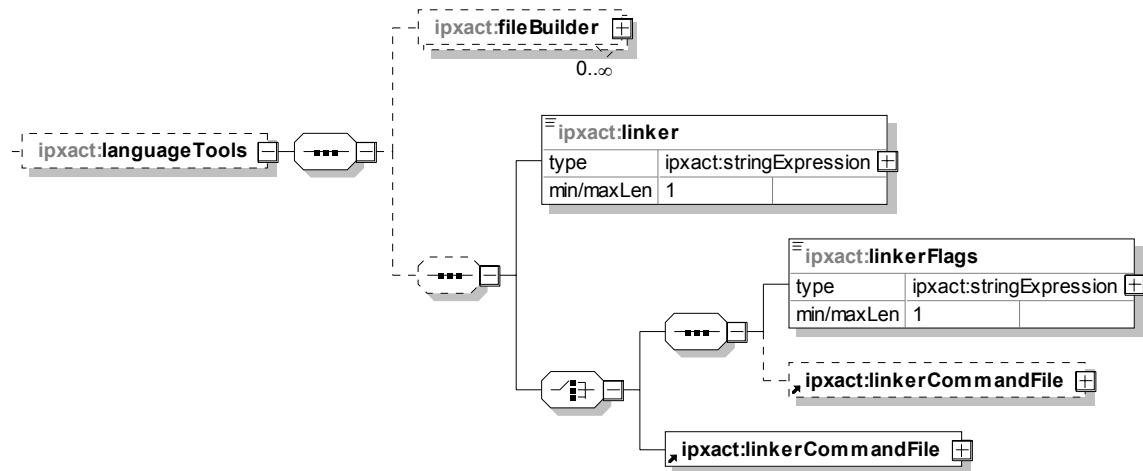
- a) **imageId** (mandatory; type *token*) attribute uniquely identifies the **executableImage** for reference in a **fileSet/function/fileRef**.
- b) **imageType** (optional; type *Name*) attribute can describe the binary executable format (e.g., raw binary). The list of possible values is user-defined.
- c) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **segments** element.
- d) **parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter data value(s) for this executable object. See [C.18](#).
- e) **languageTools** (optional) contains further elements to describe the information needed to build the executable image. See [6.8.4](#).
- f) **fileSetRefGroup** (optional) element contains a list of **fileSetRef** subelements, each one containing the name of a file set associated with this **executableImage**. See [6.15](#).
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this address space. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 9.3](#).

### 6.8.4 languageTools

#### 6.8.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **languageTools** element, which may appear as an element inside the **executableImage** element.



#### 6.8.4.2 Description

The **languageTools** element contains the following list of optional elements to document a set of software tools used to create an executable binary documented by the parent **executableImage** element. Multiple **languageTools** information can be created to reflect various software tool sets that can create this executable binary file.

- a) **fileBuilder** (optional) contains the information details of a compiler or assembler for software source code. See [6.8.5](#).

- b) **linker** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) documents the link editor associated with the software tools described in **fileBuilder**.
  - c) A **languageTools** also contains one of the following:
    - a **linkerFlags** element and optionally a **linkerCommandFile**;
    - or a **linkerCommandFile**.
- 1) **linkerFlags** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) can also be associated with any **linker** information.
  - 2) **linkerCommandFile** (optional) documents a file containing commands the linker follows.

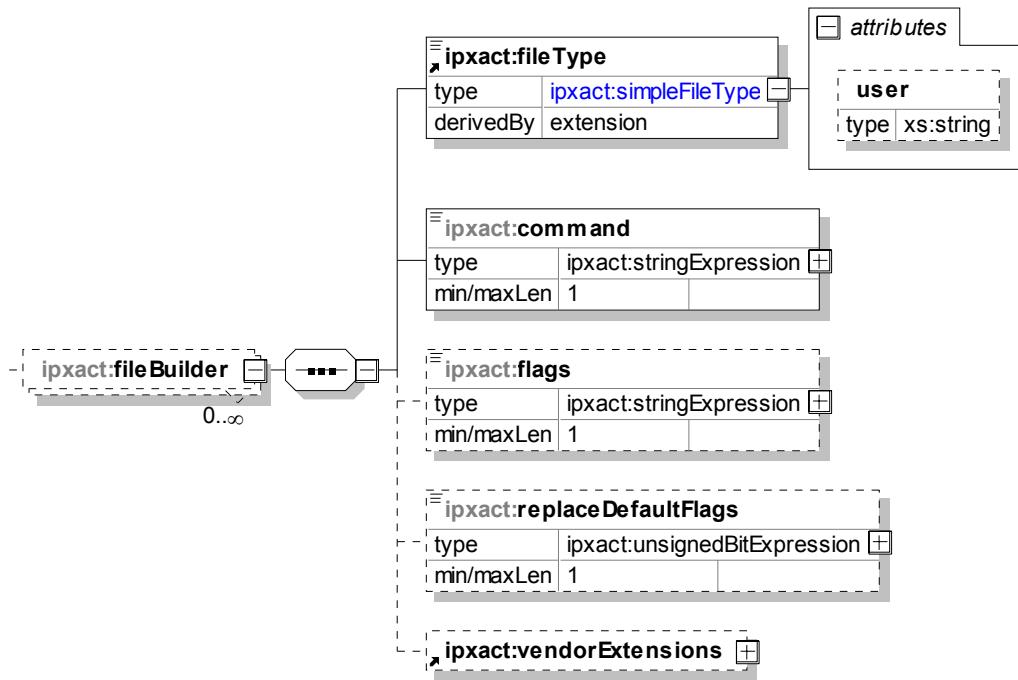
The **linkerCommandFile** element contains information related to contents of the **linker** and **linkerFlags** elements, specifically about a file containing linker commands. It contains the following subelements:

    - i) **name** (mandatory; type: *stringURIExpression* (see [C.3.4](#))) documents the location and name of the file containing commands for the linker.
    - ii) **commandLineSwitch** (mandatory type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) documents the flag on the command line specifying the linker command file.
    - iii) **enable** (mandatory; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#))) indicates whether to use this linker command file in the default scenario. The following also apply:
      - enable** is **true** with a **generatorRef**: run the generator to link the **executableImage**; it may use the other elements to link the **executableImage**.
      - enable** is **true** with no **generatorRef**: run the linker with the **-commandLineSwitch name** (the command file).
      - enable** is **false**: run the linker with **linkerFlags**.
    - iv) **generatorRef** (optional; type: *string*) references the generator (in the containing component) that creates and launches the linker command. There may be any number of these elements present. See [6.13](#).
    - v) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces applicable to using this linker. See [C.24](#).

## 6.8.5 fileBuilder

### 6.8.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **fileBuilder** element, which may appear as an element inside a **languageTools** element within the **executableImage** element.



### 6.8.5.2 Description

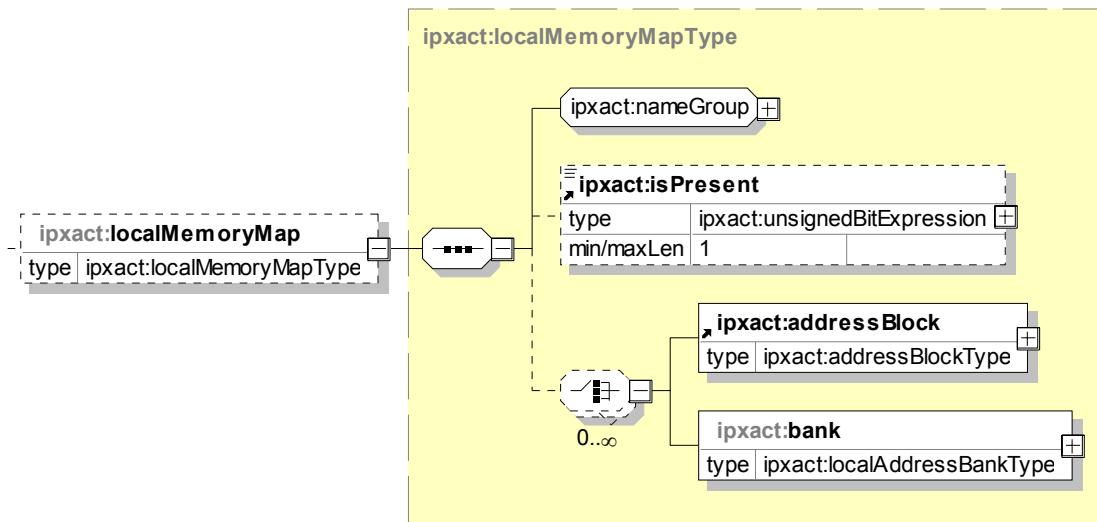
The **fileBuilder** element contains the following elements:

- fileType** (mandatory) indicates the type of file referenced by IP-XACT. If the required file type is not available, set the **fileType** to **user** and then set the **user** attribute to the desired file type. Any string value is valid in the **user** attribute, but the file may not be able to be processed as that specific type by a DE.
- command** (mandatory; type: **stringExpression** (see [C.3.3](#))) defines a compiler or assembler tool that processes the software of this type.
- flags** (optional; type: **stringExpression** (see [C.3.3](#))) documents any flags to be passed along with the software tool command.
- replaceDefaultFlags** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#))) documents, when **true**, flags that replace any of the default flags from a build script generator. If **false**, the flags contained in the **flags** element are appended to the current command. If the value is **true** and the **flags** element is empty or does not exist, this has the effect of clearing all the flags in build script generator.
- vendorExtensions** (optional) holds vendor-specific data from other namespaces applicable to building this software source code file into an executable object file. See [C.24](#).

## 6.8.6 Local memory map

### 6.8.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **localMemoryMap** element, which may appear inside an **addressSpace** element.



### 6.8.6.2 Description

Some processor components require specifying a memory map that is local to the component. *Local memory maps* (the **localMemoryMap** element in the **addressSpace** element of the component) are blocks of memory within a component that can be accessed only by the master interfaces of that component. If the master interface containing a local memory map is bridged from a slave interface (see [6.4.2](#)), the local memory map is visible from this slave interface. **localMemoryMap** contains the following elements:

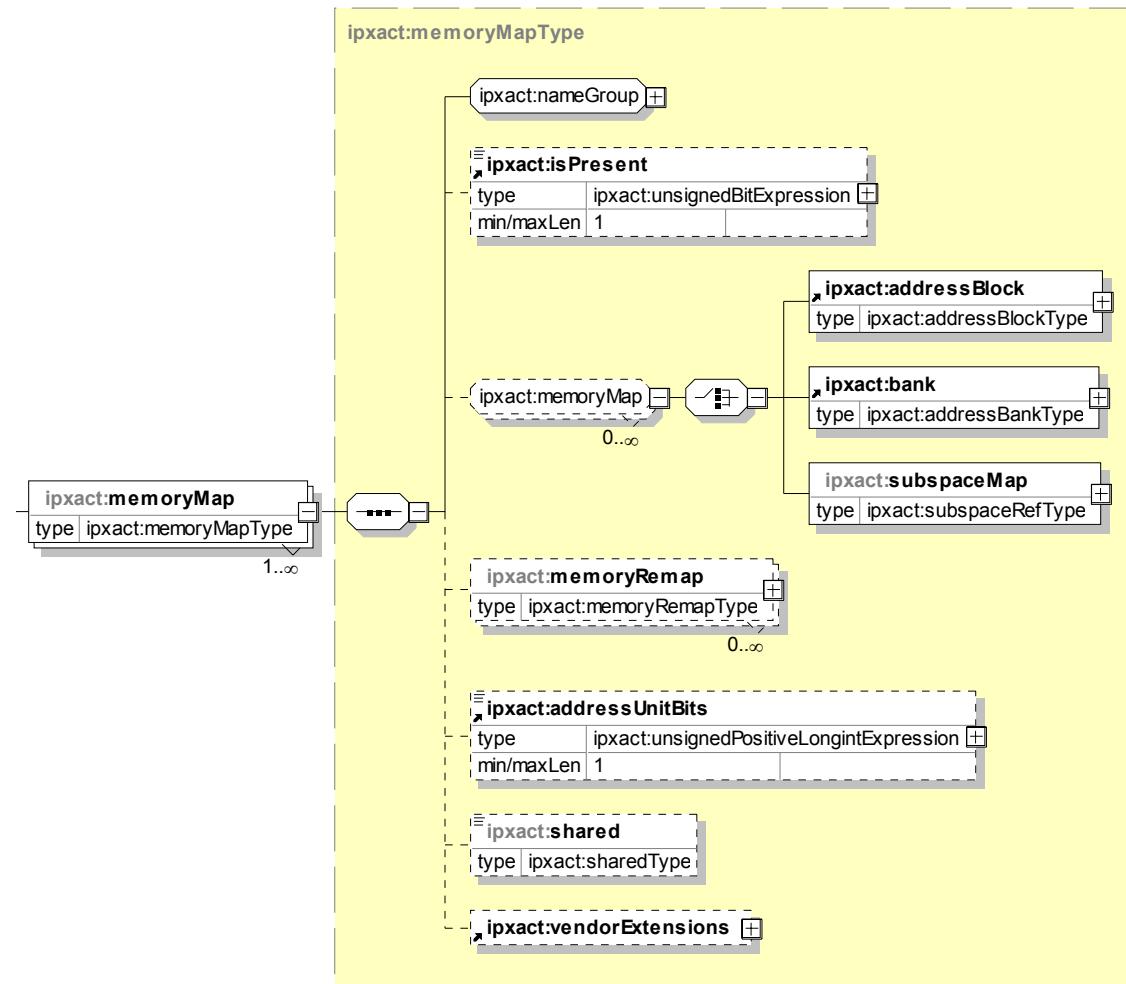
- a) **nameGroup** group is described in [C.12](#).
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **localMemoryMap** is any number of the following:
  - 1) **addressBlock** describes a single block. See [6.9.2](#).
  - 2) **bank** represents a collection of address blocks, banks, or subspace maps. See [6.9.5](#).

## 6.9 Memory maps

### 6.9.1 memoryMaps

#### 6.9.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **memoryMaps** element, which may appear as an element inside the **component** element.



#### 6.9.1.2 Description

A memory map can be defined for each slave interface of a component. The **memoryMaps** element contains an unbounded list of **memoryMap** elements. The **memoryMap** elements are referenced by the component's slave interface. The **memoryMap** element contains an **id** (optional) attribute that assigns a unique identifier to the containing element for reference throughout the containing description. **memoryMap** contains the following mandatory and optional elements:

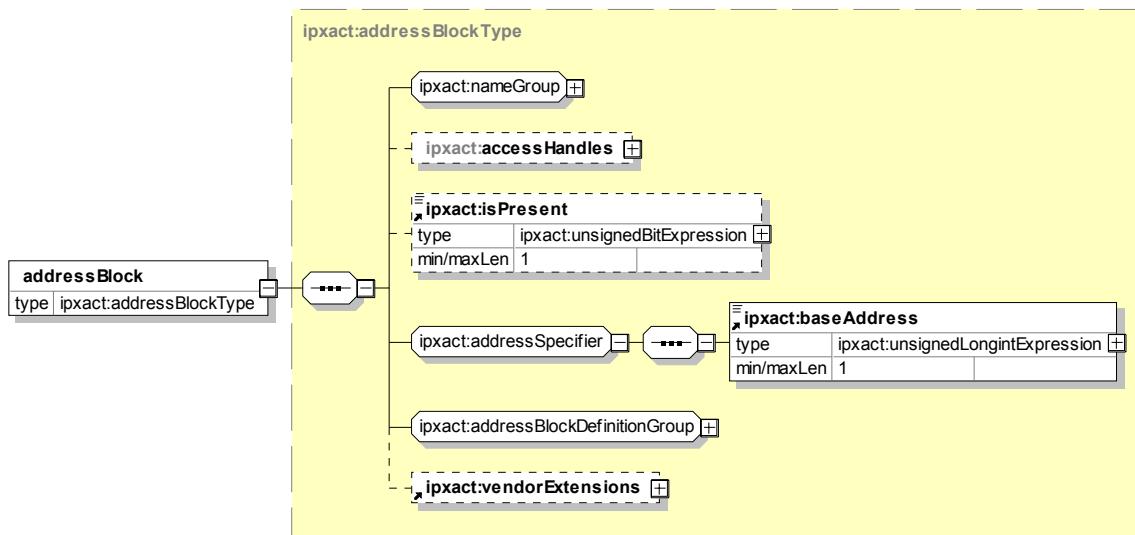
- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **memoryMaps** element.
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: `unsignedBitExpression` (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

- c) ***memoryMap*** group (optional) is any number of the following:
  - 1) **addressBlock** describes a single block. See [6.9.2](#).
  - 2) **bank** represents a collections of address blocks, banks, or subspace maps. See [6.9.5](#).
  - 3) **subspaceMap** maps the address subspaces of master interfaces into the slave's memory map. See [6.9.9](#).
- d) The optional **memoryRemap** element describes additional address blocks, banks, and subspace maps of a slave bus interface in a specific remap state.
- e) The optional **addressUnitBits** element (type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))) defines the number of data bits in each address increment of the memory map. This is required to allow the elements in the memory map to define items such as register offsets..
- f) The optional **shared** element (default: **undefined**) defines the sharing properties of the memory map. When the value is **yes**, the contents of the **memoryMap** are shared by all the references to this **memoryMap**; when the value is **no**, the contents of the **memoryMap** are not shared; and when the value is **undefined**, the sharing of the **memoryMap** is undefined.
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the memory map. See [C.24](#).

## 6.9.2 Address block

### 6.9.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **addressBlock** element, which may appear in a **memoryMap** element. It is of type *addressBlockType*.



### 6.9.2.2 Description

The **addressBlock** element describes a single, contiguous block of memory that is part of a memory map. **addressBlock** contains the following mandatory and optional elements:

- a) ***nameGroup*** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **addressBlock** element.
- b) ***accessHandles*** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this address block within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).

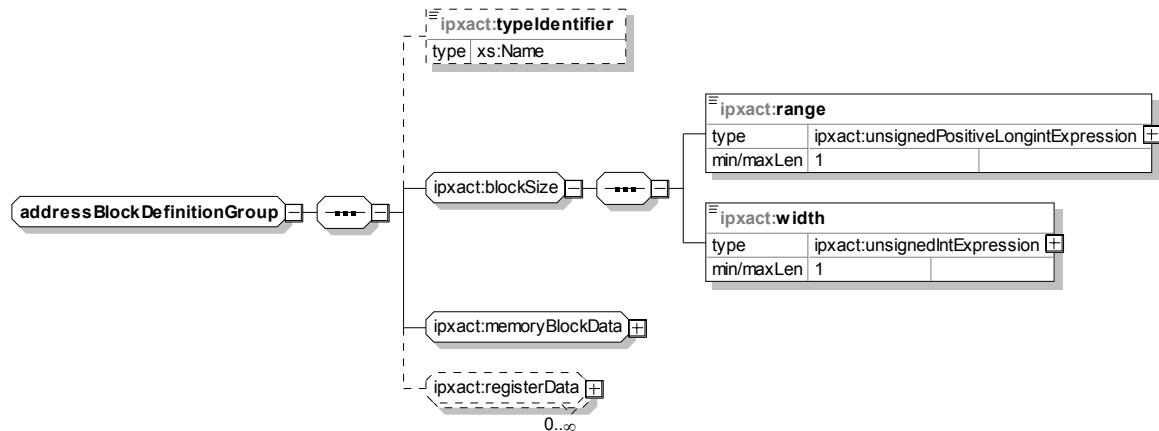
- c) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **addressSpecifier** group includes the following:
  - baseAddress** (mandatory; type *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the starting address of the block. The **baseAddress** is expressed in addressing units from the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
  - e) **addressBlockDefinitionGroup** group contains definition information about address blocks. See [6.9.3](#).
  - f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the address block. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 8.1](#) and [SCR 8.16](#).

### 6.9.3 Address block definition group

#### 6.9.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **addressBlockDefinitionGroup** group, which may appear in an **addressBlock** element.



#### 6.9.3.2 Description

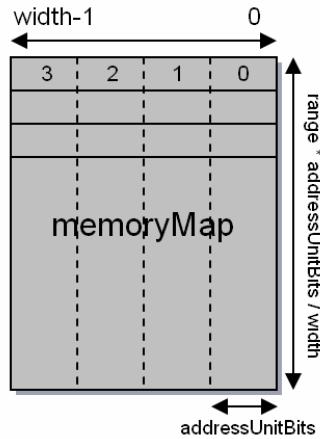
The **addressBlockDefinitionGroup** group describes the definition information about address blocks. It contains the following mandatory and optional elements:

- a) **typeIdentifier** (optional; type: *Name*) indicates multiple address block elements with the same **typeIdentifier** in the same description contain the exact same information for the elements in the **addressBlockDefinitionGroup**.
- b) **blockSize** group includes the following:
  - 1) **range** (mandatory; type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))) gives the address range of an address block. This is expressed as the number of addressable units. The size of an addressable unit is defined inside the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
  - 2) **width** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) is the bit width of a row in the address block. A row in an address block sets the maximum single transfer size into the memory map allowed by the referencing bus interface and also defines the maximum size that a single register can be defined across an interconnection.

- c) ***memoryBlockData*** group contains information about usage, access, volatility, and other parameters. See [6.9.4](#).
- d) ***registerData*** group contains information about the grouping of bits into registers and fields. See [6.11.1](#).

The **range** and **width** elements are related by the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{number\_of\_bits\_in\_block} &= \text{addressUnitBits} \times \text{range} \\ \text{number\_of\_rows\_in\_block} &= \text{number\_of\_bits\_in\_block} / \text{width} \end{aligned}$$

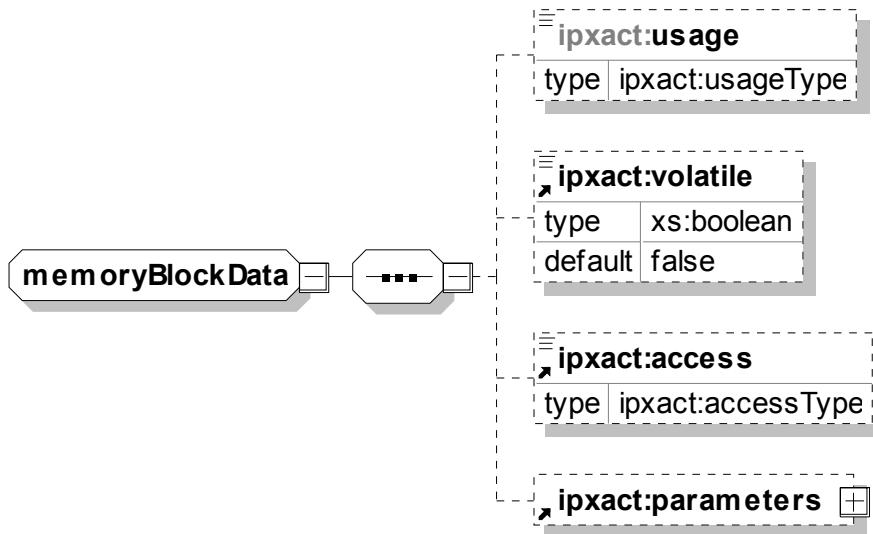


See also [SCR 8.1](#) and [SCR 7.15](#).

## 6.9.4 ***memoryBlockData*** group

### 6.9.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***memoryBlockData*** group, an optional part of both **addressBlock** and **bank**.



#### 6.9.4.2 Description

The **memoryBlockData** group is a collection of elements that contains further specification of **addressBlock** or **bank** elements. It contains the following elements:

- a) **usage** (optional) specifies the type of usage for the address block or bank to which it belongs.
  - 1) For an **addressBlock**:
    - i) **memory** defines, when the **access** element is set to **read-only**, the entire range of the **addressBlock** as a read-only memory (ROM). If the **access** element is set to **read-write**, the entire range of the **addressBlock** is a random access memory (RAM). If the **access** element is set to **write-only**, the entire range of the **addressBlock** is a write-only memory. This usage type can contain virtual registers.
    - ii) **register** defines the entire range of the **addressBlock** as possible locations for registers.
    - iii) **reserved** defines the entire range of the **addressBlock** as reserved or for unknown usage to IP-XACT. This type shall not contain registers.
    - iv) If unspecified, the presumed value for **usage** shall be **register** if the **addressBlock** contains **register** elements; otherwise it is **reserved**.
  - 2) For a **bank**:
    - i) **memory** defines all containing **addressBlock** elements are of this access type.
    - ii) **register** defines all containing **addressBlock** elements are of this access type.
    - iii) **reserved** defines all containing **addressBlock** elements are of this access type.
    - iv) Unspecified usage means the bank may contain a mixture of **memory**, **register**, and **reserved addressBlock** elements.
- b) **volatile** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) when **true** indicates the case of a write followed by read, or in the case of two consecutive reads, there is no guarantee what is returned by the read on the second transaction or that this return value is consistent with the write or read of the first transaction. This element implies there is some additional mechanism by which these registers can acquire new values other than reads/writes/resets and other access methods known to IP-XACT. If this element is not present, it is presumed to be **false** for a **field** and unspecified for a **bank**, **addressBlock**, or **register**.
- c) **access** (optional) specifies the accessibility of the data in the address block. If the **usage** element is **reserved**, this element has no meaning. If the **access** is not specified, the value shall be inherited from the containing **bank** or default to **read-write** if this element is contained in a **memoryMap**.
  - i) **read-write** defines, when the **usage** element is **memory**, the entire range is a RAM. If the **usage** element is **register**, then any access type for a register or alternate register is allowed.
  - ii) **read-only** defines, when the **usage** element is **memory**, the entire range is a ROM. If the **usage** element is **register**, then an access type shall be **read-only** for a register or alternate register.
  - iii) **write-only** defines, when the **usage** element is **memory**, the entire range is a write-only memory. If the **usage** element is **register**, then an access type shall be **write-only** or **writeOnce** for a register or alternate register.
  - iv) **read-writeOnce** defines, when the **usage** element is **memory**, the entire range is a RAM that is writable once after power up. If the **usage** element is **register**, then the access type for a register or alternate register shall be **read-only**, **read-writeOnce**, **write-only**, or **writeOnce**.
  - v) **writeOnce** defines, when the **usage** element is **memory**, the entire range is a write-only memory that is writable once after power up. If the **usage** element is **register**, then the access type for a register or alternate register shall be **writeOnce**.

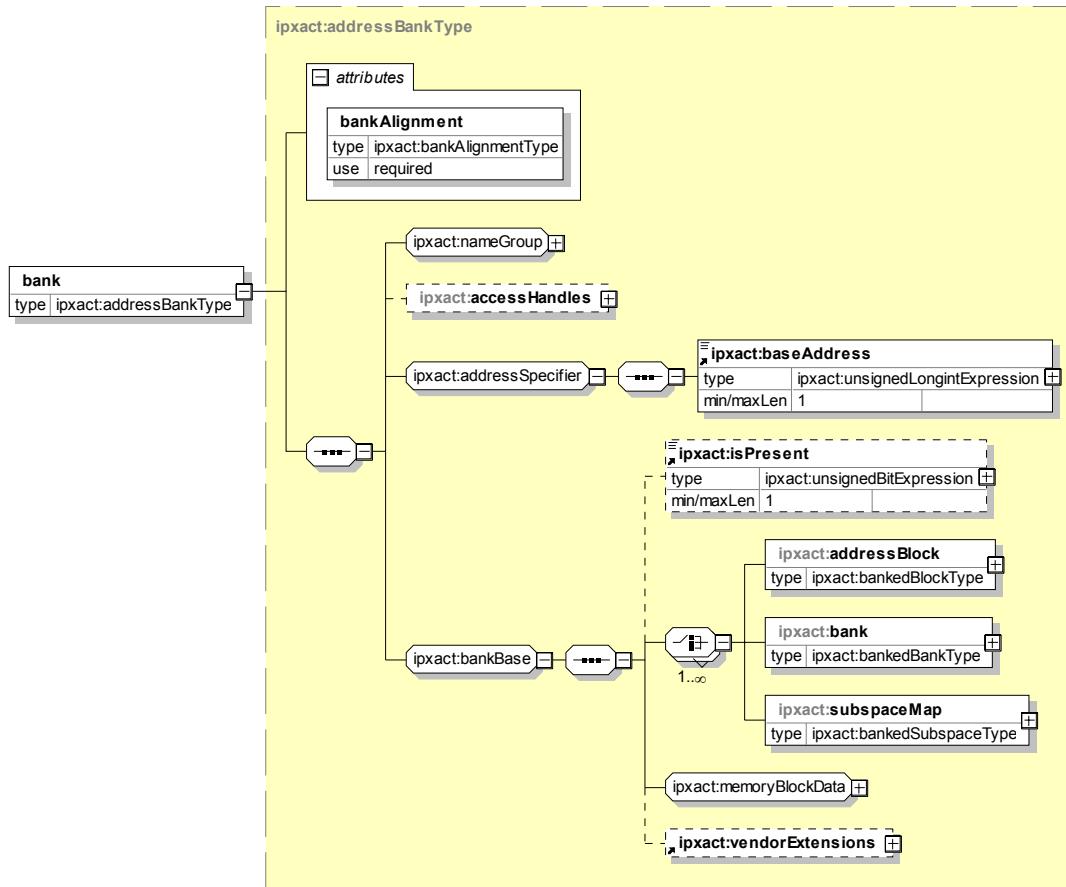
- d) **parameters** (optional) details any additional parameters that describe the address block for generator usage. See [C.18](#).

See also [SCR 8.3](#), [SCR 8.4](#), [SCR 8.6](#), [SCR 8.7](#), [SCR 8.9](#), [SCR 8.10](#), [SCR 8.11](#), [SCR 8.13](#), [SCR 8.14](#), and [SCR 8.17](#).

## 6.9.5 Bank

### **6.9.5.1 Schema**

The following schema details the information contained in the **bank** element, which can appear in a **memoryMap** element. It is of type *addressBankType*.



### **6.9.5.2 Description**

The **bank** element allows multiple **addressBlocks**, **banks**, or **subspaceMaps** to be concatenated together horizontally or vertically as a single entity. It contains the following attributes and elements:

- a) **bankAlignment** (mandatory) attribute organizes the bank:
    - 1) **parallel** specifies each item is located at the same base address with different bit offsets. The bit offset of the first item in the bank always starts at 0, the offset of the next items in the bank is equal to the widths of all the previous items.
    - 2) **serial** specifies the first item is located at the bank's base address. Each subsequent item is located at the previous item's address, plus the range of that item (adjusted for LAU and bus).

width considerations, rounded up to the next whole multiple). This allows the user to specify only a single base address for the bank and have each item assigned an address in sequence.

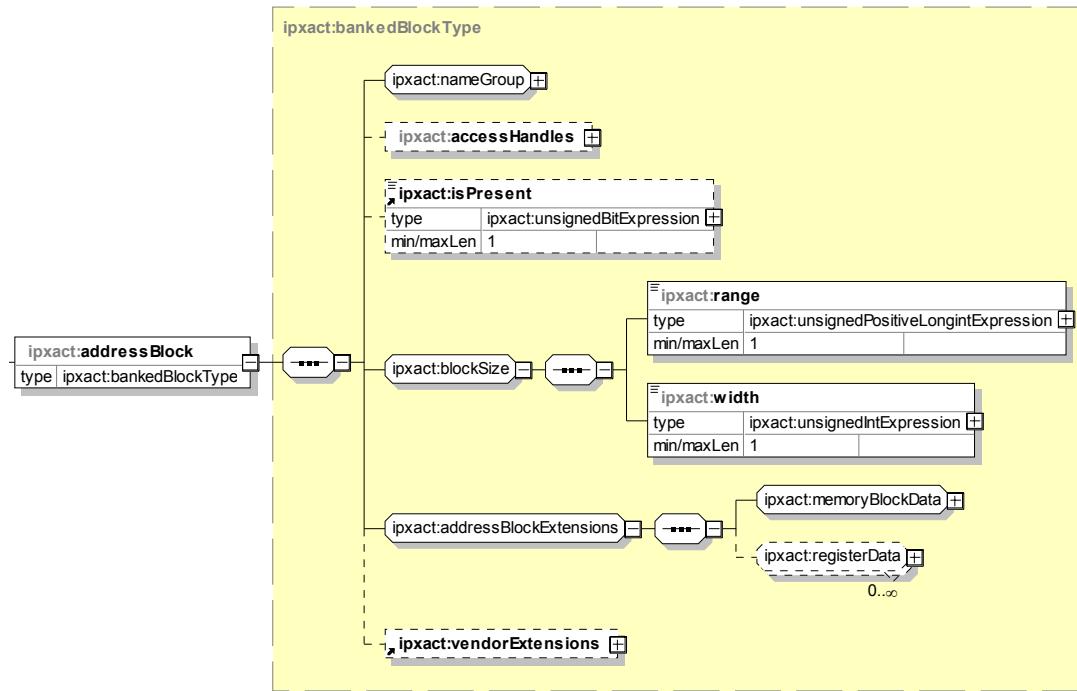
- b) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **bank** element.
- c) **accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this bank within the corresponding view. See [C.1](#).
- d) **addressSpecifier** group includes the following:
  - baseAddress** (mandatory; type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the starting address of the block. The **baseAddress** is expressed in addressing units from the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
- e) **bankBase** group includes the following. This group is later used inside the **bankedBaseType** type to create recursion.
  - 1) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
  - 2) A **bankBase** group also contains at least one of the following:
    - i) **addressBlock** is an address block that makes up part of the bank. See [6.9.6](#).
    - ii) **bank** is a bank within the bank. This allows for complex configurations with nested banks. See [6.9.7](#).
    - iii) **subspaceMap** is a reference to the master's address map for inclusion in the bank. See [6.9.9](#).
  - 3) **memoryBlockData** group contains information about usage, access, volatility, and other parameters. See [6.9.4](#).
  - 4) **vendorExtensions** adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this bank. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 8.2](#).

## 6.9.6 Banked address block

### 6.9.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **addressBlock** element, which can appear in a **bank** element. It is of type **bankedBlockType**.



### 6.9.6.2 Description

The **addressBlock** element inside a **bank** element describes a single, contiguous block of memory that is part of a bank. **addressBlock** contains the following mandatory and optional elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **addressBlock** element.
- b) **accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this address block within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- c) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **blockSize** group includes the following:
  - 1) **range** (mandatory; type: **unsignedPositiveLongintExpression** (see [C.3.10](#))) gives the address range of an address block. This is expressed as the number of addressable units of the memory map. The size of an addressable unit is defined inside the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
  - 2) **width** (mandatory; type: **unsignedIntExpression** (see [C.3.7](#))) is the bit width of a row in the address block.
- e) **addressBlockExtensions** group contains optional elements commonly added to various types of address blocks in a memory map, including the following:
  - 1) **memoryBlockData** group contains information about usage, access, volatility, and other parameters. See [6.9.4](#).

- 2) **registerData** group contains information about the grouping of bits into registers and fields. See [6.11.1](#).
- f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the address block. See [C.24](#).

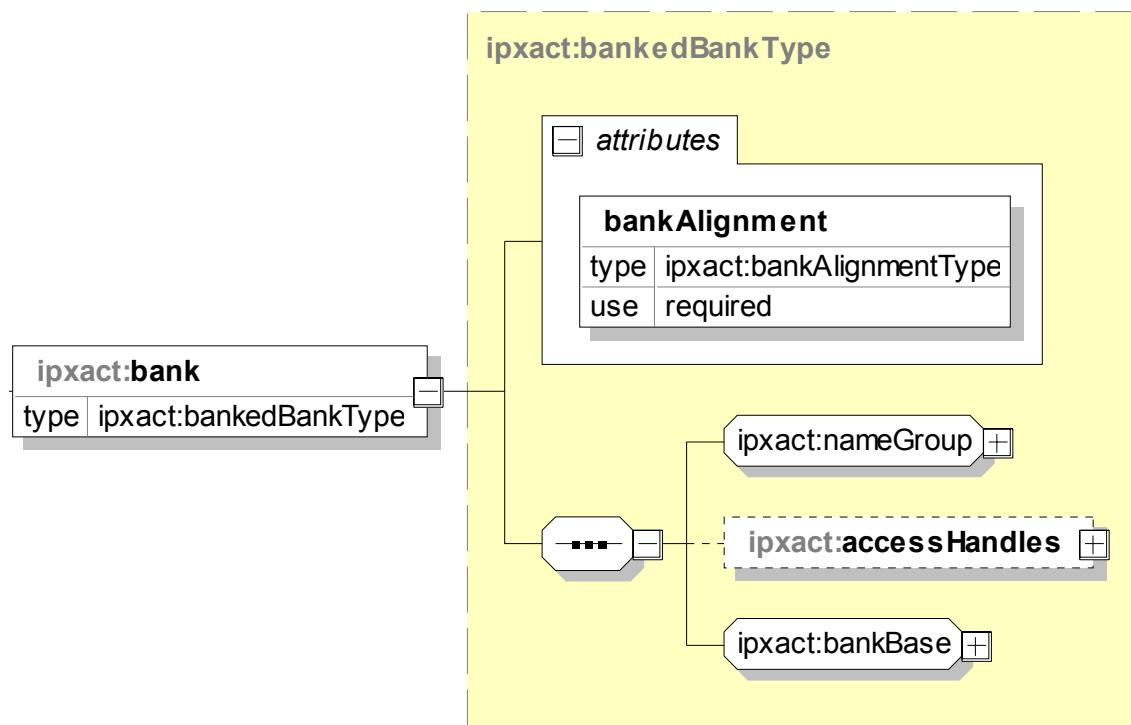
NOTE—The **bankedBlockType** of an **addressBlock** element is almost identical to the **addressBlockType** of an **addressBlock** element (see [6.9.2](#)); the only difference is there is no **baseAddress** or **typeIdentifier** in the **bankedBlockType** version.

See also [SCR 7.5](#).

## 6.9.7 Banked bank

### 6.9.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the nested **bank** element, which can appear in another **bank** element. It is of type **bankBankType**.



### 6.9.7.2 Description

The **bank** element within another bank element (banked bank) allows multiple address **blocks**, **banks**, or **subspaceMaps** to be concatenated together horizontally or vertically as a single entity. It contains the following attributes and elements:

- a) **bankAlignment** (mandatory) attribute organizes the bank:
  - 1) **parallel** specifies each item is located at the same base address with different bit offsets. The bit offset of the first item in the bank always starts at 0, the offset of the next items in the bank is equal to the widths of all the previous items.
  - 2) **serial** specifies the first item is located at the bank's base address. Each subsequent item is located at the previous item's address, plus the range of that item (adjusted for LAU and bus

width considerations, rounded up to the next whole multiple). This allows the user to specify only a single base address for the bank and have each item assigned an address in sequence.

- b) ***nameGroup*** group is defined in [C.12](#). The ***name*** element shall be unique within the containing ***bank*** element.
- c) ***accessHandles*** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this bank within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- d) The ***bank*** element of type ***bankedBankType*** contains the ***bankBase*** group. This group is defined inside the ***bank*** element of type ***addressBankType***. See [6.9.5](#). The effect of its inclusion here creates recursion, whereby banks maybe included inside banks included inside banks.

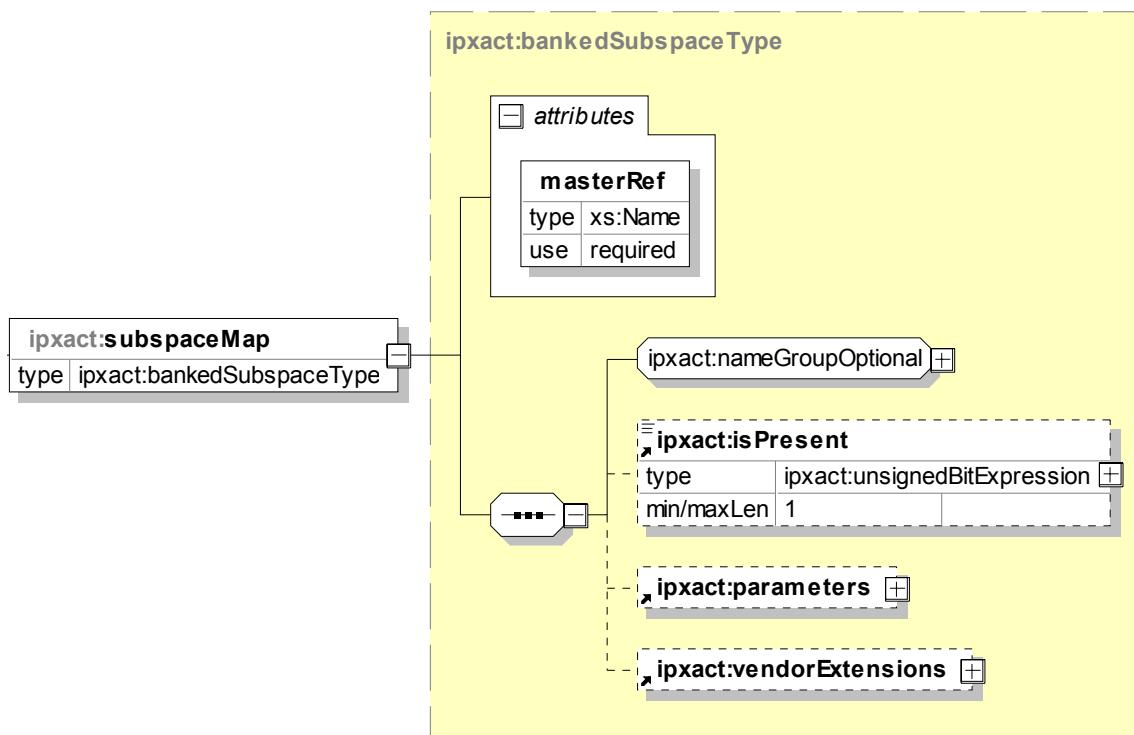
NOTE—A banked bank is similar to a bank in a memory map (see [6.9.5](#)); the only difference is there is no ***baseAddress*** element in a ***bank*** of type ***bankedBankType***.

See also [SCR 8.2](#).

## 6.9.8 Banked subspace

### 6.9.8.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***subspaceMap*** element, which can appear in a ***bank*** element. It is of type ***bankSubspaceType***.



### 6.9.8.2 Description

The ***subspaceMap*** element, within an address bank, allows a bank to map the address space of a master interface into the bank. It contains the following elements:

- a) ***masterRef*** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) contains the name of the master interface whose address space needs to be mapped. This shall reference a bus interface name with an interface mode of master (see [6.5.3](#)).

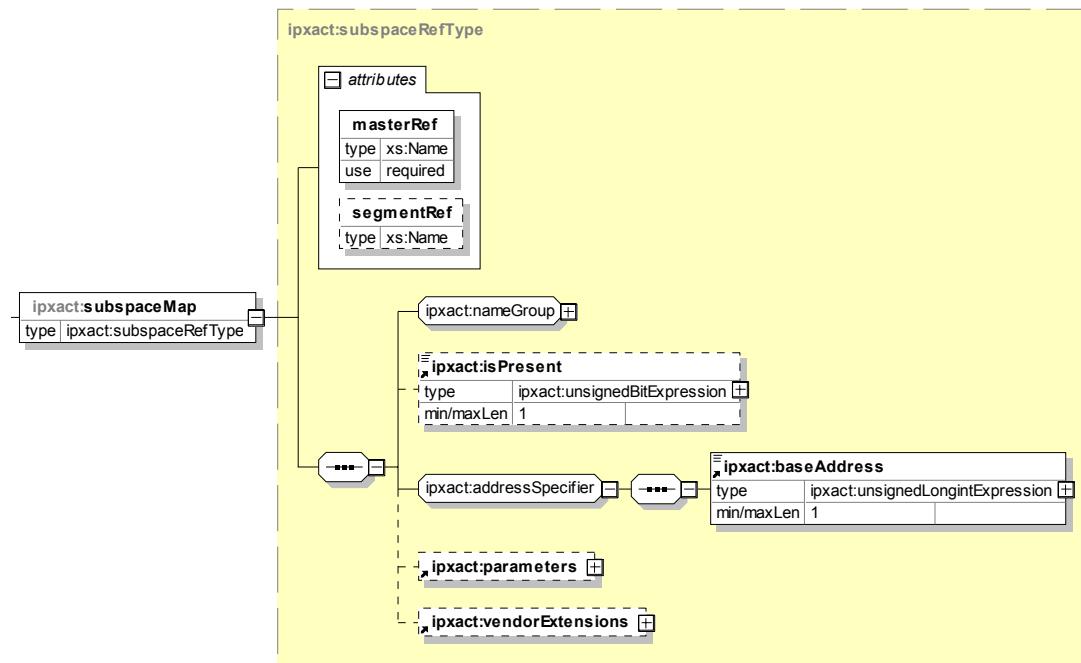
- b) ***nameGroupOptional*** group is defined in [C.13](#). The **name** of the **addressBlock**, **subspaceMap**, and **bank** shall be unique within the containing **bank** element.
- c) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **parameters** details any additional parameters that apply to the **subspaceMap**. See [C.18](#).
- e) **vendorExtensions** adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **subspaceMap**. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 8.2](#).

### 6.9.9 Subspace map

#### 6.9.9.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **subspaceMap** element, which can appear in a **memoryMap** element. It is of type *subspaceRefType*.



#### 6.9.9.2 Description

The **subspaceMap** element maps the address space of a master interface from an opaque bus bridge into the memory map. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **masterRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute contains the name of the master interface whose address space needs to be mapped. This shall reference a bus interface name with an interface mode of master (see [6.5.3](#)).
- b) **segmentRef** (optional; type: *Name*) references a **segment** in the **addressSpace** referred by the **masterRef** attribute. If the **segmentRef** attribute is not present, the entire **addressSpace** is presumed to be referenced.
- c) ***nameGroup*** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** of the **addressBlock**, **subspaceMap**, **bank**, and **memoryRemap** shall be unique within the containing **memoryMap**, **localMemoryMap**, or **memoryRemap** element.

- d) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- e) **addressSpecifier** group includes the following:
  - baseAddress** (mandatory; type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the starting address of the block. The **baseAddress** is expressed in addressing units from the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
- f) **parameters** (optional) details any additional parameters that apply to the **subspaceMap**. See [C.18](#).
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **subspaceMap**. See [C.24](#).

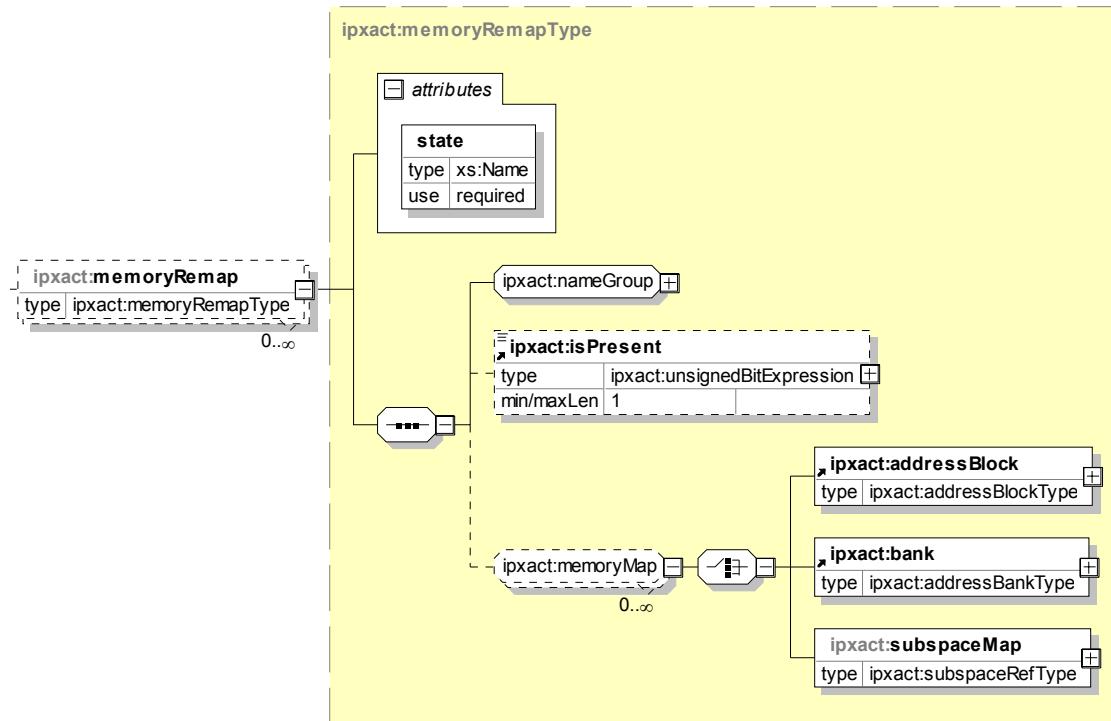
See also [SCR 3.17](#), [SCR 9.8](#), [SCR 15.1](#), and [SCR 15.8](#).

## 6.10 Remapping

### 6.10.1 Memory remap

#### 6.10.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **memoryRemap** element, which can appear in a **memoryMap** element. It is of type **memoryRemapType**.



#### 6.10.1.2 Description

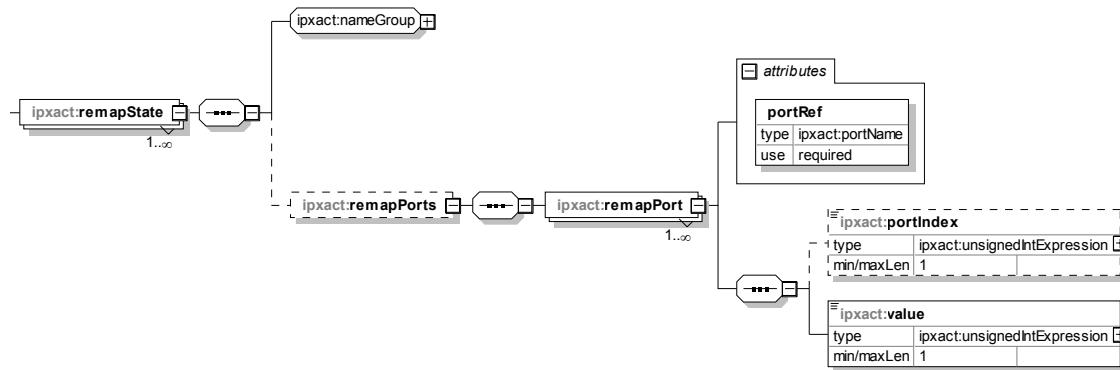
The **memoryRemap** element describes additional **addressBlocks**, **banks**, and **subspaceMaps** that are mapped on the referencing slave bus interface in a specific remap **state**. If multiple **memoryRemap/state** attributes are active, then the first **memoryRemap** listed shall be selected. This element contains the following elements, attributes, and groups:

- a) **state** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the remap state name for which the optional memory map elements are active. The **state** attribute shall reference a **remapState/name** in the containing description. The **state** attribute of all **memoryRemap** elements contained in a single **memoryMap** element shall be unique.
- b) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** of the **addressBlock**, **subspaceMap**, **bank**, and **memoryRemap** shall be unique within the containing **memoryMap** element.
- c) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **memoryMap** group (optional) is any number of the following:
  - 1) **addressBlock** describes a single block. See [6.9.2](#).
  - 2) **bank** represents a collections of address blocks, banks, or subspace maps. See [6.9.5](#).
  - 3) **subspaceMap** maps the address subspaces of master interfaces into the slave's memory map. See [6.9.9](#).

## 6.10.2 Remap states

### 6.10.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **remapStates** element, which may appear as an element inside a **component** element. This element may contain one or more **remapState** elements.



### 6.10.2.2 Description

A **remapStates** element describes a set of one or more **remapState** elements. Each **remapState** element defines a conditional remap state where each state is conditioned by a remap port specified with a **remapPort** element. A **remapState** element does not specify remapping addresses. The remapping addresses are defined by the **memoryRemap** element (of a **memoryMap** element), and its **state** attribute refers to the **remapState** element's name explained in this subclause.

**remapState** contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **remapStates** element.
- b) **remapPorts** (optional) contains a list of **remapPort** elements. **remapPort** (mandatory) specifies when the remap state gets effective. A collection of **remapPort** elements make up the condition for this remap state. All elements shall be true for the remap state to be enabled. The type of this element is of *scaledNonNegativeInteger*. This element contains the logical value of the single port bit specified by the following attributes:

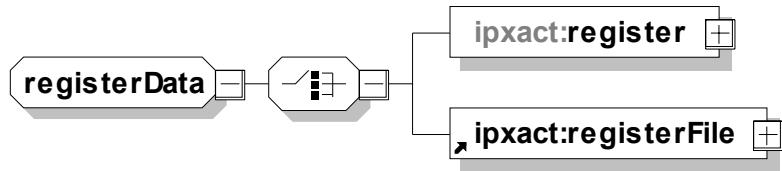
- 1) **portRef** (mandatory; type: *portName*) attribute is the name of the port in the containing description to which this logic value comparison is assigned. See [6.12.7](#).
- 2) **portIndex** (optional; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) attribute references the index of a port in the containing description, when the port being referenced is vectored.
- 3) **value** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) is the value necessary so the specified port activates the **remapState**.

## 6.11 Registers

### 6.11.1 Register data

#### 6.11.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **registerData** group that may appear as an element inside the **addressBlock** element.



#### 6.11.1.2 Description

The **registerData** group describes registers and register files. The containing **register/name** elements, the **register/alternateRegister/name** elements, and the **registerFile/name** elements shall be unique within the containing **addressBlock** element. The **registerData** group contains one of the following elements:

- a) **register** defines a list of registers contained in this **addressBlock**. See [6.11.2](#).
- b) **registerFile** defines a list of register files contained in this **addressBlock**. See [6.11.6](#).

## 6.11.2 Register

### 6.11.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **register** element, which is contained in the **registerData** group that may appear as an element inside the **addressBlock** element. This element describes a register.



### 6.11.2.2 Description

A **register** element describes a register in an address block or register file. The bits in the register are numbered from **size-1** down to 0, with bit zero (0) being the least significant bit. **register** contains the following elements:

- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **register** element.
- accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this register within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- dim** (optional; type: **unsignedLongintExpression** (see [C.3.8](#))) assigns an unbounded dimension to the register, so it is repeated as many times as the value of the **dim** elements. For multi-dimensional register arrays, the memory layout is presumed to follow the IEEE Std 1666™ [\[B4\]](#) (SystemC) language rules.

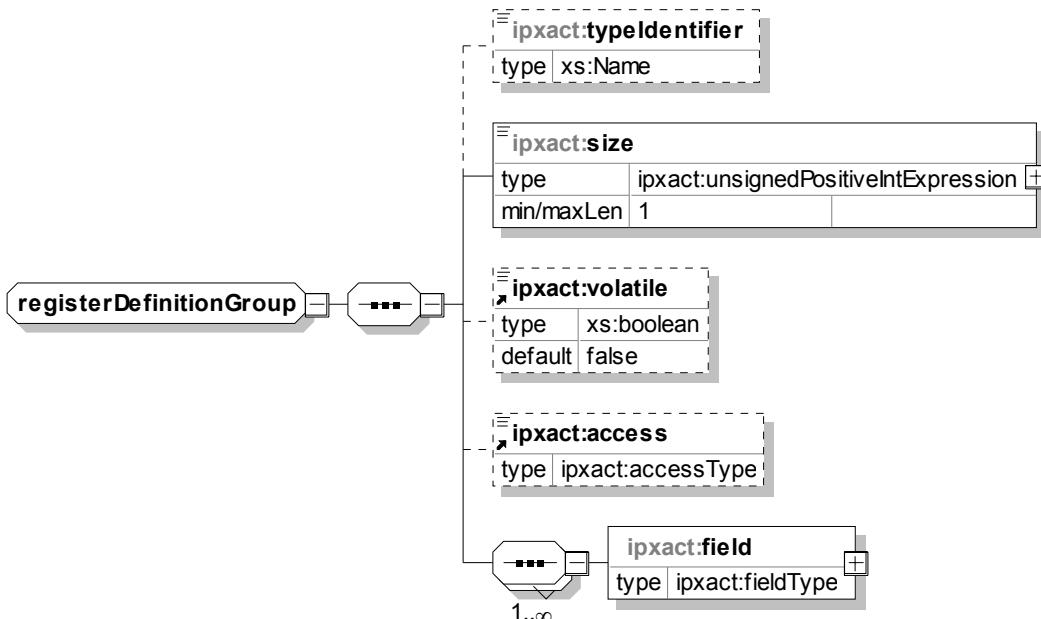
- e) **addressOffset** (mandatory; type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#)) describes the offset from the start of the containing **addressBlock** or **registerFile** element. The **addressOffset** is expressed in addressing units from the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
- f) **registerDefinitionGroup** group describes additional elements for a register. See [6.11.3](#)
- g) **alternateRegisters** (optional) describes alternate descriptions for the containing register. See [6.11.4](#)
- h) **parameters** (optional) describes any parameter names and types when the register width can be parameterized. See [C.18](#).
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this register. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.1](#), [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.3](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.5](#), [SCR 7.7](#), [SCR 7.8](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.13](#), [SCR 8.3](#), [SCR 8.4](#), [SCR 8.5](#), [SCR 8.7](#), [SCR 8.8](#), and [SCR 8.9](#).

### 6.11.3 Register definition group

#### 6.11.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **registerDefinitionGroup** group, which is contained in the **register** element. This group describes register definition information.



#### 6.11.3.2 Description

A **registerDefinitionGroup** group contains the following elements:

- a) **typeIdentifier** (optional) indicates multiple register elements with the same **typeIdentifier** in the same description contain the exact same information for the elements in the **registerDefinitionGroup**.
- b) **size** (mandatory; type: *unsignedPositiveIntExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))) is the width of the register, counting in bits.
- c) **volatile** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) when **true** indicates in the case of a write followed by read, or in the case of two consecutive reads, there is no guarantee as to what is returned by the read on the second transaction or that this return value is consistent with the write or read of the first

transaction. The element implies there is some additional mechanism by which this register can acquire new values other than by reads/writes/resets and other access methods known to IP-XACT. If this element is not present, no presumptions can be made about its value.

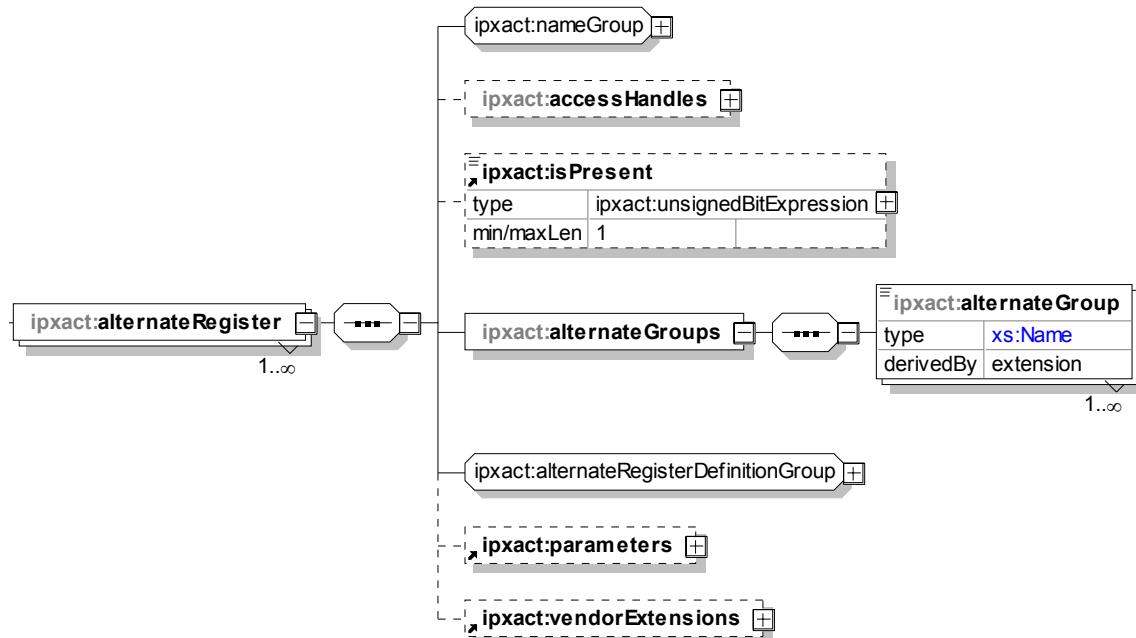
- d) **access** (optional) indicates the accessibility of the register. If this is not present, the **access** is inherited from the containing **addressBlock**. This element can take one of the following values:
  - 1) **read-write**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this register. Write transactions may affect the contents of the register, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the register.
  - 2) **read-only**: A read transaction to this address returns a value related to the values in the register. A write transaction to this register has undefined results.
  - 3) **write-only**: A write transaction to this address affects the contents of the register. A read transaction to this register has undefined results.
  - 4) **read-writeOnce**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this register. Only the first write transaction, after an event that caused the reset value of the register to be loaded, may affect the contents of the register, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the register.
  - 5) **writeOnce**: Only the first write transaction, after an event that caused the reset value of the register to be loaded, affects the contents of the register. A read transaction to this register has undefined results.
- e) **field** (optional) describes a bit field within a register. See [6.11.8](#).

See also [SCR 7.1](#), [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.3](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.5](#), [SCR 7.7](#), [SCR 7.8](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.13](#), [SCR 8.3](#), [SCR 8.4](#), [SCR 8.5](#), [SCR 8.7](#), [SCR 8.8](#), [SCR 8.9](#), [SCR 8.11](#), [SCR 8.12](#), [SCR 8.14](#), and [SCR 8.15](#).

## 6.11.4 Alternate registers

### 6.11.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **alternateRegister** element. Each **alternateRegister** element contained within the same **alternateRegisters** element provides an alternate description for the containing register element.



### 6.11.4.2 Description

An **alternateRegister** element contains an alternate definition for the containing register. **alternateRegister** contains the following elements:

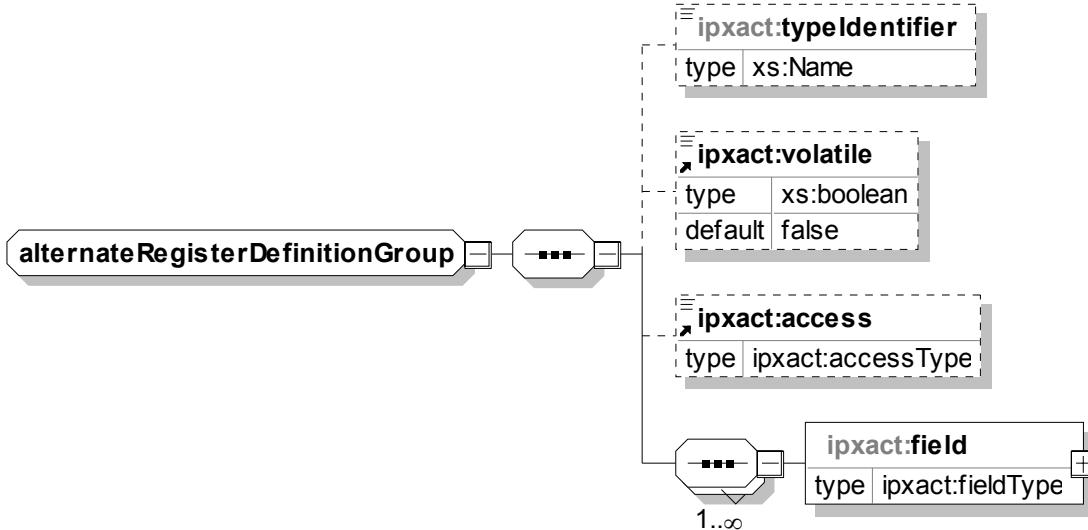
- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **alternateRegister** element.
- b) **accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this register within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- c) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **alternateGroups** (mandatory) defines an unbounded list of grouping names to which this alternate description belongs.  
**alternateGroup** (mandatory; type: *Name*) defines a grouping name for this alternate register description. All **alternateGroup** elements shall be unique for each containing **register**.
- e) **alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup** group describes additional elements for an alternate register. See [6.11.5](#).
- f) **parameters** (optional) describes any parameter names and types when the register width can be parameterized. See [C.18](#).
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this register. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.1](#), [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.3](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.7](#), [SCR 7.8](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.13](#), [SCR 8.3](#), [SCR 8.4](#), [SCR 8.5](#), [SCR 8.7](#), [SCR 8.8](#), [SCR 8.9](#), [SCR 8.11](#), [SCR 8.12](#), [SCR 8.14](#), [SCR 8.15](#), and [SCR 8.18](#).

### 6.11.5 Alternate register definition group

#### 6.11.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup** group, which is contained in the **alternateRegister** element. This group describes alternate register definition information.



### 6.11.5.2 Description

A **alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup** group contains the following elements:

- a) **typeIdentifier** (optional; type: *Name*) indicates multiple register elements with the same **typeIdentifier** in the same description contain the exact same information for the elements in the **alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup**.
- b) **volatile** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) when **true** indicates in the case of a write followed by read, or in the case of two consecutive reads, there is no guarantee as to what is returned by the read on the second transaction or that this return value is consistent with the write or read of the first transaction. The element implies there is some additional mechanism by which this register can acquire new values other than by reads/writes/resets and other access methods known to IP-XACT. If this element is not present, no presumptions can be made about its value.
- c) **access** (optional) indicates the accessibility of the register. If this is not present, the **access** is inherited from the containing **addressBlock**. This element can take one of the following values:
  - 1) **read-write**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this register. Write transactions may affect the contents of the register, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the register.
  - 2) **read-only**: A read transaction to this address returns a value related to the values in the register. A write transaction to this register has undefined results.
  - 3) **write-only**: A write transaction to this address affects the contents of the register. A read transaction to this register has undefined results.
  - 4) **read-writeOnce**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this register. Only the first write transaction, after power up, may affect the contents of the register, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the register.
  - 5) **writeOnce**: Only the first write transaction, after power up, to this address affects the contents of the register. A read transaction to this register has undefined results.
- d) **field** (optional) describes any bit fields in a register. See [6.11.8](#).

See also [SCR 7.1](#), [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.3](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.7](#), [SCR 7.8](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.13](#), [SCR 8.3](#), [SCR 8.4](#), [SCR 8.5](#), [SCR 8.7](#), [SCR 8.8](#), and [SCR 8.9](#).

## 6.11.6 Register file

### 6.11.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **registerFile** element, which is contained in the **registerData** group that may appear as an element inside the **addressBlock** element. This element describes a register file.



### 6.11.6.2 Description

A **registerFile** element describes a grouping of registers in an address block or register file. **registerFile** contains the following elements:

- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **registerFile** element.
- accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this register files within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

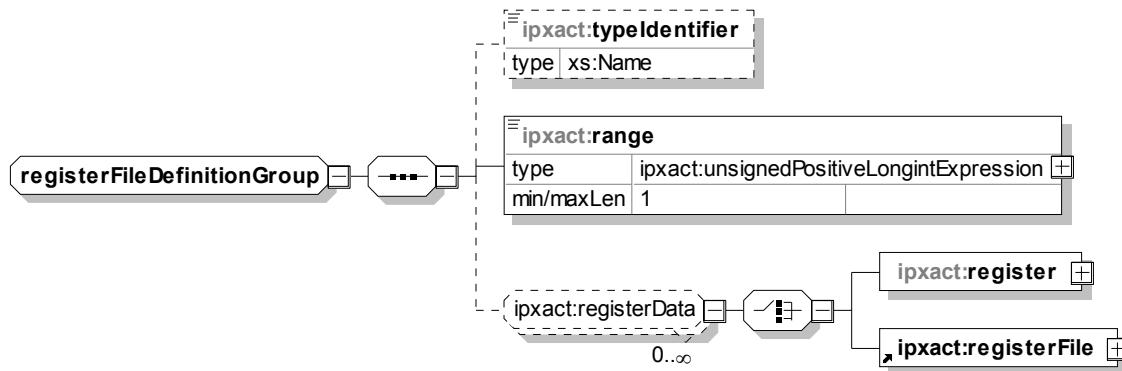
- d) **dim** (optional type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) assigns an unbounded dimension to the register, so it is repeated as many times as the value of the **dim** elements. For multi-dimensional register arrays, the memory layout is presumed to follow the IEEE Std 1666™ [[B4](#)] (SystemC) language rules.
- e) **addressOffset** (mandatory; type: *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) describes the offset from the start of the containing **addressBlock** or **registerFile** element. The **addressOffset** is expressed in addressing units from the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** or **localMemoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
- f) **registerFileDefinitionGroup** group describes additional elements for a register file. See [6.11.7](#).
- g) **parameters** (optional) describes any parameter names and types when the register width can be parameterized. See [C.18](#).
- h) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this register. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.6](#), [SCR 7.7](#), and [SCR 7.14](#).

## 6.11.7 Register file definition group

### 6.11.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **registerFileDefinitionGroup** group, which may appear as an element inside the **register** element. This element describes the reset value of the register.



### 6.11.7.2 Description

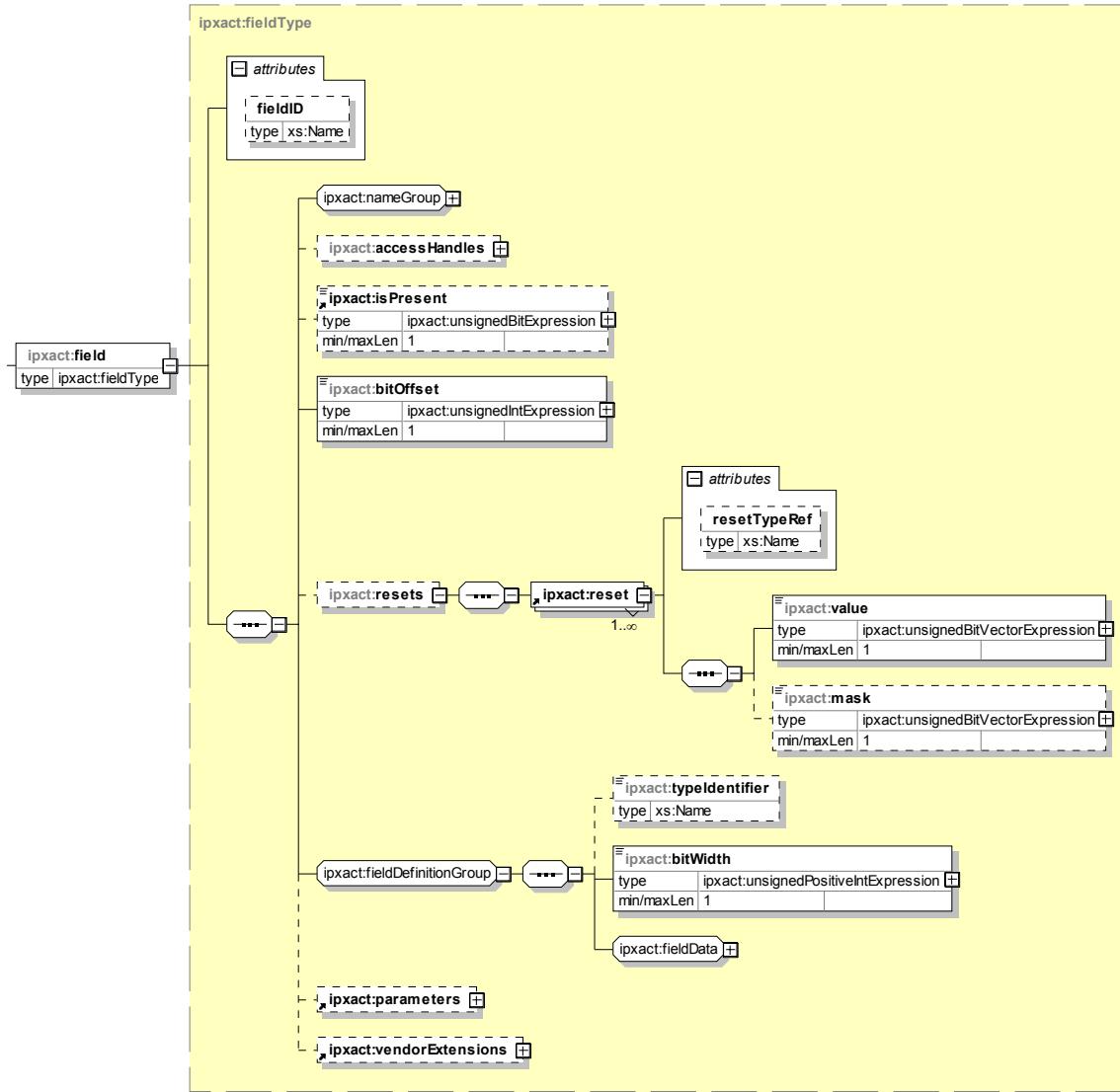
The **registerFileDefinitionGroup** group describes additional information for a register file.

- a) **typeIdentifier** (optional; type: *Name*) indicates multiple register elements with the same **typeIdentifier** in the same description contain the exact same information for the elements in the **registerDefinitionGroup**.
- b) **range** (mandatory; type: *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))) gives the range of a register file. This is expressed as the number of addressable units of the register file. The size of an addressable unit is defined inside the containing **memoryMap/addressUnitBits** element.
- c) **registerData** group contains information about the grouping of bits into registers and fields. See [6.11.1](#).

## 6.11.8 Register bit fields

### 6.11.8.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **field** element, which may appear as an element inside the **register** element. This element describes a bit field of a register.



### 6.11.8.2 Description

A **field** element of a **register** describes a smaller bit field of a register. **field** contains the following elements:

- fieldID** (optional; type: *Name*) is an attribute specifying a unique ID for a field within a component.
- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **register** element.
- accessHandles** (optional) specifies view-dependent naming for this field within the corresponding RTL. See [C.1](#).
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

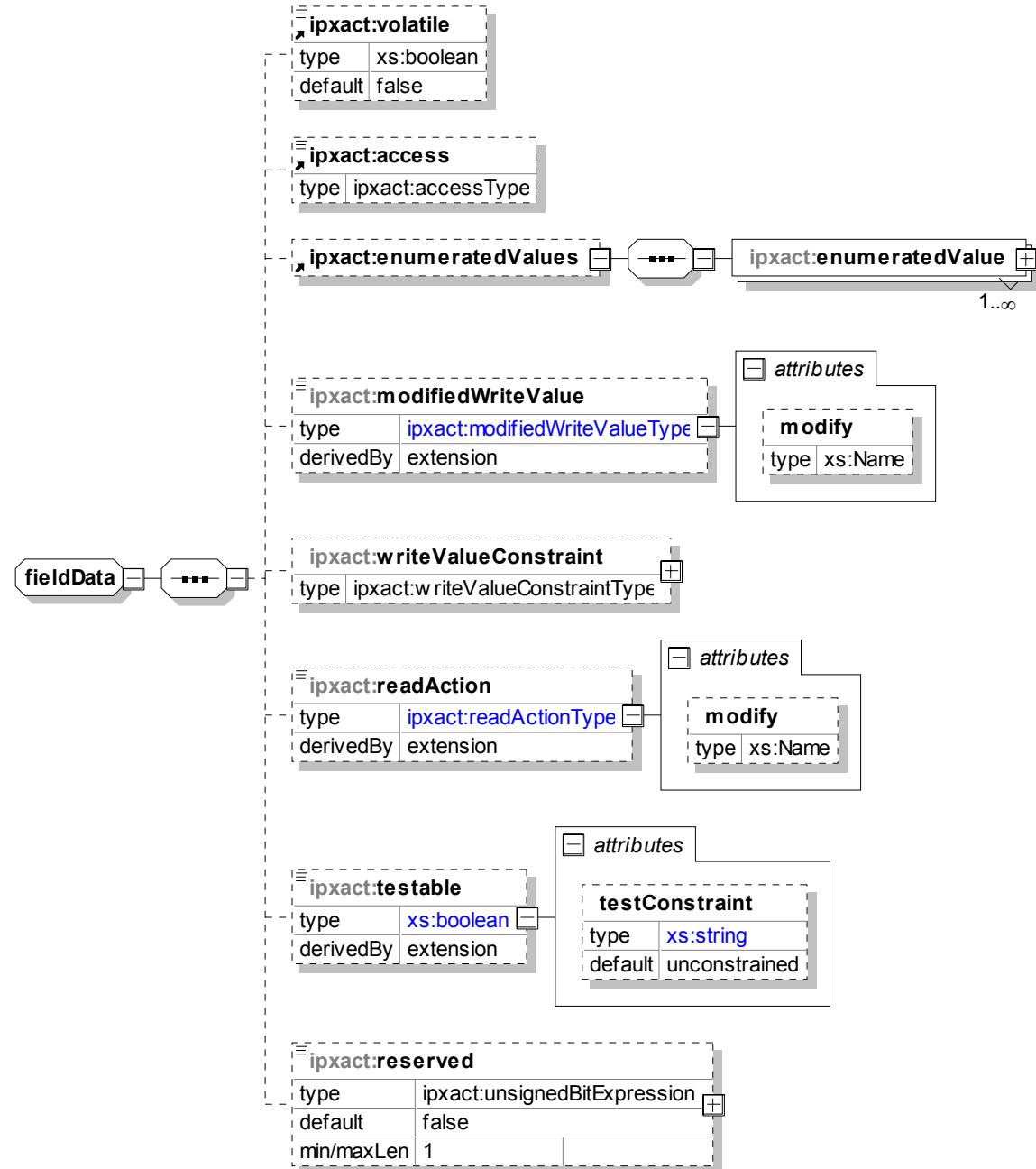
- e) **bitOffset** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))) describes the offset (from bit 0 of the register) where this bit field starts.
- f) **resets** (optional) describes the reset values of the field. Each **reset** element defines the reset value for a given reset type. **reset** has the following subelements:
  - 1) The **resetTypeRef** attribute (optional; type: *Name*) identifies the type of reset being defined. If specified, this should correspond to a user-defined reset in the **resetTypes** element (see [6.19](#)). If not specified, the default reset type is **HARD**.
  - 2) **value** (mandatory; type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) contains the actual reset value.
  - 3) **mask** (optional; type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) defines which bits of the register field have a known reset value.  
A 1 bit in the **mask** means the corresponding bit of the register field has a known reset value; a 0 bit means it does not. All bits of the **value** that correspond to 0 bits of the **mask** are ignored. The absence of a **mask** element is equivalent to a mask of the same size as the register field consisting of all 1 bits.
- g) **fieldDefinitionGroup** group describes additional elements for a field.
  - 1) **typeIdentifier** (optional; type: *Name*) indicates multiple fields elements with the same **typeIdentifier** in the same description contain the exact same information for the elements in **fieldDefinitionGroup**.
  - 2) **bitWidth** (mandatory; type: *unsignedPositiveIntExpression* (see [C.3.9](#))) is the width of the field, counting in bits.
  - 3) **fieldData** group describes additional elements for a field. See [6.11.9](#).
- h) **parameters** (optional) details any additional parameters that describe the **field** for generator usage. See [C.18](#).
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this field. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.10](#), [SCR 7.11](#), [SCR 7.12](#), [SCR 7.21](#), and [SCR 8.19](#).

## 6.11.9 Field data group

### 6.11.9.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **fieldData** group, which is contained inside the **field** element. This group describes the optional properties of the **fieldData** group definition.



### 6.11.9.2 Description

The **fieldData** group contains the following elements:

- a) **volatile** (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**) when **true** indicates in the case of a write followed by read, or in the case of two consecutive reads, there is no guarantee as to what is returned by the read on the second transaction or that this return value is consistent with the write or read of the first transaction. The element implies there is some additional mechanism by which this field can acquire new values other than by reads/writes/resets and other access methods known to IP-XACT. If this element is not present, it is presumed to be **false**.
- b) **access** (optional) indicates the accessibility of the field. If this is not present, the **access** is inherited from the containing **register**. This element can take one of the following values:
  - 1) **read-write**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this field. Write transactions may affect the contents of the field, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the field.
  - 2) **read-only**: A read transaction to this address returns a value related to the values in the field. A write transaction to this field has undefined results.
  - 3) **write-only**: A write transaction to this address affects the contents of the field. A read transaction to this field has undefined results.
  - 4) **read-writeOnce**: Both read and write transactions may have an effect on this field. Only the first write transaction, after power up, may affect the contents of the field, and read transactions return a value related to the values in the field.
  - 5) **writeOnce**: Only the first write transaction, after power up, to this address affects the contents of the field. A read transaction to this field has undefined results.
- c) **enumeratedValues** (optional) describes a name for different values of a field. See [6.11.10](#).
- d) **modifiedWriteValue** (optional) element to describe the manipulation of data written to a field. The value shall be one of **oneToClear**, **oneToSet**, **oneToToggle**, **zeroToClear**, **zeroToSet**, **zeroToToggle**, **clear**, **set**, or **modify**. If the **modifiedWriteValue** element is not specified, the value written to the field is the value stored in the field.
  - oneToClear** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a one shall clear (set to zero) the corresponding bit in the field.
  - oneToSet** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a one shall set (set to one) the corresponding bit in the field.
  - oneToToggle** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a one shall toggle the corresponding bit in the field.
  - zeroToClear** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a zero shall clear (set to zero) the corresponding bit in the field.
  - zeroToSet** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a zero shall set (set to one) the corresponding bit in the field.
  - zeroToToggle** means in a bitwise fashion each write data bit of a zero shall toggle the corresponding bit in the field.
  - clear** means after a write operation all bits in the field are cleared (set to zero).
  - set** means that after a write operation all bits in the field are set (set to one).
  - modify** means that after a write operation all bits in the field may be modified in an undefined way. In this situation, the **modify** attribute can be set to a user-defined value to provide additional detail.
- e) **writeValueConstraint** (optional) describes a set of constraint values that are the only values that can be written to this field. If **writeValueConstraint** is not present, no constraint values are defined for this field. See [6.11.11](#).
- f) **readAction** (optional) describes an action that happens to a field after a read operation happens. **clear** indicates the field is cleared after a read operation. **set** indicates the field is set after a read

operation. **modify** indicates the field is modified in some way after a read operation. If **readAction** not specified, the field is not modified after a read operation. When set to the value **modify**, the **modify** attribute can be set to provide a user-defined enumeration providing additional information about the type of the modification.

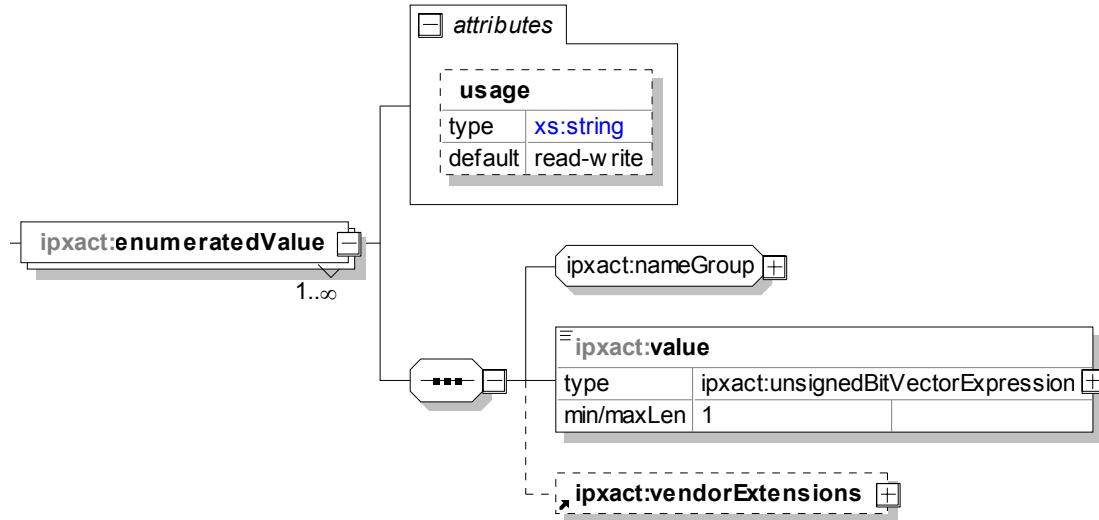
- g) **testable** (optional; type: *boolean*) defines if the field is testable by a simple automated register test. If this is not present, **testable** is presumed to be **true**.  
**testConstraint** (optional; type: *string*; default: **unConstrained**) attribute defines the constraint for the field during a simple automated register test.  
**unConstrained** indicates there are no restrictions on the data that may be written or read from the field. **restore** indicates the field's value shall be restored to the original value before accessing another register. **writeAsRead** indicates the field shall be written only to a value just previously read from the field. **readOnly** indicates the field shall be only read.
- h) **reserved** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **false**) indicates this **field** is reserved. No specific definition or interpretation of the meaning of **reserved** is made.

See also [SCR 7.2](#), [SCR 7.4](#), [SCR 7.9](#), [SCR 7.10](#), [SCR 7.11](#), [SCR 7.12](#), [SCR 7.16](#), and [SCR 7.17](#).

## 6.11.10 Enumeration values

### 6.11.10.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **enumeratedValues** element, which may appear as an element inside the **field** element.



### 6.11.10.2 Description

The **enumeratedValue** element describes the name and values pairs for the given field.

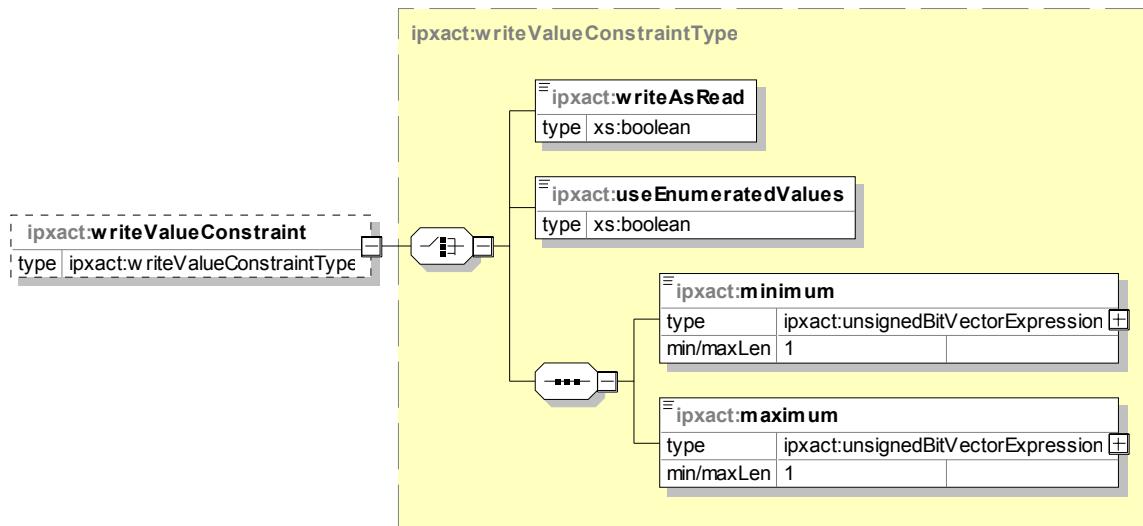
- a) **usage** (optional; type: *string*; default: **read-write**) attribute defines the software access condition under which this name value pair is valid. Possible values are **read**, **write**, and **read-write**.
- b) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). All **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **enumeratedValues** element.
- c) **value** (mandatory; type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) defines the value to assign to the specified name.
- d) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to this enumeration. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.10](#), [SCR 7.11](#), [SCR 7.18](#), and [SCR 7.19](#).

### 6.11.11 Write value constraint

#### 6.11.11.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **writeValueConstraint** element, which may appear as an element inside the **field** element.



#### 6.11.11.2 Description

The **writeValueConstraint** element describes a set of constraint values that are the only values that can be written to this field. If **writeValueConstraint** is not present, the legal values for this field are not defined. **writeValueConstraint** is one of the following:

- a) **writeAsRead** (type: *boolean*) if **true** implies the only legal value to write to this field is a value previously read from this field. If **writeAsRead** is not present, it is presumed to be **false**.
- b) **useEnumeratedValues** (type: *boolean*) if **true** implies the only legal values to write to this field are the values specified in the **useEnumeratedValues** element for this field. If **useEnumeratedValues** is not present, it is presumed to be **false**.
- c) **writeValueConstraint** can also be both of the **minimum** and **maximum** elements.
  - 1) **minimum** (type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) contains the minimum value that may be written to this field.
  - 2) **maximum** (type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) contains the maximum value that may be written to this field.

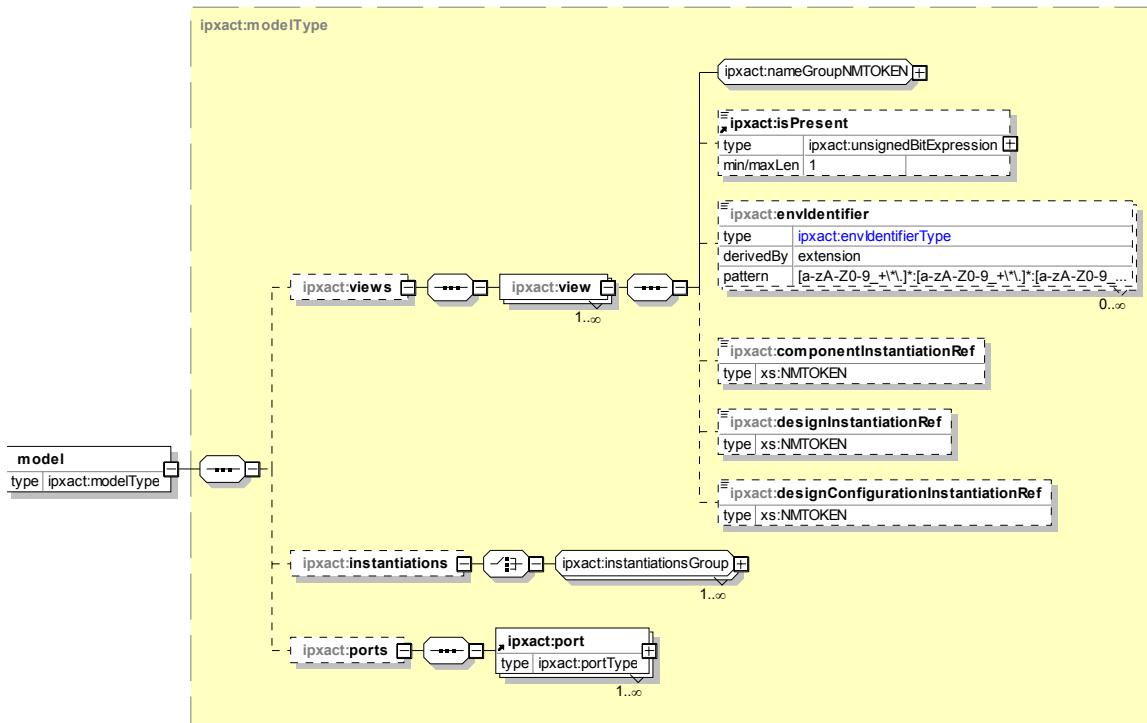
See also [SCR 7.10](#) and [SCR 7.11](#).

## 6.12 Models

### 6.12.1 Model

#### 6.12.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **model** element, which may appear as an element inside the **component** element.



#### 6.12.1.2 Description

The **model** element describes the views, instantiations, and ports of a component. A **model** element may contain the following:

- views** (optional) contains a list of all the views for this object. A component may have many different views. Each view can reference a component instantiation, a design instantiation, and a design configuration instantiation. A *component instantiation* may describe the source hardware module/entity with its pin interface. A *design instantiation* references an IP-XACT design representation. A *design configuration instantiation* configures an IP-XACT design configuration representation.

A **views** element describes an unbounded set of **view** elements. Each **view** element specifies a representation level of a component. It contains the following elements:

- 1) **nameGroupNMToken** group is detailed in [C.13](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **views** element.
- 2) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- 3) **envIdentifier** (optional) designates and qualifies information about how this model view is deployed in a particular tool environment. The format of the element is a string with three fields separated by colons [:] in the format of *Language:Tool:VendorSpecific*. The regular

expression that is used to check the string is [A-Za-z0-9\_+\*\.]\*:[A-Za-z0-9\_+\*\.]\*:[A-Za-z0-9\_+\*\.]\* The fields are as follows:

- i) *Language* indicates this view may be compatible with a particular tool, but only if that language is supported in that tool, e.g., different versions of some simulators may support two or more languages. In some cases, knowing the tool compatibility is not enough and may be further qualified by language compatibility, e.g., a compiled HDL model may work in a VHDL-enabled version of a simulator, but not in a SystemC-enabled version of the same simulator.
- ii) *Tool* indicates this view contains information that is suitable for the named tool. This might be used if this view references data that is tool-specific and would not work generically, e.g., HDL models that use simulator-specific extensions.

Vendors shall publish lists of approved tool identification strings. These strings shall contain the tool name, as well as the company's domain name, separated by dots. Some examples of well-formed tool entries are

```
designcompiler.synopsys.com  
ncsim.cadence.com  
modelsim.mentor.com
```

This field can alternatively indicate generic tool family compatibility, including \*Simulation and \*Synthesis. To support transportability of created data files, it is important to use the published, generally recognized, tool designation when referencing a tool. See IP-XACT standard tool names for **envIdentifier** [B12].

- iii) *VendorSpecific* can be used to further qualify tool and language compatibility. This can be used to indicate additional processing information may be required to use this model in a particular environment. For instance, if the model is a SWIFT simulation model, the appropriate simulator interface may need to be enabled and activated.

Any or all of the **envIdentifier** fields may be used. Where there are multiple environments to which a particular **view** is applicable, multiple **envIdentifier** elements can be listed.

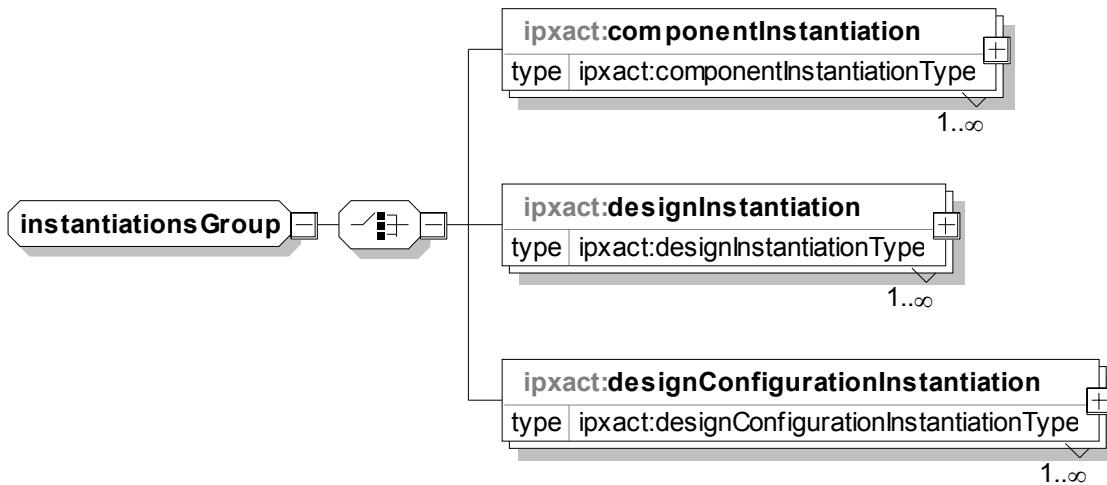
- 4) **componentInstantiationRef** (optional; type: *NMOKEN*) specifies a name that references a component inside the **instantiations** element.
  - 5) **designInstantiationRef** (optional; type: *NMOKEN*) specifies a name that references a design inside the **instantiations** element.
  - 6) **designConfigurationInstantiationRef** (optional; type: *NMOKEN*) specifies a name that references a design configuration inside the **instantiations** element.
- b) **instantiations** (optional) specifies the component, design, and design configuration instantiations for all views (as an **instantiationsGroup**). See [6.12.2](#).
  - c) **ports** (optional) contains the list of ports for this object. A ports is an external connection from the object. See [6.12.7](#).

See also [SCR 1.16](#), [SCR 1.17](#), [SCR 5.8](#), and [SCR 6.27](#).

## 6.12.2 instantiationsGroup

### 6.12.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***instantiationsGroup*** group, which is contained inside an **instantiations** element inside a **model** element.



### 6.12.2.2 Description

An ***instantiationsGroup*** group specifies the component, design, and design configuration instantiation for a particular view. There can be multiple occurrences of ***instantiationsGroup*** (see [6.12.1.1](#)), and each ***instantiationsGroup*** can have multiple elements from any branch. Each occurrence shall contain one or more of the following elements:

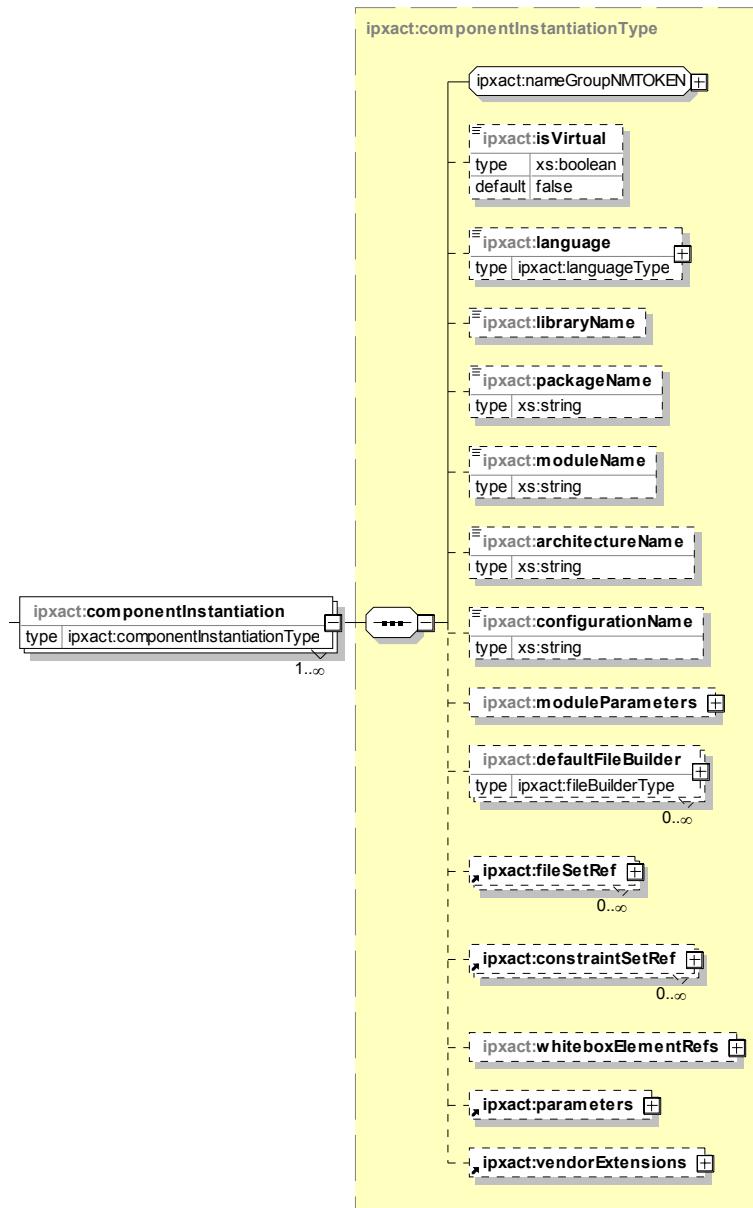
- a) **componentInstantiation** (type: ***componentInstantiationType***) specifies information concerning the instantiation of this component. See [6.12.3](#).
- b) **designInstantiation** (type: ***designInstantiationType***) specifies information concerning the internal (design) connectivity of this component, including a reference to an IP-XACT **design** document. See [6.12.4](#).
- c) **designConfigurationInstantiation** (type: ***designConfigurationInstantiationType***) specifies information concerning the internal (design) configuration of this component, including a reference to an IP-XACT **designConfiguration** document defining the configured hierarchy of this component. See [6.12.5](#).

See also [SCR 5.14](#), [SCR 5.15](#), and [SCR 5.23](#).

### **6.12.3 componentInstantiation**

### **6.12.3.1 Schema**

The following schema details the information contained in the ***componentInstantiation*** element, which is the type of the component element within a ***model/instantiations*** element.



### **6.12.3.2 Description**

An ***componentInstantiation*** element details how a specific component instance is associated with a view. It has the following elements:

- a) ***nameGroupNMTOKEN*** group is detailed in [C.13](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **instantiations** element.

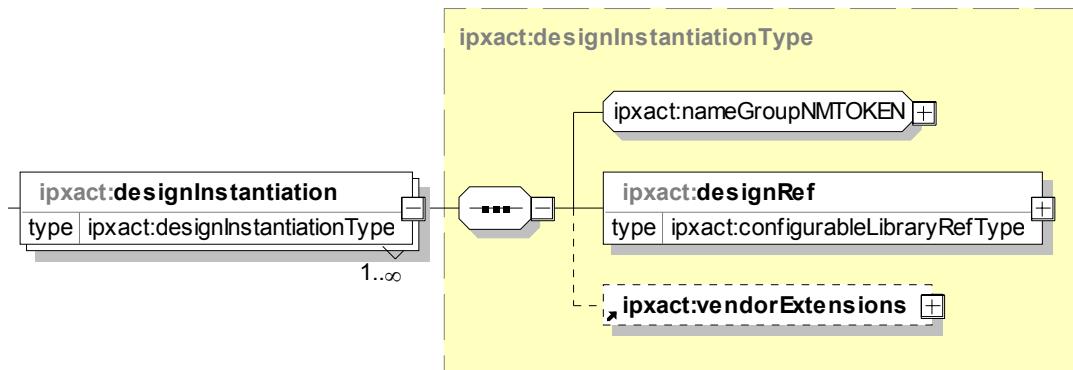
- b) **isVirtual** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) when **true**, indicates this component should not be netlisted.
- c) **language** (optional) specifies the HDL used for a specific instantiation, for example, verilog or vhdl. The **language** element is of type *languageType*, which is a token string along with an optional boolean attribute **strict**. If **true**, the language shall be strictly enforced. If this attribute is not present, its effective value is **false**.
- d) **libraryName** (optional) is a string that specifies the library name in which the model should be compiled. If the **libraryName** element is not present, then its value defaults to **work**.
- e) **packageName** (optional; type: *string*) is a string that describes the VHDL package containing the interface of the model. If the **packageName** element is not present, then its value defaults to the component VLVN name concatenated with the postfix **\_cmp\_pkg**, which stands for component package.
- f) **moduleName** (optional; type: *string*) is a string that describes the Verilog, SystemVerilog, or SystemC module name or the VHDL entity name. If the **moduleName** element is not present, then its value defaults to the component VLVN name.
- g) **architectureName** (optional; type: *string*) is a string that describes the VHDL architecture name. If the **architectureName** element is not present, then its value defaults to **rtl**.
- h) **configurationName** (optional; type: *string*) is a string that describes the Verilog, SystemVerilog, or VHDL configuration name. If the **configurationName** element is not present, then its value defaults to the design configuration VLVN name of the design configuration referenced in the view or, if there is no such reference in the view, to the component VLVN name concatenated with the postfix **\_rtl\_cfg**.
- i) **moduleParameters** (optional) specifies a parameter name-value pair container. See [6.12.6](#).
- j) **defaultFileBuilder** (optional) is an unbounded list of default file builder options for the **fileSets** referenced in this **view**. This contains all the same elements as the element **fileBuilder**. See [6.15.4](#).
- k) **fileSetRef** (optional) is an unbounded list of references to **fileSet** names within the containing document or another document referenced by the **VLVN**. See [C.7](#).
- l) **constraintSetRef** (optional) is an unbounded list of references to constraint sets, valid timing constraints for a view. **constraintsSets** are defined only for **wire** style **ports**. The **constraintSetRef** element is of type *NM\_TOKEN*. See [6.12.12](#).
- m) **whiteboxElementRefs** (optional) contains references to white box elements of a component that are valid for this view. If the view contains an implementation of any of the white box elements for the component, the **view** section shall include a reference to that **whitebox** element, with a string providing a language-dependent path to enable the DE to access the **whitebox** element. See [6.17](#).
- n) **parameters** (optional) details any additional parameters that describe the instantiation. See [C.18](#).
- o) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the instantiation. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 6.28](#).

## 6.12.4 designInstantiation

### 6.12.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***designInstantiation*** element, which is the type of the design element within a **model/instantiations** element.



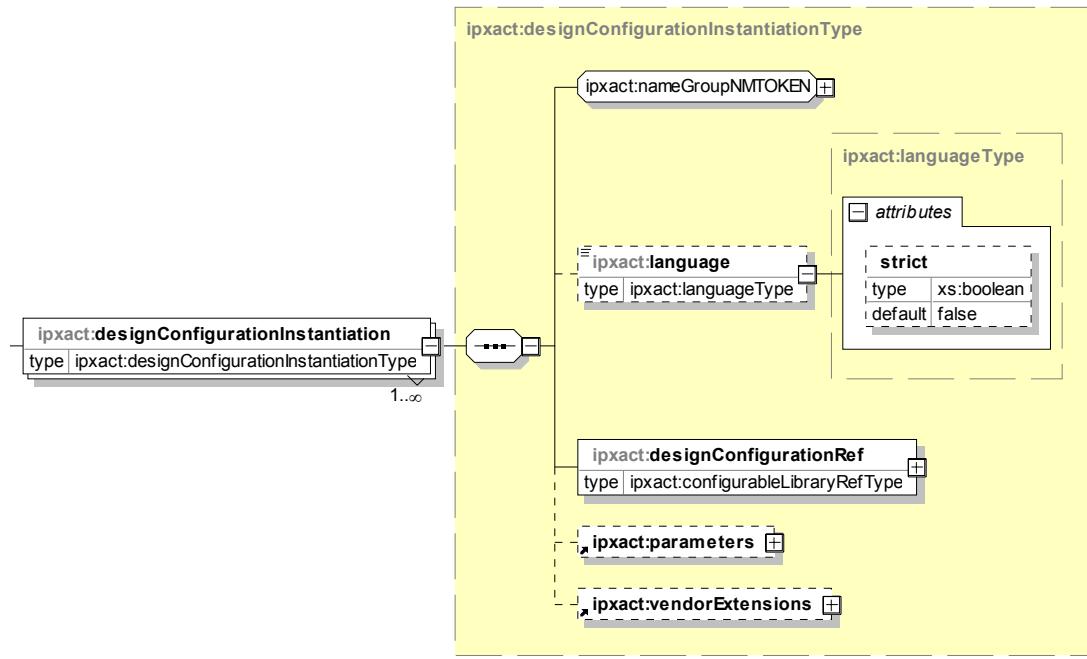
A ***designInstantiation*** element details how a specific design instance is associated with a view. It has the following elements:

- a) ***nameGroupNMTOKEN*** group is detailed in [C.13](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **instantiations** element.
- b) ***designRef*** (mandatory; type: **configurableLibraryRefType** (see [C.6](#))) specifies the design description and configuration values to applied to the design description.
- c) ***vendorExtensions*** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the view. See [C.24](#).

## 6.12.5 designConfigurationInstantiation

### 6.12.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***designConfigurationInstantiation*** element definition, which is the type of the design configuration element within a **model/instantiations** element.



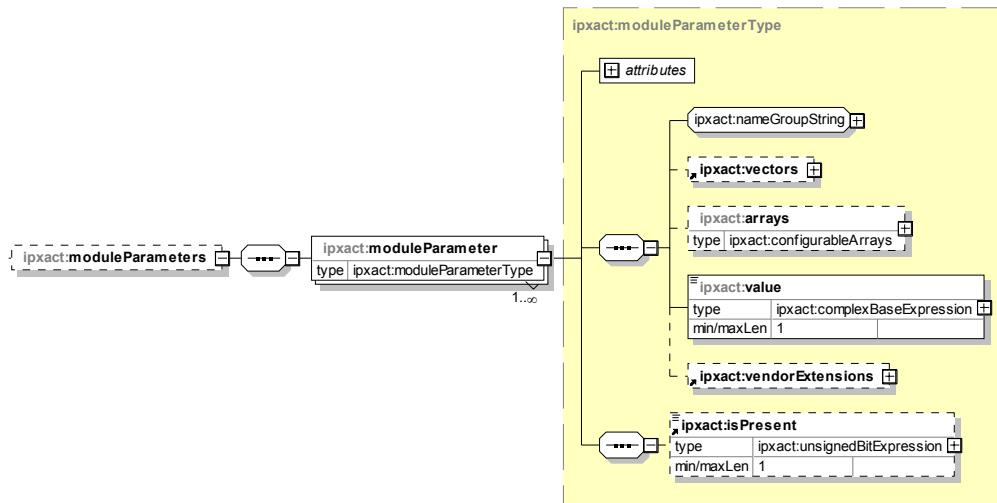
A ***designConfigurationInstantiation*** element details how a specific design configuration instance is associated with a view. It has the following elements:

- a) ***nameGroupNMToken*** group is detailed in [C.13](#). The ***name*** elements shall be unique within the containing **views** element.
- b) ***language*** (optional) specifies the HDL used for a specific instantiation, for example, verilog or vhdl. The ***language*** element is of type ***languageType***, which is a token string along with an optional boolean attribute ***strict*** (type: ***boolean***; default: **false**). If **true**, the language shall be strictly enforced. If this attribute is not present, its effective value is **false**.
- c) ***designConfigurationRef*** (mandatory; type: ***configurableLibraryRefType*** (see [C.6](#))) specifies the design configuration description.
- d) ***parameters*** (optional) details any additional parameters that describe the instantiation. See [C.18](#).
- e) ***vendorExtensions*** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the instantiation. See [C.24](#).

## 6.12.6 Module parameters

### 6.12.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **moduleParameters** element, which may appear as an element inside a **component/model/instantiations/component** element.



### 6.12.6.2 Description

A **moduleParameters** element contains an unbounded list of **moduleParameter** elements. The **moduleParameter** element describes a name-value pair used to configure the model of this component instance. A **moduleParameter** contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) Attributes used to constrain the parameter value and enable presentation to the user are defined in [C.19](#). **moduleParameter** also has the following attributes:
  - 1) **dataType** (optional; type: *string*) attribute specifies the data type as it pertains to the language of the model. This definition is used to define the type for component declaration and as such has no semantic meaning. For example, SystemC could be `int`, `double`, `char*`, etc. For VHDL, this could be `std_logic`, `std_logic_vector`, `integer`, etc.
  - 2) **usageType** (optional; default: **nontyped**) attribute specifies how this parameter is used in different modeling languages: **nontyped** and **typed**. See [6.12.6.2.1](#).
- b) **nameGroupString** group is defined in [C.16](#).
- c) **vectors** (optional) specifies dimensions required to define a vectored value type (see [C.23](#)).
- d) **arrays** (optional; type: **configurableArrays** (see [C.4](#))) specifies dimensions required to define an arrayed value type.
- e) **value** (mandatory; type: **complexBaseExpression** (see [C.3](#))) contains the value of this module parameter. This needs to meet the type requirements defined within the attributes on this element (see [C.19](#)).
- f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the port. See [C.24](#).
- g) The **isPresent** (optional; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

See also [SCR 5.2](#).

### 6.12.6.2.1 Typed and non-typed parameters classification

There are two categories of parameters: typed and non-typed.

The *typed* parameters (or declaration parameters) appear in object-oriented (OO) languages such a C++/SystemC or SystemVerilog.

In C++/SystemC, these are named `Class` template parameters. Templates can be used to develop a generic class prototype (specification), which can be instantiated with different data types. This is very useful when the same kind of class is used with different data types for individual members of the class. Parameterized types are used as data types, and then a class can be instantiated, i.e., constructed and used by providing arguments for the parameters of the class template. A class template is a specification of how a class should be built (i.e., instantiated) given the data type or values of its parameters.

Class template parameters can have default arguments, which are used during class template instantiation when arguments are not provided. Because the provided arguments are used starting from the far left parameter, default arguments should be provided for the right-most parameters.

*Example 1*

```
template <typename T>
class FIFO {
    FIFO();
    T pull();
    void push(T &x);
};
```

In SystemVerilog, typed parameters are named type parameters. Type parameters can be used in SystemVerilog classes, interfaces, or modules to provide the basic function of C++ templates.

*Example 2*

```
typedef bit[32] DataT;
interface FIFO #(type T);
    Method T pull();
    Method push (T x);
endinterface: FIFO
```

The generic *non-typed* parameters (or initialization parameters) appear in all languages (procedural or OO) and in particular in VHDL, Verilog, SystemC, and SystemVerilog. A non-typed parameter is like an ordinary (function-parameter) declaration. In SystemC, it represents a constant in a class template definition or a parameter in a class constructor, i.e., this can be determined at compilation time. In VHDL, it is represented by generics. In Verilog or SystemVerilog, it is represented by parameters.

*Example 3*

Here is an example of non-typed parameters usage on a simple GCD model expressed in various languages.

*VHDL*

```
entity GCD is
generic (Width: natural);
port (
    Clock, Reset, Load: in std_logic;
```

```

A,B:      in unsigned(Width-1 downto 0);
Done:     out std_logic;
Y:        out unsigned(Width-1 downto 0));
end entity GCD;

```

*(System)Verilog*

```

module GCD (Clock, Reset, Load, A, B, Done, Y);
parameter Width = 8;
      input      Clock, Reset, Load;
      input      [Width-1:0] A, B;
      output     Done;
      output      [Width-1:0] Y;
...
endmodule

```

*SystemC*

```

template <unsigned int Width = 8>
SC_MODULE (GCD) {
    sc_in<bool> Clock, Reset, Load;
    sc_in<sc_uint<Width>>a, b;
    sc_out<bool> Done;
    sc_out<sc_uint<Width>> y;
...
}

```

These two kinds of parameters (typed and non-typed) can be combined to model complex IP modules.

*Example 4*

In SystemC:

```

template <typename T> // type parameter
class testModule : public sc_module {
public:
    testModule(sc_module_name modnamemodname, string
    portname) :
        // non type parameters
        sc_module(modname),
        testport(portname) {...}
        sc_port<T> testport;
};

```

In a top SystemC netlist design, such a class is instantiated as follows:

```
testModule<bool> test("myModuleName", "port1");
```

### 6.12.6.2.2 Generic parameters mapping in different languages

[Table 4](#) summarizes the two kinds of parameters (initialization and declaration) expressed in the four most commonly used hardware languages.

A *declaration parameter* (e.g., `int`) shall be used when declaring an IP instance in a top netlist (e.g., `myIP int myIntIP;`). An *initialization parameter* (e.g., `myName`) shall be used when initializing the instance of that IP (e.g., `myIntIP("myName");`).

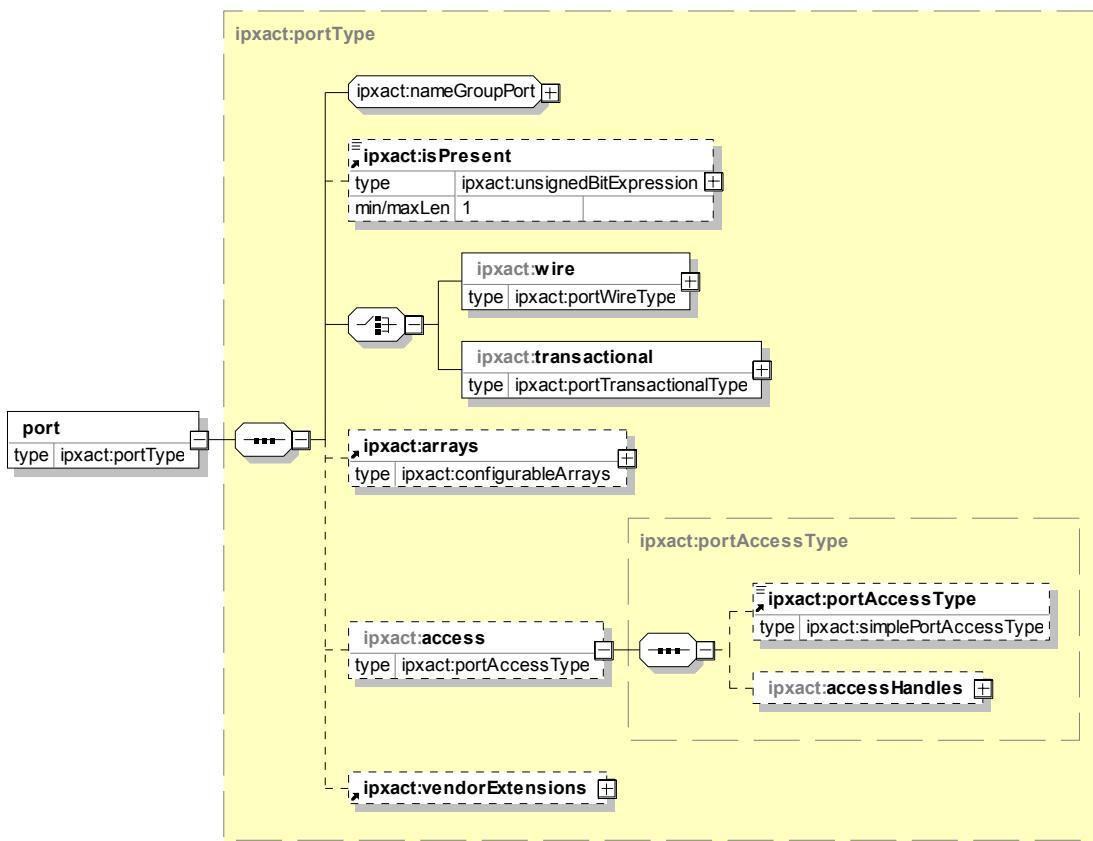
**Table 4—Parameter mappings**

Language	Non-typed parameters (initialization)	Typed parameters (declaration)
VHDL	generics	NA
Verilog	parameter	NA
SystemC	constructor	template (constant or variable type)
SystemVerilog	parameter	parameter

## 6.12.7 Component ports

### 6.12.7.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **ports** element, which may appear within a **component**.



### 6.12.7.2 Description

The **ports** element defines an unbounded list of **port** elements. Each **port** element describes a single external port on the component.

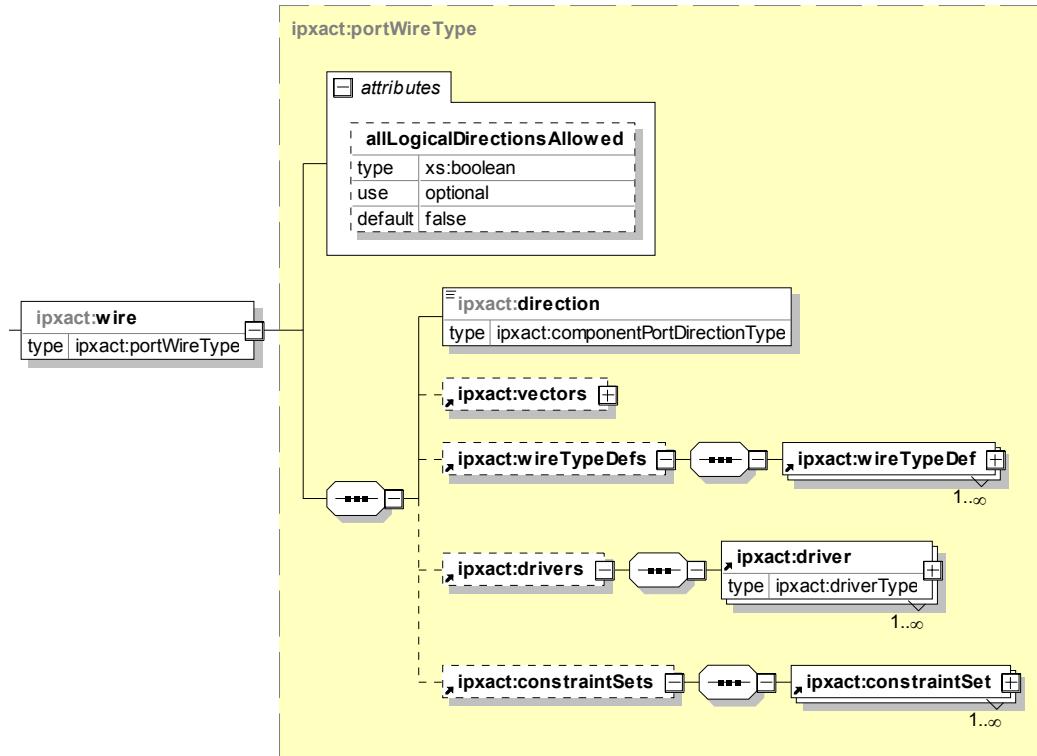
- a) **nameGroupPort** group is defined in [C.15](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **ports** element.

- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) Each **port** shall be described as a **wire** or **transactional** port.
  - 1) **wire** defines ports that transport purely binary values. Values may be aggregated using vectors and/or arrays. See [6.12.8](#).
  - 2) **transactional** defines all other styles of ports, typically used for TLM. See [6.12.17](#).
- d) **arrays** (optional type: *configurableArrays* (see [C.4](#))) specifies dimensions for a port defined as an array.
- e) **access** (optional) defines the access for a port.
  - 1) **portAccessType** (optional; default: **ref**) indicates to a netlister how to access the port. The **portAccessType** has one of two possible values **ref** or **ptr**. If **ref**, a netlister should access the port directly (i.e., by reference), and if **ptr**, it should access the port with a pointer.
  - 2) **accessHandles** (optional) indicates to a netlister the method to be used to access the object representing the port when references need to be done using something other than the simple port name. This is typically a function call. The **accessHandles** element contains a list of **accessHandle** elements of type *leafAccessHandle*. See [C.1.4](#).
- f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the port. See [C.24](#).

## 6.12.8 Component wire ports

### 6.12.8.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **wire** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component/model/port** element.



### 6.12.8.2 Description

The **wire** element describes the properties for ports that are of a wire style. A port can come in two different styles, wire or transactional. A wire port applies for all scalar types (e.g., VHDL `std_logic` and Verilog `wire`) and vectors of scalars. Scalar types in VHDL also include integer and enumeration values; however, scalars in IP-XACT include only binary values that relate to a single wire in a hardware implementation.

A wire port transports purely binary values or vectors of binary values; IP-XACT does not support tri-state or multiple strength values.

The **wire** element contains the following attributes and elements:

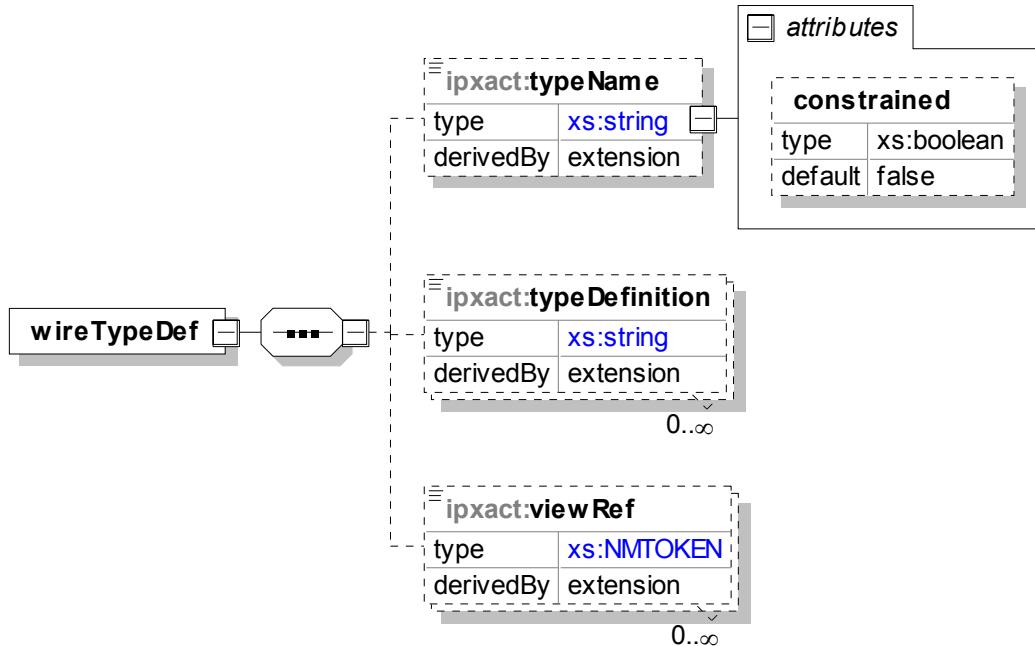
- a) **allLogicalDirectionsAllowed** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) attribute defines whether the port may be mapped to a port in an **abstractionDefinition** with a different direction. See [5.3](#).
- b) **direction** (mandatory) specifies the direction of this port: **in** for input ports, **out** for output ports, and **inout** for bidirectional and tri-state ports. **phantom** can also be used to define a port that exists only on the IP-XACT component, but not on the implementation referenced from the view.
- c) **vectors** (optional) specifies the dimensions for a non-scalar port; see [C.23](#).
- d) **wireTypeDefs** (optional) describes the ports type as defined by the implementation; see [6.12.9](#).
- e) **drivers** (optional) defines an unbounded list of driver elements, defining drivers that may be attached to this port if no other object is connected to this port. This allows the IP to define the default state of unconnected inputs. A wire style port may define a **driver** element for a port only if the direction of the port is **in** or **inout**. See also [6.12.10](#).  
If multiple drivers are specified, the **range** element shall be used to indicate which bits are driven by which driver, and no overlap bit ranges may be specified.
- f) **constraintSets** (optional) defines multiple set of constraints on a port used for synthesis or other operations. See [6.12.14](#).

See also [SCR 6.5](#), [SCR 6.6](#), [SCR 6.7](#), and [SCR 6.12](#).

## 6.12.9 Component wireTypeDef

### 6.12.9.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **wireTypeDef** element, which may appear as an element inside the **wire** element of a top-level wire style **port** element. These elements define the definition type name, where the type is defined, and which views of a component or an abstractor use this type.



### 6.12.9.2 Description

The **wireTypeDef** element describes the type properties for a port per view of a component or abstractor. There can be an unbounded series of **wireTypeDefs** defined for each port, allowing the type properties to be defined differently for each view. If a port does not have **wireTypeDefs**, the default **wireTypeDef** applies for each view (see [Table 6](#)).

**wireTypeDef** contains the following elements:

- typeName** (optional; type: **string**) defines the name of the type for the port. For VHDL, some typical values would be `std_logic` and `std_ulogic`.  
**constrained** (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**) attribute indicates whether or not the number of bits in the type declaration is fixed or not. If the number of bits is fixed (**constrained** is **true**), the bit indices are not required when referencing the type. When **constrained** is **false**, bit indices are required on all references to the type definition. See [6.12.9.2.1](#) and [6.12.9.2.1](#).
- typeDefinition** (optional; type: **string**) contains a language-specific reference to where the given type is actually defined. [Table 5](#) shows some examples. There can be multiple **typeDefinitions** for each port.
- viewRef** (optional; type: **NMTOKEN**) specifies the views to which the **wireTypeDef** applies. See [C.26](#).

**Table 5—typeDefinition examples**

Language	Meaning
VHDL	“Use” statement text ( <code>IEEE.std_logic_1164.all</code> ).
Verilog	Nothing needed, no meaning.
SystemC	Include file name ( <code>systemc.h</code> ).
SystemVerilog	Include file name (if the name does not contain a <code>:</code> ); import package name (if the name contains a <code>:</code> ).

### 6.12.9.2.1 Constrained and unconstrained array types

A *constrained array type* is a type for which the indices of the array have been specified in the definition. An *unconstrained array type* is a type for which the indices of the array have not been specified in the definition. An example of the RTL and corresponding IP-XACT is shown below.

```

type BYTE is array (7 downto 0) of std_logic; -- constrained
type my_logic_vector is array (NATURAL RANGE <>) of std_logic; -- unconstrained
entity example is
    port(
        A: out BYTE;
        B: out my_logic_vector(7 downto 0)
    );
end example;

<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:name>A</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:vectors>
            <ipxact:vector>
                <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left>
                <ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:vector>
        </ipxact:vectors>
        <ipxact:wireTypeDfs>
            <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
                <ipxact:typeName ipxact:constrained="true">BYTE</ipxact:typeName>
                <ipxact:typeDefinition>MYLIB.MYPKG.all</ipxact:typeDefinition>
                <ipxact:viewNameRef>VHDLsimView</ipxact:viewNameRef>
            </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
        </ipxact:wireTypeDfs>
    </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:name>B my_logic_vector</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:vectors>
            <ipxact:vector>
                <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left>
                <ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:vector>
        </ipxact:vectors>
        <ipxact:wireTypeDfs>
            <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
                <ipxact:typeName ipxact:constrained="false">BYTE

```

```

</ipxact:typeName>
<ipxact:typeDefinition>MYLIB.MYPKG.all</ipxact:typeDefinition>
<ipxact:viewNameRef>VHDLsimView</ipxact:viewNameRef>
</ipxact:wireTypeDef>
</ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
</ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>

```

### 6.12.9.2.2 Defaults

**wireTypeDefs** do not need to be defined for every view of a port. IP-XACT provides for these defaults based on the language of the view, as shown in [Table 6](#). For languages not shown here, no defaults can be presumed.

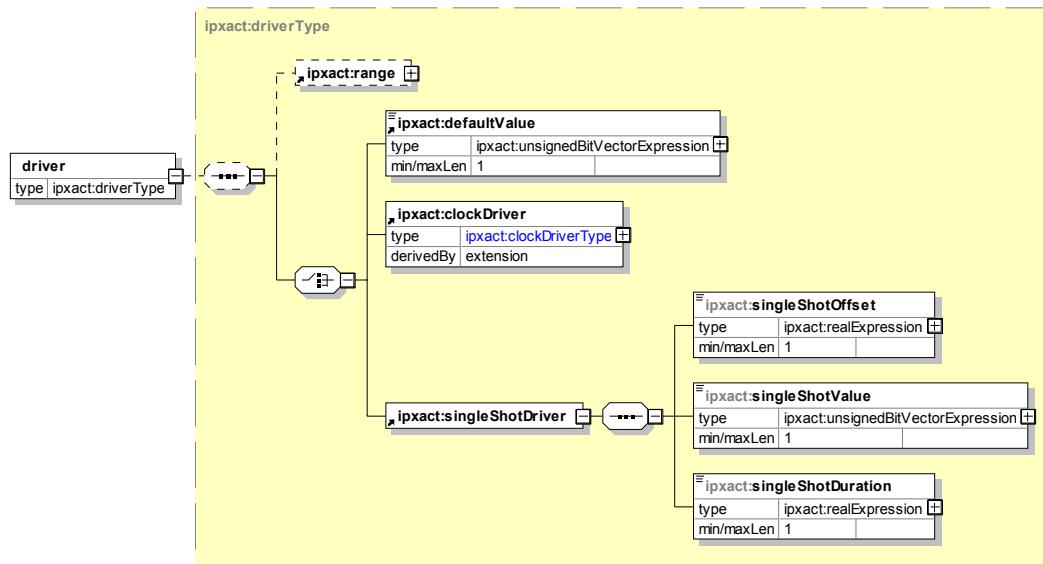
**Table 6—View defaults**

Language	Single bit	Vectors
VHDL	std_logic	std_logic_vector
Verilog	wire	wire
SystemC	sc_logic	sc_lv
SystemVerilog	logic	logic

### 6.12.10 Component driver

#### 6.12.10.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **driver** element, which may appear as an element inside the **wire/driver** element of a top-level wire style **port** element. This element defines the type and value(s) to drive on this port when it is not connected in a design; it is allowed only on ports with the direction **in** or **inout**.

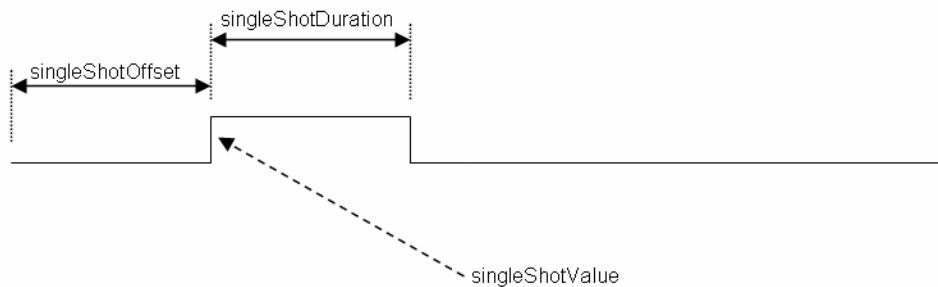


### 6.12.10.2 Description

The **driver** element shall contain one of three different types of drivers (**defaultValue**, **clockDriver**, or **singleShotDriver**) that can be applied to a wire port of a component or abstractor.

- a) **range** (optional) specifies the bit range of the port to which the given **driver** element is to be applied. If not specified, the **driver** applies to the entire port (see [C.22](#)).
- b) A **driver** shall also contain one of the following:
  - 1) **defaultValue** (type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) specifies a static logic value for this port. The **defaultValue** shall be defined to have a bit width that is compatible with the range of the port being driven. The value shall be applied to this port when it is left unconnected, independent of being part of a **busInterface**. This value shall be over-ridden by the default value from the abstraction definition if the interface is connected.
  - 2) **clockDriver** specifies a repeating waveform for the specified bit range of this port. See [6.12.11](#).
  - 3) **singleShotDriver** specifies a non-repeating waveform for this port. When this element is contained within a non-scalar wire port, the single-shot waveform shall apply to all bits of this port. The **singleShotDriver** element contains three elements that describe the properties of the waveform. These are also depicted in [Figure 10](#).
    - i) **singleShotOffset** (mandatory; type: *realExpression* (see [C.3.1](#))) specifies the time delay from the start of the waveform to the transition. This element also contains a **units** (optional) attribute for specifying the units of the time values: **ns** (the default) and **ps**, where **ns** stands for nanosecond and **ps** stands for picosecond.
    - ii) **singleShotValue** (mandatory; type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) specifies the logic value to which the port transitions. This value is also the opposite of the value from which the waveform starts. The value of this element shall be 0 or 1. This element also contains a **units** (optional) attribute for specifying the units of the time values: **ns** (the default) and **ps**, where **ns** stands for nanosecond and **ps** stands for picosecond.
    - iii) **singleShotDuration** (mandatory; type: *realExpression* (see [C.3.1](#))) specifies how long the waveform remains at the value specified by **singleShotValue**.

See also [SCR 6.24](#) and [SCR 12.9](#).

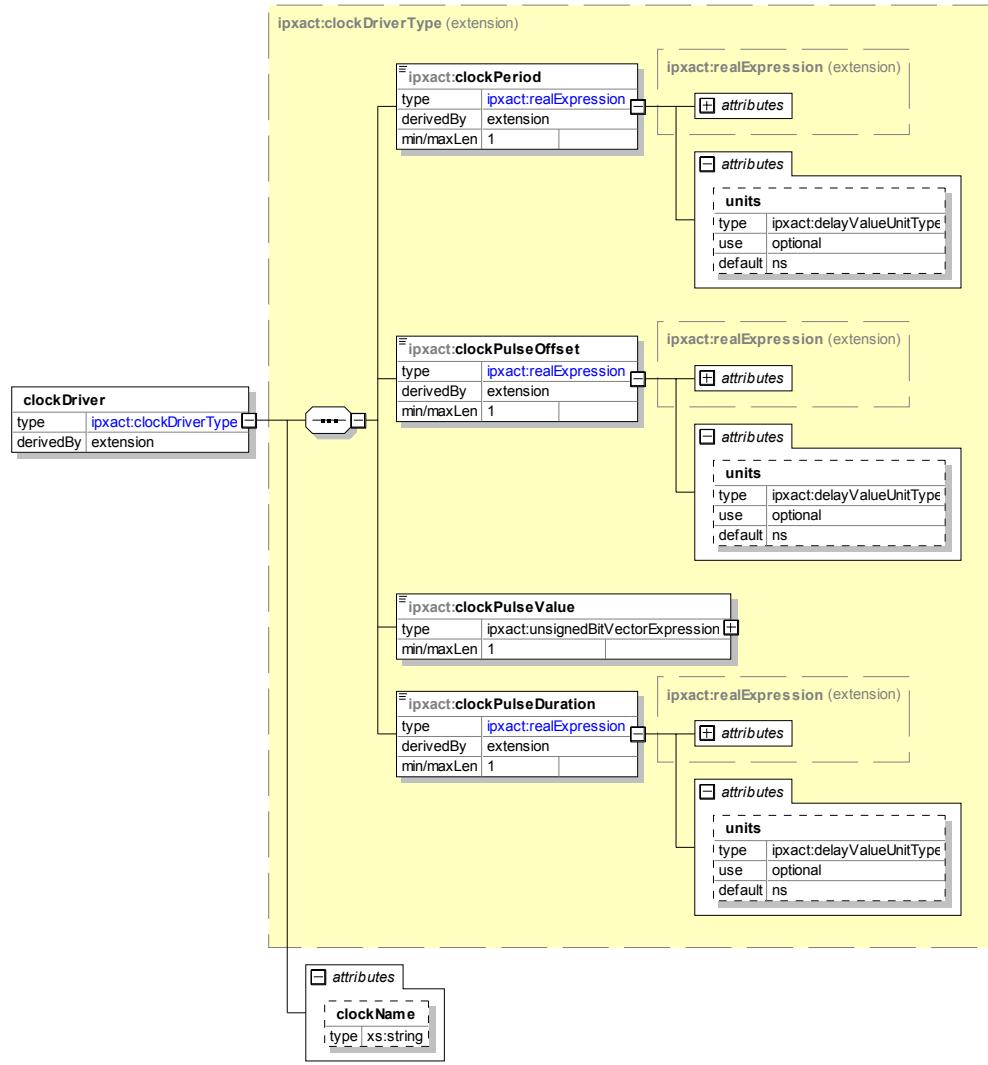


**Figure 10—singleShotDriver elements**

### 6.12.11 Component driver/clockDriver

#### 6.12.11.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **clockDriver** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level wire style **port/wire/driver** element. This element defines the properties of a clock waveform. When this element is contained within a non-scalar wire port, the clock waveform shall apply to all bits of this port.



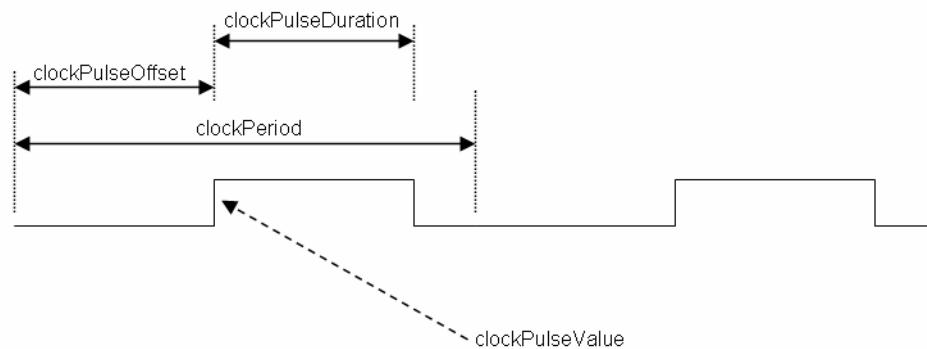
#### 6.12.11.2 Description

The **clockDriver** element contains four elements that describe the properties of a clock waveform (see also [Figure 11](#)). The optional **clockName** attribute (type: **string**) is used to specify a name for the clock being defined when it is different from the name of the enclosing port. A **clockDriver** contains all the following elements:

- a) **clockPeriod** (type: **realExpression** (see [C.3.1](#))) specifies the overall length (in time) of one cycle of the waveform. This element also contains a **units** (optional) attribute for specifying the units of the time values: **ns** (the default) and **ps**, where **ns** stands for nanosecond and **ps** stands for picosecond.

- b) **clockPulseOffset** (type: *realExpression* (see [C.3.1](#))) specifies the time delay from the start of the waveform to the first transition. This element also contains a **units** (optional) attribute for specifying the units of the time values: **ns** (the default) and **ps**, where **ns** stands for nanosecond and **ps** stands for picosecond.
- c) **clockPulseValue** (type: *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))) specifies the logic value to which the port transitions. This value is also the opposite of the value from which the waveform starts. The value of this element shall be 0 or 1.
- d) **clockPulseDuration** (type: *realExpression* (see [C.3.1](#))) specifies how long the waveform remains at the value specified by **clockPulseValue**. This element also contains a **units** (optional) attribute for specifying the units of the time values: **ns** (the default) and **ps**, where **ns** stands for nanosecond and **ps** stands for picosecond.

See also [SCR 12.7](#) and [SCR 12.9](#).



**Figure 11—clockDriver elements**

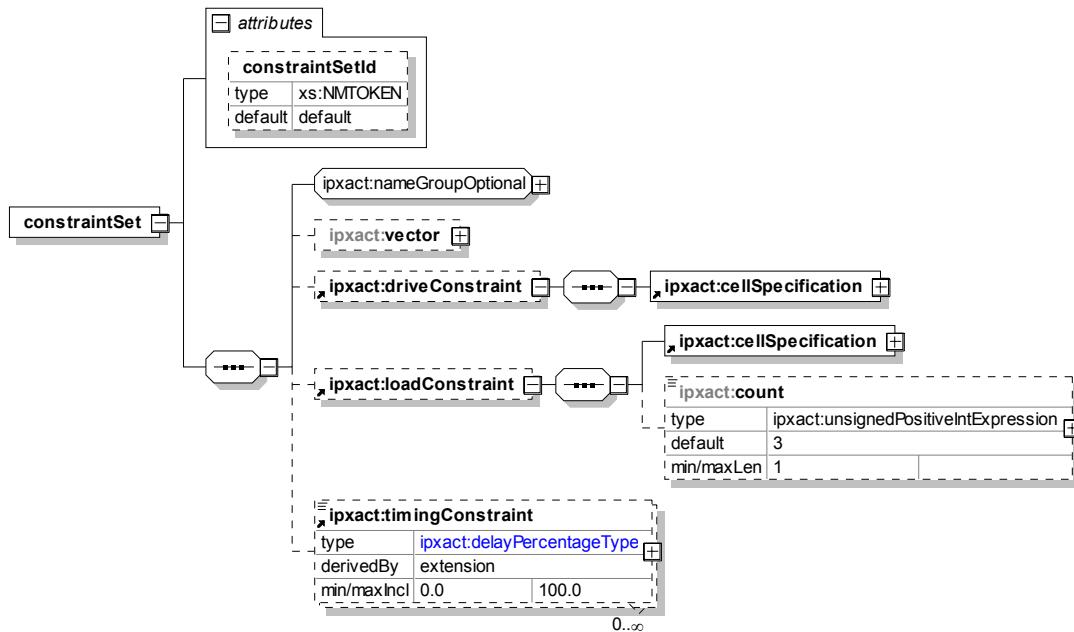
#### 6.12.12 Implementation constraints

Implementation constraints can be defined to document requirements that need to be met by an implementation of the component. Constraints are defined in groups called *constraint sets* (in the IP-XACT element **port/wire/constraintSets/constraintSet**) so different constraints can be associated with different views of the component. A particular set of constraints is tied to a component view by the **constraintSetId** attribute in the constraint set and the matching **constraintSetRef** element in the view.

### 6.12.13 Component wire port constraints

#### 6.12.13.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **constraintSets** element, which may appear within a **wire** element within a component **port** element (**component/model/ports/port/wire**).



#### 6.12.13.2 Description

The **constraintSets** element is used to define technology-independent implementation constraints associated with the containing wire port of the component. The **constraintSets** element contains one or more **constraintSet** elements that define a set of constraints for the port. If more than one **constraintSet** element is present, each shall have a unique value for the **constraintSetId** (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*; default: **default**) attribute so each **constraintSet** can be uniquely referenced from a **view**. **constraintSet** contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroupOptional** is defined in [C.14](#).
- b) **vector** (optional) determines to which bits of a vectored port the constraint applies. The **left** and **right** vector bounds elements inside the **vector** element specify the bounds of the vector. The **left** and **right** elements are of type *nonNegativeInteger*.
- c) **driveConstraint** (optional) defines a drive constraint for this port. The **driveConstraint** element may appear within a **modeConstraints** or **mirroredModeConstraints** element within a wire type port in an abstraction definition or within a **constraintSet** element within a wire type port in a component.

The **driveConstraint** element defines a technology-independent drive constraint associated with the containing wire port of a component or the component port associated with the logical port within an abstraction definition if the **driveConstraint** element is contained within an abstraction definition. The actual constraint consists of a technology-independent specification of a library cell presumed to drive the input port. The **cellSpecification** element defines the cell (see [6.12.15](#)).

The **driveConstraint** element is not valid on an output port.

- d) **loadConstraint** (optional) defines a load constraint for this port. The **loadConstraint** element may appear within a **modeConstraints** or **mirroredModeConstraints** element within a wire type port in an abstraction definition or within a **constraintSet** element within a wire type port in a component.

The **loadConstraint** element defines a technology-independent load constraint associated with the containing wire port of a component or the component port associated with the logical port within an abstraction definition if the **loadConstraint** element is contained within an abstraction definition. The actual constraint consists of two parts: the technology-independent specification of a library cell and a count. **loadConstraint** also contains the following elements:

- 1) **cellSpecification** (mandatory) defines the library cell (see [6.12.15](#)).
- 2) **count** (optional; type: *unsignedPositiveIntExpression* (see [C.3.9](#)); default: **3**) indicates how many loads of the indicated type are modeled as if attached to the output port.

The **loadConstraint** element is not valid on input ports.

- e) **timingConstraint** (optional) defines a timing constraint relative to a clock for this port. See [6.12.14](#).

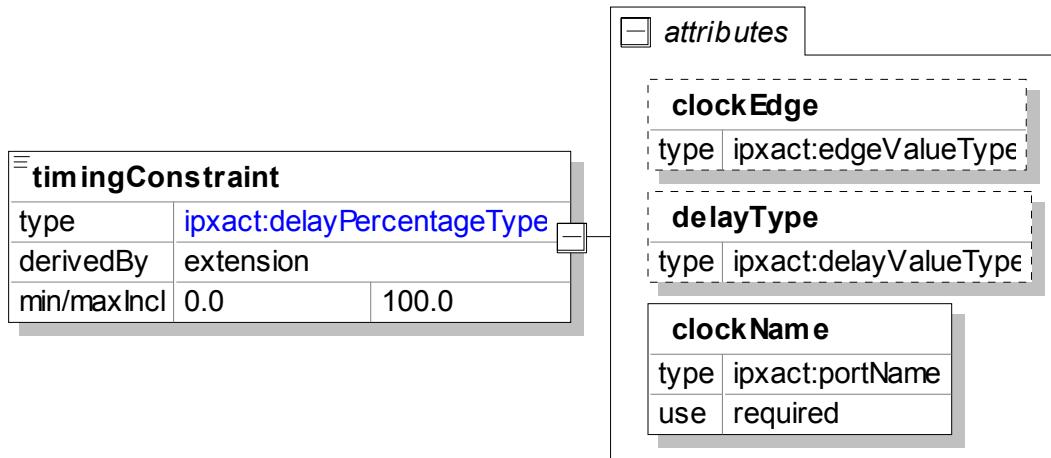
See also [SCR 12.1](#), [SCR 12.2](#), [SCR 12.3](#), [SCR 12.4](#), [SCR 12.5](#), and [SCR 12.6](#).

NOTE—To specify technology-dependent constraints (which are not represented in the schema), use an SDC file and reference the file via **fileSet**.

## 6.12.14 Port timing constraints

### 6.12.14.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **timingConstraint** element, which may appear within a **modeConstraints** or **mirroredModeConstraints** element within a wire type port in an abstraction definition or within a **constraintSet** element within a wire type port in a component.



### 6.12.14.2 Description

The **timingConstraint** element defines a technology-independent timing constraint associated with the containing wire port of a component or abstraction definition. It is of type **delayPercentageType**; the value is a floating point number between 0 and 100, which represents the percentage of the cycle time to be allocated to the timing constraint on the port. If the component port is an input (or the port in an abstraction definition ends up mapping to a physical port with direction **in**), the timing constraint represents an input delay constraint; otherwise, it represents an output delay constraint. **timingConstraint** also contains the following attributes:

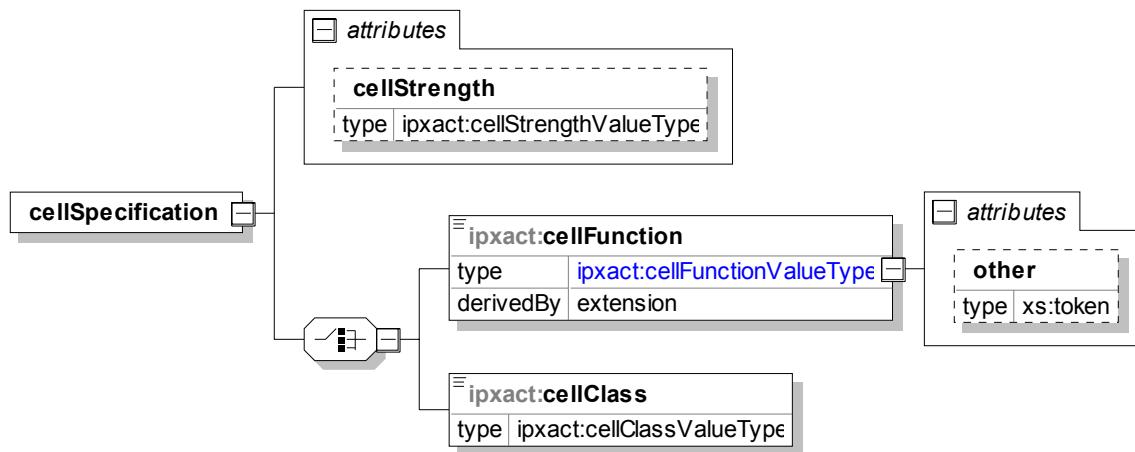
- a) **clockEdge** (optional; default: **rise**) specifies to which edge of the clock the constraint is relative. The default behavior is that the constraint is relative to the rising edge of the clock. The **clockEdge** attribute may have two values **rise** or **fall**.
- b) **delayType** (optional) restricts the constraint to applying to only best-case (minimum) or worst-case (maximum) timing analysis. By default, the constraint is applied to both. The **delayType** attribute may have two values **min** or **max**.
- c) **clockName** (mandatory; type: *portName*) specifies the delay constraint relative to the clock. **clockName** shall be a valid port name or another clock name in the containing description. The cycle time of the referenced clock is what actually determines the actual magnitude of the delay constraint ( $<\text{clock cycle time}> \times 100 / <\text{timing constraint element value}>$ ).

See also [SCR 12.7](#) and [SCR 12.8](#).

### 6.12.15 Load and drive constraint cell specification

#### 6.12.15.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **cellSpecification** element, which may appear within a **loadConstraint** or **driveConstraint** element indicating the type of cell to use in the constraint.



#### 6.12.15.2 Description

The **cellSpecification** element defines a cell in a technology-independent fashion so that drive and load constraints can be defined without referencing a specific technology library. The cell is defined so a DE can map it to an appropriate cell in a specific library when the actual constraint is generated.

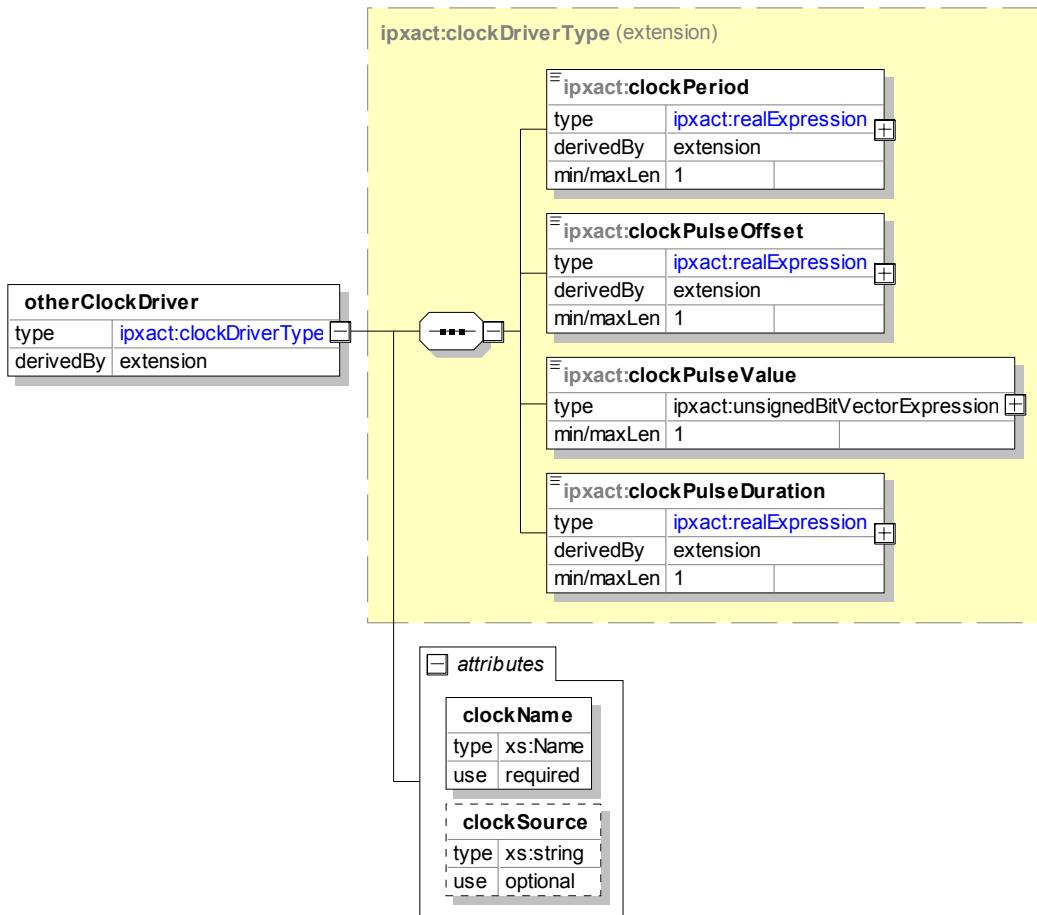
- a) **cellStrength** (optional) specifies the desired strength for this cell.
- b) The **cellSpecification** element shall contain one of the following elements:
  - 1) **cellFunction** specifies a cell function from the user-defined library. The **cellFunction** element shall be one of the following values: **nd2**, **buf**, **inv**, **mux21**, **dff**, **latch**, **xor2**, or **other**.
    - i) The **cellFunction** element contains a **cellStrength** (optional; default: **median**) attribute that provides the cell strength specification. The value shall be one of **low**, **median**, or **high**. **median** implies the middle cell of all the cells that match the desired function, sorted by drive or load strength (as appropriate for the given constraint), is used.

- ii) When the value `other` is used, the `other` attribute (type: `token`) can be set to a user-defined cell function. This attribute should be used only for documentation purposes as user-defined cell values are not guaranteed to be interpreted by DEs.
- 2) **cellClass** specifies a cell class from the user-defined library. The `cellClass` element shall be one of the following values: `combinational` or `sequential`. The `cellClass` element contains a `cellStrength` (optional; default: `median`) attribute that provides the cell strength specification. The value shall be one of `low`, `median`, or `high`. `median` implies the middle cell of all the cells that match the desired class, sorted by drive or load strength (as appropriate for the given constraint), is used.

## 6.12.16 Other clock drivers

### 6.12.16.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the `otherClockDrivers` element, which may appear within a `component` element.



### 6.12.16.2 Description

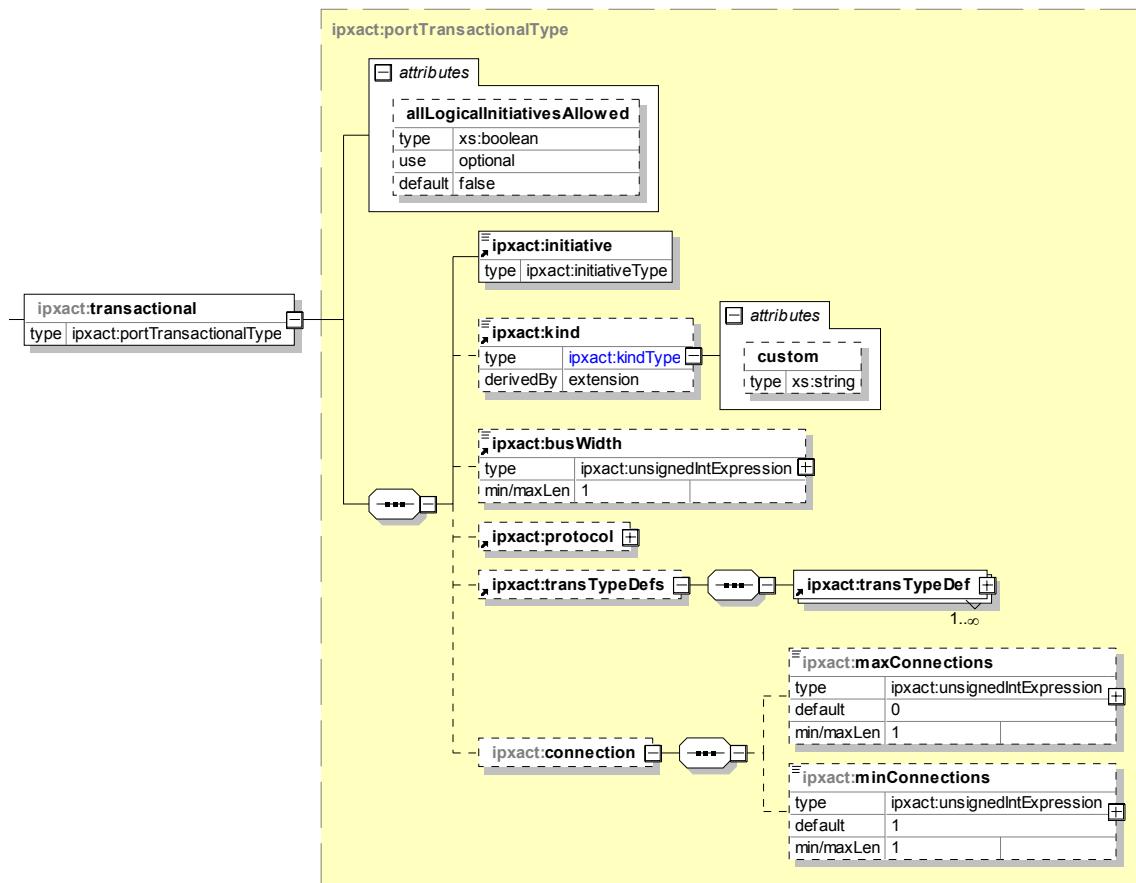
The `otherClockDrivers` element defines clocks within a component that are not directly associated with a top-level port, e.g., virtual clocks and generated clocks. The `otherClockDrivers` element contains one or more `otherClockDriver` elements, each of which represents a single clock. The `otherClockDriver` element consists of a number of subelements that define the format of the clock waveform.

- a) **clockPeriod**, **clockPulseOffset**, **clockPulseValue**, and **clockPulseDuration** (all required) are all detailed in the description of the element **clockDriver**. See [6.12.11](#).
- b) **clockName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute indicating the name of the clock for reference by a constraint.
- c) **clockSource** (optional; type: *string*) attribute defines the physical path and name of the clock generation cell.

### 6.12.17 Component transactional port type

#### 6.12.17.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **transactional** element (in a **component/model/ports/port** element).



#### 6.12.17.2 Description

A **transactional** element in a component model port defines a physical transactional port of the component, which implements or uses a service. A service can be implemented with functions or methods. It contains the following elements:

- a) **allLogicalInitiativesAllowed** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) attribute defines whether the port may be mapped to a port in an **abstractionDefinition** with a different initiative. See [5.3](#).

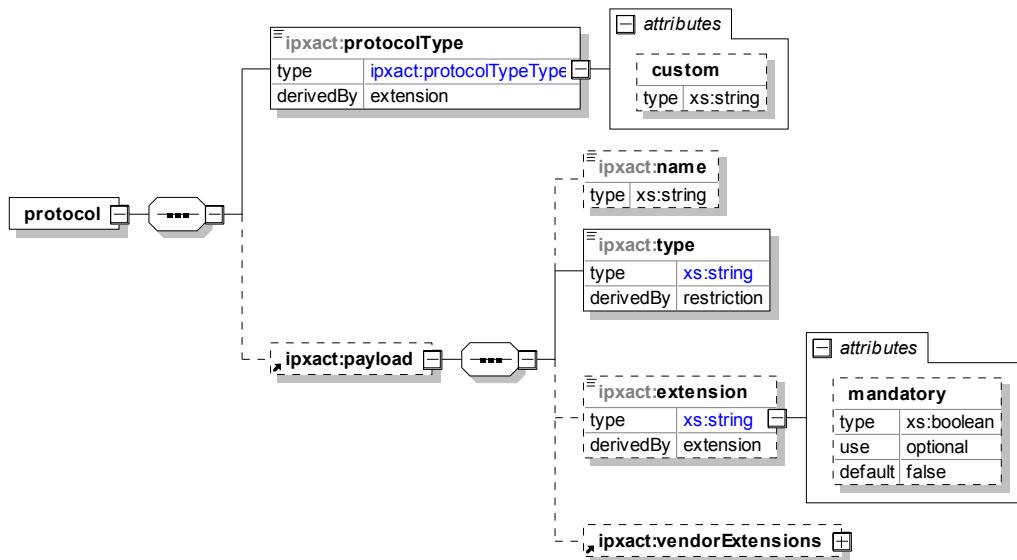
- b) **initiative** (mandatory) defines the type of access: **requires**, **provides**, **both**, or **phantom**.
    - 1) For example, a SystemC **sc\_port** should be defined with the **requires** initiative, since it requires a SystemC interface. A SystemC **sc\_export** should be defined with the **provides** initiative, since it provides a SystemC interface.
    - 2) **both** indicates the type of access is both **requires** and **provides**.
    - 3) **phantom** indicates a phantom port is being defined. See [6.12.21](#).
  - c) **kind** (optional) specifies the transactional port's type. It can take one of the following enum values: **tlm\_port**, **tlm\_socket**, **simple\_socket**, **multi\_socket**, or **custom**. When **custom**, a *name* can be specified in the **custom** (type: **string**) attribute. Also, the **tlm\_port** should be used only for TLM1 notation; the other enum values should be used for TLM2 sockets.
  - d) **busWidth** (optional; type: **unsignedIntExpression** (see [C.3.7](#))) specifies the data width in bits, e.g., 32 or 64.
  - e) **protocol** (optional) characterizes how the information is transported by the transactional port. See [6.12.18](#).
  - f) **transTypeDefs** (optional) defines the port type expressed in the default language for this port. See [6.12.19](#).
  - g) **connection** (optional) defines the number of legal connections for a port.
    - 1) **maxConnections** (optional; type: **unsignedIntExpression** (see [C.3.7](#)); default: **0**) indicating the maximum number of connections that this port supports. 0 indicates an unbounded number of legal connections.
    - 2) **minConnections** (optional; type: **unsignedIntExpression** (see [C.3.7](#)); default: **1**) indicating the minimum number of connections that this ports supports.

See also [SCR 6.2](#), [SCR 6.3](#), [SCR 6.4](#), [SCR 6.13](#), [SCR 6.22](#), and [SCR 6.23](#).

### **6.12.18 Component transactional protocol/payload definition**

## 6.12.18.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **protocol/payload** element (in a **component/model/ports/port/transactional** element).



### 6.12.18.2 Description

A **protocol** element characterizes the communication protocol. It contains a **protocolType** and (optionally) a **payload**. The **protocolType** can be **tlm** or **custom**.

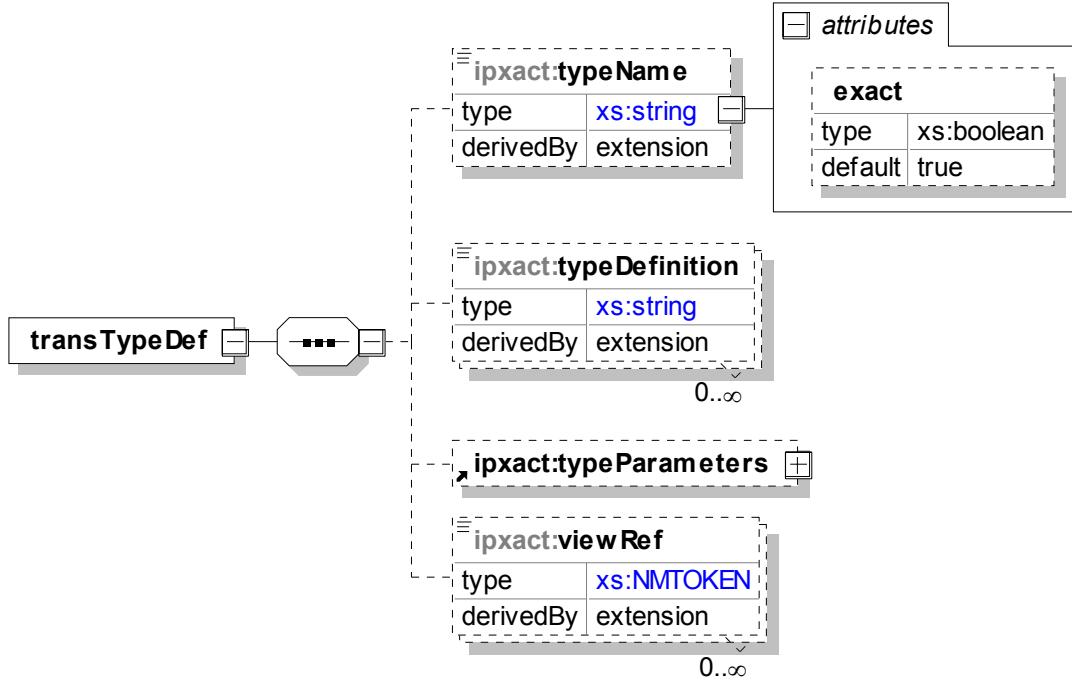
A **payload** element specifies how the information is transported. It contains the following subelements:

- name** (optional; type: *string*) specifies the payload's name.
- type** (mandatory; type: *string*) specifies if this is a **generic** or **specific** typing.
- extension** (optional; type: *string*; default: **optional**) determines if this payload extension is **mandatory** or **optional**.
- vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the service. See [C.24](#).

### 6.12.19 Component transactional port type definition

#### 6.12.19.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **transTypeDef** element (in a **component/model/ports/port/transactional** element).



#### 6.12.19.2 Description

A **transTypeDef** element defines the port type expressed in the default language for this port (e.g., SystemC or SystemVerilog). It contains the following elements:

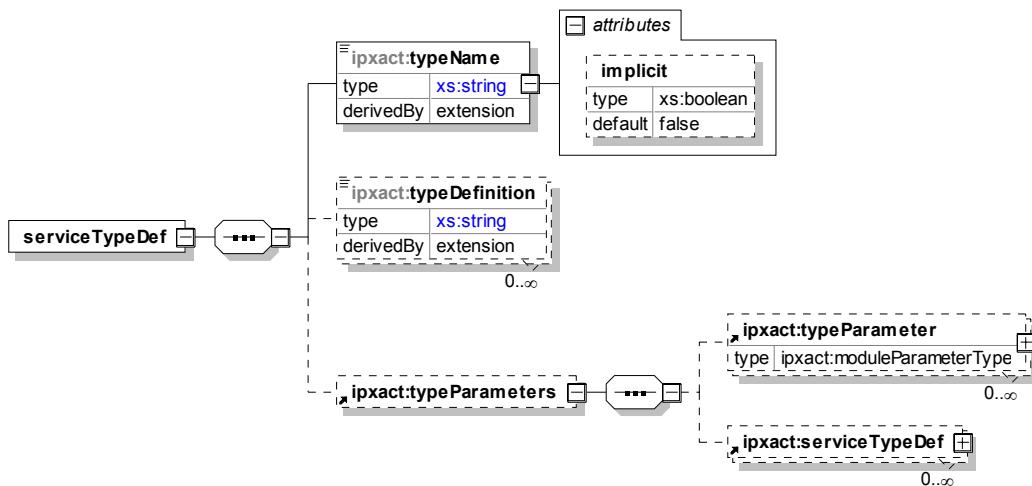
- typeName** (mandatory; type: *string*) defines the port type (such as *sc\_port*/*sc\_export* in SystemC or any user-defined type, such as *tlm\_port*). The **typeName** element may be associated with an optional **boolean exact** attribute (default: **true**). If **false**, this indicates the port type is an abstract type that may not be related to an existing type in the language of the referenced view.

- b) **typeDefinition** (optional; type: *string*) contains a language-specific reference to where the given type is actually defined. [Table 5](#) shows some examples. There can be multiple **typeDefinitions** for each port.
- c) **typeParameters** (optional) specifies a list of port type parameters. See [6.12.20](#).
- d) **viewRef** (optional; type: *NMOKEN*) specifies the views to which the **transTypeDef** applies. See [C.26](#).

## 6.12.20 Component transactional port service

### 6.12.20.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **serviceTypeDef** element (in a **component/model/ports/port/transactional/transTypeDefs/transTypeDef/typeParameters** element).



### 6.12.20.2 Description

A **serviceTypeDef** element describes the interface protocol associated with the transactional port. It contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **typeName** (mandatory; type: *string*) defines the name of the service type (can be any predefined type, such as **boolean** or any user-defined type, such as **addr\_type**). The **typeName** element may be associated with an **boolean implicit** attribute (default: **false**). If **true**, this indicates the service type should not be checked by SCRs.
- b) **typeDefinition** (optional; type: *string*) indicates a location where the type is defined, e.g., in SystemC and SystemVerilog; this is the include file containing the type definition.
- c) **typeParameters** (optional) specifies any service type parameters. **typeParameter** is identical to **moduleParameter** (see [6.12.6](#)). If a **typeParameter** describes the width of the transactional bus, the **typeParameter** element value shall match the **busWidth** element value in the transactional element (see [6.12.17.2](#)).

## 6.12.21 Phantom ports

In some components, the RTL or TLM implementation of the component does not fully implement the functionality of the component described by IP-XACT. In RTL components, this is typically because the component has to work in design flows that allow a signal to be routed through an RTL component only if there is some logic within the RTL component associated with that signal. This is particularly a problem for components containing channels or bridges.

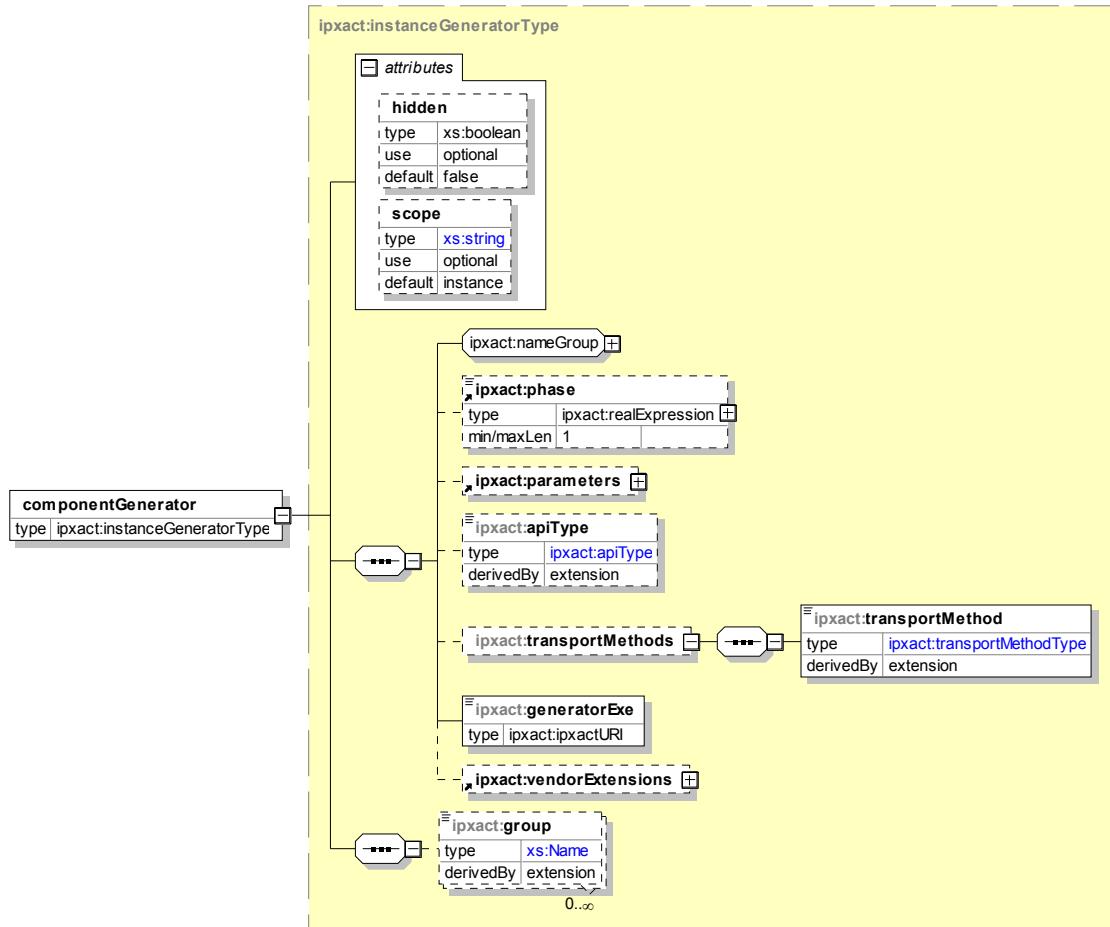
An IP-XACT channel or bridge can represent the complete bus infrastructure between the master, slave, and system bus interfaces connected to the bus. As such, the component containing the channel should contain everything that is needed to create this infrastructure. In many buses, however, some signals are directly connected between the components attached to the bus, with no intervening logic. This is most often the case with clock and reset signals. If the component is to be usable in a wide range of design flows, these signals cannot be included in the RTL of the component.

To fully describe such a channel or bridge component and allow netlisters that have no special knowledge of that bus type to netlist designs containing it, IP-XACT describes these additional connections as phantom ports. *Phantom ports* are additional ports included in the component's port list, but marked as **phantom**. As with real component ports, the mapping of a set of logical bus ports to that phantom port implies any design using that component needs to connect those logical ports with no intervening logic. The difference is a real component port needs to have a corresponding port in any RTL, TLM, or hierarchical IP-XACT implementation of the component; whereas, for phantom ports there is no corresponding port in the implementation.

## 6.13 Component generators

### 6.13.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **componentGenerators** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.13.2 Description

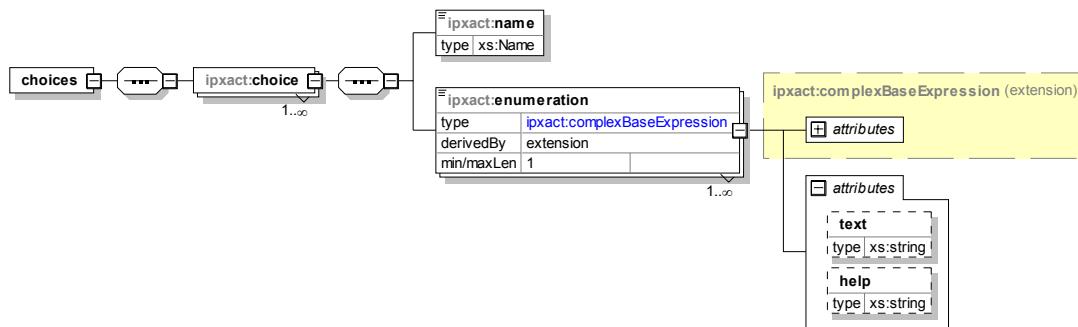
The **componentGenerators** element contains an unbounded list of **componentGenerator** elements. Each **componentGenerator** element defines a generator that is assigned and may be run on this component. **componentGenerator** contains the following attributes and elements:

- a) The **hidden** (optional; type; **boolean**; default: **false**) attribute specifies, when **true**, this generator shall not be run as a stand-alone generator and is required to be run as part of a chain. This generator should not be presented to the user for direct invocation. If **false**, this generator may be run as a stand-alone generator or in a generator chain.
- b) The **scope** (optional; type; **string**; default: **instance**) attribute is an enumerated list of **instance** and **entity**. **instance** indicates this generator shall be run once for all instances of this component. **entity** indicates this generator shall be run once for each instance of this component.
- c) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **componentGenerators** element.
- d) **phase** (optional; type: **realExpression** (see [C.3.1](#))) determines the sequence in which generators are run. Generators are run in order starting with zero (0). If two generators have the same phase number, the order shall be interpreted as not important, and the generators can be run in any order. If no phase number is given, the generator is considered in the “last” phase, and these generators are run in any order after the last generator with a phase number. The **phase** element also shall be a positive number.
- e) **parameters** (optional) specifies any **componentGenerator** parameters. See [C.18](#).
- f) **apiType** (optional, type: **apiType**, default: **TGI\_2014\_BASE**) indicates the type of application programmers interface (API) used by the generator. Allowed values include the following:
  - 1) **TGI\_2014\_BASE** indicates a generator that communicates using the base TGI API defined for this standard.
  - 2) **TGI\_2014\_EXTENDED** indicates a generator that communicates using the base and extended TGI APIs defined for this standard.
  - 3) **TGI\_2009** indicates a generator that communicates using the TGI API defined for IEEE Std 1685-2009. This API is not part of this standard and does not need to be supported by IP-XACT-enabled DEs.
  - 4) **none** indicates the generator does not communicate with the DE.
- g) **transportMethods** (optional) defines alternate SOAP transport protocols that this generator can support. The default SOAP transport protocol is HTTP if this element is not present.  
**transportMethod** specifies an alternate transport protocol. This element is an enumerated list of only one element **file**.
- h) **generatorExe** (mandatory; type: **ipxactURI**) contains an absolute or relative (to the location of the containing document) path to the generator executable. The path may also contain environment variables from the host system, which are used to abstract the location of the generator.
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **componentGenerator**. See [C.24](#).
- j) **group** (optional; type: **Name**) is an unbounded list of names used to assign this generator to a group with other generators. These **group** names are then referenced by a generator chain selector to forming a chain of generators. See [9.1](#).

## 6.14 Choices

### 6.14.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **choices** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component**, **abstractor**, or **generatorChain** element.



### 6.14.2 Description

The **choices** element contains an unbounded list of **choice** elements. Each **choice** element is a list of items used by a **moduleParameter** element, **parameter** element, or any other configurable element with a **choiceRef** attribute. These elements indicate they are using a **choice** element by setting the attribute **choiceRef**. This **choiceRef** attribute shall reference a valid **choice/name** element in the containing description.

The **choice** definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *Name*) specifies the name of this list and is used by other elements for reference. The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **choices** element.
- b) **enumeration** (mandatory; type: *complexBaseExpression* (see [C.3](#))) is an unbounded list of elements, where each holds a possible value that the referencing element may contain.
  - 1) **text** (optional; type: *string*) attribute causes optional text to be displayed when choosing the **choice** value. The resulting value stored in the configurable element corresponds to the enumeration value for the choice. If the **text** attribute is not present, the **enumeration** value may be displayed.
  - 2) **help** (optional; type: *string*) attribute gives any additional information about this enumeration element.

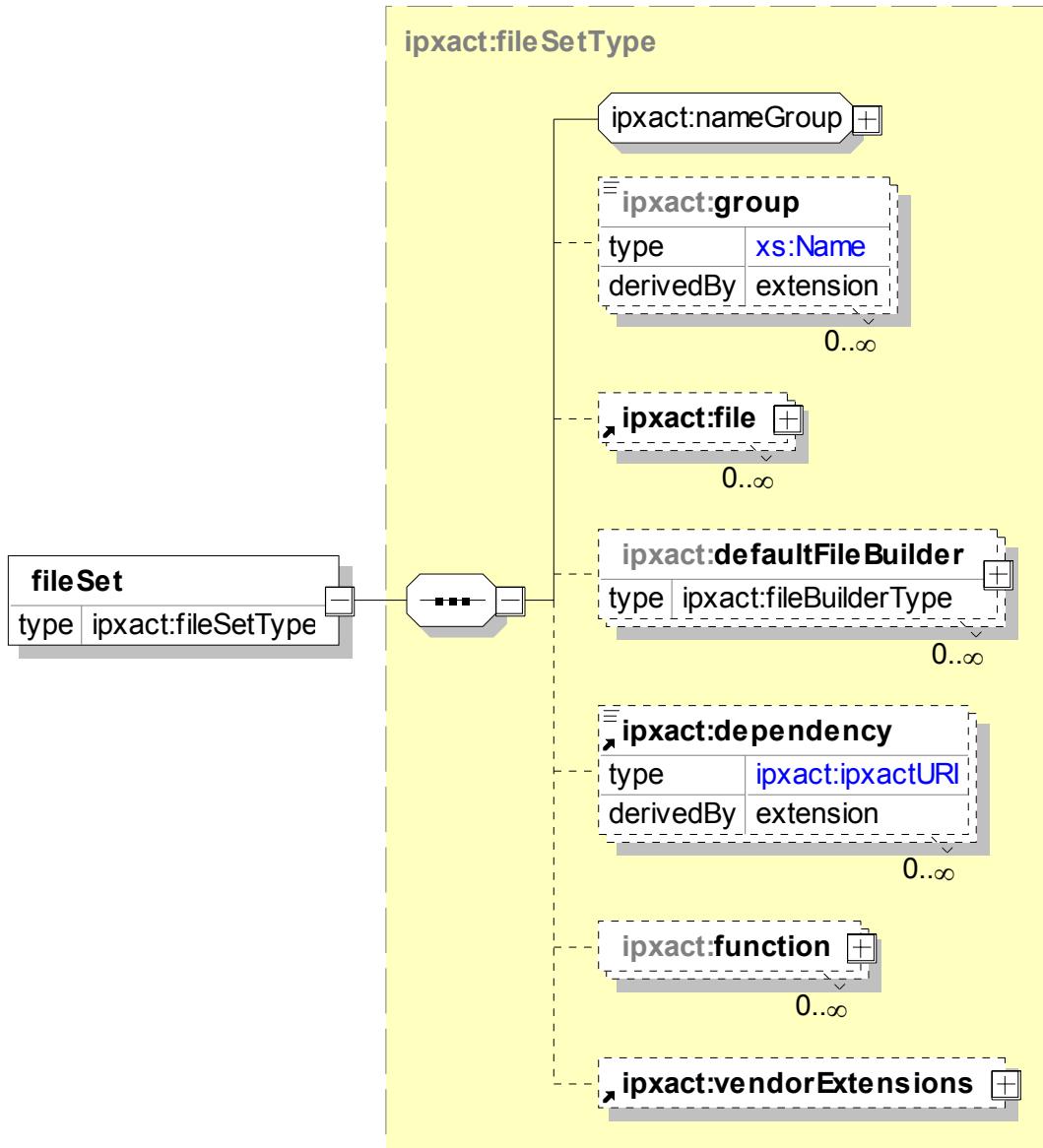
See also [SCR 5.7](#).

## 6.15 File sets

### 6.15.1 fileSets

#### 6.15.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **fileSets** element, which may appear in a component or an abstractor.



#### 6.15.1.2 Description

The **fileSets** element contains one or more **fileSet** elements. A **fileSet** contains a list of files and directories associated with a component and/or instructions for further processing. If compilation order is important (e.g., for VHDL files), the files shall be listed in the order needed for compilation (the files to compile first are listed first). **fileSet** has the following mandatory and optional elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **fileSets** element.
- b) **group** (optional; type: *Name*) describes the function or purpose of the file set with a single unbounded word group name (e.g., `diagnostics`, `interrupt`).
- c) **file** (optional) references a single unbounded file or directory associated with the file set. If compilation order is important (e.g., for VHDL files), the files shall be listed in the order needed for compilation (see [6.15.2](#)).
- d) **defaultFileBuilder** (optional) specifies the unbounded default build commands for the files within this file set. See [6.15.4](#).
- e) **dependency** (optional; type: *ipxactURI*) is the path to a directory containing (include) files on which the file set depends.
- f) **function** (optional) specifies the unbounded information about a software function for a generator (see [6.15.5](#)).
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) provides a place for any vendor-specific extensions. See [C.24](#).

## 6.15.2 file

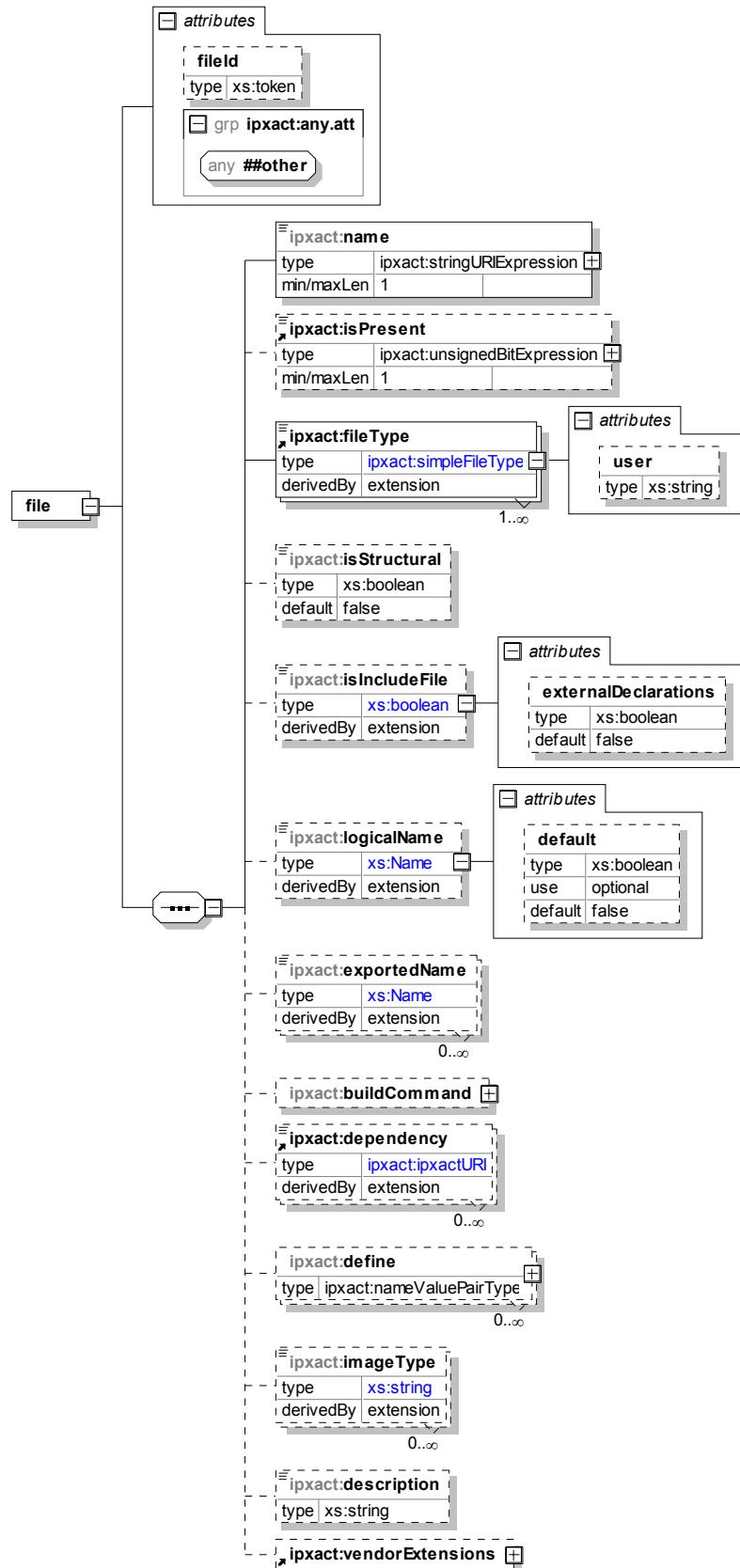
### 6.15.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **file** element, which may appear as an element inside the **fileSet** element.

### 6.15.2.2 Description

A **file** is a reference to a file or directory. It is an optional element of a **fileSet**. If compilation order is important (e.g., for VHDL files), the files shall be listed in the order needed for compilation (the files to compile first are listed first). The **file** element contains an attribute **fileId** (optional; type: *token*) that is used for references to this file from inside the **fileSet/function/fileRef** element. The **file** element also allows for vendor attributes to be applied. **file** contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *stringURIExpression* (see [C.3.4](#)) contains an absolute or relative (to the location of the containing document) path to a file name or directory. The path may also contain environment variables from the host system in the form of \${ENV\_VAR}, used to abstract the location of files. See also [D.11](#).
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **fileType** (mandatory) group contains one or more of the elements defined in [C.8](#).
- d) **isStructural** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) indicates this file contains only structural RTL. This is a content hint for any tools processing this file.
- e) **includeFile** (optional; type: *boolean*), when **true**, declares the file as an include file. If this element is not present the default value is **false**. **includeFile** has an attribute **externalDeclarations** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**); when **true**, this indicates the include file is needed by users of any files in this file set.
- f) **logicalName** (optional; type: *Name*) is the logical name for the file or directory, such as a VHDL library. **logicalName** includes an attribute **default** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**) that means (when **true**) the logical name shall be used only as a default and another process may override this name. If **false**, this logical name shall always be used.
- g) **exportedName** (optional; type: *Name*) defines any names that can be referenced externally.
- h) **buildCommand** (optional) contains flags or commands for building the containing source file. These flags or commands override any flags or commands present in higher-level **defaultFileBuilder** elements. See [6.15.3](#).

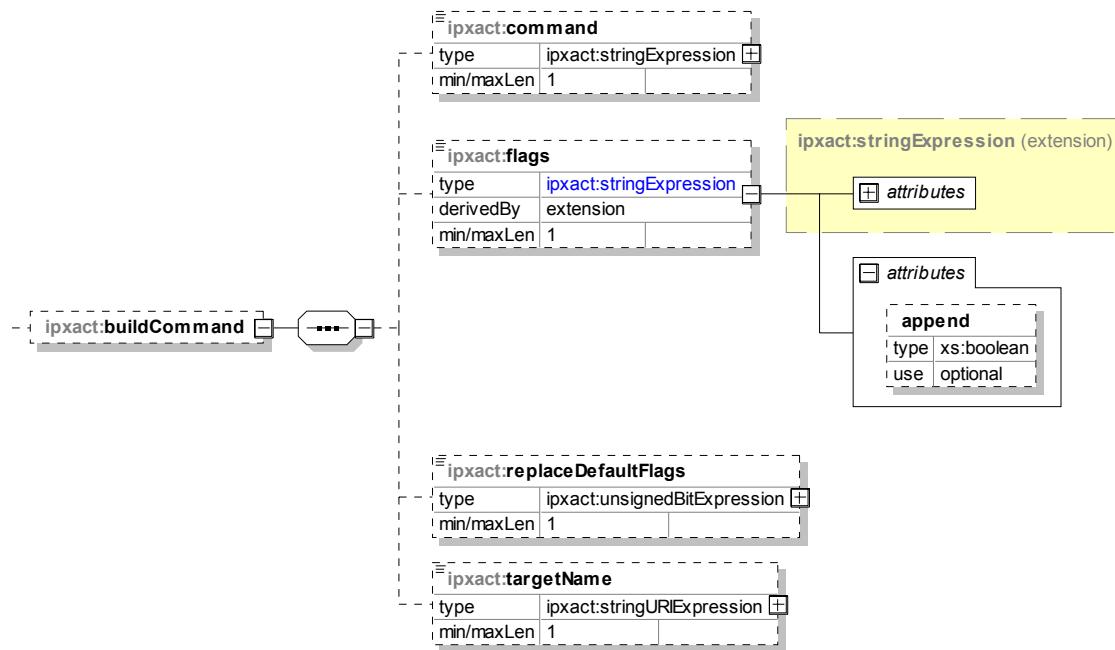


- i) **dependency** (optional; type: *ipxactURI*) is the path to a directory containing (include) files on which the file depends.
  - j) **define** (optional; type: *nameValuePairType* (see [C.17](#))) specifies the define symbols to use in the source file. This **define** element allows vendor attributes to be applied.
  - k) **imageType** (optional; type: *string*) relates the current file to an executable image type in the design.
  - l) **description** (optional; type: *string*) details the file for the user.
  - m) **vendorExtensions** (optional) provides a place for any vendor-specific extensions. See [C.24](#).

### 6.15.3 buildCommand

### **6.15.3.1 Schema**

The following schema details the information contained in the **buildCommand** element, which may appear as an element inside the **file** element.



### **6.15.3.2 Description**

A **buildCommand** contains flags or commands for building the containing source file. These flags or commands override any flags or commands present in higher-level **defaultFileBuilder** elements.

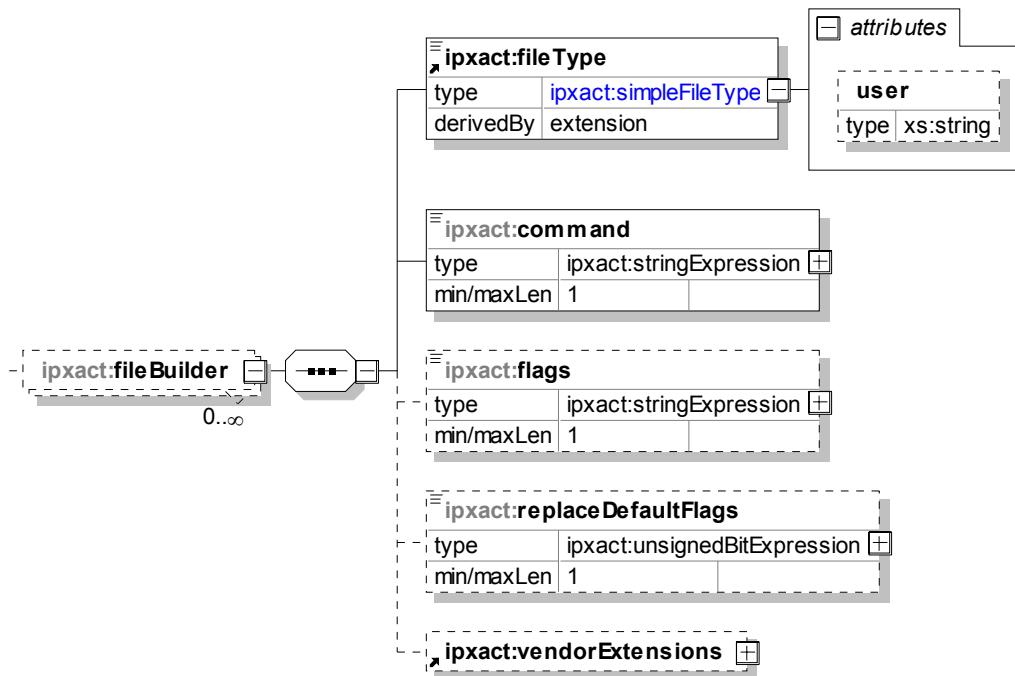
- a) **command** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) element defines a compiler or assembler tool that processes files of this type.
  - b) **flags** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) documents any flags to be passed along with the software tool command. The **flags** element contains an attribute **append** (optional; type: *boolean*), which when **true**, indicates the **flags** shall be appended to the current flags from the **defaultFileBuilder** (see [6.15.4](#)), **fileBuilder** (see [6.8.5](#)), or the build script generator. If **false**, the **flags** shall replace the existing flags.
  - c) **replaceDefaultFlags** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#))), when **true**, documents flags that replace any of the default flags from the build script generator. If **false**, the flags are appended. If **true** and the **flags** element is empty or not present, this has the effect of clearing all the flags. If this element is not present, its effective value is **false**.

- d) **targetName** (optional; type: *stringURIExpression* (see [C.3.4](#))) defines the path to the file derived from the source file.

#### 6.15.4 defaultFileBuilder

##### 6.15.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **defaultFileBuilder** element, which may appear as an element inside the **fileSet** or **view** element.



##### 6.15.4.2 Description

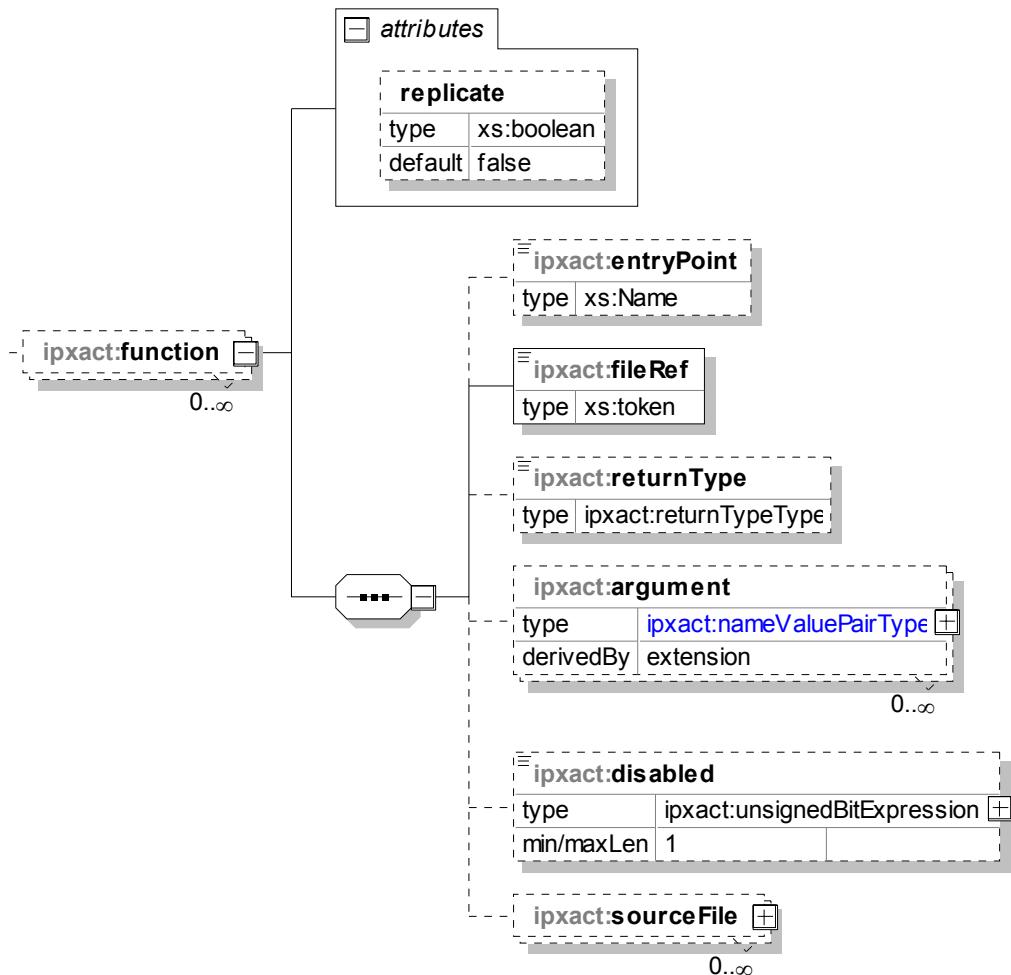
A **defaultFileBuilder** contains default flags or commands for building the containing source file types. These flags or commands may be overridden by flags or commands present in lower-level **defaultFileBuilder** or **buildCommand** elements.

- a) **fileType** (mandatory) group contains one or more of the elements defined in [C.8](#). If the **fileType** is set to **other**, the optional attribute **other** (type: *string*) can be set to indicate a user-defined file type. No semantic meaning is inferred from the user-defined file type.
- b) **command** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) element defines a compiler or assembler tool that processes files of this type.
- c) **flags** (optional; type: *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))) documents any flags to be passed along with the software tool command.
- d) **replaceDefaultFlags** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#))) when **true** indicates the **flags** shall be appended to the current flags. If **false**, the **flags** shall replace the existing flags.
- e) **vendorExtensions** (optional) provides a place for any vendor-specific extensions. See [C.24](#).

## 6.15.5 function

### 6.15.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **function** element, which may appear as an element inside the **fileSet** element.



### 6.15.5.2 Description

A **function** specifies information about a software function. **function** contains the **replicate** attribute (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**); when set to **true**, the generator compiles a separate object module for each instance of the component in the design. This allows the function to be called with different attributes for each instance within the design (e.g., base address). **function** has the following elements:

- a) **entryPoint** (optional; type: **Name**) is the entry point name for the function or subroutine.
- b) **fileRef** (mandatory type: **token**) reference to the file that contains the entry point for the function. The value of this element shall match an attribute in **file/fileId**. See [6.15.2](#).
- c) **returnType** (optional) is an enumerated **string** type that indicates the return type for the function. The two possible values are **int** and **void**.
- d) **argument** (optional; type: **nameValuePairType** (see [C.17](#))) specifies the arguments passed to the **function** when making a call. All arguments shall be passed in the order presented in this

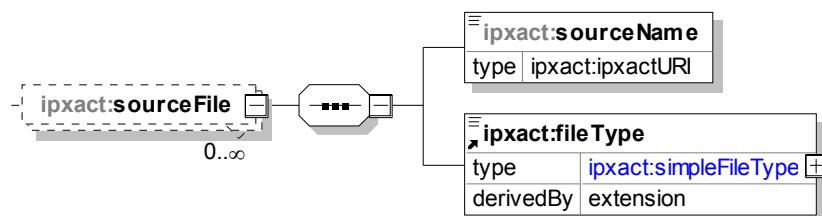
description. The **dataType** (mandatory) attribute specifies the type for this argument, e.g., an `int` or `boolean`. The **argument** element also allows for vendor attributes to be applied.

- e) **disabled** (optional; type: `unsignedBitExpression` (see [C.3.5](#))) disables the software function. When `true`, the software function is not available for use. When `false`, the function is available. If this element is not present, its effective value is `false`.
- f) **sourceFile** (optional) references any source files. The order of the source files may be important, as this could indicate a compile order. See [6.15.6](#).

## 6.15.6 sourceFile

### 6.15.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **sourceFile** element, which may appear as an element inside the **function** element.



### 6.15.6.2 Description

The **sourceFile** element specifies the location of the source files for this **function**. All source files shall be processed in the order presented in this description.

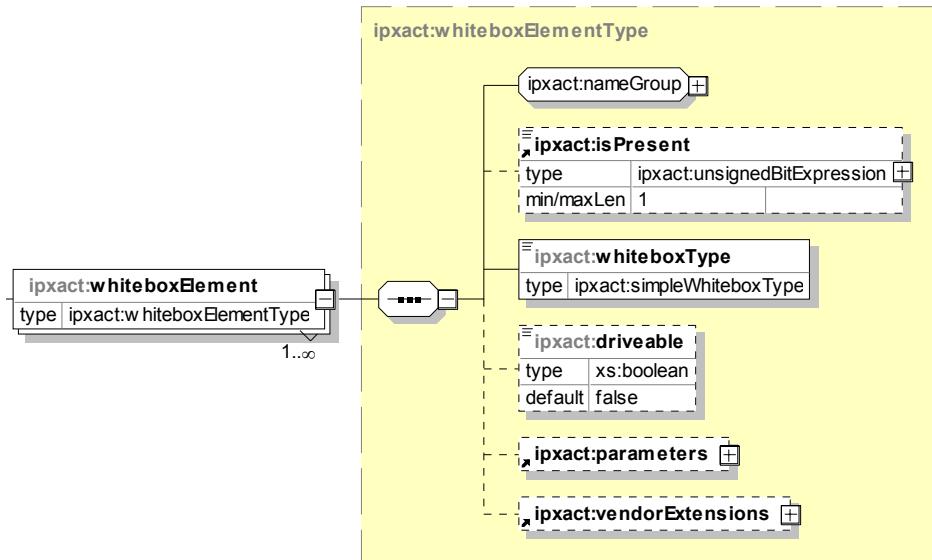
- a) **sourceName** (mandatory; type: `ipxactURI`) contains an absolute or relative (to the location of the containing document) path to a file name or directory. The path may also contain environment variables from the host system, used to abstract the location of files.
- b) **fileType** (mandatory) group contains one or more of the elements defined in [C.8](#). If the **fileType** is set to other, the optional attribute **other** can be set to indicate a user-defined file type. No semantic meaning is inferred from the user-defined file type.

## 6.16 White box elements

Verification IP (VIP), with monitor bus interfaces, connect to an active bus interface to monitor only that interface's protocol for a variety of uses. Other verification tools may require access to component IP in a design, at a level deeper than the interfaces defined for the component. A white box element provides such access. This can be used in situations where internal registers, pins, signals, or whole IP-XACT interfaces need to be monitored or driven by VIP.

### 6.16.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **whiteboxElements** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.16.2 Description

The **whiteboxElements** element contains a list of one or more **whiteboxElement** elements. Each **whiteboxElement** element contains the following elements:

- nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **whiteboxElements** element.
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- whiteboxType** (mandatory) documents this white box element's referent: a **pin**, **signal**, or **interface** within the component. **pin** indicates a port on an internal instance in this component can be mapped to physical signals. **signal** indicates a signal between two internal instances in this component can be mapped to physical signals. **interface** indicates a group of signals that can be addressed as a single name.

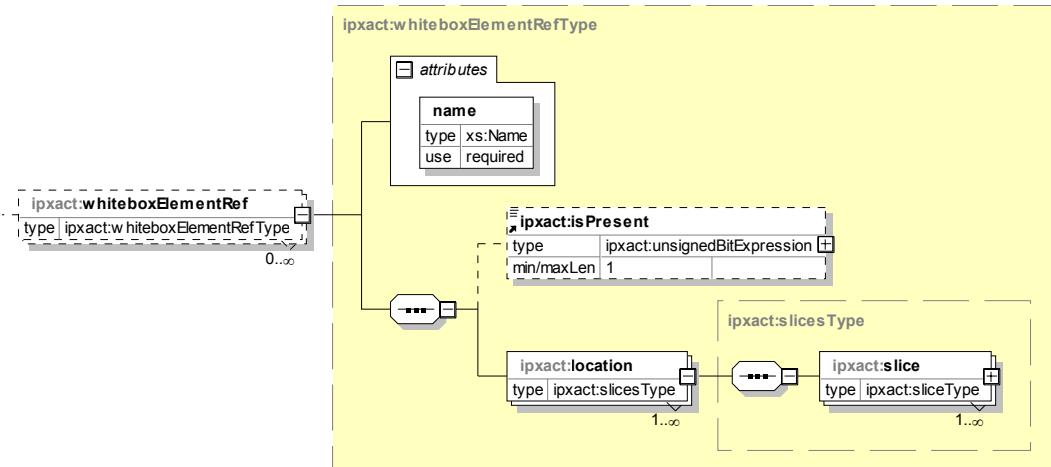
In each case, the view-specific path is contained in the matching **model/view/whiteboxElementRef** element.

- driveable** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: **false**), when **true**, indicates the white box describes a point within the IP that can be driven, i.e., forced to a new value. If **false**, the white box references a point that cannot be driven. If this element is not present, its effective value is **false**.
- parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter names and types for a white box that can be parameterized. See [C.18](#).
- vendorExtensions** (optional) provides a space for any vendor-specific extensions. See [C.24](#).

## 6.17 White box element reference

### 6.17.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **whiteboxElementRefs** element, which may appear as an element inside the **component/model/instantiations/component** element.



### 6.17.2 Description

The **whiteboxElementRefs** element contains a list of one or more **whiteboxElementRef** elements. The **whiteboxElementRef** makes a reference to a **whiteboxElement** of the component and defines the view-specific path to the element. The **name** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute identifies the **whiteboxElement** in the containing component to which the following **location** applies. **whiteboxElement** element contains the following elements:

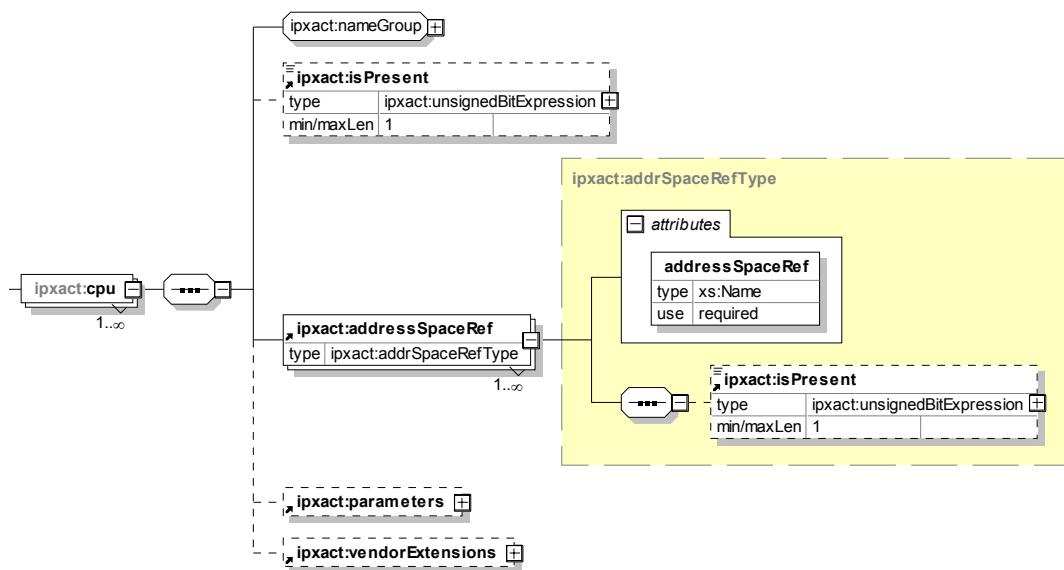
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- location** (mandatory) specifies the HDL-specific path(s) to be associated with the indicated **whiteboxElement**. A **location** element defines a HDL path to the HDL representation of the IP-XACT object. If there are multiple **location** elements, the IP-XACT object has several copies in the HDL. Each **location** element contains one or more **slice** elements. (see [C.1.5](#)).

See also [SCR 16.3](#).

## 6.18 CPUs

### 6.18.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **CPU**s element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.18.2 Description

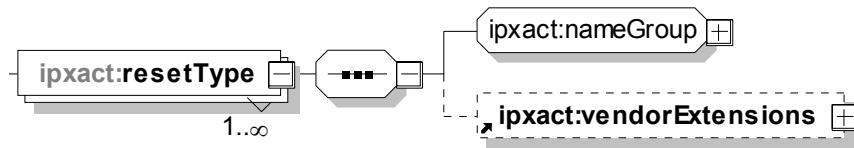
The **cpus** element contains an unbounded list of **cpu** elements for the containing component. The **cpu** element describes a containing component with a programmable core that has some sized address space. That same address space may also be referenced by a master interface and used to create a link for the programmable core to know from which interface transaction the software departs.

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **component** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **addressSpaceRef** (mandatory) contains an attribute to describe information about the range of addresses with which the master interface related to this **cpu** can generate transactions.
  - 1) **addressSpaceRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute references a name of an address space defined in the same component. The address space defines the range and width for transaction on this interface. See [6.8.1](#).
  - 2) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- d) **parameters** (optional) specifies any **cpu**-type parameters. See [C.18](#).
- e) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **cpu**. See [C.24](#).

## 6.19 Reset types

### 6.19.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **resetTypes** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **component** element.



### 6.19.2 Description

The **resetTypes** element contains an unbounded list of **resetType** elements for the containing component. The **resetType** element describes any user-defined reset types referenced within field reset elements. The reset type named **HARD** is the default and should be treated as being pre-defined. It is not legal to explicitly define a **resetType** element using that name. Register fields that do not reference a reset type are presumed to be of type HARD reset. A **resetType** contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** element shall be unique within the containing **component** element.
- b) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **resetType**. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 7.20](#).



## 7. Design descriptions

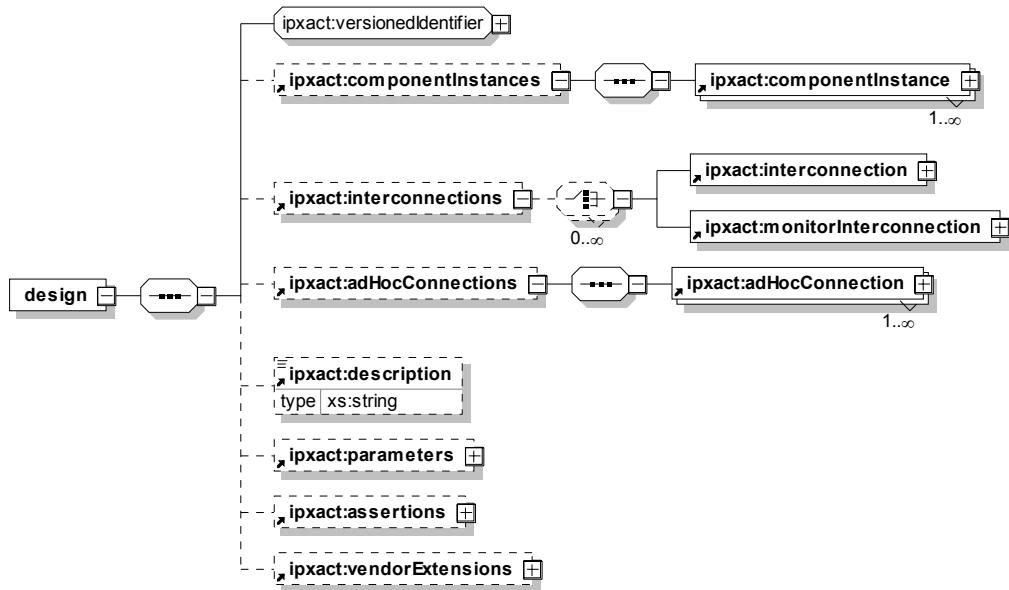
## 7.1 Design

An IP-XACT *design* is the central placeholder for the assembly of component objects meta-data. A design describes a list of components referenced by this description, their configuration, and their interconnections to each other. The interconnections may be between interfaces or between ports on a component. A design description is analogous to a schematic of components.

While a design description, with referenced components and interconnections, describes most of the information for a design, some information is missing, such as the exact port names used by a bus interface. To resolve this a component description (referred to as a *hierarchical component*) is used. This *component description* contains a view with a reference to the design description. Together, the component and referenced design description form a complete single-level hierarchical description. From this point, it is simple to create additional hierarchical descriptions by including hierarchical component description in design descriptions.

### 7.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **design** element, which is one of the top-level elements of the schema.



### **7.1.2 Description**

The **design** element describes a list of referenced components, their configuration, and interconnections to each other. Each element of a **design** is detailed in the rest of this clause; the main sections of a **design** are as follows:

- a) ***versionedIdentifier*** group provides a unique identifier, made up of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
  - b) **componentInstances** (optional) contains an unbounded list of **componentInstance** elements, documenting components that are instantiated (referenced) inside the design (see [7.2](#)).

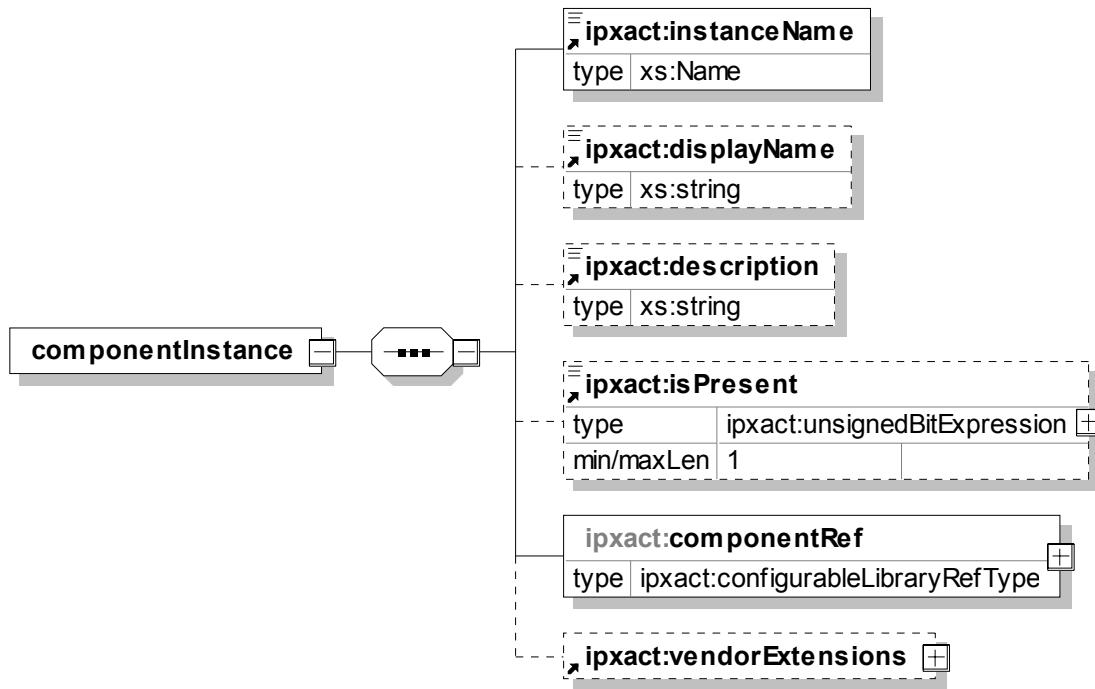
- c) **interconnections** (optional) contains the connections between bus interfaces of components listed inside the design. The **interconnection** element is used to document “active” and hierarchical interface connections, and the **monitorInterconnection** element is used to document a connection between an active interface and a monitor interface (see [7.3](#)).
- d) **adHocConnections** (optional) contains an unbounded list of **adHocConnection** elements, documenting connections between component ports listed inside this design (see [7.5](#)).
- e) **description** (optional) allows a textual description of the design. The **description** element is of type **string**.
- f) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this **design**. See [C.18](#).
- g) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- h) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.10](#).

## 7.2 Design component instances

### 7.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **componentInstances** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **design** element.



### 7.2.2 Description

The **componentInstance** element documents the existence of a component in a design. This element contains the following subelements:

- a) **instanceName** (mandatory; type: **Name**) assigns a unique name for this instance of the component in this design. The value of this element shall be unique inside a **design** element.

- b) **displayName** (optional type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the instance.
- c) **description** (optional type: *string*) allows a textual description of the instance.
- d) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- e) **componentRef** (mandatory; type *configurableLibraryRefType* (see [C.6](#))) is a reference to a component description (see [6.1](#)) for this component instance. The **componentRef** element contains four attributes to specify a unique VLVN and an optional **configurableElementValues** element, which is used to document values for parameters to be passed into the referenced document.
- f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.9](#), [SCR 5.3](#), [SCR 5.12](#), and [SCR 15.13](#).

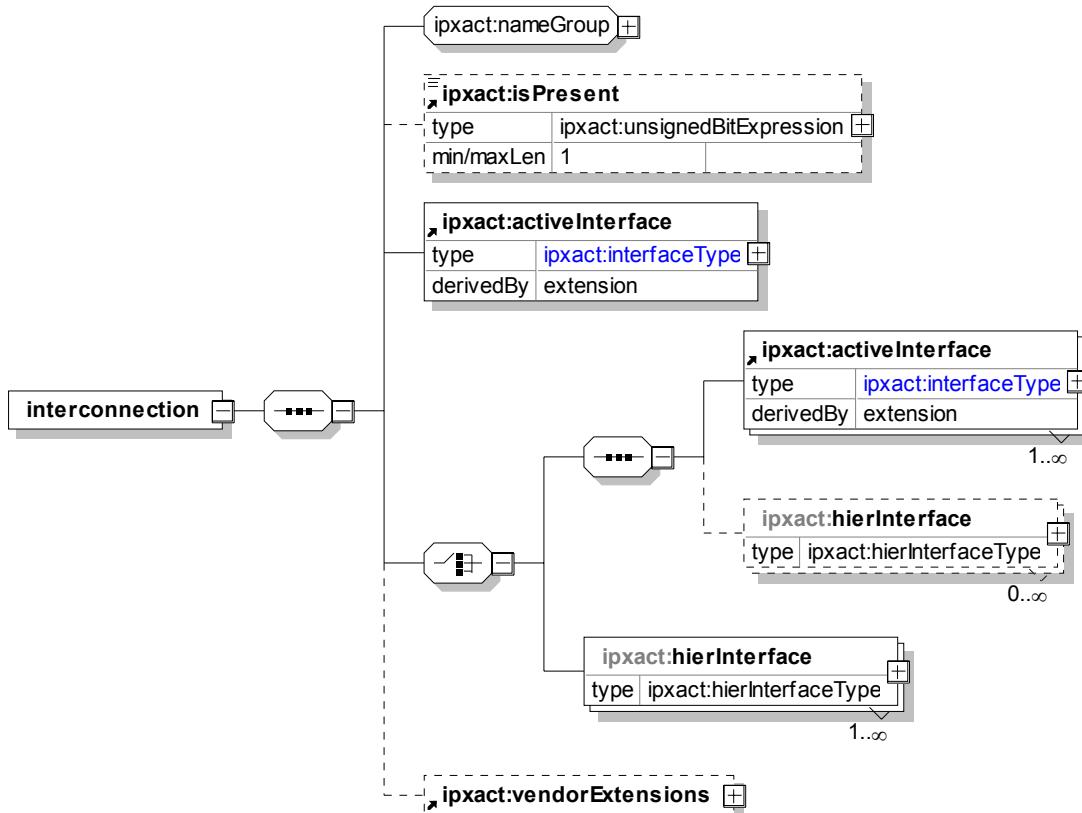
## 7.3 Design interconnections

The **interconnections** element contains an unbounded list of **interconnection** (see [7.3.1](#)) and **monitorInterconnection** (see [7.3.2](#)) elements. The **interconnections** element may appear as an element inside the top-level **design** element. For further description on interface connections, see [6.3.5](#).

### 7.3.1 interconnection

#### 7.3.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **interconnection** element, which may appear as an element inside the **interconnections** element.



### 7.3.1.2 Description

The **interconnection** element specifies a connection between one bus interface of a component and another bus interface of a component. Each interconnection contain the following elements:

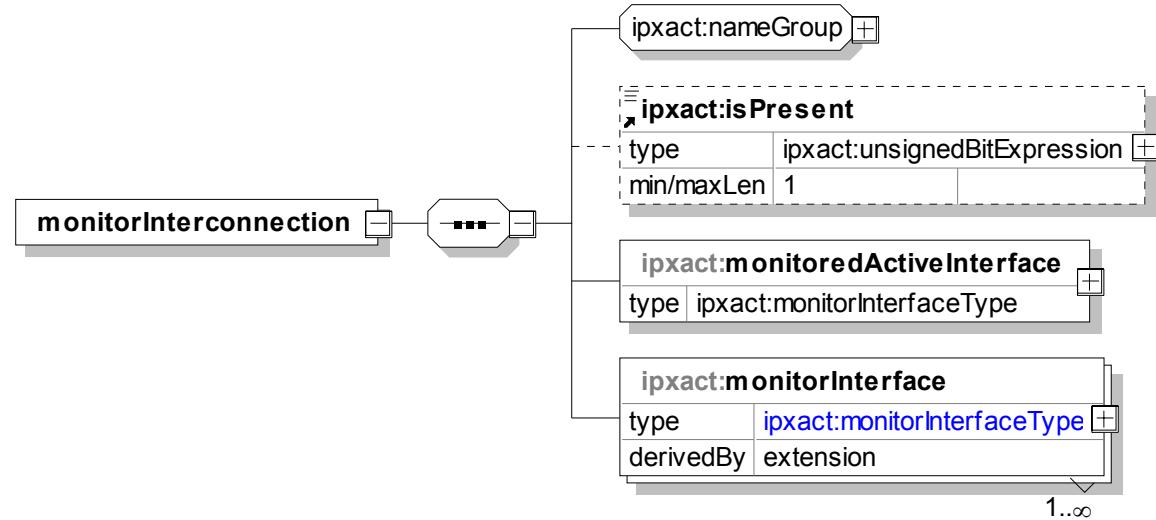
- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **interconnections** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) At least two interfaces need to be defined. The following combinations are possible here:  
one **activeInterface** element and a choice of either  
one or more additional **activeInterface** elements plus zero or more **hierInterface** elements, or  
one or more **hierInterface** elements.
  - 1) **activeInterface** (type: *interfaceType* (see [7.4](#))) specifies an “active” (non-monitor) interface connection point on a component. Having more than two **activeInterface/hierInterface** elements present is allowed only under certain conditions.
  - 2) **hierInterface** (type: *hierInterfaceType* (see [7.4](#))) specifies an “active” (non-monitor) interface connection point on the boundary of the containing component. Having more than two **activeInterface/hierInterface** elements present is allowed only under certain conditions.
- d) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 15.15](#), [SCR 15.16](#), and the SCRs in [Table B.2](#) and [Table B.11](#).

### 7.3.2 monitorInterconnection

#### 7.3.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **monitorInterconnection** element, which may appear as an element inside the **interconnections** element.



### 7.3.2.2 Description

The **monitorInterconnection** element specifies the connection between a monitored active interface on a component and a list of monitor interfaces on component instances.

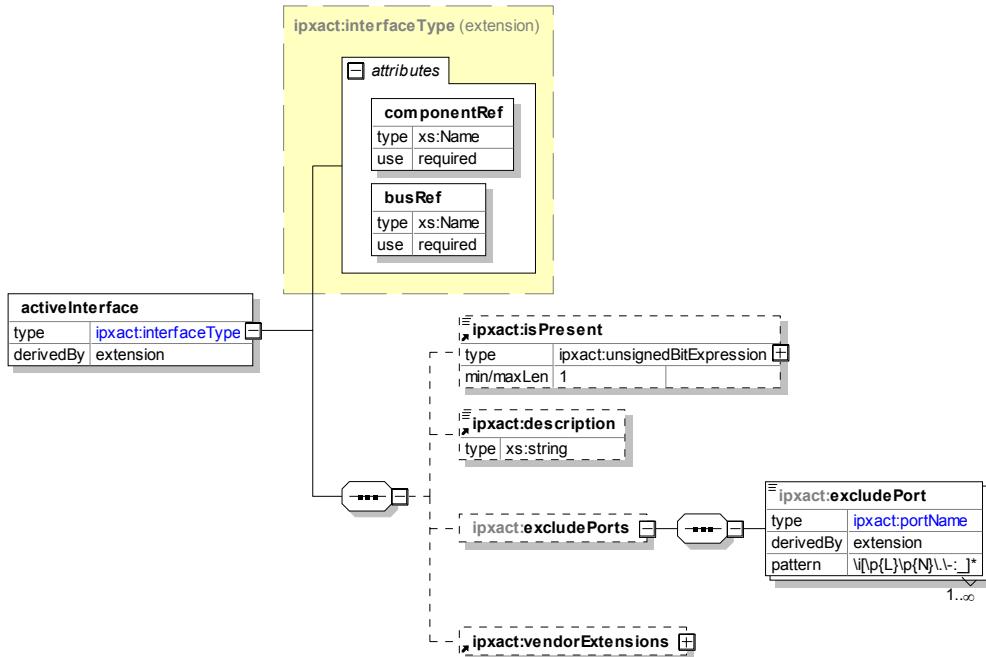
- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **interconnections** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **monitoredActiveInterface** (mandatory; type: **moniterInterfaceType** (see [7.4](#))) specifies the component bus interface to monitor.
- d) **monitorInterface** (mandatory; type: **moniterInterfaceType** (see [7.4](#))) specifies the component bus interface that will do the monitoring. There may be one or more **monitorInterface** elements specified.

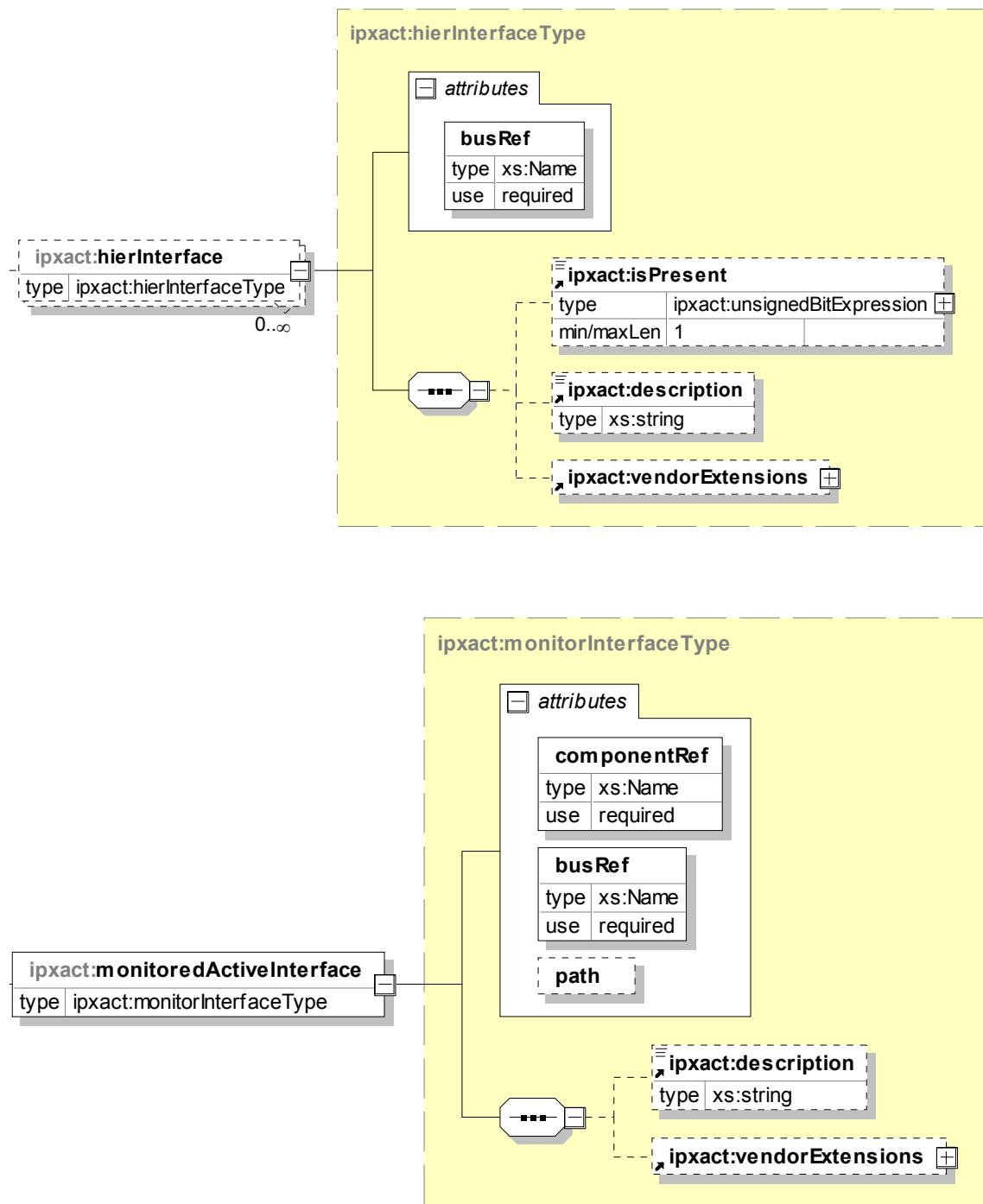
See also [SCR 6.9](#), [SCR 6.10](#), [SCR 15.19](#), [SCR 15.20](#), [SCR 15.21](#), [SCR 15.22](#), and the SCRs in [Table B.2](#) and [Table B.4](#).

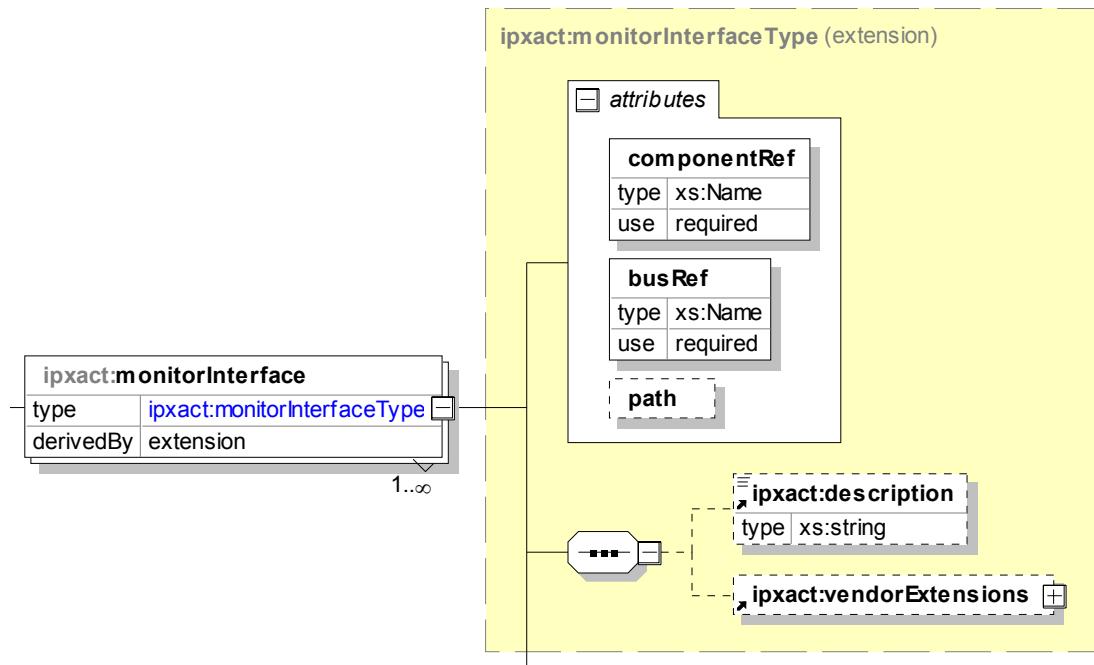
## 7.4 Active, hierarchical, monitored, and monitor interfaces

### 7.4.1 Schema

The following schemas define the information contained in the **activeInterface** element, the **hierInterface** element, the **monitoredActiveInterface** element, and the **monitorInterface** element, which may appear as elements inside the **interconnection** or **monitorInterconnection** element within the **interconnections** element.







#### 7.4.2 Description

The **activeInterface**, **hierInterface**, **monitoredActiveInterface**, or **monitorInterface** elements specify the bus interface of a design component instance that is part of an interconnection or a monitor interconnection. They all have the following attributes:

- **busRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references one of the component bus interfaces. This specific bus interface needs to exist on the specified component instance. See [6.5](#).
- **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the instance.
- **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design. See [C.24](#).

The **activeInterface**, **monitoredActiveInterface**, and **monitorInterface** elements have the following attributes:

- **componentRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references the instance name of a component present in the design if the path attribute is not present. This component instance name needs to exist in the specified design. See [6.1](#).

The **activeInterface** and **hierInterface** elements have the following element:

- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

The **activeInterface** element also has the following element:

- **excludePort** (optional) contains a list of **excludePort** elements, each of which defines a logical port that should be excluded from interface driven physical connections. In effect, ports listed here are treated as if they are not defined in the **portMap** of the referenced interface.  
Names listed need to exist in a **portMap** of the referenced interface.

The **monitoredActiveInterface** and **monitorInterface** elements have the following attribute:

- **path** (optional; type: *instancePath*) defines the hierarchical path of instance names to the design that contains the component instance specified in the **componentRef** attribute. The path is a slash (/) separated list of instance names. If the **path** attribute is not present, the component referenced by **componentRef** needs to exist in the current design. See [D.4](#).

See also [SCR 2.1](#), [SCR 2.16](#), [SCR 2.18](#), [SCR 4.1](#), [SCR 4.2](#), and [SCR 15.10](#).

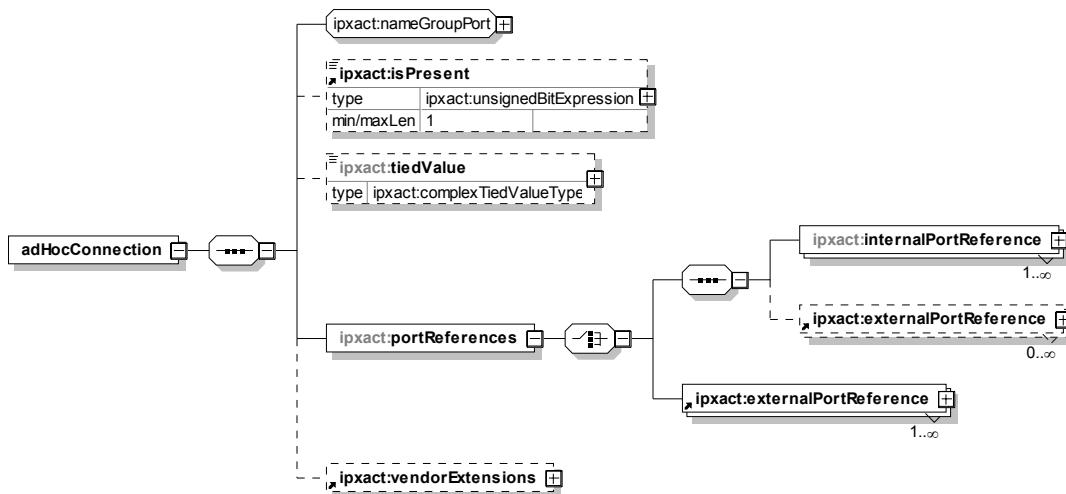
## 7.5 Design ad hoc connections

The name *ad hoc* is used for connections that are made on a port-by-port basis and not done through the higher-level bus interface. The same **ports** that make up a **busInterface** can be used in ad hoc connections.

IP-XACT supports two cases of ad hoc connections: the wire connection (between ports having a wire style) and the transactional connection (between ports having a transactional style). The direct connection between a wire-style port and a transactional-style port is not allowed; a specific adapter component needs to be inserted in between them.

### 7.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **adHocConnection** element, which may appear as an element inside the top-level **design/adHocConnections** element.



### 7.5.2 Description

An **adHocConnection** specifies connections between component instance ports and/or between component instance ports and ports of the encompassing component (in the case of a hierarchical component). Each **adHocConnection** shall contain at least one port reference (internal or external). The **adHocConnection** element contains the following subelements:

- a) **nameGroupPort** group is defined in [C.15](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **adHocConnections** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **tiedValue** (optional) specifies a fixed logic value for this connection. The value of this element can be an expression that evaluates to an explicit numeric value or to the string values **default** or **open**.

The value **default** implies each port should be connected to the default value defined in the port declaration. The value **open** implies each port is being intentionally left open (or unconnected). The **tiedValue** element is of type *complexTiedValueType*.

- d) **portReferences** (mandatory) specifies a list on internal and external port references for this **adHocConnection**. At least one reference needs to be defined; the following combinations are possible:
  - one or more **internalPortReference** elements plus zero or more **externalPortReference** elements or one or more **externalPortReference** elements.
  - 1) **internalPortReference** references the port of a component instance. See [7.6](#).
  - 2) **externalPortReference** references a port of the encompassing component where this design is referred (for hierarchical ad hoc connections). See [7.6](#).
- e) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 6.26](#), [SCR 15.23](#), [SCR 15.24](#), and [SCR 15.25](#).

### 7.5.3 Ad hoc wire connection

For ad hoc connections between wire-style ports, IP-XACT requires

- The style of each port be the same style (i.e., **wire**).
- The bits of the ports be connected from left to right. See also [7.6](#).
- The number of bits being connected from each referenced port be the same.

See also [SCR 6.9](#) and [SCR 6.25](#).

### 7.5.4 Ad hoc transactional connection

For ad hoc transactional connections, IP-XACT requires the style of each port be the same style (i.e., **transactional**).

See also [SCR 6.10](#) and [SCR 6.23](#).

### 7.5.5 Interaction rules between an interface-based connection and ad hoc connections

This subclause details the rules defining the interaction between interface-based connection and ad hoc connections. These rules apply to wire ports and transactional ports. Here, the term *pin* is used to designate a component port, regardless of its style.

*Rule A*—A pin  $P$  is involved in an interface-based connection whenever it appears in the port map of the interface (linked to logical port  $L$ ) and one of the following is also true:

- The logical port  $L$  on the opposite (connected) interface appears in the port map; therefore, there is an actual pin to connect to on the opposite side of the interface.
- The definition of the logical port  $L$  (in its abstraction definition) contains the definition of a default value. In this case, the pin will be connected to that default value.

*Rule B*—Connections specified via the **adHocConnection** element are always made in addition to any connections implied by interface connections.

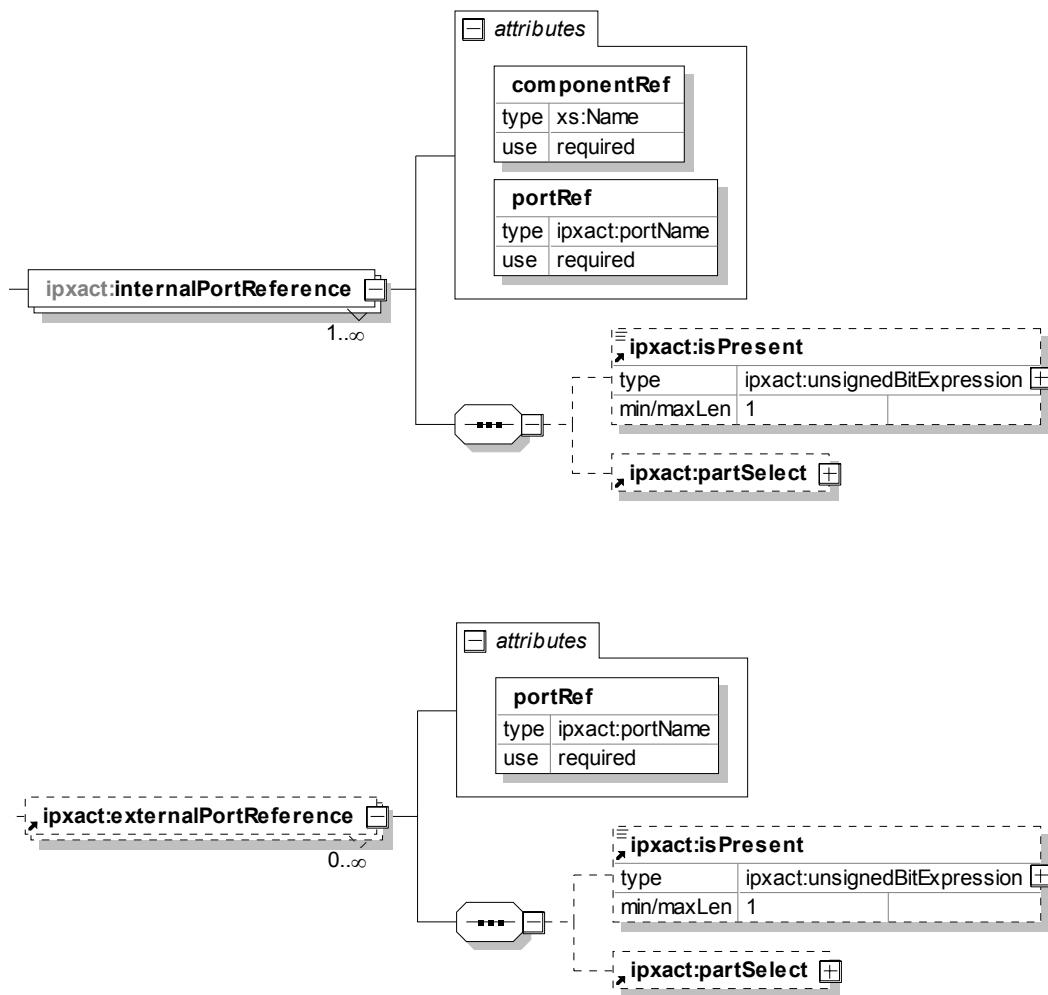
*Rule C*—All connections to a pin are made as the result of either an interface connection or an ad hoc connection.

*Rule A* documents when a pin is considered connected via an interface. *Rule B* documents when a pin is conservatively connected due to inclusion in an ad hoc connection. *Rule C* states that *Rules A* and *B* are the only ways to cause a connection to occur. In other words, a pin is not considered connected from a component to its default value unless it appears in an ad hoc connection as `tiedValue == 'default'`.

## 7.6 Port references

### 7.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **internalPortReference** or **externalPortReference** element, which may appear as an element within the **adHocConnections** element.



### 7.6.2 Description

The **portReferences** element specifies the list of internal and external port references for this **adHocConnection**. This defines the full set of pins and ports involved in a single ad-hoc connection. **adHocConnection** has the following elements:

- a) **internalPortReference** references the port of a component instance. It has the following subelements:

- 1) **componentRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references the component instance name for the port. See [6.1](#).
  - 2) **portRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references the port name on the specific component instance. See [6.12.7](#).
  - 3) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
  - 4) **partSelect** (optional) defines the sub-range of the port being referenced. If no **partSelect** is specified, the entire port is assumed to be connected. See [C.20](#).
- b) **externalPortReference** references a port of the encompassing component where this design is referred (for hierarchical ad hoc connections). It has the following subelements:
    - 1) **portRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) references the port name on the encompassing component. See [6.12.7](#).
    - 2) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
    - 3) **partSelect** (optional) defines the sub-range of the port being referenced. If no **partSelect** is specified, the entire port is assumed to be connected. See [C.20](#).



## 8. Abstractor descriptions

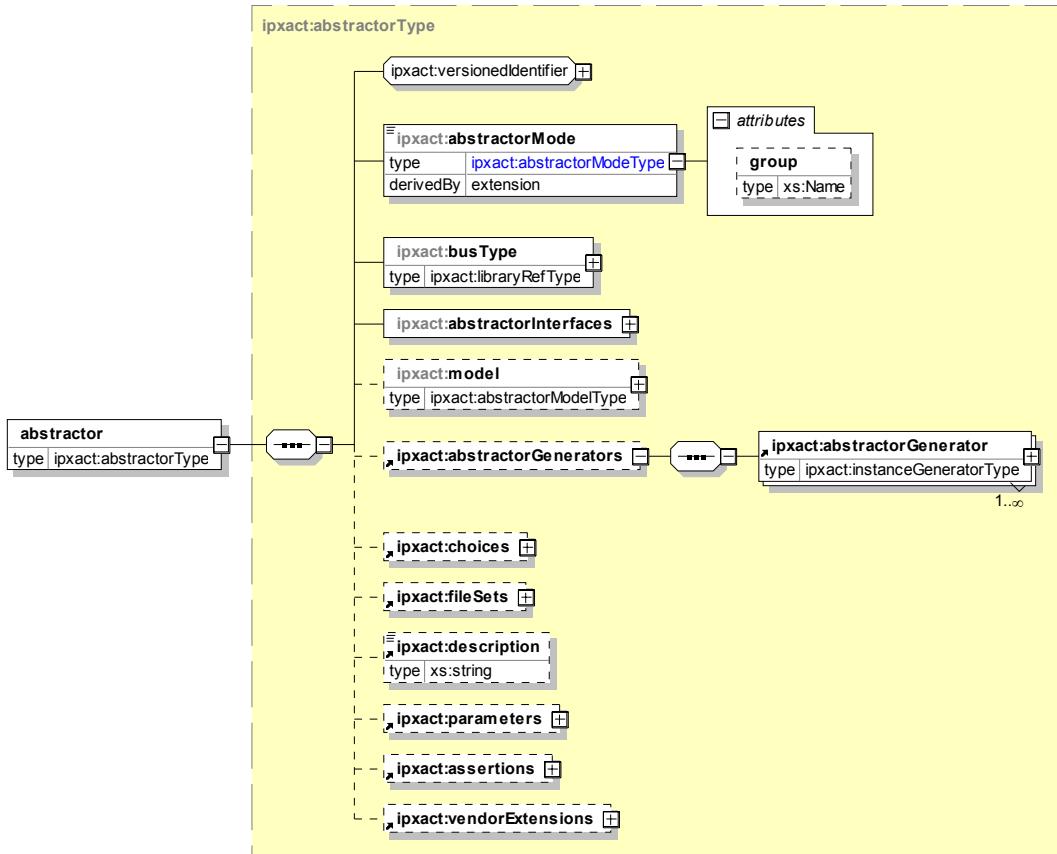
Designs that incorporate IP models using different interface modeling styles (e.g., TLM and RTL modeling styles) may contain interconnections between such component interfaces using different abstractions of the same bus type. An IP-XACT description may describe how such interconnections are to be made using a special-purpose object called an *abstractor*. An abstractor is used to connect between two different abstractions of the same bus type (e.g., an APB\_RTL and an APB\_TLM).<sup>16</sup> An abstractor shall contain only two interfaces, which shall be of the same bus definition and different abstraction definitions.

Unlike a component, an abstractor is not referenced from a design description, but instead is referenced from a design configuration description. See [Clause 10](#).

### 8.1 Abstractor

#### 8.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **abstractor** element, which is one of the top-level elements in the IP-XACT specification used to describe an abstractor.



<sup>16</sup>APB = AMBA® peripheral bus. AMBA is an open specification on-chip backbone for interconnecting IP blocks. AMBA is a registered trademark of ARM Limited. This information is given for the convenience of users of this standard and does not constitute an endorsement by the IEEE of this product. Equivalent products may be used if they can be shown to lead to the same results.

### 8.1.2 Description

Each element of an **abstractor** is detailed in the rest of this clause; the main sections of an **abstractor** are as follows:

- a) **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier, made up of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- b) **abstractorMode** (mandatory) determines the mode of the two interfaces contained in **abstractorInterfaces**. The abstractor can be inserted in a connection between two instances or between an instance and an exported interface. The **abstractorMode** element can take one of the following values:
  - 1) **master** specifies for
    - i) master-to-mirrored-master connection—the first interface connects to the master interface, the second connects to the mirrored-master interface;
    - ii) exported master connection—the first interface connects to the master interface, the second connects to the exported interface;
    - iii) exported mirrored-master connection—the first interface connects to the exported interface, the second connects to the mirrored-master interface.
  - 2) **slave** specifies for
    - i) mirrored-slave-to-slave connection—the first interface connects to the mirrored-slave interface, the second connects to the slave interface;
    - ii) exported slave connection—the first interface connects to the exported interface, the second connects to the slave interface;
    - iii) exported mirrored-slave connection—the first interface connects to the mirrored-slave interface, the second connects to the exported interface.
  - 3) **direct** specifies the first interface connects to the master interface, the second connects to the slave interface. This option is not allowed for an exported interface.
  - 4) **system** specifies for
    - i) system-to-mirrored-system connection—the first interface connects to the system interface, the second connects to the mirrored-system interface;
    - ii) exported system connection—the first interface connects to the system interface, the second connects to the exported interface;
    - iii) exported mirrored-system connection—the first interface connects to the exported interface, the second connects to the mirrored-system interface.

The **group** (mandatory, when **abstractorMode** is **system**; type *Name*) attribute defines the name of the group to which this system interface belongs. The value of this **group** shall be unique inside the **abstractor** element and already defined in the referenced abstraction definition. A connection between a **system** and **mirroredSystem** interfaces shall have matching group names.

- c) **busType** (mandatory; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies the bus definition this bus interface references. A bus definition (see [5.2](#)) describes the high-level attributes of a bus description.
- d) **abstractorInterfaces** (mandatory) are interfaces having the same bus type, but differing abstraction types. See [8.2](#).
- e) **model** (optional) specifies all the different views, ports, and model configuration parameters of the abstractor. See [8.3](#).
- f) **abstractorGenerators** (optional) specifies a list of generator programs attached to this abstractor. See [8.7](#).
- g) **choices** (optional) specifies multiple enumerated lists, which are referenced by other sections of this abstractor description. See [6.14](#).

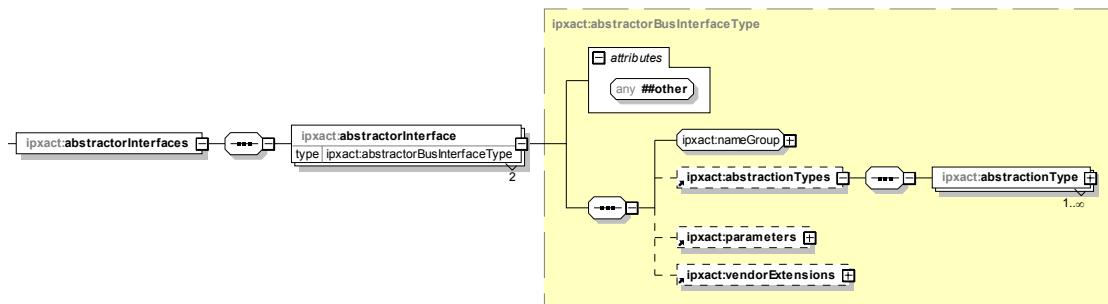
- h) **fileSets** (optional) specifies groups of files and possibly their function for reference by other sections of this abstractor description. See [6.15](#).
- i) **description** (optional; type: **string**) allows a textual description of the abstractor.
- j) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this abstractor. See [C.18](#).
- k) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- l) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the abstractor. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.10](#), [SCR 1.11](#), and [SCR 3.15](#).

## 8.2 Abstractor interfaces

### 8.2.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **abstractorInterfaces** element, which appears within an **abstractor** description.



### 8.2.2 Description

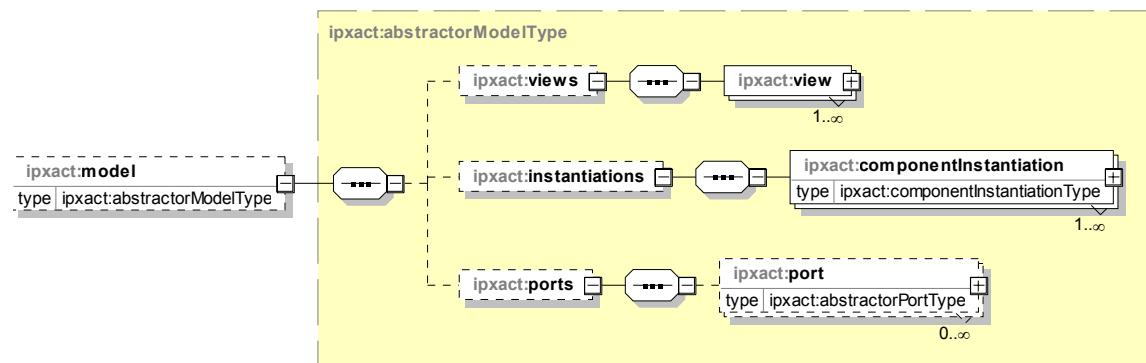
The **abstractorInterfaces** element contains a list of two **abstractorInterface** elements. Each **abstractorInterface** element defines properties of this specific interface in an abstractor. The **abstractorInterface** element also allows for vendor attributes to be applied. Each **abstractorInterface** contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **abstractor** element.
- b) **abstractionTypes** (optional) specifies the abstraction definition where this bus interface is referenced. An abstraction definition (the **abstractionType** element; see [6.5.6](#)) describes the low-level attributes of a bus description (see [5.3](#)).
- c) **parameters** (optional) specifies any parameter data value(s) for this bus interface. See [C.18](#).
- d) **vendorExtensions** (optional) holds any vendor-specific data from other namespaces that is applicable to this bus interface. See [C.24](#).

## 8.3 Abstracter models

### 8.3.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the abstracter **model** element, which may appear within an **abstracter** description.



### 8.3.2 Description

The **model** element describes the views, ports, and model related parameters of an abstracter. A **model** element may contain the following:

- views** (optional) contains a list of all the views for this object. An object may have many different views. An RTL view may describe the source hardware module/entity with its pin interface; a software view may define the source device driver C file with its .h interface; a documentation view may define the written specification of this IP. See [8.4](#).
- instantiations** (optional) specifies the component instantiations for all views (as an *instantiationsGroup*). See [6.12.2](#).
- ports** (optional) contains the list of ports for this object. A ports is an external connection from the object. An object may have only one set of ports that shall be valid for all views. See [8.5](#).

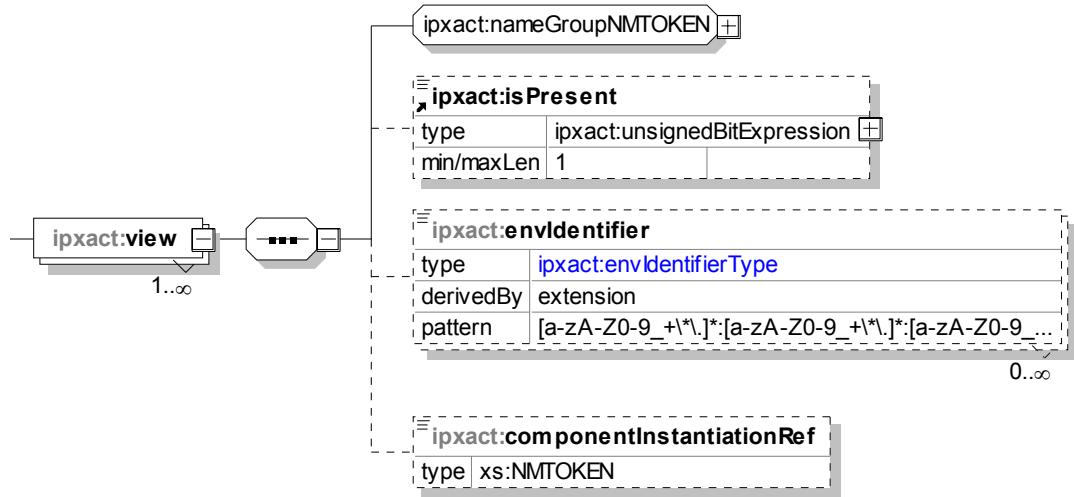
## 8.4 Abstracter views

### 8.4.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **views** element, which appears within the **model** element of an **abstracter** description.

This schema is almost identical to the **component/model/views/view** element (see [6.12.1](#)), except:

- Abstractors have no **designInstantiationRef** elements.
- Abstractors have no **designConfigurationInstantiationRef** elements.



#### 8.4.2 Description

A **views** element describes an unbounded set of **view** elements. Each **view** element specifies a representation level of an abstractor. It contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroupNMToken** group is defined in [C.16](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **views** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) **envIdentifier** (optional) designates and qualifies information about how this model view is deployed in a particular tool environment. See [6.12.1.2](#).
- d) **componentInstantiationRef** (optional) specifies a component's configuration instantiation for a particular instantiation. See [6.12.3.2](#).

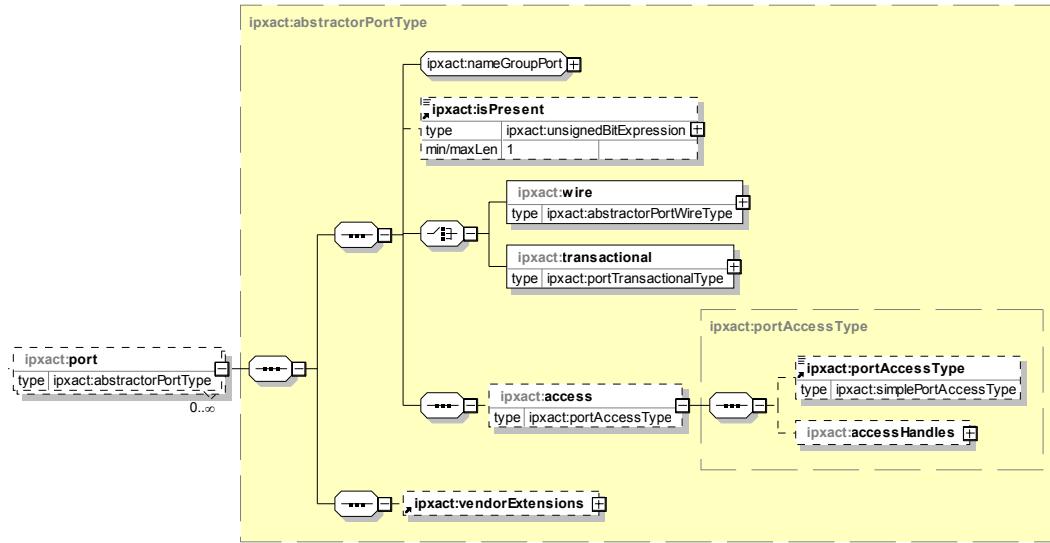
See also [SCR 6.27](#).

### 8.5 Abstractor ports

#### 8.5.1 Schema

An abstractor's **ports** are almost identical to a component's **ports**; the abstractor **transactional** ports are exactly the same as the component **transactional** ports. The access methods are the same for an abstractor or component port. The abstractor **wire** ports defined here differ from component **wire** ports only by the absence of the **constraintSet** element because implementation constraints are not needed for abstractors.

The following schema defines the information contained in the **ports** element, which may appear within an **abstractor**.



### 8.5.2 Description

The **ports** element defines an unbounded list of **port** elements. Each **port** element describe a single external port on the abstractor.

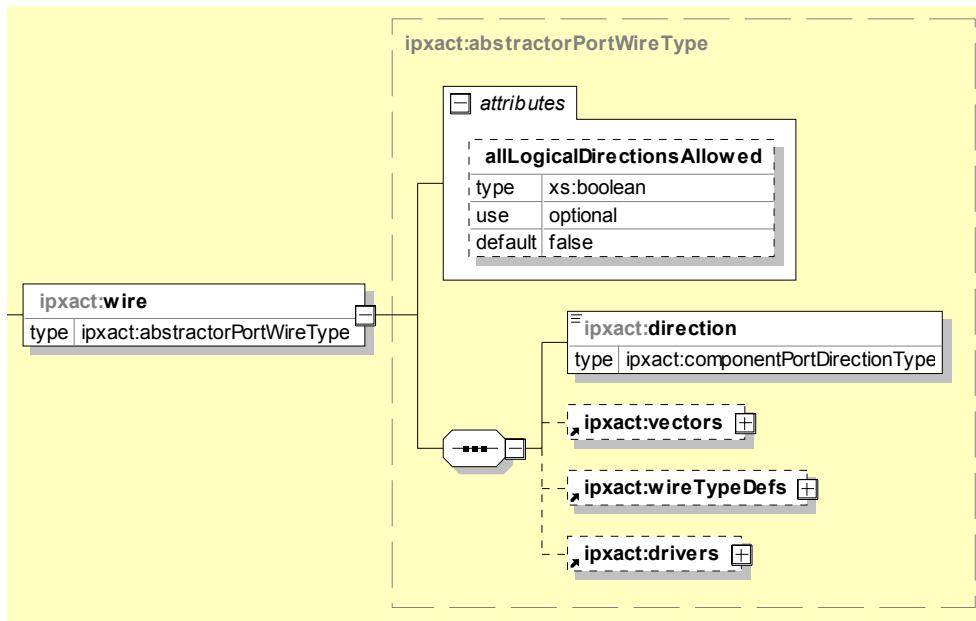
- a) **nameGroupPort** group is defined in [C.16](#). The **name** elements shall be unique within the containing **ports** element.
- b) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- c) Each **port** shall be described as a **wire** or **transactional** port.
  - 1) **wire** defines ports that transport purely binary values or vectors of binary values. A wire port in an abstractor contains most of the same elements and attributes as a wire port in a component, except for the **constraintSet** element. See [8.6](#).
  - 2) **transactional** defines all other style ports, typically used for TLM. A transactional port in an abstractor contains all the same elements and attributes as a transactional port in a component. See [6.12.17](#).
- d) **access** (optional) defines the access for a port.
  - 1) **portAccessType** (optional; default: **ref**) indicates to a netlister how to access the port. The **portAccessType** shall have one of two possible values **ref** or **ptr**. If **ref**, a netlister should access the port directly, and if **ptr**, it should access the port with a pointer.
  - 2) **accessHandles** (optional; type: *string*) indicates to a netlister the method to be used to access the object representing the port. This is typically a function call or array element reference in IEEE Std 1666 [B4] (SystemC).
- e) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the port. See [C.24](#).

## 8.6 Abstracter wire ports

### 8.6.1 Schema

The abstractor **wire** ports defined here differ from component **wire** ports only by the absence of the **constraintSet** element because implementation constraints are not needed for abstractors.

The following schema element defines the information contained in the **wire** element, which appears within an abstractor **port**.



### 8.6.2 Description

The **wire** element describes the properties for ports that are of a wire style. A port can come in two different styles, wire or transactional. A wire port applies for all scalar types (e.g., VHDL `std_logic` and Verilog `wire`) and vectors of scalars. A wire port transports purely binary values or vectors of binary values.

- Scalar types in VHDL also include integer and enumeration values. Scalars in IP-XACT include only binary values that relate to a single wire in a hardware implementation.
- Since wire ports allow only binary values, IP-XACT does not support tri-state or multiple strength values.

The **wire** element contains the following elements:

- a) **allLogicalDirectionsAllowed** (optional; type: `boolean`; default: `false`) attribute defines whether the port may be mapped to a port in an **abstractionDefinition** with a different direction. See [5.3](#).
- b) **direction** (mandatory) specifies the direction of this port: **in** for input ports, **out** for output ports, and **inout** for bidirectional and tri-state ports. **phantom** can also be used to define a port that exists only on the IP-XACT component, but not on the implementation referenced from the view.
- c) **vectors** (optional) specifies the dimensions for a non-scalar port; see [C.23](#).
- d) **wireTypeDefs** (optional) describes the ports type as defined by the implementation; see [6.12.9](#).
- e) **drivers** (optional) defines an unbounded list of driver elements, defining drivers that may be attached to this port if no other object is connected to this port. This allows the IP to define the default state of unconnected inputs. A wire style port may define a **driver** element for a port only if the direction of the port is **in** or **inout**. See also [6.12.10](#).

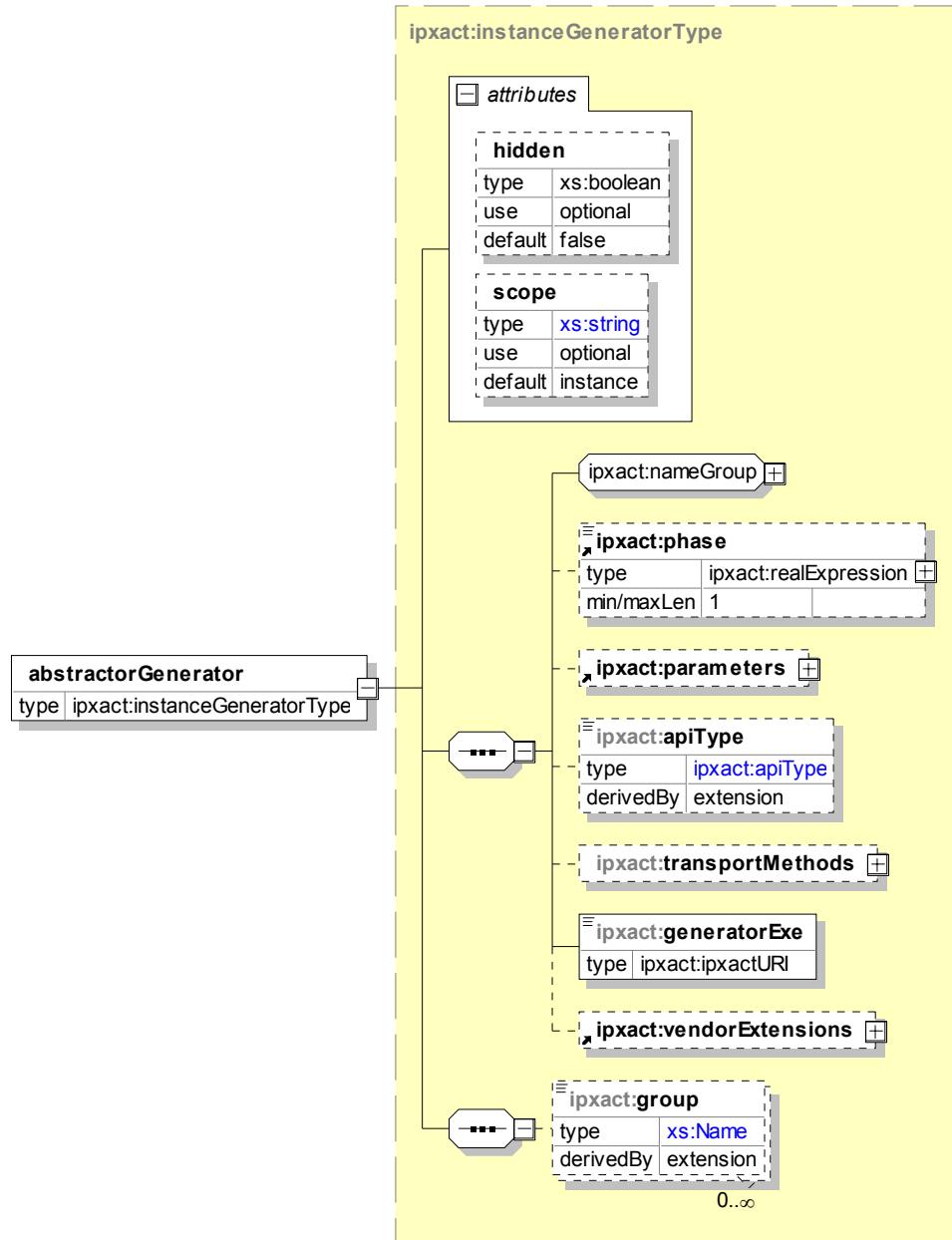
If multiple drivers are specified, the **range** element shall be used to indicate which bits are driven by which driver, and no overlap bit ranges may be specified.

See also [SCR 6.5](#), [SCR 6.6](#), [SCR 6.7](#), and [SCR 6.12](#).

## 8.7 Abstracter generators

### 8.7.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **abstracterGenerators** element, which may appear within an **abstracter** object.



### 8.7.2 Description

The **abstractorGenerators** element contains an unbounded list of **abstractorGenerator** elements. Each **abstractorGenerator** element defines a generator that is assigned and may be run on this abstractor. The **abstractorGenerator** has exactly the same schema definition as a **componentGenerator**. See [6.13](#).



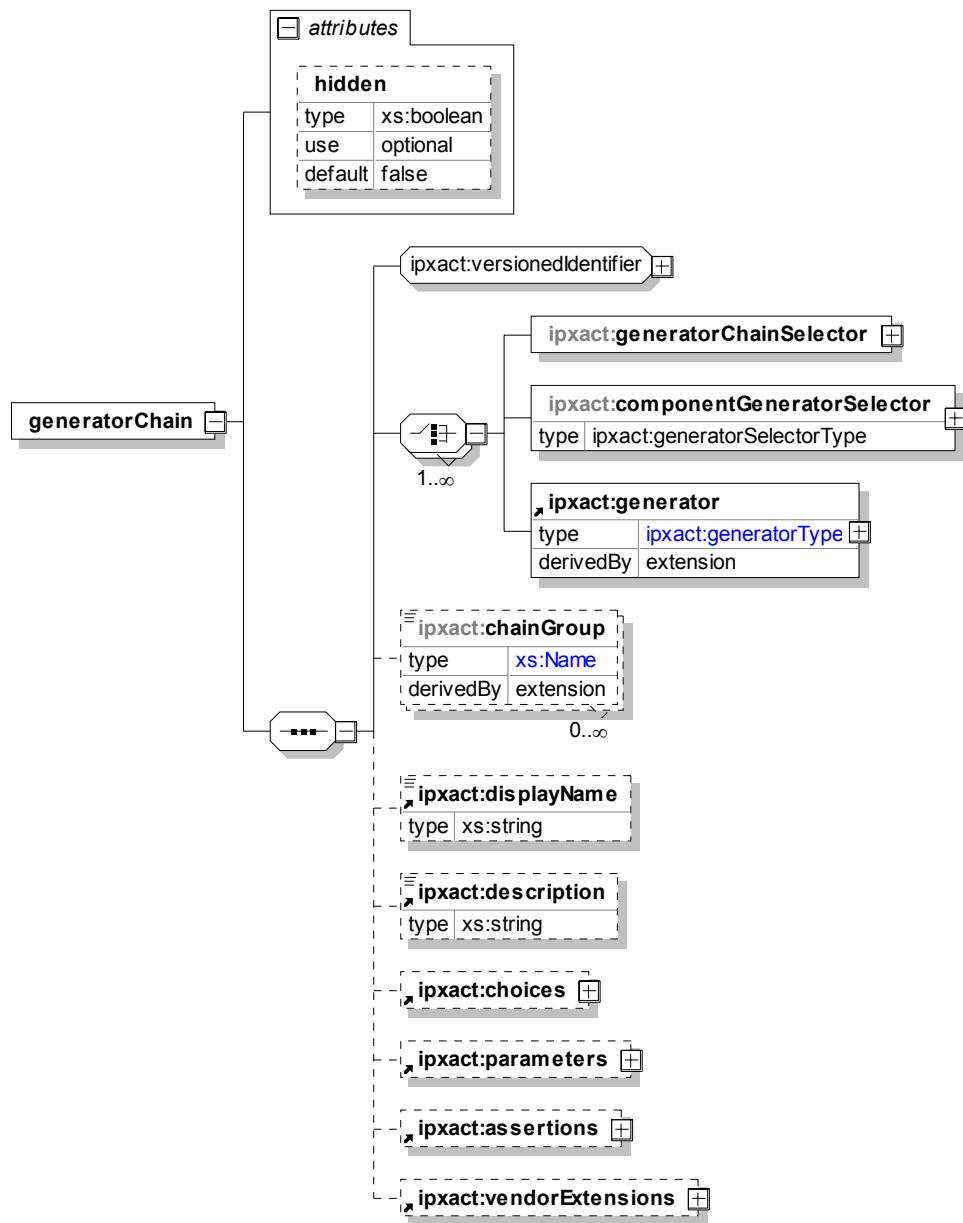
## 9. Generator chain descriptions

### 9.1 generatorChain

In IP-XACT, a design flow can be represented as a generator chain. A generator chain is an ordered sequence of named tasks. Each named task can be represented as a single generator or as another generator chain. This way, design flow hierarchies can be constructed and executed from within a given DE. The DE itself is responsible for understanding the semantics of the specified chain described in the generator chain description.

#### 9.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **generatorChain** element, which is one of the top-level elements in the IP-XACT specification.



### 9.1.2 Description

The **generatorChain** element describes a single generator chain. The **generatorChain** element has a **hidden** attribute (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**) attribute that, when **true**, indicates this generator chain is not presented to the user of a DE. This may be the case if the chain is part of another chain and has no useful meaning when invoked as stand-alone. The **generatorChain** element contains the following elements:

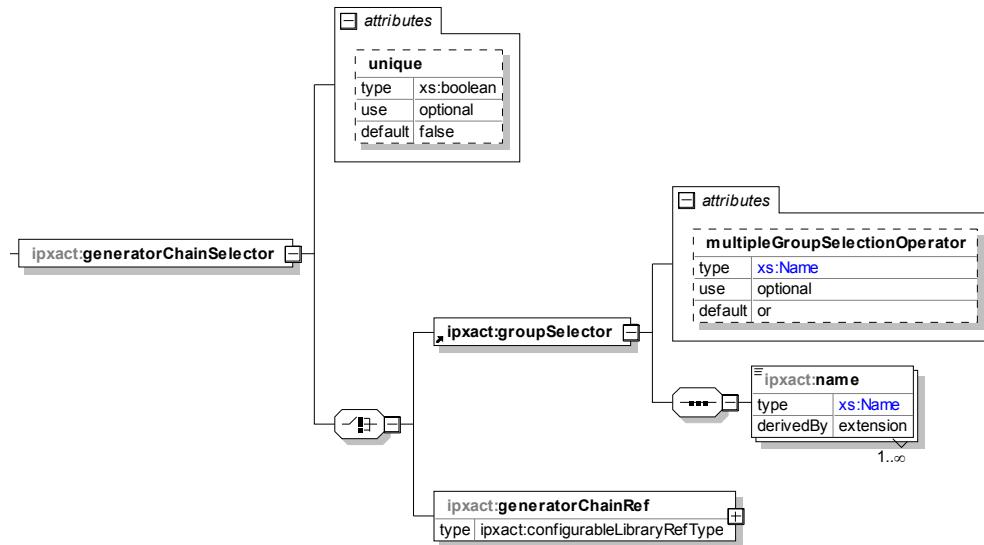
- a) **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier; it consists of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- b) A **generatorChain** also contains one or more of the following subelements:
  - 1) **generatorChainSelector** is a selection criteria for selecting one or more **generatorChains** or a reference to another **generatorChain** (see [9.2](#)).
  - 2) **componentGeneratorSelector** is a selection criteria for selecting one or more component generators (see [9.3](#)).
  - 3) **generator** defines the generator (see [9.4](#)).
- c) **chainGroup** (optional; type: *Name*) is an unbounded list of names to which this chain belongs. The group names are referenced in the **generatorChainSelector** element and can be used to organize the inclusion of generators.
- d) **displayName** (optional; type: **string**) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the generator chain.
- e) **description** (optional; type: **string**) allows a textual description of the generator chain.
- f) **choices** (optional) specifies multiple enumerated lists, which are referenced by other sections of this generator chain description. See [6.14](#).
- g) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this generator chain. See [C.18](#).
- h) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the **generatorChain**. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.10](#).

## 9.2 generatorChainSelector

### 9.2.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **generatorChainSelector** element, which may appear within a **generatorChain**.



### 9.2.2 Description

The **generatorChainSelector** element defines which generator(s) to invoke based on a selection criteria. The **generatorChainSelector** element contains a **unique** (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**) attribute that, when **true**, indicates the generatorChainSelector shall resolve to a single generator. If more than one generator is selected, the DE shall resolve the selection to a single generator.

The **generatorChainSelector** element can specify the selection criteria in one of two ways: as a selection based on the **chainGroup** names via the **groupSelector** element or as a direct VLVN reference via the **generatorChainRef** element. The **generatorChainSelector** element shall contain one of the **groupSelector** or **generatorChainRef** elements.

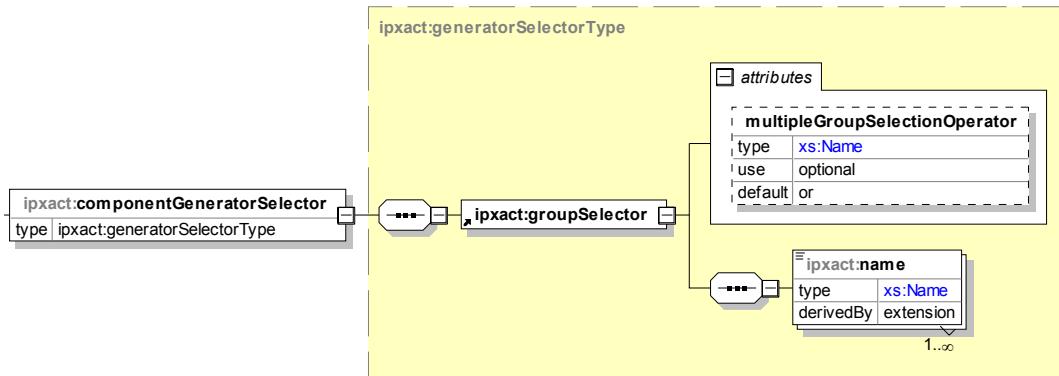
- a) **groupSelector** is a container for an unbounded list of chain group **name** elements.
  - 1) When more than one **name** element is specified, the **multipleGroupSelectorOperator** (optional; type: **Name**; default: **or**) attribute can specify if the selection applies when *one* of the generator group names matches (**multipleGroupSelectorOperator** equals **or**) or *all* the generator group names match (**multipleGroupSelectorOperator** equals **and**).
  - 2) **name** (mandatory; type **Name**) is an unbounded list of selection names. The names are compared to the **generatorChain/chainGroup** elements within all generator chains visible to the DE.
- b) **generatorChainRef** (type: **configurableLibraryRefType** (see [C.6](#))) specifies a reference to another generator chain description for inclusion in this generator chain.

See also [SCR 1.8](#).

## 9.3 generatorChain component selector

### 9.3.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **componentGeneratorSelector** element, which may appear within a **generatorChain**.



### 9.3.2 Description

Similar to the **generatorChainSelector**, **componentGeneratorSelector** selects a component generator or a list of component generators based on the assigned group name. The **componentGeneratorSelector** contains the **groupSelector** element.

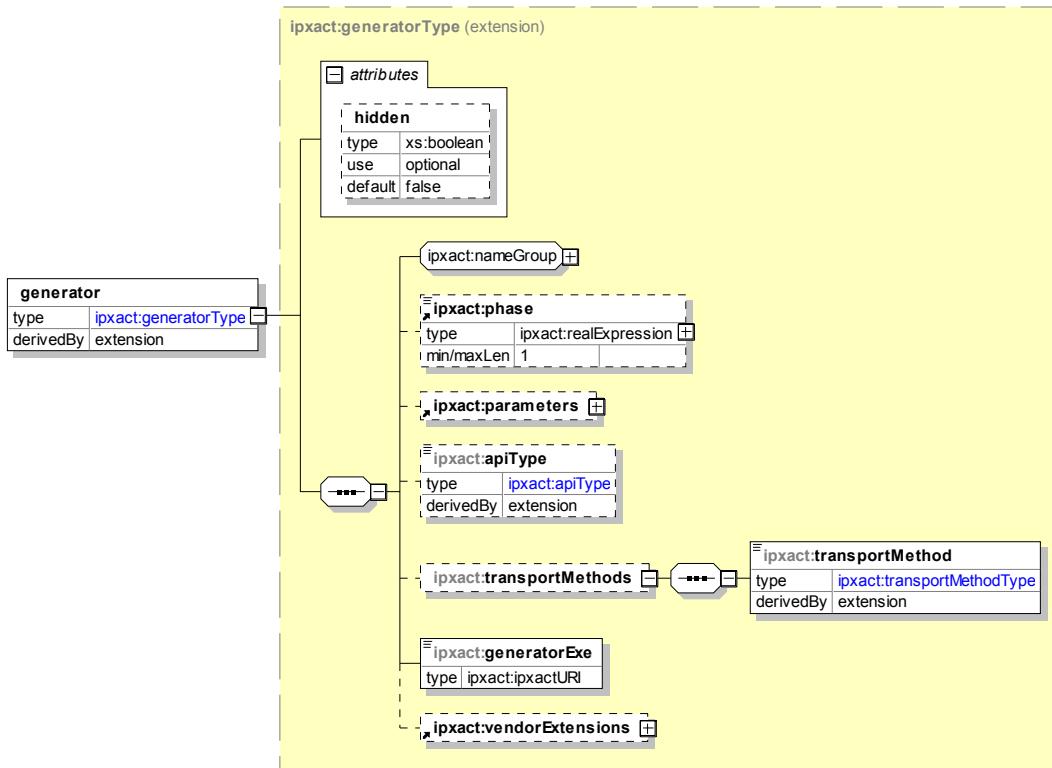
**groupSelector** (mandatory) is a container for an unbounded list of chain group **name** elements.

- 1) When more than one **name** element is specified, the **multipleGroupSelectorOperator** (optional; type: *Name*; default: **or**) attribute can specify if the selection applies when *one* of the generator group names matches (**multipleGroupSelectorOperator** equals **or**) or *all* the generator group names match (**multipleGroupSelectorOperator** equals **and**).
- 2) **name** (mandatory; type: *Name*) is an unbounded list of selection names. The names are compared to the **componentGenerator/group** elements within all components in the current design.

## 9.4 generatorChain generator

### 9.4.1 Schema

The following schema defines the information contained in the **generator** element, which may appear within a **generatorChain**.



### 9.4.2 Description

The **generator** element defines a specific generator executable. The **generator** element contains has a **hidden** attribute (optional; type: **boolean**; default: **false**) attribute that, when **true**, indicates this generator shall not be run as a stand-alone generator and is required to be run as part of a chain. This generator is not presented to the user. If **false**, this generator may be run as a stand-alone generator or in a generator chain.

**generator** contains the following elements:

- a) **nameGroup** group is defined in [C.12](#).
- b) **phase** (optional; type: **realExpression** (see [C.3.1](#))) determines the sequence in which generators are run. Generators are run in order starting with zero (0). If two generators have the same phase numbers, the order shall be interpreted as not important, and the generators can be run in any order. If no phase number is given, the generator is considered in the “last” phase, and these generators are run in any order after the last generator with a phase number. The **phase** element shall be a positive number.
- c) **parameters** (optional) specifies any **generator** type parameters. See [C.18](#).
- d) **apiType** (optional, type: **apiType**, default: **TGI\_2014\_BASE**) indicates the type of API used by the generator. Allowed values include the following:
  - 1) **TGI\_2014\_BASE** indicates a generator that communicates using the base TGI API defined for this standard.

- 2) **TGI\_2014\_EXTENDED** indicates a generator that communicates using the base and extended TGI APIs defined for this standard.
  - 3) **TGI\_2009** indicates a generator that communicates using the TGI API defined for IEEE Std 1685-2009. Such APIs are not part of this standard and do not need to be supported by IP-XACT-enabled DEs.
  - 4) **none** indicates the generator does not communicate with the DE.
- e) **transportMethods** (optional) defines alternate SOAP transport protocol that this generator can support. The default SOAP transport protocol is HTTP if this element is not present.  
**transportMethod** specifies the alternate transport protocol. This element is an enumerated list of only one element **file**. **file** indicates the SOAP transport protocol is transported to the DE via a file or file handle.
- f) **generatorExe** (mandatory; type *ipxactURI*) contains an absolute or relative (to the location of the containing description) path to the generator executable. The path may also contain environment variables from the host system, which are used to abstract the location of the generator.
- g) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **generator**. See [C.24](#).

## 10. Design configuration descriptions

### 10.1 Design configuration

An IP-XACT *design configuration* is a placeholder for additional configuration information of a design or generator chain description. Design configuration information is used to support configuration of hierarchical designs, for transferring designs between design environments and automating generator chain execution for a design, by storing information that would otherwise have to be re-entered by the designer.

The *design configuration description* contains the following configuration information:

- Configuration values for parameters defined in generators within generator chains; this information is not referenced via the design description;
- Active view or current view selection for instances in the design description along with configuration values for view parameters within the component instances;
- Configuration information for interconnections between the same bus types with differing abstraction types (i.e., abstractor reference, parameter configuration, and view selection). See also [Clause 8](#).

A design configuration applies to a single design, but a design may have multiple design configuration descriptions.

## 10.2 designConfiguration

### 10.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **designConfiguration** element, which is one of the top-level elements of the schema.



### 10.2.2 Description

The **designConfiguration** element details the configuration for a design or generator chain description. The **designConfiguration** element contains the following mandatory and optional elements:

- The **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier, made up of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- designRef** (optional; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies the design description for this design configuration.

NOTE—It is recommended instead to pursue this functionality by using the **designInstantiation** element in a **component**.

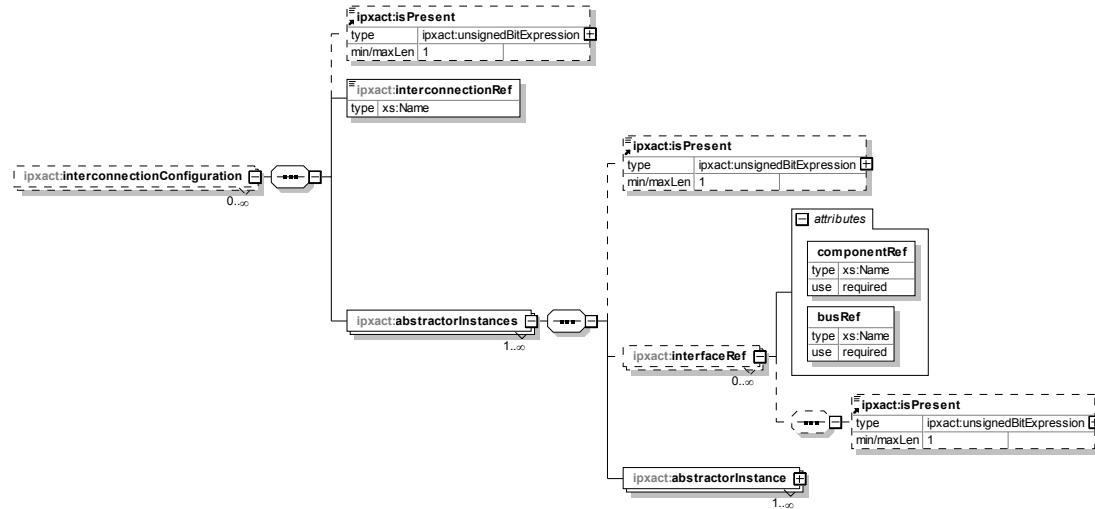
- c) **generatorChainConfiguration** (optional; type: *configurableLibraryRefType* (see [C.6](#)) documents a generator chain VLVN and an unbounded list of configuration values for parameters within the referenced generator chain.
- d) **interconnectionConfiguration** (optional) is an unbounded list of information associated with interface interconnections. Any abstractors required for the connection of two interfaces are specified here. See [10.3](#).
- e) **viewConfiguration** (optional) defines the selected view and view configuration for an instance of the design. See [10.5](#).
- f) **description** (optional) allows a textual description of the design configuration. The **description** element is of type *string*.
- g) **parameters** (optional) describes any **parameter** that can be used to configure or hold information related to this design configuration. See [C.18](#).
- h) **assertions** (optional) contains a list of expressions defining the allowed parameter values. See [C.2](#).
- i) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design configuration. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.5](#), [SCR 1.7](#), [SCR 1.10](#), [SCR 1.16](#), [SCR 1.17](#), [SCR 5.10](#), [SCR 13.1](#), [SCR 13.2](#), and [SCR 13.3](#).

## 10.3 interconnectionConfiguration

### 10.3.1 Schema

The following schema defines information contained in **interconnectionConfiguration** element, which may appear as an element inside the **designConfiguration** element.



### 10.3.2 Description

The **interconnectionConfiguration** element contains information about the **abstractors** used to resolve connections between interfaces having the same **busDefinition** types, but different **abstractionDefinition** types. The **interconnectonConfiguration** element contains the following elements:

- a) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

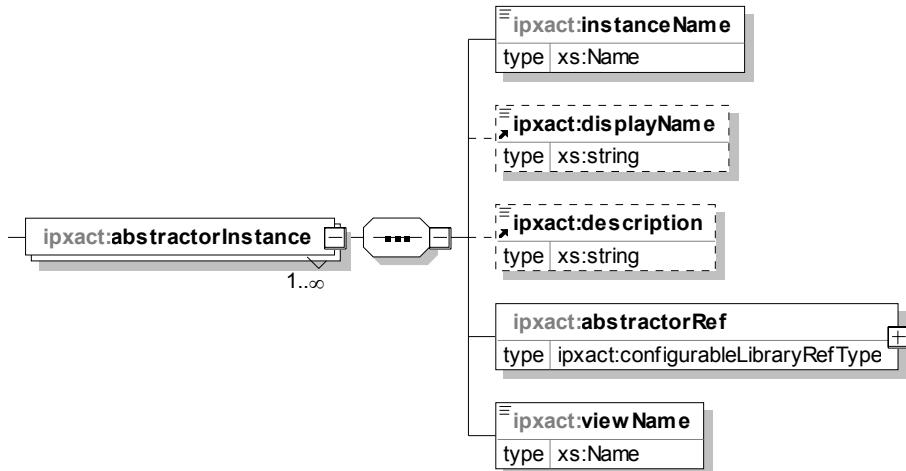
- b) **interconnectionRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) contains a reference to a design **interconnection/name** or a design **monitorInterconnection/name**. All **interconnectionRef** elements shall be unique within the containing design configuration description.
- c) **abstractorInstances** (mandatory) contains an unbounded list of **abstractor** elements. Multiple abstractors elements are allowed to enable insertion of different abstractor chains within a broadcast interface. If there are multiple abstractors elements, each is required to reference a unique interface via the **componentRef** and **interfaceRef** attributes in the **interfaceRef** element. If an **abstractors** element contains no **interfaceRef** element, it is presumed the contained chain of abstractors applies to all interfaces not explicitly referenced in other abstractors elements. The **abstractors** element contains the following mandatory and optional elements:
  - 1) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
  - 2) **interfaceRef** (optional) defines the broadcast endpoint for this abstractor chain. It contains the following subelements:
    - i) **componentRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) refers to a component instance name.
    - ii) **busRef** (mandatory; type: *Name*) refers to a component bus interface name.
    - iii) The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
  - 3) **abstractorInstance** (mandatory) is an ordered list for chaining the abstractors together to bridge from one abstraction to another. See [10.4](#).

See also [SCR 1.13](#), [SCR 3.7](#), [SCR 3.11](#), [SCR 3.12](#), [SCR 3.13](#), [SCR 3.14](#), [SCR 3.18](#), [SCR 5.11](#), [SCR 13.4](#), [SCR 15.17](#), and [SCR 15.18](#).

## 10.4 abstractorInstance

### 10.4.1 Schema

The following schema defines information contained in **abstractorInstance** element, which may appear as an element inside the **interconnectonConfiguration** element.



## 10.4.2 Description

The **abstractorInstance** element is an ordered list for chaining the abstractors together to bridge from one abstraction to another. This element has the following subelements:

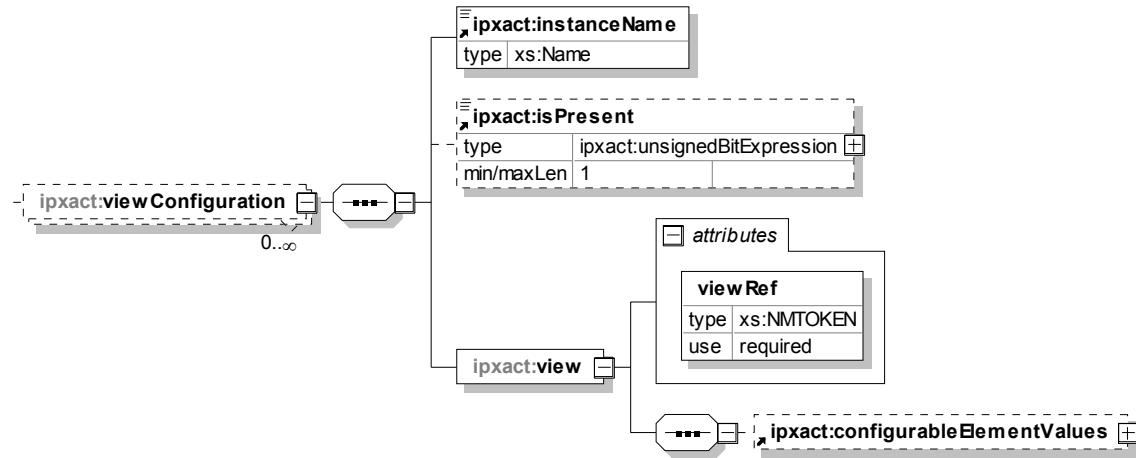
- instanceName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) assigns a unique name for this instance of the abstractor in this design. The value of this element shall be unique inside the **designConfiguration** and the referenced **design** element.
- displayName** (optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the instance.
- description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the instance.
- abstractorRef** (mandatory; type: *configurableLibraryRefType* (see [C.6](#))) is a reference to an abstractor description for this abstractor instance.
- viewName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) defines the selected view for the abstractor instance.

See also [SCR 1.13](#), [SCR 3.7](#), [SCR 3.11](#), [SCR 3.12](#), [SCR 3.13](#), [SCR 3.14](#), [SCR 5.11](#), and [SCR 13.4](#).

## 10.5 viewConfiguration

### 10.5.1 Schema

The following schema defines information contained in **viewConfiguration** element, which may appear as an element inside the **designConfiguration** element.



### 10.5.2 Description

The **viewConfiguration** element defines the active view and view configuration values for an instance of the design. The **viewConfiguration** element contains the following elements:

- instanceName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) specifies the component instance name for which the view is being selected. This instance name shall be unique within the containing design configuration description.
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: 1) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).
- view** (mandatory) defines the current valid view for the selected component instance.
  - viewRef** (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) specifies the component view. See [6.12.1.2](#).

- 2) **configurableElementValues** (optional) specifies the configuration values associated with parameters within the **componentInstantiation** and **designConfigurationInstantiation** referenced by the component view specified by the **viewRef**. See [C.5](#).

See also [SCR 5.9](#), [SCR 15.11](#), and [SCR 15.12](#).

## 11. Catalog descriptions

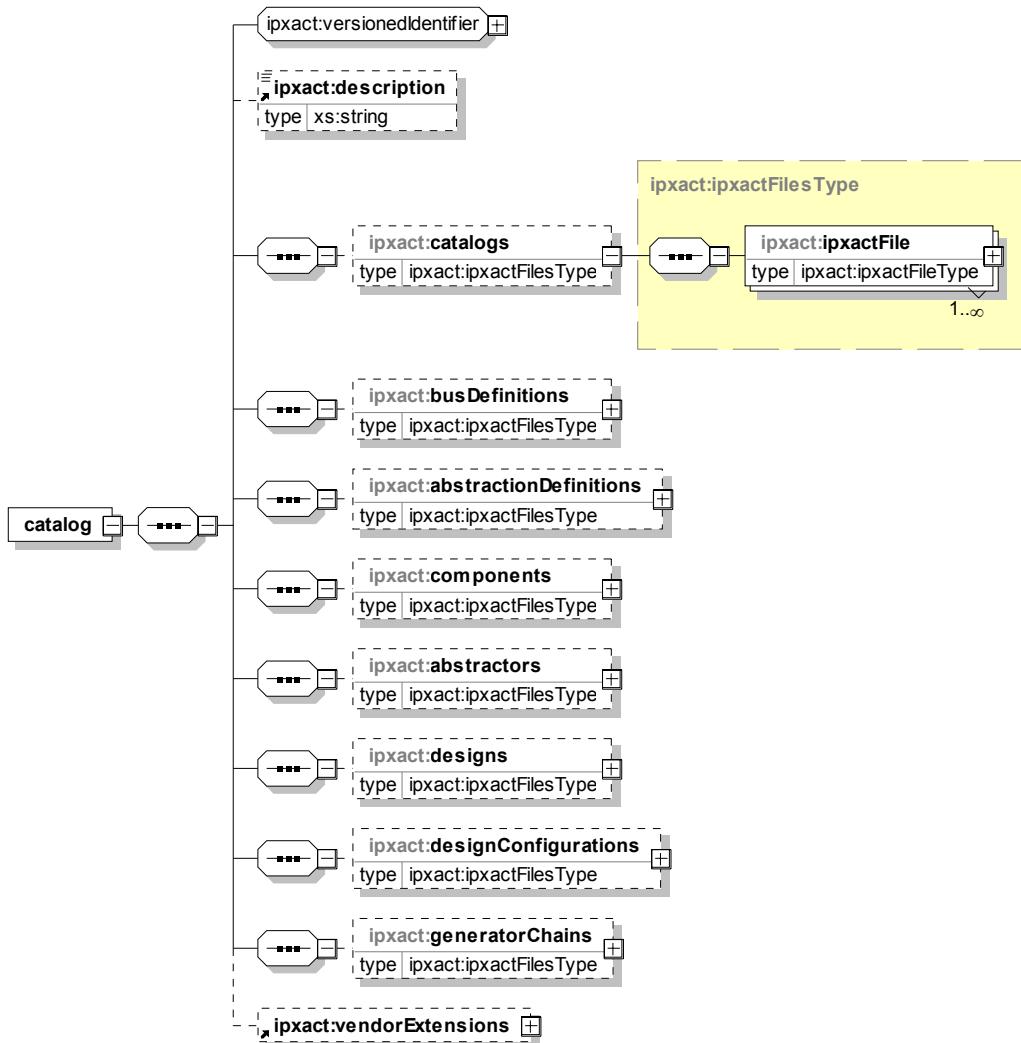
### 11.1 catalog

Systems described with IP-XACT can consist of a single XML file, but more often reference a large number of files (e.g., components, bus/abstraction definitions). The top-level **catalog** element provides a mechanism for documenting the locations of these files and the top-level details (VNV and document type) giving design environments a standard means of locating IP-XACT documents.

A *catalog* can document the location, VNV, and file type of any number of IP-XACT documents, including other catalogs.

#### 11.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **catalog** element, which contains the optional list elements **catalogs**, **busDefinitions**, **abstractionDefinitions**, **components**, **abstractors**, **designs**, **designConfigurations**, and **generatorChains**.



### 11.1.2 Description

The top-level **catalog** element references top-level IP-XACT elements and specifies where each can be found. The **catalog** contains the following elements and attributes:

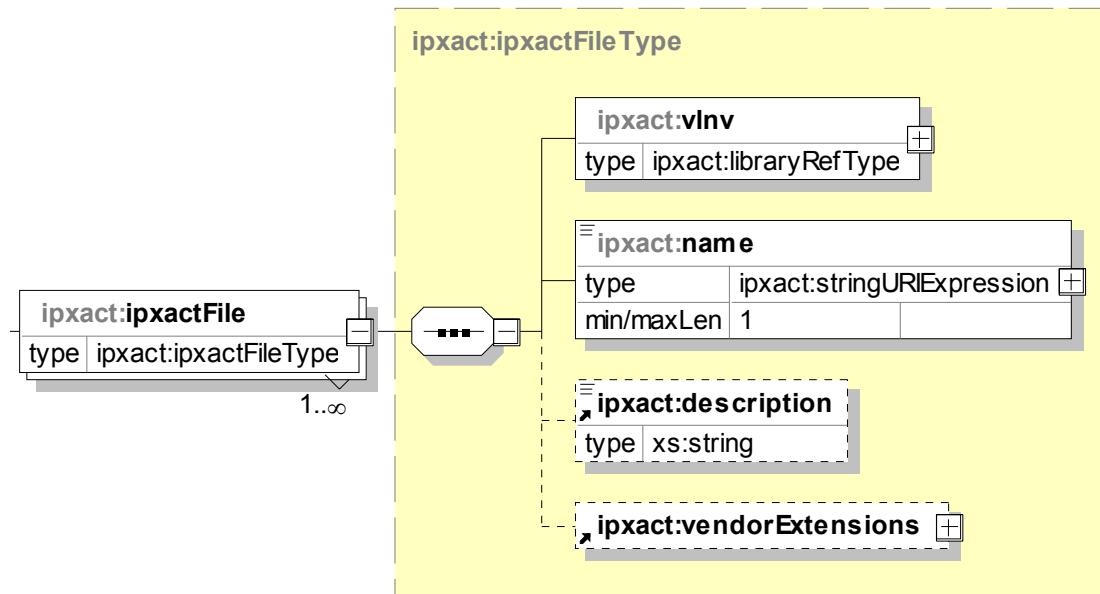
- a) The **versionedIdentifier** group provides a unique identifier; it consists of four subelements for a top-level IP-XACT element. See [C.25](#).
- b) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the interface.
- c) **catalogs** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **catalog** documents. See [11.2](#).
- d) **busDefinitions** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **busDefinitions** documents. See [11.2](#).
- e) **abstractionDefinitions** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **abstractionDefinitions** documents. See [11.2](#).
- f) **components** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **components** documents. See [11.2](#).
- g) **abstractors** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **abstractors** documents. See [11.2](#).
- h) **designs** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **designs** documents. See [11.2](#).
- i) **designConfigurations** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **designConfigurations** documents. See [11.2](#).
- j) **generatorChains** (optional) specifies a list of **ipxactFile** elements that reference other IP-XACT **generatorChains** documents. See [11.2](#).
- k) **vendorExtensions** (optional) contains any extra vendor-specific data related to the interface. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.3](#), [SCR 1.10](#), [SCR 1.12](#), and [SCR 6.16](#).

## 11.2 ipxactFile

### 11.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **ipxactFile** element, which documents the existence of a top-level IP-XACT file with the indicated location and VLVN. The type of the IP-XACT file is expected to match that of the container element of the **ipxactFile**.



### 11.2.2 Description

The **ipxactFile** contains the following elements and attributes:

- a) **VLVN** (mandatory; type: *libraryRefType* (see [C.11](#))) specifies the VLVN of the IP-XACT file referenced by the **name** element.
- b) **name** (mandatory; type: *stringURIExpression* (see [C.3.4](#))) identifies the containing element.
- c) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.
- d) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the design configuration. See [C.24](#).

See also [SCR 1.15](#).



## 12. Addressing

This clause describes how addresses are transformed between a slave's memory map and a master's address space. [Clause 13](#) also describes how to determine which bits of the memory map are visible in the master's address space.

Indirect interfaces and the associated indirectly accessible memory map do not directly add to the address map. Rather, each indirect interface requires a separate address map calculation. Address map calculation for indirect interfaces is the same as a slave bus interface. The indirect address field and indirect data field are analogous to the logical address and data ports of a slave bus interface.

NOTE—In both [Clause 12](#) and [Clause 13](#), *equation variables* are denoted with letters offset in parenthesis, e.g.,  $(b)$ ,  $(d)$ ; whereas, the equations themselves are numbered (and offset in parenthesis), e.g.,  $(1)$ ,  $(31)$ . Any subsequent references are shown as superscripted (and enclosed in parenthesis), e.g.,  $\text{address\_offset}^{(a)}$  or  $\text{item\_width}^{(4)}$ .

### 12.1 Calculating the bit address of a bit in a memory map

A *memory map* consists of a set of address blocks, subspace maps, and banks containing further address blocks, subspace maps, and banks (to any number of levels). To calculate the address of a bit within an address block or subspace map relative to the containing memory map, its bit address needs to be calculated relative to its parent. If that parent is a bank, first calculate how that bank modifies the address, and then continue working up the bank structure until the memory map is reached. To do so, the following formulas apply:

- For a bit in an address block directly in a memory map:

$$\text{address\_offset} = \text{offset in address unit bits} \quad (a)$$

The *address\_offset* describes the offset in address unit bits. In IP-XACT, the offset of the following items is described in address unit bits: addressBlock baseAddress, register and register-file addressOffset, bank baseAddress, and subspaceMap baseAddress.

$$\text{bit\_offset} = \text{offset in bits} \quad (b)$$

The *bit\_offset* describes the offset in bits. In IP-XACT, the bitOffset for fields is described in bits.

$$\text{addressBlock\_bit\_address} = ((\text{address\_offset}^{(a)} + \text{addressBlock.baseAddress}) \times \text{memoryMap.addressUnitBits}) + \text{bit\_offset}^{(b)} \quad (1)$$

- For a bit in a subspace map:

$$\text{subspaceMap\_bit\_address} = ((\text{address\_offset}^{(a)} + \text{subspaceMap.baseAddress}) \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits}) + \text{bit\_offset}^{(b)} \quad (2)$$

However, the following formulas need to be used on any containing banks:

- a) For an item (bank, subspace map, or address block) within a serial bank:

$$\text{container\_addressUnitBits} := \text{memoryMap.addressUnitBits} \mid \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (3)$$

$$\text{item\_width} := \text{addressBlock\_width}^{(14)} \mid \text{subspaceMap\_width}^{(15)} \mid \text{bank\_width}^{(16)} \quad (4)$$

$$\text{item\_range} := \text{addressBlock\_range}^{(8)} \mid \text{subspaceMap\_range}^{(9)} \mid \text{bank\_range}^{(11)} \quad (5)$$

$$\text{item\_rows} = \text{ceiling}((\text{item\_range}^{(5)} \times \text{container\_addressUnitBits}^{(3)}) / \text{item\_width}^{(4)}) \quad (6)$$

The effective range of an item is its range rounded up to the nearest complete row:

$$\text{item\_effective\_range} = \text{item\_rows}^{(6)} \times \text{item\_width}^{(4)} \quad (7)$$

The range of an item is calculated depending on its type:

- 1) For an address block the range is the value of the range subelement:

$$\text{addressBlock\_range} = \text{addressBlock.range} \quad (8)$$

- 2) For a subspace map that references a segment, the range is the value of the segment's range elements; for other subspace maps, the range is the value of the address space's range subelement, then the range is normalized by multiplying it with the address space's address unit bits, and then the result is divided by the subspace map's memory map address unit bits:

$$\text{subspaceMap\_range} = (\text{addressSpace\_range}^{(10)} \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits}) / \text{memoryMap.addressUnitBits} \quad (9)$$

$$\text{addressSpace\_range} := \text{addressSpace.range} \mid \text{addressSpace.segment.range} \quad (10)$$

- 3) For a bank the range is dependent on its alignment:

$$\text{bank\_range} := \text{serial\_bank\_range}^{(12)} \mid \text{parallel\_bank\_range}^{(13)} \quad (11)$$

- 4) For a serial bank, the range is the sum of the effective ranges of the subitems:

$$\text{serial\_bank\_range} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_effective\_range}_{[i]}^{(7)} \quad (12)$$

- 5) For a parallel bank, the range is the (largest item\_rows of all the subitems) x (bank\_width/addressUnitBits):

$$\text{parallel\_bank\_range} = \max(\text{item\_rows}^{(6)}[0], \dots, \text{item\_rows}^{(6)}[n-1]) \times \text{parallel\_bank\_width}^{(18)} / \text{container\_addressUnitBits}^{(3)} \quad (13)$$

(i.e., the effective range of an item is its range rounded up to the nearest complete row)

The width of an item is calculated depending on its type:

- 6) For an address block, the width is defined as the value of the **width** subelement:

$$\text{addressBlock\_width} = \text{addressBlock.width} \quad (14)$$

- 7) For a subspace map, the width is the width of the address space of the referenced bus interface:

$$\text{subspaceMap\_width} = \text{addressSpace.width} \quad (15)$$

- 8) For a serial bank, the width is the width of the widest subitem:

$$\text{bank\_width} := \text{serial\_bank\_width}^{(17)} \mid \text{parallel\_bank\_width}^{(18)} \quad (16)$$

$$\text{serial\_bank\_width} = \max(\text{item\_width}^{(4)}[0], \dots, \text{item\_width}^{(4)}[n-1]) \quad (17)$$

9) For a parallel bank, the width is the sum of the widths of the subitems:

$$\text{parallel\_bank\_width} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_width}_{[i]}^{(4)} \quad (18)$$

b) For an offset within item  $n$  in a serial bank:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{serial\_bank\_bit\_address} &= \text{bit\_offset}^{(b)} + \\ &\left( \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_effective\_range}_{[i]}^{(7)} \times \text{container\_addressUnitBits}^{(3)} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (19)$$

c) For a bit within item  $n$  in a parallel bank containing  $m$  items:

$$\text{bit\_offset\_in\_row} = \text{bit\_offset}^{(b)} \bmod \text{item\_width}^{(4)}[n] + \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_width}_{[i]}^{(4)} \quad (20)$$

$$\text{row\_bit\_offset} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_width}_{[i]}^{(4)} \times (\text{bit\_offset}^{(b)} / \text{item\_width}^{(4)}[n]) \quad (21)$$

$$\text{parallel\_bank\_bit\_address} = \text{row\_bit\_offset}^{(21)} + \text{bit\_offset\_in\_row}^{(20)} \quad (22)$$

Once the bit address within a top-level bank has been calculated, the bit address within the memory map can be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{bank\_bit\_address} := \text{parallel\_bank\_bit\_address}^{(22)} \mid \text{serial\_bank\_bit\_address}^{(19)} \quad (23)$$

$$\text{memory\_map\_bit\_address} = \text{address\_space\_bit\_address} = \text{block\_bit\_address}^{(25)} + (\text{item.baseAddress} \times \text{container\_addressUnitBits}^{(3)}) \quad (24)$$

$$\text{block\_bit\_address} := \text{subspaceMap\_bit\_address}^{(2)} \mid \text{addressBlock\_bit\_address}^{(1)} \mid \text{bank\_bit\_address}^{(23)} \quad (25)$$

## 12.2 Calculating the bus address at the slave bus interface

The bus address of a bit at the slave bus interface can be derived from the following formulas:

$$\text{slave\_bus\_address} = \text{memory\_map\_bit\_address}^{(24)} / \text{slave.bitsInLau} \quad (26)$$

On a bus, the bit offset gives the offset within the LAU of the bit using the following formula:

$$\text{slave\_bit\_offset} = \text{memory\_map\_bit\_address}^{(24)} \bmod \text{slave.bitsInLau} \quad (27)$$

## 12.3 Calculating the address at the indirect interface

The address of a bit at an indirect interface can be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{indirect\_interface\_bus\_address} = \text{memory\_map\_bit\_address}^{(24)} / \text{indirect\_interface.bitsInLau} \quad (28)$$

The bit offset gives the offset within the LAU of the bit using the following formula:

$$\text{indirect\_interface\_bit\_offset} = \text{memory\_map\_bit\_address}^{(24)} \bmod \text{indirect\_interface.bitsInLau} \quad (29)$$

## 12.4 Address modifications of a channel

The address at the mirrored slave interface can be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{mirrored\_slave\_bus\_address} = (\text{slave\_bus\_address}^{(26)} \times \text{slave.bitsInLau}) / \text{mirroredSlave.bitsInLau} \quad (30)$$

This is then modified by the remap address:

$$\text{mirrored\_slave\_row\_address} = \text{mirrored\_slave\_bus\_address}^{(30)} + (\text{mirroredSlave.baseAddress.remapAddress}) \quad (31)$$

where *remapAddress* is the remap address for the current state of the channel.

$$\text{mirrored\_master\_bus\_address} = (\text{mirrored\_slave\_row\_address}^{(31)} \times \text{mirroredSlave.bitsInLau}) / \text{mirroredMaster.bitsInLau} \quad (32)$$

## 12.5 Addressing in the master

The bus address at the master bus interface can be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{master\_bus\_address} = (\text{mirrored\_master\_bus\_address}^{(32)} \times \text{mirroredMaster.bitsInLau}) / \text{master.bitsInLau} \quad (33)$$

This gives a bit address of

$$\text{master\_bit\_address} = \text{master\_bus\_address}^{(33)} \times \text{master.bitsInLau} \quad (34)$$

The bit address may then be converted to an addressing unit address and offset using the formulas:

$$\text{addressSpace\_bus\_address} = \text{master\_bit\_address}^{(34)} / \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (35)$$

$$\text{addressSpace\_bit\_offset} = \text{master\_bit\_address}^{(34)} \bmod \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (36)$$

## 12.6 Address translation in a bridge

The address at the master interface for a bridge can be derived from the following formulas:

- a) The bus address at the master bus interface is:

$$\text{bridge\_master\_bus\_address} = \text{slave\_bus\_address}^{(26)} \quad (37)$$

This gives a bit address of

$$\text{bridge\_master\_bit\_address} = \text{bridge\_master\_bus\_address}^{(37)} \times \text{bridge\_master.bitsInLau} + \text{bridge\_master.addressSpaceRef.baseAddress} \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (38)$$

The master bit address (also equal to the address space bit address) may be converted to an addressing unit address and offset of the *addressSpace* using the formulas:

$$\text{bridge\_address\_space\_address} = \text{bridge\_master\_bit\_address}^{(38)} / \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (39)$$

$$\text{bridge\_address\_space\_offset} = \text{bridge\_master\_bit\_address}^{(38)} \bmod \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (40)$$

- b) The bit address may also be converted to the address of the bridged slave interface by using the following formulas:
  - 1) For a transparent bridge:

$$\text{bridge\_slave\_address} = \text{bridge\_address\_space\_address}^{(39)} \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} / \text{bridge\_slave.bitsInLau} \quad (41)$$

- 2) For an opaque bridge:

$$\text{bridge\_slave\_address} = (((\text{bridge\_address\_space\_address}^{(39)} - \text{segment.addressOffset}) \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits}) / \text{bridge\_slave.bitsInLau}) + \text{slave\_bus\_address}^{(26)} \quad (42)$$

- c) When an indirect interface is bridging to a master, the bit address may also be converted to the address of the indirect interface using the following formulas:
  - 1) For a transparent bridge:

$$\text{bridge\_indirect\_interface\_address} = (\text{bridge\_address\_space\_address}^{(39)} \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits}) / \text{bridge\_indirect\_interface.bitsInLau} \quad (43)$$

- 2) For an opaque bridge:

$$\text{bridge\_indirect\_interface\_address} = (((\text{bridge\_address\_space\_address}^{(39)} - \text{segment.addressOffset}) \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits}) / \text{bridge\_indirect\_interface.bitsInLau}) + \text{slave\_bus\_address}^{(26)} \quad (44)$$

## 13. Data visibility

The addressing descriptions in [Clause 12](#) presume each bus interface maps only a single logical address port (a port with an **isAddress** qualifier) and a single logical data port (a port with an **isData** data qualifier). See also [5.6](#) and [5.9](#).

If a bus interface maps more than one address or data port, then each combination of address and data ports implies a separate addressing and data visibility calculation. To calculate the address map for a particular type of transaction, the data and address ports that transaction uses need to be known first.

The most common case for multiple data ports in a single bus interface is where there are separate read and write data ports; however, their relevant properties of the read and write data ports are typically identical—giving identical read and write address maps.

### 13.1 Mapped address bits mask

The mapped address bits need to be taken into account when calculating the data visibility to the interface by deriving a mask from the set of address bits mapped in the interface. This mask is 'bitwise anded' with the `bus_address`.

*interface\_mapped\_address\_bits = a mask derived from the set of address bits mapped in the interface (c)*

*interface\_bus\_address := slave\_bus\_address<sup>(26)</sup> | mirrored\_slave\_bus\_address<sup>(30)</sup> | mirrored\_master\_bus\_address<sup>(32)</sup> | master\_bus\_address<sup>(33)</sup> | bridge\_master\_bus\_address<sup>(37)</sup>* (45)

*interface\_visible\_bus\_address = interface\_bus\_address<sup>(45)</sup> & interface\_mapped\_address\_bits<sup>(c)</sup>* (46)

### 13.2 Address modifications of an interconnection

The bus address is carried between adjacent bus interfaces (slave and mirrored slave, master and mirrored master, or master and slave) on the bus's **isAddress** logical port. If this port is a wire port, the address is always carried as parallel bits with the least significant bit of the address on logical bit 0 of the port. The interconnection can modify the address in two ways:

- a) If some address bits are not connected, addresses with those bits set are not accessible from the master.
  - 1) Examine the logical vectors in the port maps to determine which address bits are connected.
  - 2) Transactional ports always carry all address bits across the interconnection.
- b) If the value of **bitsInLau** differs on the two sides of the interconnection, the interpretation of the address as a bit address can vary by the ratio of the interfaces' **bitsInLau**. This, however, does not alter the actual bus address.

### 13.3 Bit steering in a channel

How addresses are modified within a channel depends on the value of **bitSteering** in the mirrored slave interface. It also depends on the relative width of the mirrored master and mirrored slave data ports, where this width is defined to be the total number of bits of the logical data port that are mapped in the bus interface. If **bitSteering** is on, or the slave is wider than or the same width as the master, the addresses are simply modified to take into account any change in **bitsInLau** between the mirrored slave and the mirrored master, as shown in the following formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mirrored\_master\_steering\_on\_visible\_bus\_address} &= \text{mirrored\_master\_bus\_address}^{(32)} \& \\ \text{mirrored\_master\_mapped\_address\_bits}^{(c)} \end{aligned} \quad (47)$$

If **bitSteering** is `off` and the mirrored slave is narrower than the mirrored master, the address is adapted so all locations in the slave's memory map are visible:

$$\text{mirroredMaster\_width} = \text{relative width of the dataport of the mirrored master interface} \quad (d)$$

$$\text{mirroredSlave\_width} = \text{relative width of the dataport of the mirrored slave interface} \quad (e)$$

$$\text{mirrored\_slave\_bit\_address} = \text{mirrored\_slave\_row\_address}^{(31)} \times \text{mirroredSlave.bitsInLau} \quad (48)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mirrored\_master\_bit\_address} &= \text{mirrored\_slave\_bit\_address}^{(48)} \bmod \text{mirroredSlave\_width}^{(e)} + \\ &((\text{mirrored\_slave\_bit\_address}^{(48)} / \text{mirroredSlave\_width}^{(e)}) \times \text{mirroredMaster\_width}^{(d)}) \end{aligned} \quad (49)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{mirrored\_master\_steering\_off\_visible\_bus\_address} &= \text{mirrored\_master\_bit\_address}^{(49)} / \\ \text{mirroredMaster.bitsInLau} \& \& \text{mirrored\_master\_mapped\_address\_bits}^{(c)} \end{aligned} \quad (50)$$

Finally, **bitSteering** has a different meaning in a mirrored slave interface from the meaning in a master or slave interface. In a master or slave interface, it means the component shall modify which bit lanes are used for data when accessing narrow devices. In a mirrored slave interface, it means the addresses from a mirrored master interface are not modified for transfers to a narrower mirrored slave data port.

## 13.4 Visibility of bits

A bit in the slave's memory map is visible in the master's address space if

- It is in an address range visible to the master;
- The master and slave agree on the bit lane in which the bit should appear, and this bit lane is connected between the master and the slave.

### 13.4.1 Visible address ranges

Two conditions need to be fulfilled for an address in the slave to be visible to the master.

- a) The address at the mirrored slave shall be within the range supported by the mirrored slave interface:

$$\text{mirrored\_slave\_visible\_bus\_address} < \text{mirroredSlave.baseAddress.range} \quad (51)$$

- b) The address in the address space shall be within the range supported by the master address space for that bus interface:

$$0 \leq \text{master\_bit\_address}^{(34)} < \text{addressSpace.range} \times \text{addressSpace.addressUnitBits} \quad (52)$$

### 13.4.2 Bit lanes in memory maps

The local bit lane of a bit in an address block is

$$\text{address\_block\_bit\_lane} = \text{addressBlock.bit\_offset}^{(b)} \bmod \text{addressBlock.width} \quad (53)$$

Similarly, in a subspace map the bit lane is

$$\text{subspace\_map\_bit\_lane} = \text{subspaceMap.bit\_offset}^{(b)} \bmod \text{addressSpace.width} \quad (54)$$

where the *addressSpace.width* is the width of the address space of the referenced master bus interface.

If the address block or subspace map is at the top level of the memory map or only within serial banks, the bit lane in the memory map is the local bit lane.

$$\text{local\_bit\_lane} := \text{address\_block\_bit\_lane}^{(53)} \mid \text{subspace\_map\_bit\_lane}^{(54)} \quad (55)$$

If it is item *n* in a parallel bank, then:

$$\text{bank\_bit\_lane} = \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} \text{item\_width}_{[i]}^{(4)} + \text{local\_bit\_lane}^{(55)} \quad (56)$$

If it is in multiple hierarchical parallel banks, this formula is applied at each higher level with the lower-level *bank\_bit\_lane* replacing *local\_bit\_lane*.

The bit lane in the memory map is the top-level *bank\_bit\_lane*.

### 13.4.3 Bit lanes in address spaces

The bit lane in an address space can be derived from the following formula:

$$\text{address\_space\_bit\_address} = \text{master\_bit\_address}^{(34)} \quad (57)$$

$$\text{address\_space\_bit\_lane} = \text{address\_space\_bit\_address}^{(57)} \bmod \text{addressSpace.width} \quad (58)$$

### 13.4.4 Bit lanes in bus interfaces

In a bus interface, the logical bit numbers of the data port carry the corresponding bit lanes. For example, if a slave bus interface has a data port with a logical vector of [15:8], this port can access bit lanes 15 to 8 of the memory map and logical bit lanes 15 to 8 in the connected mirrored slave or master interface.

### 13.4.5 Bit lanes in channels

All bus interfaces on a channel shall use the same logical numbering of data port bits. As a result, data bits cannot be moved between bit lanes in a channel by giving the mirrored bus interfaces different logical to physical mappings on their data ports.

### 13.4.6 Bit steering in masters and slaves

Bit steering takes effect only when the master and the slave have data ports of different widths. If they do and bit steering is enabled (i.e., *bitSteering* is on in the master or slave interface) for the bus interface with the wider data port, then this data port shall move its copy of output data to the correct bit lanes for the narrower port and read its input data from the correct bit lanes for the narrower port.

If bit steering is disabled in the wider port, the master can access data at a particular address only when the bit lane for that address in the address space is connected (through the bus interfaces and a channel) to the bit lane for the corresponding address in the memory map.

The following also apply:

- The **bitSteering** value has a different meaning in mirrored slaves. See [12.2](#).

- Some buses with bit steering may support only certain data port widths. Describing which widths are supported is outside the scope of IP-XACT.
- Bit steering allows software or hardware away from the bus interface to work without knowing the width of devices on the far side of the bus. To provide this functionality, a bus supporting bit steering normally gives the same address bits to all devices, irrespective of their widths, and does not adapt addresses to the width of the slave bus interfaces (i.e., `bitSteering` is on in the mirrored slave bus interfaces). Thus, a non-bitsteering master on such a bus has access to only some of the memory rows of narrower slaves.



## Annex A

(informative)

### Bibliography

Bibliographic references are resources that provide additional or helpful material but do not need to be understood or used to implement this standard. Reference to these resources is made for informational use only.

- [B1] IEC/IEEE 61691-1-1, Behavioral languages—Part 1: VHDL language reference manual.<sup>17, 18</sup>
- [B2] IEEE Std 754<sup>TM</sup>-1985, IEEE Standard for Binary Floating-Point Arithmetic.<sup>19</sup>
- [B3] IEEE Std 1364<sup>TM</sup>, IEEE Standard for Verilog Hardware Description Language.
- [B4] IEEE Std 1666<sup>TM</sup>, IEEE Standard for SystemC Language Reference Manual.
- [B5] IETF RFC 2119, “Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels,” Bradner, S., Best Current Practice: 14.<sup>20</sup>
- [B6] *International System of Units*.<sup>21</sup>
- [B7] IP-XACT Leon Register Transfer Examples.<sup>22</sup>
- [B8] IP-XACT Leon Transaction Level Examples.<sup>23</sup>
- [B9] IP-XACT Schema.<sup>24</sup>
- [B10] IP-XACT Schema Examples.<sup>25</sup>
- [B11] IP-XACT Schema on-line documentation.<sup>26</sup>
- [B12] IP-XACT standard tool names for **envIdentifier**.<sup>27</sup>
- [B13] IP-XACT TGI WSDL.<sup>28</sup>

---

<sup>17</sup>IEC publications are available from the International Electrotechnical Commission (<http://www.iec.ch/>). IEC publications are also available in the United States from the American National Standards Institute (<http://www.ansi.org/>).

<sup>18</sup>IEEE publications are available from The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc. (<http://standards.ieee.org/>).

<sup>19</sup>The IEEE standards or products referred to in this annex are trademarks of The Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, Inc.

<sup>20</sup> Available from <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt>.

<sup>21</sup>Available at <http://physics.nist.gov/cuu/Units/>.

<sup>22</sup>Available from [http://www.accellera.org/doc\\_downloads/](http://www.accellera.org/doc_downloads/).

<sup>23</sup>Available from <http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/1685-2009/index.xsd>.

<sup>24</sup>See Footnote 21.

<sup>25</sup>See Footnote 20.

<sup>26</sup>See Footnote 21.

<sup>27</sup>Available at <http://www.accellera.org/tech/refs/toolnames>.

<sup>28</sup>Available from <http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/1685-2009/TGI/TGI.wsdl>.

[B14] ISO/IEC 8859-1, Information technology—8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets—Part 1: Latin Alphabet No. 1.<sup>29</sup>

[B15] ISO/IEC 8879, Information processing—Text and office systems—Standard Generalized Markup Language (SGML).

---

<sup>29</sup>ISO/IEC publications are available from the International Organization of Standards (<http://www.iso.ch/>). ISO/IEC publications are also available in the United States from Global Engineering Documents (<http://global.ihs.com/>). Electronic copies are available in the United States from the American National Standards Institute (<http://www.ansi.org/>).

## Annex B

(normative)

### Semantic consistency rules

For an IP-XACT document or a set of IP-XACT documents to be valid, they shall, in addition to conforming to the IP-XACT schema, obey certain semantic rules. While many of these are described informally in other clauses of this document, this annex defines them formally. Tools generating IP-XACT documents shall ensure these rules are obeyed. Tools reading IP-XACT documents shall report any breaches of these rules to the user.

#### B.1 Semantic consistency rule definitions

The following definitions apply when determining a semantic consistency rule (SCR) interpretation.

##### B.1.1 Compatibility of busDefinitions

A set of **busDefinitions** are considered compatible if they are related by the **extends** relationship as described in [5.11.1](#). A **busDefinition** is always compatible with itself.

##### B.1.2 Interface mode of a bus interface

Specifies which of the following exclusive subelements of the **busInterface** is *present*: **master**, **slave**, **system**, **mirroredMaster**, **mirroredSlave**, **mirroredSystem**, or **monitor**. For instance, a **busInterface** containing a system subelement is considered to have an interface mode of **system**.

##### B.1.3 Compatibility of abstractionDefinitions

A set of **abstractionDefinitions** are considered compatible if they are related by the *extending* relationship as described in [5.11.2](#). Two configured **abstractionDefinitions** are compatible with each other if they meet the *extending* requirements.

##### B.1.4 Element referenced by configurableElementValue element

A **configurableElementValue** element is considered to reference a configurable element if the value of the **referenceId** attribute of the **configurableElementValue** matches the **parameterId** of that configurable element.

##### B.1.5 Memory mapping

If an access is not specified, the value defaults to the value from the level above. If the top level is not specified, the access defaults to read-write.

##### B.1.6 Port connection equivalence class

The *port connection equivalence class* of a (logical or component) port is the set of model and logical ports that can be reached from that port through any sequence of the following:

- a) Bus interfaces' logical-to-physical port maps
- b) Interconnections between logical ports implied by interconnections between bus interfaces using the same abstraction of the bus
- c) Ad hoc connections

### B.1.7 Logical and physical ports

- a) If a **physicalPort** has a **partSelect** subelement, the physical bits specified by the **partSelect** are ordered using System Verilog bit ordering rules. If there is no **partSelect** subelement, the bit ordering is defined by the **arrays** subelements (if any) followed by the **vectors** subelements (if any) of the model port, again using System Verilog bit ordering rules. This bit ordering defines a linear order of the specified bits from `physical.left` to `physical.right`. If the model port does not have a range defined, then `physical.left = physical.right = 0`.
- b) If a **logicalPort** element has a **range** subelement, its range shall be `[left:right]`, where **left** and **right** are the left and right values of the **range** subelement. If a **logicalPort** element does not have a **range** subelement and the **physicalPort** element in the same **portMap** references a wire port, then its range shall be taken as `[abs(physical.left - physical.right) : 0]`.
- c) A logical bit of a port is mapped if it is included in the range of a **logicalPort** element referencing that bus interface port.

### B.1.8 Addressable bus interface

A bus interface shall be *addressable* if the **isAddressable** element of the bus definition it references has the value **true**.

## B.2 Rule listings

The semantic rules listed here can be checked purely by manually examining a set of IP-XACT documents. In [Table B.1](#) through [Table B.16](#), *Single doc check* indicates a rule can be checked purely by manually examining a single IP-XACT document. Rules for which *Single doc check* is No require the examination of the relationships between IP-XACT documents. When *Post config* is Yes, that rule applies only after configuration has been completed.

NOTE—Where these tables contain references to the values of elements and those elements are configurable in IP-XACT, the values used are the configured values (not the XML element values).

## B.2.1 Cross-references and VLNVs

**Table B.1—Cross-references and VLNVs**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 1.1 <i>uniqueVLNV</i>	Every IP-XACT document visible to a tool shall have a unique VLVN. Applies only to documents visible to a particular tool or DE at one time. In particular, users are likely to store multiple versions of the same documents, with the same VLNVs, in source control systems. See also <a href="#">C.25.2</a> and <a href="#">C.25.4</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.2 <i>anyVLNVRefMustExist</i>	Any VLVN in an IP-XACT document used to reference another IP-XACT document shall precisely match the identifying VLVN of an existing IP-XACT document. In the schema, such references always use the attribute group <b>versionedIdentifier</b> . See also <a href="#">C.25.2</a> and <a href="#">C.25.4</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.3 <i>busDefExtendsVLNVIsBusDef</i>	The VLVN in an <b>extends</b> element in a bus definition shall be a reference to a bus definition. See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.4 <i>busTypeVLNVIsBusDef</i>	The VLVN in a <b>busType</b> element in a bus interface or abstraction definition shall be a reference to a bus definition. See also <a href="#">6.5.1</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.5 <i>designRefVLNVIsDesign</i>	The VLVN in a <b>designRef</b> element in a design configuration or <b>designInstantiation</b> element in a component shall be a reference to a <b>design</b> . See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.6 <i>designCfgRefVLNVIsDesignCfg</i>	The VLVN in a <b>designConfigurationRef</b> element in a <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> element in a component shall be a reference to a <b>designConfiguration</b> .	No	No
SCR 1.7 <i>cfgChainRefVLNVIsGenChain</i>	The VLVN in a <b>generatorChainRef</b> element in a design configuration shall be a reference to a generator chain. See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> and <a href="#">10.3</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.8 <i>selChainRefVLNVIsGenChain</i>	The VLVN in a <b>generatorChainRef</b> subelement of the element <b>generatorChainSelector</b> in a generator chain shall be a reference to a generator chain. See also <a href="#">9.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.9 <i>compRefVLNVIsComp</i>	The VLVN in a <b>componentRef</b> element in a <b>design</b> shall be a reference to a <b>component</b> . See also <a href="#">7.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.10 <i>legalTopDocTypes</i>	The XML document element of an IP-XACT document shall be an <b>abstractor</b> , <b>abstractionDefinition</b> , <b>busDefinition</b> , <b>component</b> , <b>design</b> , <b>designConfiguration</b> , <b>generatorChain</b> , or <b>catalog</b> element. See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> , <a href="#">5.3</a> , <a href="#">6.1.2</a> , <a href="#">7.1.2</a> , <a href="#">8.1.2</a> , <a href="#">9.1.2</a> , and <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 1.11 <i>absTypeVLNVIsAbsDef</i>	The VLVN in an <b>abstractionType</b> element in a component or abstractor shall reference an <b>abstractionDefinition</b> . See also <a href="#">8.1.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.1—Cross-references and VLNVs (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 1.12 <i>busTypeMustMatch</i>	If a bus interface contains an <b>abstractionType</b> subelement, the abstraction definition's <b>busType</b> element and the bus interface's <b>busType</b> element shall reference the same bus definition. In other words, the abstraction referenced shall be an abstraction of the referenced bus. See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> , <a href="#">5.3.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.13 <i>absRefVLNVIsAbstractor</i>	The VLVN in an <b>abstractorRef</b> in a <b>designConfiguration</b> shall reference an <b>abstractor</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.14 <i>absDefExtendsVLNVIsAbsDef</i>	The VLVN in an <b>extends</b> element in an abstraction definition shall be a reference to an abstraction definition. See also <a href="#">5.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.15 <i>CatalogVLNVReference</i>	The VLVN within an <b>ipxactFile/vlsv</b> element in a catalog needs to refer to an IP-XACT file whose file type matches the container of the <b>ipxactFile/vlsv</b> element. For example, all VLNVs within the <b>catalog</b> <b>busDefinitions</b> element shall refer to IP-XACT <b>busDefinitions</b> elements. See also <a href="#">11.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 1.16 <i>viewDesignConfigurationInstantiationReference</i>	If a <b>view</b> contains a <b>designConfigurationInstantiationRef</b> and does not also contain a <b>designInstantiationRef</b> , then the referenced design configuration document shall contain a <b>designRef</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.1.2</a> and <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 1.17 <i>DesignRefsMatch</i>	If a <b>view</b> contains a <b>designConfigurationInstantiationRef</b> and a <b>designInstantiationRef</b> and the design configuration contains a <b>designRef</b> , then the referenced design VLNVs shall match. See also <a href="#">6.12.1.2</a> and <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	No	Yes

## B.2.2 Interconnections

**Table B.2—Interconnections**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 2.1 <i>connectedIntfsMustExist</i>	In the attributes of an <b>activeInterface</b> , <b>monitoredActiveInterface</b> , or <b>monitorInterface</b> element, the value of the <b>busRef</b> attribute shall be the name of a <b>busInterface</b> in the component description referenced by the VLNV of the component instance named in <b>componentRef</b> and optional <b>path</b> attributes. See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> and <a href="#">7.4.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.2 <i>connectedIntfsCompat</i>	In the subelements of an <b>interconnection</b> , the bus interfaces referenced by all <b>activeInterface</b> and <b>hierInterface</b> subelements shall be compatible, i.e., the <b>busType</b> elements within the <b>busInterface</b> elements shall reference compatible <b>busDefinitions</b> . See also <a href="#">6.3.1</a> , <a href="#">6.3.2</a> , <a href="#">6.3.3</a> , and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 2.3 <i>intfConnectedOnlyOnce</i>	A particular component/bus interface combination shall appear in only one <b>interconnection</b> element in a design. See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 2.4 <i>activeMstConnect</i>	An active interface of type <b>master</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>slave</b> or <b>mirrored-master</b> or hierarchical interfaces of type <b>master</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.5 <i>activeMSlvConnect</i>	An active interface of type <b>mirrored-slave</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>slave</b> or hierarchical interfaces of type <b>mirrored-slave</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.6 <i>hierSlvConnect</i>	A hierarchical interface of type <b>slave</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>slave</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.7 <i>hierMMstConnect</i>	A hierarchical interface of type <b>mirrored-master</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>mirrored-master</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.8 <i>systemConnect</i>	An active interface of type <b>system</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>mirrored-system</b> or hierarchical interfaces of type <b>system</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 2.9 <i>MstSystemConnect</i>	An active interface of type <b>mirrored-system</b> shall connect only to active interfaces of type <b>system</b> or hierarchical interfaces of type <b>mirrored-system</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 2.10 <i>interconnectionDriver</i>	An <b>interconnection</b> element without system interfaces or mirrored-system interfaces shall contain one driving interface, which is an active interface referencing a master, a mirrored-slave, or a hierarchical interface referencing a slave or mirrored-master. See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes

**Table B.2—Interconnections (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 2.11 <i>MstToSlvBitsLAUMatch</i>	In a direct master-to slave connection, the value of <b>bitsInLAU</b> in the master's bus interface shall match the value of <b>bitsInLAU</b> in the slave's bus interface. See also <a href="#">6.3.1</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.12 <i>MstToSlvIsDirectConnect</i>	In a direct master-to-slave connection, the <b>bus-Definitions</b> referenced by the <b>busInterfaces</b> shall have a <b>directConnection</b> element with the value <b>true</b> . See also <a href="#">6.3.1</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.13 <i>SysToMSysGroupsMatch</i>	In a connection between a system interface and a mirrored-system interface, the values of the <b>group</b> elements of the two bus interfaces shall be identical. See also <a href="#">6.3.1</a> , <a href="#">6.3.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.2.2</a> , and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.14 <i>EndianessMustMatch</i>	The endianess in all bus interfaces shall match for any interconnection using an addressable bus. If the endianess is not specified at either bus interface, it is presumed to be little endian. See also <a href="#">6.3.1</a> , <a href="#">6.3.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> , and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.15 <i>ConnectionRequired</i>	If a design contains a component with a <b>busInterface</b> that has a <b>connectionRequired</b> element with the value <b>true</b> , that <b>busInterface</b> shall be included in an <b>interconnection</b> of the design. See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 2.16 <i>MonIntPathMustExist</i>	A <b>monitorInterconnection</b> with interfaces that contain a <b>path</b> attribute with a <b>componetRef</b> and <b>busRef</b> shall exist in all hierarchical views. See also <a href="#">7.4</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 2.17 <i>broadcastConstraint</i>	An interconnection may not contain more than two total <b>activeInterface</b> and <b>hierInterface</b> elements unless the underlying bus definition has the <b>broadcast</b> element set to <b>true</b> . See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 2.18 <i>excludePortExists</i>	A physical port name referenced in an <b>excludePort</b> element shall match the name of a <b>port</b> defined in the ports list of the <b>component</b> . See also <a href="#">7.4.2</a> .	No	No

### B.2.3 Channels, bridges, and abstractors

**Table B.3—Channels, bridges, and abstractors**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 3.1 <i>ChannelAbsDefsCompat</i>	Within a <b>channel</b> element, all the <b>busInterfaceRef</b> elements shall refer to compatible abstraction definitions, i.e., the VLNVs of the <b>abstractionType</b> elements within the <b>busInterface</b> elements shall reference compatible <b>abstractionDefinitions</b> . Compatibility of the abstraction definitions implies compatibility of their associated bus definitions. See also <a href="#">5.3.2</a> and <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 3.2 <i>ChannelInfsMirrored</i>	All bus interfaces referenced by a channel shall be mirrored interfaces. See also <a href="#">6.4.1</a> and <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 3.3 <i>MaxMastersHonored</i>	A channel can be connected to no more mirrored-master <b>busInterfaces</b> than the least value of <b>maxMasters</b> in the bus definitions referenced by the connected bus interfaces (whether these interfaces are mirrored-master or mirrored-slave interfaces). A channel may connect ports with different bus definitions, and hence different values of <b>maxMasters</b> , as long as the bus definitions are compatible. See also <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 3.4 <i>MaxSlavesHonored</i>	A channel can be connected to no more mirrored-slave bus interfaces than the least value of <b>maxSlaves</b> in the bus definitions referenced by the connected bus interfaces (whether these interfaces are mirrored-master or mirrored-slave interfaces). A channel may connect ports with different bus definitions, and hence different values of <b>maxSlaves</b> , as long as the bus definitions are compatible. See also <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 3.5 <i>BusIntfInOneChannelMax</i>	Each bus interface on a component shall connect to only one channel of that channel component. See also <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 3.6 <i>MasterRefIntfIsMaster</i>	The interface referenced by <b>masterRef</b> subelement of a <b>bridge</b> element shall be a master. See also <a href="#">6.5.4.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 3.7 <i>InterConnectionRefMustMatch</i>	The value of the <b>interconnectionRef</b> subelement of an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element shall precisely match a design <b>interconnection/name</b> or a design <b>monitorInterconnection/name</b> of an interconnection described in the design referenced by the containing design configuration or referenced by the design in the <b>designInstantiation</b> referenced by the view referencing the containing design configuration. See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.3—Channels, bridges, and abstractors (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 3.8 <i>AbstractorModeMustBeMaster</i>	An <b>abstractors</b> element of an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element in a design configuration document that references a master-to-mirrored-master connection shall reference only <b>abstractors</b> with an <b>abstractorMode</b> of <b>master</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.9 <i>AbstractorModeMustBeSlave</i>	An <b>abstractors</b> element of an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element in a design configuration document that references a slave-to-mirrored-slave interconnection in the corresponding design shall reference only <b>abstractors</b> with an <b>abstractorMode</b> of <b>slave</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.10 <i>AbstractorModeMustBeSystem</i>	An <b>abstractors</b> element of an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element in a design configuration document that references a system-to-mirrored-system interconnection in the corresponding design shall reference only <b>abstractors</b> with an <b>abstractorMode</b> of <b>system</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.11 <i>AbstractModeMustBeDirect</i>	An <b>abstractors</b> element of an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element in a design configuration document that references a master-to-slave interconnection in the corresponding design shall reference only <b>abstractors</b> with an <b>abstractorMode</b> of <b>direct</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.12 <i>AbstractionChainStart</i>	In the list of <b>abstractor</b> elements within an <b>abstractors</b> element in an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element, the first <b>abstractionType</b> element of the first referenced <b>abstractor</b> shall be compatible with the <b>abstractionType</b> element of the master, system, or mirrored-slave endpoint of the interconnection. <sup>a</sup> See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.13 <i>AbstractionChainEnd</i>	In the list of <b>abstractor</b> elements within an <b>abstractors</b> element in an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element, the second <b>abstractionType</b> element of the last referenced abstractor shall be compatible with the <b>abstractionType</b> element of the mirrored-master, mirrored-system, or slave endpoint of the interconnection. <sup>a</sup> See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.14 <i>AbstractionChainMiddle</i>	In the list of <b>abstractor</b> elements within an <b>abstractors</b> element in an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> element, the first <b>abstractionType</b> element of every referenced abstractor, except the first, shall be compatible with the second <b>abstractionType</b> element of the previous abstractor in the <b>interconnection-Configuration</b> list. <sup>a</sup> See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.15 <i>AbstractionBusTypesMustMatch</i>	The VLNVs in the <b>busType</b> elements of both abstraction definitions referenced by an abstractor shall exactly match the VLVN in the <b>busType</b> element of the abstractor. See also <a href="#">5.3.2</a> and <a href="#">8.1.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.3—Channels, bridges, and abstractors (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 3.16 <i>AbstractionExtendsCondition</i>	If abstraction definition AA is an abstraction of bus definition A and abstraction definition AB is an abstraction of bus definition B, then abstraction definition AA shall contain an <b>extends</b> element referencing abstraction definition AB only if bus definition A contains an <b>extends</b> element referencing bus definition B. If abstraction definition AA extends abstraction definition AB, AA and AB need to be abstractions of different buses. See also <a href="#">5.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 3.17 <i>SubspaceMasterRefExists</i>	The interface referenced by the <b>masterRef</b> attribute of a <b>subspaceMap</b> element shall be a master interface. See also <a href="#">6.9.9.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 3.18 <i>multiAbstractorBroadcast</i>	If multiple <b>abstractors</b> elements appear in an <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> , then the referenced <b>interconnection</b> shall be a broadcast connection (i.e., contain more than two interfaces). See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> and <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	Yes	No

<sup>a</sup>[SCR 3.12](#) – [SCR 3.14](#) mean the abstractors associated with an interconnection need to form a non-looping chain between the two ends.

## B.2.4 Monitor interfaces and monitor interconnections

**Table B.4—Monitor interfaces and monitor interconnections**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 4.1 <i>ActiveInterfaceCondition</i>	An <b>activeInterface</b> or <b>monitoredActiveInterface</b> element shall reference a <b>master</b> , <b>slave</b> , <b>system</b> , <b>mirroredMaster</b> , <b>mirroredSlave</b> , or <b>mirroredSystem</b> interface. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a> , <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> , <a href="#">7.4.2</a> , and <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 4.2 <i>MonitorInterfaceCondition</i>	The <b>monitorInterface</b> subelements of a <b>monitorInterconnection</b> element shall reference a <b>monitor</b> bus interface. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 4.3 <i>MonitorModeMustMatch</i>	In a <b>monitorInterconnection</b> element, the value of the <b>interfaceMode</b> of the monitor interfaces shall match the mode of the <b>monitoredActiveInterface</b> . As a result, all the monitor interfaces shall have the same interface mode. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a> , <a href="#">6.5.2.2</a> , and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 4.4 <i>MonitorSystemGroupMatches</i>	A <b>monitor</b> interface shall be connected to a <b>system</b> or <b>mirroredSystem</b> interface only if it has a <b>group</b> subelement and the value of this element matches the value of the <b>group</b> subelement of the <b>system</b> or <b>mirroredSystem</b> interface. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a> , <a href="#">6.5.2.2</a> , and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.4—Monitor interfaces and monitor interconnections (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 4.5 <i>InterfaceAppearsOnce</i>	A particular <b>componentRef/busRef</b> combination shall appear in only one <b>monitorInterconnection</b> element. This applies to both monitor and active interfaces; however, a single <b>monitorInterconnection</b> element can connect an active interface to many monitor interfaces. The same active interface can also appear in at most one <b>interconnection</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a> and <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 4.6 <i>MonitorPortDirRequirement</i>	All ports mapped in a <b>busInterface</b> with a mode of monitor shall have a direction of <b>in</b> for <b>wire</b> type ports or <b>provides</b> for <b>transactional</b> type ports. See also <a href="#">6.3.3</a>	Yes	No

## B.2.5 Configurable elements

**Table B.5—Configurable elements**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 5.1 <i>expressionFieldValue</i>	The value of a field that allows expressions shall be an expression and shall reference only <b>parameters</b> in the document using their <b>parameterId</b> . See also <a href="#">C.19.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.2 <i>parameterIdRequired</i>	An <b>parameterId</b> attribute is required in any element with a <b>resolve</b> attribute value of <b>user</b> or <b>generated</b> . See also <a href="#">6.12.6.2</a> and <a href="#">C.18.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.3 <i>componentInstanceConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>componentInstance</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the <b>component</b> referenced by the enclosing <b>componentInstance</b> element, excluding those in a <b>componentInstantiation</b> or <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> . The value of the <b>referenceId</b> attribute of the <b>configurableElementValue</b> element shall match the value of the <b>parameterId</b> attribute of some configurable element of the <b>component</b> . See also <a href="#">7.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.4 <i>configElementRefCondition</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements. See also <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.5 <i>configurableElementMin</i>	If a <b>configurableElementValue</b> element references an element with a <b>type</b> attribute that does not specify a <b>string</b> and contains a <b>minimum</b> attribute, the value of the <b>configurableElementValue</b> element shall be greater or equal to the specified value of the <b>minimum</b> attribute. See also <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.5—Configurable elements (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 5.6 <i>configurableElementMax</i>	If a <b>configurableElementValue</b> element references an element with a <b>type</b> attribute that does not specify a <b>string</b> and contains a <b>maximum</b> attribute, the value of the <b>configurableElementValue</b> subelement shall be less than or equal to the specified value of the <b>maximum</b> attribute. See also <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.7 <i>ConfigElementChoiceExists</i>	If a <b>configurableElementValue</b> element references an element with a <b>choiceRef</b> attribute, the value for <b>configurableElementValue</b> subelement shall be one of the values listed in the <b>choice</b> element referenced by the <b>choiceRef</b> attribute. See also <a href="#">6.14.2</a> and <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.8 <i>designConfigurationInstantiationConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the <b>designConfiguration</b> referenced by the enclosing <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> element; the value of the <b>parameterId</b> attribute of the <b>configurableElementValue</b> element shall match the value of the <b>parameterId</b> attribute of some configurable element of the design configuration. See also <a href="#">6.12.1.2</a> and <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.9 <i>viewConfigurationConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>viewConfiguration</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the <b>componentInstantiation</b> or <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> referenced in the component view referenced by the enclosing <b>view</b> element; the value of the <b>referenceId</b> attribute of the <b>configurableElementValue</b> element shall match the value of the <b>parameterId</b> attribute of some configurable element of the component. See also <a href="#">10.5.2</a> and <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.10 <i>generatorChainConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>generatorChainConfiguration</b> elements in design configuration documents elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the generator chain referenced by the <b>generatorChainRef</b> element. See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> and <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.11 <i>abstractorConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>interconnectionConfiguration</b> elements shall reference only <b>configurable</b> elements that exist in the <b>abstractor</b> referenced by the enclosing <b>abstractorRef</b> element. See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> and <a href="#">C.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.12 <i>parameterImplicitCast</i>	A parameter's value or a configurable element's value shall be implicitly cast to the type specified by the <b>type</b> attribute, resulting in an error when the value cannot be cast to the specified type, e.g., <b>string</b> to any other types and any other types to <b>string</b> . See also <a href="#">7.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.5—Configurable elements (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 5.13 <i>expressionsMinMax</i>	Expressions are bound by the values specified by the <b>minimum</b> and <b>maximum</b> attributes. See also <a href="#">C.3</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.14 <i>componentInstantiationParameterReferences</i>	Parameters inside a <b>componentInstantiation</b> cannot be referenced by expressions outside that <b>componentInstantiation</b> . See also <a href="#">6.12.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.15 <i>designConfigurationInstantiationParameterReferences</i>	Parameters inside a <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> cannot be referenced by expressions outside that <b>designConfigurationInstantiation</b> . See also <a href="#">6.12.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.16 <i>parameterInitialiasations</i>	The value of a parameter shall resolve to its indicated type. See also <a href="#">C.18</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.17 <i>expressionSyntax</i>	Expressions shall follow the SystemVerilog syntax (see <a href="#">Annex E</a> ).	Yes	No
SCR 5.18 <i>expressionIDsExist</i>	Any ID used in an expression shall reference an existing <b>parameterID</b> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.19 <i>expressionNonCircular</i>	Evaluation of an expression shall not lead to circular referencing.	Yes	No
SCR 5.20 <i>vectorDeclaration</i>	Vectors shall be specified only on parameters with a type of <b>bit</b> . See also <a href="#">C.18</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.21 <i>arrayDeclaration</i>	Array parameters shall be fully initialized; it shall be an error if the size of the array as determined by the default value differs from the size the array specified by the <b>arrays</b> elements. See also <a href="#">C.18</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.22 <i>arrayConfiguration</i>	Arrays shall be fully overridden when configured; it shall be an error if the size of the array resulting from the values specified in the configurable element differs from the size of the array specified by the <b>arrays</b> elements. See also <a href="#">C.18</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 5.23 <i>designInstantiationConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>designInstantiation</b> elements in <b>component</b> documents elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the design referenced by the enclosing <b>designInstantiation</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.24 <i>busTypeConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>busType</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the bus definition referenced by the enclosing <b>busType</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.5—Configurable elements (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 5.25 <i>abstractionTypeConfigurableElementReferences</i>	<b>configurableElementValue</b> elements within <b>abstractionType</b> elements shall reference only configurable elements that exist in the abstraction definition referenced by the enclosing <b>abstractionType</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 5.26 <i>assertionValidity</i>	The value of an assertion shall evaluate to <i>True</i> . See also <a href="#">C.2</a> .	No	Yes

**B.2.6 Ports****Table B.6—Ports**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.1 <i>LogicalPortNameExists</i>	The value of the <b>name</b> subelement of any <b>logicalPort</b> element within an <b>abstractionType</b> element shall match the value of a <b>logicalName</b> element of the abstraction definition referenced by the <b>abstractionType</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.2 <i>LogPortRequiresPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an <b>abstractionType</b> specifies an initiative value for a logical transactional port of <b>requires</b> for that interface mode of bus interface, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with an initiative value of <b>requires</b> , <b>both</b> , or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalInitiativesAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port initiative values shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the <b>abstractionType</b> 's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port initiative values needs to be reversed before doing the comparison. See also <a href="#">5.10.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.6—Ports (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.3 <i>LogPortProvidesPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies an initiative value for a logical transactional port of <b>provides</b> for that interface mode of bus or abstractor interface, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with an initiative value of <b>provides</b> , <b>both</b> , or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalInitiativesAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port initiative values shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port initiative values shall be reversed before doing the comparison. Mirrored bus and abstractor interface shall be looked up as if they were not mirrored. See also <a href="#">5.10.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.4 <i>LogPortBothPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies an initiative value for a logical transactional port of <b>both</b> for that interface mode of the bus or abstraction interface and if the bus interface has a port map, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with an initiative value of <b>both</b> or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalInitiativesAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port initiative values shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port initiative values shall be reversed before doing the comparison. Mirrored bus and abstraction interfaces shall be looked up as if they were not mirrored. See also <a href="#">5.10.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.5 <i>LogPortInPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies a direction for a logical wire port of <b>in</b> for that interface mode of bus interface, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with a direction of <b>in</b> , <b>inout</b> , or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalDirectionsAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port directions shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port directions shall be reversed before doing the comparison. See also <a href="#">5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.12.8.2</a> , and <a href="#">8.6.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.6—Ports (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.6 <i>LogPortOutPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies a direction for a logical wire port of <b>out</b> for that interface mode of bus interface, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with a direction of <b>out</b> , <b>inout</b> , or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalDirectionsAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port directions shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port directions shall be reversed before doing the comparison. See also <a href="#">5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.12.8.2</a> , and <a href="#">8.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.7 <i>LogPortInoutPortDir</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies a direction for a logical wire port of <b>inout</b> for that interface mode of bus interface, the port map shall map that logical port only to a component port with a direction of <b>inout</b> or <b>phantom</b> or to a component port with an <b>allLogicalDirectionsAllowed</b> attribute with the value <b>true</b> . For system interfaces, the port directions shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. For mirrored interfaces, the bus port directions shall be reversed before doing the comparison. See also <a href="#">5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.12.8.2</a> , and <a href="#">8.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.8 <i>LogPortPresence</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by an abstractionType specifies, for a port, a presence value of <b>required</b> for that interface mode of bus interface and if the bus interface has a port map, the port shall be in that port map. For system interfaces, the port presence shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the abstractionType's abstraction-definition. Mirrored bus interfaces shall be looked up as if they were not mirrored. Port maps are optional, even on buses with required ports. See also <a href="#">SCR 6.17</a> . The third possible presence value ( <b>optional</b> ) neither forces nor forbids the inclusion of the port in the port map. Presence does not apply to interfaces of type <b>monitor</b> . See also <a href="#">5.10.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.9 <i>OneWireDriver</i>	Only one component port in a port connection equivalence class may have the direction <b>out</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> and <a href="#">7.5.3</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 6.10 <i>OneTransactionalDriver</i>	Only one component port in a port connection equivalence class may have the initiative <b>requires</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> and <a href="#">7.5.4</a> .	No	Yes

**Table B.6—Ports (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.11 <i>ExtendedLogPortsExist</i>	If abstraction definition A extends abstraction definition B, then abstraction definition A needs to have port elements for every port declared in abstraction definition B. If a port in abstraction definition B is not used in bus interfaces using abstraction definition A, then, in abstraction definition A, that port shall have a presence value of <b>illegal</b> for all bus interface modes. See also <a href="#">5.3.2</a> and <a href="#">Table 2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 6.12 <i>LogicalWireToPhysicalWire</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by a bus or abstraction interface specifies a port is a wire port (i.e., the <b>port</b> element contains a <b>wire</b> subelement), the port map shall map that logical port only to a wire component port. See also <a href="#">5.5.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , <a href="#">6.12.8.2</a> , and <a href="#">8.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.13 <i>LogicalTransToPhysicalTrans</i>	If the abstraction definition referenced by a bus or abstraction interface specifies a port is a transactional port (i.e., the <b>port</b> element contains a <b>transactional</b> subelement), the port map shall map that logical port only to a transactional component port. See also <a href="#">5.9.2</a> , <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.14 <i>LogPortSystemRefExists</i>	The value of the <b>group</b> subelement of an <b>onSystem</b> element shall match the value of one of the system group names referenced in the bus definition referenced by the abstraction definition containing the <b>onSystem</b> element. See also <a href="#">5.5.2</a> and <a href="#">5.9.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.15 <i>SystemGroupDefined</i>	The value of the <b>group</b> subelement of a <b>system</b> element shall match the value of one of the system group names referenced in the bus definition referenced by the bus interface containing the <b>onSystem</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.5.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.16 <i>IsAddressPortNeeded</i>	If an abstraction definition's <b>busType</b> element references an addressable bus, the abstraction definition shall contain at least one <b>port</b> element with an <b>isAddress</b> subelement. See also <a href="#">5.2.2</a> , <a href="#">5.6.2</a> , and <a href="#">5.9.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.17 <i>CantMapIllegalPresencePort</i>	If the abstraction definition defines ports with a presence value of <b>illegal</b> for a given interface mode, then the indicated ports may not appear in the port map of a bus interface of that mode type. For system interfaces, the port presence shall be looked up from the <b>onSystem</b> element with the group name matching that of the bus or abstraction interfaces. Mirrored bus and abstraction interfaces shall be looked up as if they were not mirrored. Port maps are optional, even on buses with required ports. See also <a href="#">SCR 6.8</a> . The third possible presence value ( <b>optional</b> ) neither forces nor forbids the inclusion of the port in the port map. See also <a href="#">5.7.2</a> and <a href="#">5.10.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 6.18 <i>PhysicalPortRangeExists</i>	The range of a <b>physicalPort</b> shall be a subset of the range of the referenced port in the component's model element. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> and <a href="#">B.1.6</a> .	Yes	No

**Table B.6—Ports (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.19 <i>LogicalRangeMatchesPhysical</i>	Within any <b>portMap</b> , the sizes of the ranges of the <b>physicalPort</b> and the <b>logicalPort</b> shall be equal. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 6.20 <i>LogicalRangeWithinDefinition</i>	If the abstraction definition port referenced by a <b>logicalPort</b> has a width defined, all elements in the range of the logical port shall be between width-1 and 0. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.21 <i>LogicalBitsMappedOnlyOnce</i>	Within a single bus interface, no logical bit may be mapped more than once, i.e., if two or more <b>logicalPort</b> elements for that bus interface reference the same abstraction definition port, their ranges shall not overlap. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 6.22 <i>TransactionalPortBusConnection</i>	If a transactional port in a component is mapped in a bus interface to a transactional port in an abstraction definition, then the <b>initiative</b> , <b>kind</b> , <b>busWidth</b> , and <b>protocolType</b> elements in that component port shall match those defined in the abstraction definition's port. See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.23 <i>TransactionalPortConnection</i>	Transactional ports shall be connected together (by an ad hoc connection or through an interconnection) only if they have compatible <b>initiative</b> , <b>busWidth</b> , <b>kind</b> , and <b>protocol</b> elements and if none of them contains a <b>transTypeDefs</b> element or all of them contain compatible <b>transTypeDefs</b> elements. The following definitions apply here: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a) Two initiatives with any provides-requires combination are compatible.</li> <li>b) Two kinds are compatible if either they are equal or both are sockets (<code>simple_socket</code>, <code>multi_socket</code>, or <code>tlm_socket</code>).</li> <li>c) Two <b>busWidths</b> are compatible if they are equal on both side of the connection.</li> <li>d) Two protocols are compatible if their <b>protocolTypes</b> are both <code>tlm</code>.</li> <li>e) Two protocols are compatible if their <b>protocolTypes</b> are both <code>custom</code> and (if defined) their <b>payloads</b> are the same.</li> <li>f) Two <b>transTypeDefs</b> are compatible if their <b>typeParameters</b> values are equal and their <b>serviceTypeDefs typeNames</b> (if defined and not implicit) are the same.</li> </ul> See also <a href="#">6.5.7.2</a> and <a href="#">6.12.17.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.24 <i>CantDriveOutputPort</i>	A wire port with a direction of <b>out</b> shall not have a <b>driver</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.10.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 6.25 <i>AdHocPortWidthsMatch</i>	All ports referenced in an ad hoc connection shall reference the same number of bits. If no <b>range</b> is specified for a non-scalar port, then the full range from the port definition is presumed. See also <a href="#">7.5.3</a> .	No	No

**Table B.6—Ports (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 6.26 <i>TiedValueDefaultHasDefault</i>	All ports references in an ad hoc connection that has a <b>tiedValue</b> of <b>default</b> shall have a default value defined. See also <a href="#">7.5.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 6.27 <i>ViewlessComponentRestriction</i>	A <b>component</b> without <b>views</b> shall contain only phantom ports. See also <a href="#">6.12.1.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 6.28 <i>VirtualComponentRestriction</i>	If <b>isVirtual</b> is true in a <b>componentInstantiation</b> element, then <b>views</b> referencing that <b>componentInstantiation</b> shall contain only phantom ports. See also <a href="#">6.12.3.2</a> .	Yes	Yes

## B.2.7 Registers

**Table B.7—Registers**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 7.1 <i>RegisterOverlap</i>	No register shall have an <b>addressOffset</b> that falls within the address range of another register in the same address block, unless one of the registers and their <b>alternateRegisters</b> have non-conflicting <b>access</b> elements. Non-conflicting <b>access</b> elements have a value of <b>read-only</b> , <b>write-only</b> , or <b>writeOnce</b> . The address range of a register is the range $[addressOffset, addressOffset + ((size + addressBitUnits - 1) \div addressBitUnits - 1) * dim[n-1...0]]$ , where <b>dim</b> is the maximum number of elements for each of <b>n</b> dimensions. In other words, registers shall not overlap, unless one is visible only when reading and the other is visible only when writing. See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.2 <i>BitOverlap</i>	No bit field shall have a <b>bitOffset</b> value that falls within the bit range of another bit field, unless one of the bit fields has an <b>access</b> element with the value <b>read-only</b> and the other has an <b>access</b> element with the value <b>write-only</b> or <b>writeOnce</b> . The range of a bit field is the range $[bitOffset, bitOffset + width - 1]$ . In other words, bit fields shall not overlap, unless one is visible only when reading and the other is visible only when writing. See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.8.2</a> .	Yes	Yes

**Table B.7—Registers (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 7.3 <i>RegisterWithinBlock</i>	Any register in an address block shall fall entirely within that address block, i.e., for every register $0 \leq \text{addressOffset} < \text{addressBlockRange} - \text{registerSize}$ , where <b>addressBlockRange</b> is the range of the address block and <b>registerSize</b> is the size of the register in LAUs. This is equal to $((\text{size} + \text{addressBitUnits}-1) \div \text{addressBitUnits}) * \text{dim}[n-1\dots 0]$ , where dim is the maximum number of elements for each of n dimensions. See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 7.4 <i>BitWithinRegister</i>	Any bit field in a register shall fall entirely within that register, i.e., for every bit field $0 \leq \text{bitOffset} \leq \text{RegisterSize} - \text{bitFieldWidth}$ , where <b>RegisterSize</b> is the size (in bits) of the register and <b>bitFieldWidth</b> is the width of bit field. See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.8.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.5 <i>RegisterSizeWithinBlock</i>	The size of any register shall be no greater than the width of the containing address block. See also <a href="#">6.9.6.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.6 <i>RegisterWithinRegisterFile</i>	Any register in a register file shall fall entirely within that register file, i.e., for every register $0 \leq \text{register.addressOffset} < \text{registerFileRange} - \text{registerSize}$ , where <b>registerFileRange</b> is the range of the register file and <b>registerSize</b> is the size of the register in LAUs. This is equal to $((\text{size} + \text{addressBitUnits}-1) \div \text{addressBitUnits}) * \text{dim}[n-1\dots 0]$ , where dim is the maximum number of elements for each of n dimensions. See also <a href="#">6.11.2</a> , <a href="#">6.11.3</a> , and <a href="#">6.11.6</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.7 <i>RegisterFileWithinBlock</i>	Any register file in an address block shall fall entirely within that address block, i.e., for every register file $0 \leq \text{registerFile.addressOffset} < \text{addressBlockRange} - \text{registerFileSize}$ , where <b>registerBlockRange</b> is the range of the address block and <b>registerFileSize</b> is the size of the register in LAUs. This is equal to $\text{registerFile.range} * \text{dim}[n-1\dots 0]$ , where dim is the maximum number of elements for each of n dimensions. See also <a href="#">6.9.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.8 <i>BlockVolatileCondition</i>	<b>volatile</b> cannot be set to <b>false</b> for an <b>addressBlock</b> where any containing <b>register</b> or <b>field</b> already has <b>volatile</b> set to <b>true</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.2</a> , <a href="#">6.11.3</a> , <a href="#">6.11.8</a> , <a href="#">6.11.9</a> , and <a href="#">6.9.3</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.9 <i>RegisterVolatileCondition</i>	<b>volatile</b> cannot be set to <b>false</b> for a <b>register</b> where any containing <b>field</b> already has <b>volatile</b> set to <b>true</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.2</a> , <a href="#">6.11.3</a> , <a href="#">6.11.8</a> , and <a href="#">6.11.9</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.10 <i>FieldUseEnumCondition</i>	When a <b>field</b> has <b>writeValueConstraint</b> / <b>useEnumeratedValues</b> set to <b>true</b> , it also needs to have at least one <b>enumeratedValue</b> with the attribute <b>usage</b> set to <b>write</b> or <b>read-write</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.8</a> , <a href="#">6.11.9</a> , and <a href="#">6.11.10</a> .	Yes	Yes

**Table B.7—Registers (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 7.11 <i>FieldConstraintRangeCondition</i>	When a <b>field</b> has a <b>writeValueConstraint/minimum</b> value and has a <b>writeValueConstraint/maximum</b> value, the value of <b>maximum</b> shall be greater than or equal to the value of <b>minimum</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.8</a> , <a href="#">6.11.9</a> , and <a href="#">6.11.10</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.12 <i>FieldTypeIdentifierCondition</i>	When multiple <b>field</b> elements have the same <b>typeIdentifier</b> , the field object shall contain the same contents for the elements in the <b>fieldDefinitionGroup</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.8</a> and <a href="#">6.11.9</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.13 <i>RegisterTypeIdentifierCondition</i>	When multiple <b>register</b> or <b>alternateRegister</b> elements have the same <b>typeIdentifier</b> , the register object shall contain the same contents for the elements in the <b>registerDefinitionGroup</b> or <b>alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.3</a> and <a href="#">6.11.5</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.14 <i>RegisterFileTypeIdentifierCondition</i>	When multiple <b>registerFile</b> elements have the same <b>typeIdentifier</b> , the register file object shall contain the same contents for the elements in the <b>registerFileDefinitionGroup</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.6</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.15 <i>BlockTypeIdentifierCondition</i>	When multiple <b>addressBlock</b> elements have the same <b>typeIdentifier</b> , the address block object shall contain the same contents for the elements in the <b>addressBlockDefinitionGroup</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.3</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.16 <i>noWritePropsInROField</i>	A register field whose access type does not allow writing (access type <b>readOnly</b> ) shall not include any of the following subelements: <b>modifiedWriteValue</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.9.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.17 <i>noReadPropsInWOField</i>	A register field whose access type does not allow reading (access types of <b>writeOnly</b> or <b>writeOnce</b> ) shall not include any of the following subelements: <b>readAction</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.9.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.18 <i>fieldUsageMatchesAccess</i>	If the <b>usage</b> attribute is defined on an <b>enumeratedValue</b> element within a register field, that usage shall be consistent with the <b>access</b> type of the register field. See also <a href="#">6.11.10</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.19 <i>registerFileOverlap</i>	No register or register file shall have an <b>addressOffset</b> that falls within the address range of another register file in the same address block. See also <a href="#">6.11.10</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 7.20 <i>resetTypeHARD</i>	A <b>resetType</b> with a name of <b>HARD</b> shall not be specified. See also <a href="#">6.19</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 7.21 <i>resetTypeRefUnspecified</i>	Only one <b>resetValue</b> can be specified without a <b>resetTypeRef</b> (indicating the default/ <b>HARD</b> reset-type) on a <b>field</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.8.2</a> .	Yes	No

## B.2.8 Memory maps

**Table B.8—Memory maps**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 8.1 <i>BlockWidthCondition</i>	The width of an address block included in a memory map shall be a multiple of the memory map's <b>addressUnitBits</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.2 <i>NoSubspaceInParallelBank</i>	Neither a parallel bank nor banks within a parallel bank shall contain subspace maps. See also <a href="#">6.9.5.2</a> , <a href="#">6.9.7.2</a> , and <a href="#">6.9.8.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.3 <i>ReadOnlyBankCondition</i>	A <b>read-only bank</b> shall contain only <b>read-only addressBlocks or banks</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.4 <i>ReadOnlyBlockCondition</i>	A <b>read-only addressBlock</b> shall contain only <b>read-only registers</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.5 <i>ReadOnlyRegisterCondition</i>	A <b>read-only register</b> shall contain only <b>read-only fields</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.6 <i>WriteOnlyBankCondition</i>	A <b>write-only bank</b> shall contain only <b>write-only</b> or <b>writeOnce addressBlocks or banks</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.7 <i>WriteOnlyBlockCondition</i>	A <b>write-only addressBlock</b> shall contain only <b>write-only</b> or <b>writeOnce registers</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.8 <i>WriteOnlyRegisterCondition</i>	A <b>write-only register</b> shall contain only <b>write-only</b> or <b>writeOnce fields</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.9 <i>addressBlockContent</i>	A register or register file can appear in an <b>addressBlock</b> with a usage of <b>memory</b> or <b>register</b> . If the <b>addressBlock</b> usage is <b>memory</b> , then the child registers and register files are interpreted as virtual. See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.10 <i>RW1BankCondition</i>	A <b>read-writeOnce bank</b> shall contain only <b>read-only</b> , <b>read-writeOnce</b> , or <b>writeOnce addressBlocks or banks</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.11 <i>RW1BlockCondition</i>	A <b>read-writeOnce addressBlock</b> shall contain only <b>read-only</b> , <b>read-writeOnce</b> , or <b>writeOnce registers</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.12 <i>RW1RegisterCondition</i>	A <b>read-writeOnce register</b> shall contain only <b>read-only</b> , <b>read-writeOnce</b> , or <b>writeOnce fields</b> . See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.13 <i>W1BankCondition</i>	A <b>writeOnce bank</b> shall contain only <b>writeOnce addressBlocks or banks</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.14 <i>W1BlockCondition</i>	A <b>writeOnce addressBlock</b> shall contain only <b>writeOnce registers</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> and <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No

**Table B.8—Memory maps (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 8.15 <i>W1RegisterCondition</i>	A <b>writeOnce</b> register shall contain only <b>writeOnce</b> fields. See also <a href="#">6.11.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.16 <i>BlockOverlap</i>	Two <b>addressBlocks</b> in the same <b>memoryMap</b> shall not overlap. See also <a href="#">6.9.2.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 8.17 <i>virtualRegisterContent</i>	The <b>registerDefinitionGroup</b> in a virtual register shall contain only <b>typeIdentifier</b> , <b>size</b> , and <b>field</b> elements. See also <a href="#">6.9.4.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.18 <i>virtualAlternateRegisterContent</i>	When an alternate register is a child of a virtual register, the <b>alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup</b> shall contain only <b>typeIdentifier</b> and <b>field</b> elements. See also <a href="#">6.11.4</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 8.19 <i>virtualFieldContent</i>	If a <b>field</b> is a child of a virtual register, the <b>fieldData</b> group shall contain only <b>enumeratedValue</b> and <b>writeValueConstraint</b> elements. See also <a href="#">6.11.8</a> .	Yes	No

## B.2.9 Addressing

**Table B.9—Addressing**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 9.1 <i>AddressableMasterHasRef</i>	A non-hierarchical addressable master bus interface shall have an <b>addressSpaceRef</b> subelement. See also <a href="#">6.5.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 9.2 <i>AddressableSlaveHasMapOrBridge</i>	A non-hierarchical addressable slave bus interface shall have a <b>memoryMapRef</b> subelement or one or more <b>bridge</b> subelements referencing addressable master bus interfaces. See also <a href="#">6.5.4.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 9.3 <i>ExecImageCondition</i>	Only an address space referenced by the <b>addressSpaceRef</b> subelement of a <b>cpu</b> element may contain an <b>executableImage</b> subelement. See also <a href="#">6.8.1.2</a> and <a href="#">6.8.3.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 9.4 <i>BitSteeringRestriction</i>	<b>bitSteering</b> is not allowed in mirrored-masters, system, or mirrored-system interface modes. See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.5 <i>ChannelDataWidthRestriction</i>	Data widths in a channel shall all be a power 2 multiple of their <b>bitsInLau</b> . See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.6 <i>BitsInLauRestriction</i>	<b>bitsInLau</b> in a channel shall all be a power 2 multiple of the smallest <b>bitsInLau</b> . See also <a href="#">6.5.1.2</a> .	Yes	No

**Table B.9—Addressing (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 9.7 <i>SegmentCondition</i>	For each <b>segment</b> within an <b>addressSpace</b> , everything between <b>offsetAddress</b> and <b>offsetAddress + range-1</b> shall be contained within the range of that <b>addressSpace</b> . See also <a href="#">6.8.1.2</a> and <a href="#">6.8.2.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.8 <i>SegmentRefExists</i>	The <b>segmentRef</b> needs to reference an existing <b>segment</b> of the <b>addressSpace</b> in the master referenced by the <b>masterRef</b> . See also <a href="#">6.9.9.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.9 <i>indirectDataField</i>	The <b>field</b> referenced as <b>indirectData</b> shall not be part of the memory-map referenced by the <b>memoryMapRef</b> . See also <a href="#">6.6.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.10 <i>indirectAddressRefField</i>	The <b>field</b> referenced as <b>indirectAddress</b> shall not be part of the memory-map referenced by the <b>memoryMapRef</b> . See also <a href="#">6.6.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 9.11 <i>indirectAddressRefFieldAccess</i>	The <b>field</b> referenced as <b>indirectAddress</b> shall not have an access-type of <b>read-only</b> , <b>read-writeOnce</b> , and <b>writeOnce</b> . See also <a href="#">6.6.2</a> .	Yes	No

**B.2.10 Hierarchy****Table B.10—Hierarchy**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 10.1 <i>HierFamilyBusIntfBusTypes-Match</i>	All members of a hierarchical family of bus interfaces shall reference the same <b>busDefinition</b> in their <b>busType</b> subelements. They need not reference the same abstraction definitions in their <b>abstractionType</b> elements. See also <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 10.2 <i>HierFamilyBusIntfModes-Match</i>	All members of a hierarchical family of bus interfaces shall have the same interface mode (e.g., <b>master</b> , <b>slave</b> , <b>system</b> ). See also <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 10.3 <i>HierFamilyBusIntfConnReqs-Match</i>	If any member of a hierarchical family of bus interfaces has a <b>connectionRequired</b> element with a value of <b>true</b> , they all shall have this value. See also <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 10.4 <i>HierFamilyBusIntfSteering-Match</i>	If any member of a hierarchical family of bus interfaces has a <b>bitSteering</b> element with a value of <b>on</b> , they all shall have this value. See also <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 10.5 <i>HierFamilyBusIntfPortMap-Condition</i>	If any member of a hierarchical family of bus interfaces has a <b>portMap</b> subelement, they all shall. See also <a href="#">7.6.2</a> .	No	No

**B.2.11 Hierarchy and memory maps**

In a hierarchical family of bus interfaces, memory maps should be consistent.

**Table B.11—Hierarchy and memory maps**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 11.1 <i>hierMapSameAddresses</i>	In a hierarchical family of slave or mirrored-master bus interfaces, all bus interfaces that define addressing information shall define the same set of addresses to be visible. See also <a href="#">7.3.1</a> .	No	No
SCR 11.2 <i>hierMapSameLocations</i>	For any member of a hierarchical family of slave or mirrored-master bus interfaces, if an address resolves to reference a location outside the containing hierarchical family of components, that address shall reference the same location (i.e., the same address on the same bus) in every member of the hierarchical family that defines addressing information. See also <a href="#">7.3.1</a> .	No	No
SCR 11.3 <i>hierMapSameProperties</i>	If any bit address (i.e., address plus bit offset) is resolved to a bit within an address block by any member of a hierarchical family of slave bus interfaces, all members of that family with addressing information shall resolve that bit address to a bit with identical behavioral properties. See also <a href="#">7.3.1</a> .	No	No

**B.2.12 Constraints****Table B.12—Constraints**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 12.1 <i>NoOutputDriveConstraint</i>	A component wire port with direction <b>out</b> shall not have a drive constraint. See also <a href="#">6.12.14</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.2 <i>NoInputLoadConstraint</i>	A component wire port with a direction <b>in</b> shall not have a load constraint. See also <a href="#">6.12.6.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.3 <i>NoOutputDriveModeConstraint</i>	An <b>onMaster</b> , <b>onSlave</b> , or <b>onSystem</b> element of a wire port with direction <b>out</b> shall not contain a drive constraint within its <b>modeConstraint</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.14</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.4 <i>NoInputLoadModeConstraint</i>	An <b>onMaster</b> , <b>onSlave</b> , or <b>onSystem</b> element of a wire port with direction <b>in</b> shall not contain a load constraint within its <b>modeConstraint</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.6.2</a> .	Yes	No

**Table B.12—Constraints (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 12.5 <i>NoOutputLoadMirroredModeConstraint</i>	An <b>onMaster</b> , <b>onSlave</b> , or <b>onSystem</b> element of a wire port with direction <b>out</b> shall not contain a load constraint within its <b>mirroredModeConstraint</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.6.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.6 <i>NoInputDriveMirroredModeConstraint</i>	An <b>onMaster</b> , <b>onSlave</b> , or <b>onSystem</b> element of a wire port with direction <b>in</b> shall not contain a drive constraint with its <b>mirroredModeConstraint</b> element. See also <a href="#">6.12.14</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.7 <i>ConstraintClockExists</i>	The <b>clockName</b> in a timing constraint of a component port shall be the <b>clockName</b> of a <b>clockDriver</b> or <b>otherClockDriver</b> element within the component unless there are no <b>clockDriver</b> or <b>otherClockDriver</b> elements present. In that case, the <b>clockName</b> shall be the name of another component port. See also <a href="#">6.12.14.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.8 <i>ConstraintClockLogicalPortExists</i>	The <b>clockName</b> in a timing constraint of a port within an abstraction definition shall be the name of another port of the abstraction definition; that referenced port shall have an <b>isClock</b> subelement. See also <a href="#">5.6.2</a> and <a href="#">6.12.14.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 12.9 <i>DriverSingleBitCondition</i>	Only a scalar port (i.e., a single-bit port) may have a <b>clockDriver</b> or a <b>singleShotDriver</b> subelement. See also <a href="#">6.12.10.2</a> .	Yes	No

**B.2.13 Design configurations****Table B.13—Design configurations**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 13.1 <i>ViewConfigInstanceExists</i>	The value of an <b>instanceName</b> within a <b>viewConfiguration</b> shall match the value of the <b>instanceName</b> element of a <b>componentInstance</b> of the design document referenced by the design configuration document containing the <b>viewConfiguration</b> element. See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	No	No
SCR 13.2 <i>ViewConfigViewExists</i>	The value of an <b>viewName</b> within a <b>viewConfiguration</b> shall match the value of the <b>name</b> element of a view within the component referenced by the component instance that is itself referenced by the <b>instanceName</b> subelement of the <b>viewConfiguration</b> element. See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	No	No

**Table B.13—Design configurations (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 13.3 <i>ViewConfigsUnique</i>	No two <b>viewConfiguration</b> elements within a design configuration shall reference the same view. i.e., no two <b>viewConfiguration</b> elements may have the same <b>instanceName</b> . See also <a href="#">10.2.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 13.4 <i>AbstractorInstancesUnique</i>	No two <b>abstractor</b> elements within a design configuration shall have the same <b>instanceName</b> element values. The abstractor names shall also not overlap with component instance names within the design. See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	Yes	No

## B.2.14 Expressions

**Table B.14—Expressions**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 14.1 <i>unsignedLongintExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedLongintExpression</b> shall be resolved to an unsigned longint as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.8</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.2 <i>unsignedPositiveLongintExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedPositiveLongintExpression</b> shall be resolved to an unsigned longint with a value greater than 0 as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.10</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.3 <i>signedLongintExpression</i>	A value specified as a <b>signedLongintExpression</b> shall be resolved to a signed longint as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.2</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.4 <i>unsignedIntExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedIntExpression</b> shall be resolved to an unsigned int as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.7</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.5 <i>unsignedPositiveIntExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedPositiveIntExpression</b> shall be resolved to an unsigned int with a value greater than 0 as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.9</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.6 <i>realExpression</i>	A value specified as a <b>realExpression</b> shall resolve to a real as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.1</a> .	Yes	No

**Table B.14—Expressions (continued)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 14.7 <i>stringExpression</i>	A value specified as a <b>stringExpression</b> shall be resolved to a <b>string</b> as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.3</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.8 <i>stringURIExpression</i>	A value specified as a <b>stringURIExpression</b> shall be resolved to a <b>string</b> as specified by the SystemVerilog specification after environment-variables have been substituted. See also <a href="#">C.3.4</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.9 <i>unsignedBitExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedBitExpression</b> shall be resolved to an <b>unsigned bit</b> as specified by the SystemVerilog specification. See also <a href="#">C.3.5</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.10 <i>unsignedBitVectorExpression</i>	A value specified as an <b>unsignedBitVectorExpression</b> shall be resolved to an <b>unsigned bit vector</b> as specified by the SystemVerilog specification, where the vector size is determined by an external value (e.g., field-size for reset-value). See also <a href="#">C.3.6</a> .	Yes	No
SCR 14.11 <i>parameterExpression</i>	A parameter expression ( <b>complexBaseExpression</b> ) shall be resolved to the SystemVerilog <b>type</b> and <b>sign</b> specified for the specific parameter. See also <a href="#">C.3</a> .	Yes	No

## B.2.15 Presence

In [Table B.15](#), an element is considered to be *present* if it contains an **isPresent** immediate child element whose value resolved to 1 during configuration. An element is consider to be *nonpresent* if it contains an **isPresent** immediate child element whose value resolves to 0 during configuration. An element enclosed within a *nonpresent* ancestor element is considered *nonpresent* even if the descendant element has an **isPresent** subelement that evaluates to 1.

**Table B.15—Presence**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 15.1 <i>npSubSPcMasterInt</i>	A <i>present</i> <b>subspaceMap</b> may not contain a <b>masterRef</b> that references a <i>nonpresent</i> busInterface. See also <a href="#">6.9.9</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.2 <i>npPortMapPhysPort</i>	A <i>present</i> <b>portMap</b> within a present <b>busInterface</b> may not reference a <i>nonpresent</i> model port. See also <a href="#">6.5.7</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.3 <i>npPortMapLogPort</i>	A <i>present</i> <b>portMap</b> within a present <b>busInterface</b> may not reference a <i>nonpresent</i> logical port See also <a href="#">6.5.7</a> .	No	Yes

**Table B.15—Presence (*continued*)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 15.4 <i>npBridgeMasterInt</i>	A <i>present bridge</i> may not refer to a <i>nonpresent</i> master interface. See also <a href="#">6.4.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.5 <i>npChanBusInt</i>	A <i>present busInterfaceRef</i> within a present channel may not reference a <i>nonpresent busInterface</i> . See also <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.6 <i>tooFewChanBusIntRefs</i>	A <i>present channel</i> must contain at least two <i>present busInterfaceRef</i> elements. See also <a href="#">6.7.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.7 <i>npMasterAddrSpace</i>	A <i>present master busInterface</i> may not contain an <b>addressSpaceRef</b> that references a <i>nonpresent addressSpace</i> . See also <a href="#">6.5.3.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.8 <i>npSubSpcSeg</i>	A <i>present subspaceMap</i> may not contain a <b>segmentRef</b> referencing a <i>nonpresent segment</i> . See also <a href="#">6.9.9.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.9 <i>npSlaveMemMap</i>	A <i>present slave</i> interface may not contain a <b>memoryMapRef</b> that references a <i>nonpresent memoryMap</i> . See also <a href="#">6.5.4.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.10 <i>npIntHierCompInst</i>	A configured design may not contain any <i>present</i> interconnection with a <b>hierInterface</b> that references a <i>nonpresent</i> component bus interface. See also <a href="#">7.4.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.11 <i>npViewConfCompInst</i>	A <i>present viewConfiguration's instanceName</i> element may not reference a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> . See also <a href="#">10.5.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.12 <i>npViewConfCompView</i>	A <i>present viewConfiguration's view</i> element may not reference a <i>nonpresent component view</i> . See also <a href="#">10.5.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.13 <i>npModParm</i>	A <b>componentInstance</b> in a design may not include a <b>configurableElementValue</b> whose <b>referenceId</b> refers to a <i>nonpresent</i> parameter. See also <a href="#">7.2.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.14 <i>npCpuAddrSpace</i>	A <i>present addressSpaceRef</i> may not refer to a <i>nonpresent addressSpace</i> . See also <a href="#">6.5.3.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.15 <i>npIntCompInst</i>	A <i>present</i> interconnection may not reference a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> via any of its <b>activeInterfaces</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.16 <i>npIntBusInt</i>	A <i>present</i> interconnection may not reference a <i>nonpresent busInterface</i> via any of its <b>activeInterfaces</b> . See also <a href="#">7.3.1.2</a> .	No	Yes

**Table B.15—Presence (*continued*)**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 15.17 <i>npIntConfInt</i>	A <i>present interconnectionRef</i> may not refer to a <i>nonpresent</i> interconnection within the design configured by the <b>designConfiguration</b> element containing the <b>interconnectionRef</b> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.18 <i>npAbstractorIntRef</i>	A <i>present interfaceRef</i> may not contain a <b>componentRef</b> referring to a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> or <b>busRef</b> referring to a <i>nonpresent busInterface</i> . See also <a href="#">10.3.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.19 <i>npMonActCompInst</i>	A <i>present monitorInterconnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> via its <b>monitoredActiveInterface</b> element. See also <a href="#">7.3.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.20 <i>npMonActBusInt</i>	A <i>present monitorInterconnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent busInterface</i> via its <b>monitoredActiveInterface</b> element. See also <a href="#">7.3.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.21 <i>npMonCompInst</i>	A <i>present monitorInterconnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> via its <b>monitorInterface</b> element. See also <a href="#">7.3.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.22 <i>npMonBusInt</i>	A <i>present monitorInterconnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent busInterface</i> via its <b>monitorInterface</b> element. See also <a href="#">7.3.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.23 <i>npAdHocCompInst</i>	A <i>present adHocConnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent componentInstance</i> via any of its <b>internalPortReference</b> elements See also <a href="#">7.5.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 15.24 <i>npAdHocPort</i>	A <i>present adHocConnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent port</i> via any of its <b>internalPortReference</b> elements. See also <a href="#">7.5.2</a> .	No	Yes
SCR 15.25 <i>npAdHocHierPort</i>	A <i>present adHocConnection</i> may not reference a <i>nonpresent port</i> via any of its <b>externalPortReference</b> elements. See also <a href="#">7.5.2</a> .	No	Yes

## B.2.16 Access handles

**Table B.16—Access handles**

Name	Rule	Single doc check	Post config
SCR 16.1 <i>accessHandleIndex</i>	The indices specified for the <b>accessHandle</b> should reference an index within the bounds specified by the <b>dim</b> element when specified for a register or register-file and <b>array</b> element when specified for a port. See also <a href="#">C.1.3.2</a> and <a href="#">C.1.4.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 16.2 <i>accessHandleSlice</i>	It is not allowed to specify more than one <b>accessHandle/slices/slice</b> element, and it is not allowed to specify a <b>slice/range</b> on an <b>addressBlock</b> with a usage of <b>register</b> or <b>reserved</b> . See also <a href="#">C.1.2.2</a> , <a href="#">C.1.3.2</a> , and <a href="#">C.1.4.2</a> .	Yes	Yes
SCR 16.3 <i>WhiteBoxElementRefExists</i>	A <b>whiteboxElementRef</b> , which references a <b>whiteboxElement</b> with a <b>whiteboxType</b> of <b>pin</b> , shall have a <b>pathName</b> that is a <b>port</b> in the containing description. See also <a href="#">6.17</a> .	Yes	No

## Annex C

(normative)

### Common elements and concepts

This annex details common elements and concepts that appear many times throughout the standard.

#### C.1 accessHandles

All memory mapped objects can specify a list of **accessHandle** elements. Each **accessHandle** stores a portion of the HDL path for the parent object. There is a list of **accessHandles** associated with each memory mapped object to

- a) store a different HDL path for each view of a component (see [6.12.1.2](#)). This is specified by the **accessHandle viewRef**.
- b) indicate there are multiple copies of the memory mapped object within the specified view. This is indicated by two or more **accessHandle** elements that have the same **viewRef** or have no **viewRef** child elements. See [C.26](#).

The HDL path for a particular memory mapped object (e.g., a field) is distributed across the memory map hierarchy. To calculate the HDL path relative to the parent component, it is necessary to traverse from the leaf memory map object up the memory map hierarchy, concatenating the HDL path stored in the **accessHandle** associated with each memory map object.

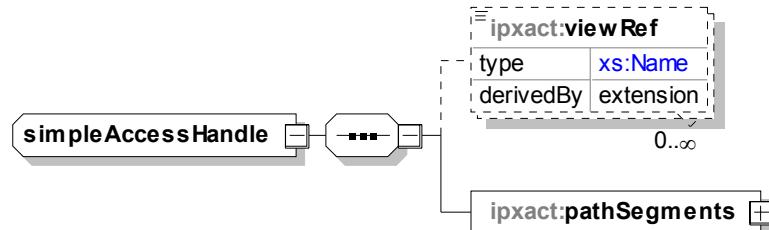
There are several types of **accessHandle** elements:

- A **simpleAccessHandle** is attached to hierarchical memory mapped objects, i.e., **bank** elements. See [C.1.1](#).
- A **nonIndexedLeafAccessHandle** is attached to memory mapped objects without a dimension, i.e., **addressBlock** and **field** elements. See [C.1.2](#).
- An **indexedAccessHandle** is attached to memory mapped objects with a dimension, i.e., **alternateRegister**, **register**, and **registerFile** elements. See [C.1.3](#).
- A **leafAccessHandle** describes how to access the associated IP-XACT object. See [C.1.4](#).

#### C.1.1 simpleAccessHandle

##### C.1.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in an **accessHandle** of type *simpleAccessHandle*.



### C.1.1.2 Description

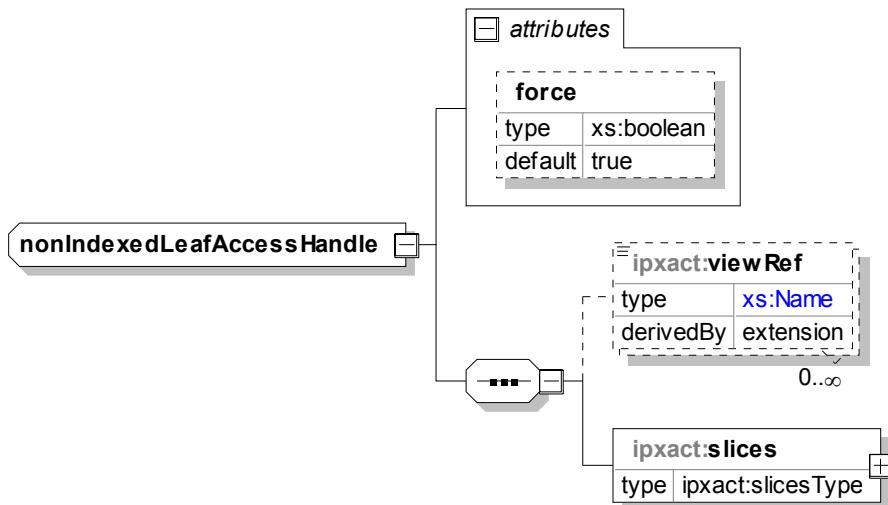
The **simpleAccessHandle** stores a portion of a HDL path for a memory mapped object. It contains the following elements:

- a) **viewRef** (optional; type: *Name*) specifies the list of one or more views to which this **accessHandle** applies. If none is specified, the **accessHandle** is presumed to apply to all views. See [C.26](#).
- b) **pathSegments** (mandatory) is a language-independent mechanism for referencing variables in a view. See [C.21](#).

## C.1.2 nonIndexedLeafAccessHandle

### C.1.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in an **accessHandle** of type **nonIndexedLeafAccessHandle**.



### C.1.2.2 Description

A **nonIndexedLeafAccessHandle** stores a portion of a HDL path for a memory mapped object and enables slicing in the HDL path. The **nonIndexedLeafAccessHandle** type contains the following attributes and elements:

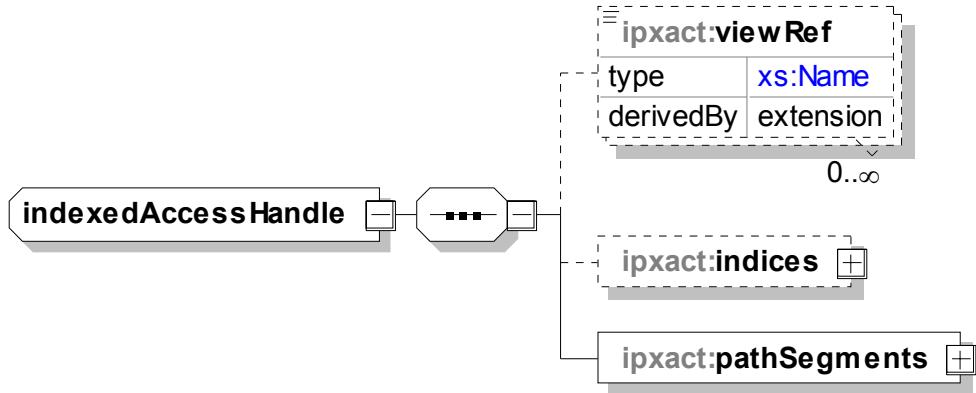
- a) **force** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: *true*) indicates if it is possible to directly write to this object via a back door access.
- b) **viewRef** (optional; type: *Name*) specifies the list of one or more views to which this **accessHandle** applies. If none is specified, the **accessHandle** is presumed to apply to all views. See [C.26](#).
- c) **slices** (mandatory) specifies a list of **slice** elements. See [C.1.5](#).  
Multiple **slice** elements shall not be used when the parent **accessHandle** is associated with an **addressBlock** with a type of **register** or **reserved**.

See also [SCR 16.2](#).

### C.1.3 indexedAccessHandle

#### C.1.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in an **accessHandle** of type *indexedAccessHandle*.



#### C.1.3.2 Description

An *indexedAccessHandle* stores a portion of a HDL path for multi-dimensional memory mapped objects. It enables specifying a HDL path for one type of a memory mapped object. The *indexedAccessHandle* element contains the following attributes and elements:

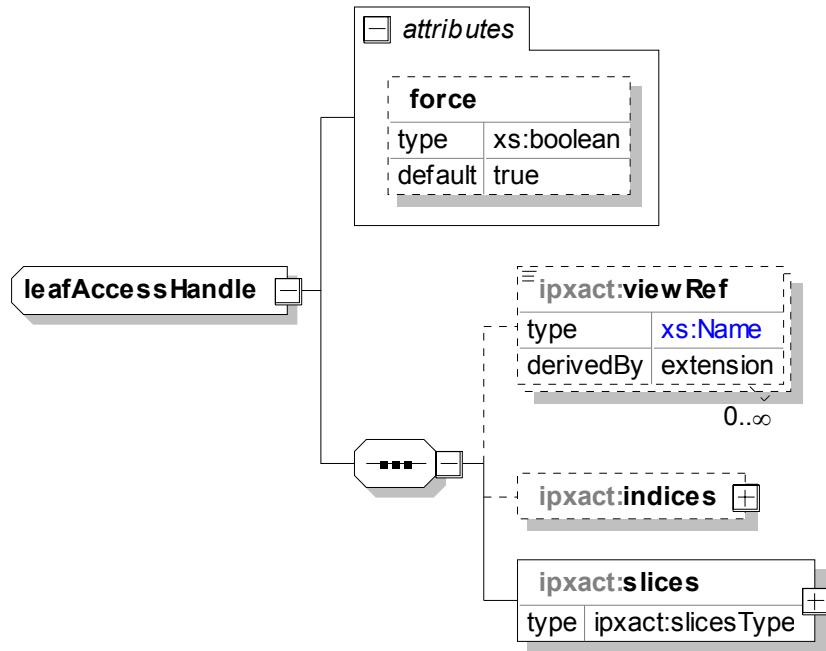
- a) **viewRef** (optional; type: *Name*) specifies the list of one or more views to which this **accessHandle** applies. If none is specified, the **accessHandle** is presumed to apply to all views. See [C.26](#).
- b) **indices** (optional) specifies a list of **index** elements. The **indices** specify an element in the IP-XACT object to which this **accessHandle** applies. See [C.9](#).
- c) **pathSegments** (mandatory) is a language-independent mechanism for referencing variables in a view. See [C.21](#).

See also [SCR 16.1](#) and [SCR 16.2](#).

## C.1.4 leafAccessHandle

### C.1.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in an **accessHandle** of type *leafAccessHandle*.



### C.1.4.2 Description

A *leafAccessHandle* describes how to access the associated IP-XACT object, e.g., a **port** in a **view** or **views**. The *leafAccessHandle* type contains the following attributes and elements:

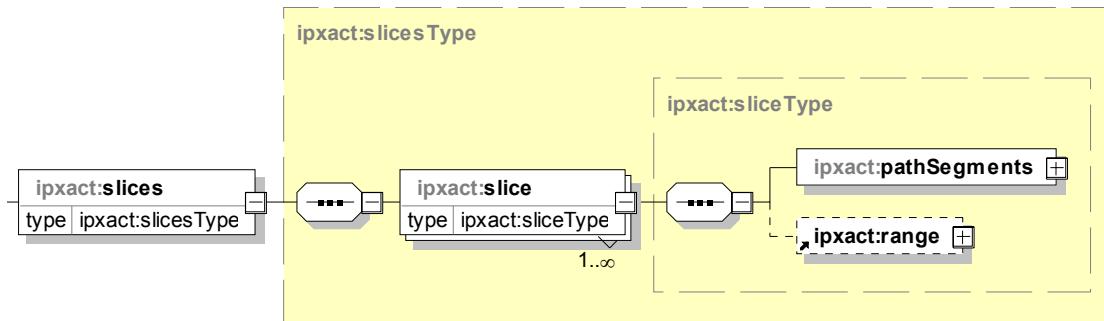
- a) **force** (optional; type: *boolean*; default: *true*) indicates if it is possible to directly write to this object via a back door access.
- b) **viewRef** (optional; type: *Name*) specifies the list of one or more views to which this **accessHandle** applies. If none is specified, the **accessHandle** is presumed to apply to all views. See [C.26](#).
- c) **indices** (optional) specifies a list of **index** elements. The **indices** specify an element in the IP-XACT object to which this **accessHandle** applies. See [C.9](#).
- d) **slices** (mandatory) specifies a list of slices. See [C.1.5](#).

See also [SCR 16.1](#) and [SCR 16.2](#).

## C.1.5 slices

### C.1.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **slices** element.



### C.1.5.2 Description

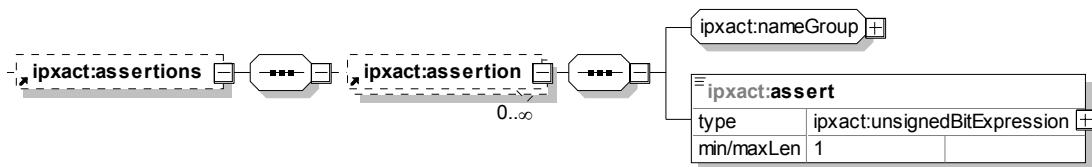
The **slices** element specifies a list of **slices**. A **slice** consists of one or more **pathSegments**. If only one **slice** is present, the IP-XACT object is represented as one variable in the view. If there are multiple **slices**, the IP-XACT object is represented by several variables in the view. In this case, the calculated path for each **slice** is concatenated in order to define the total set of bits in the IP-XACT object. Concatenation is from msb to lsb. The **slice** element contains the following elements:

- pathSegments** (mandatory) is a language-independent mechanism for referencing variables in a view. See [C.21](#).
- range** (optional) corresponds to a range (bit select) into a variable in the RTL, i.e., the referenced view. See [C.22](#).

## C.2 assertions

### C.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **assertions** element.



### C.2.2 Description

The **assertions** element contains an unbounded list of **assertion** elements. An **assertion** describes the allowed parameter values as an assertion expression. If this expression evaluates to *False*, the **name**, **displayName**, and/or **description** (of the **nameGroup**) can be used to relay that the assertion failed. The **assertion** element definition contains the following elements:

- nameGroup** is defined in [C.12](#).
- assert** (mandatory; type: **unsignedBitExpression** (see [C.3.5](#))) contains an expression that is expected to evaluate to *True*.

See also [SCR 5.26](#).

### C.3 complexBaseExpression

The **complexBaseExpression** is used as the base type for the more specific expression types, but can also be used directly by parameters. When used directly on a parameter, the value of the element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to the type and signed-ness specified for the containing parameter. When the value does not represent the type specified, the parser should attempt to cast the value to this type. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value; the type and signed-ness of the minimum and maximum value corresponds to the type of the parameter and signed-ness. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

*complexBaseExpression* can be any of the following subelements:

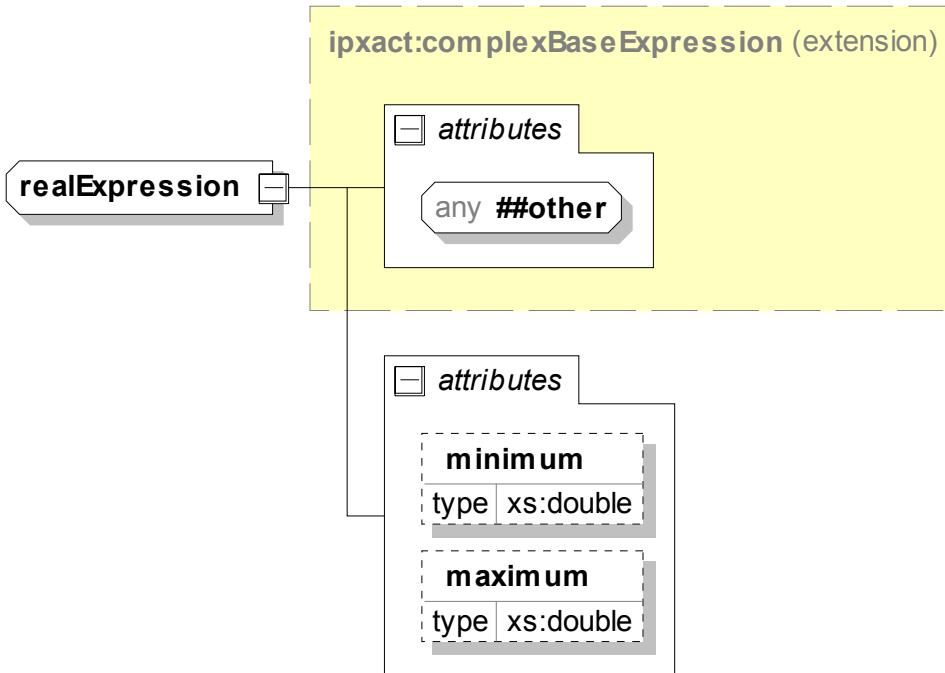
- *realExpression* (see [C.3.1](#))
- *signedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.2](#))
- *stringExpression* (see [C.3.3](#))
- *stringURIExpression* (see [C.3.4](#))
- *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#))
- *unsignedBitVectorExpression* (see [C.3.6](#))
- *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.7](#))
- *unsignedLongintExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))
- *unsignedPositiveIntExpression* (see [C.3.9](#))
- *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* (see [C.3.10](#))

See also [SCR 5.13](#) and [SCR 14.11](#).

### C.3.1 realExpression

#### C.3.1.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *realExpression* element.



#### C.3.1.2 Description

The value of the *realExpression* element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 64-bit *real* value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent a *real*, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

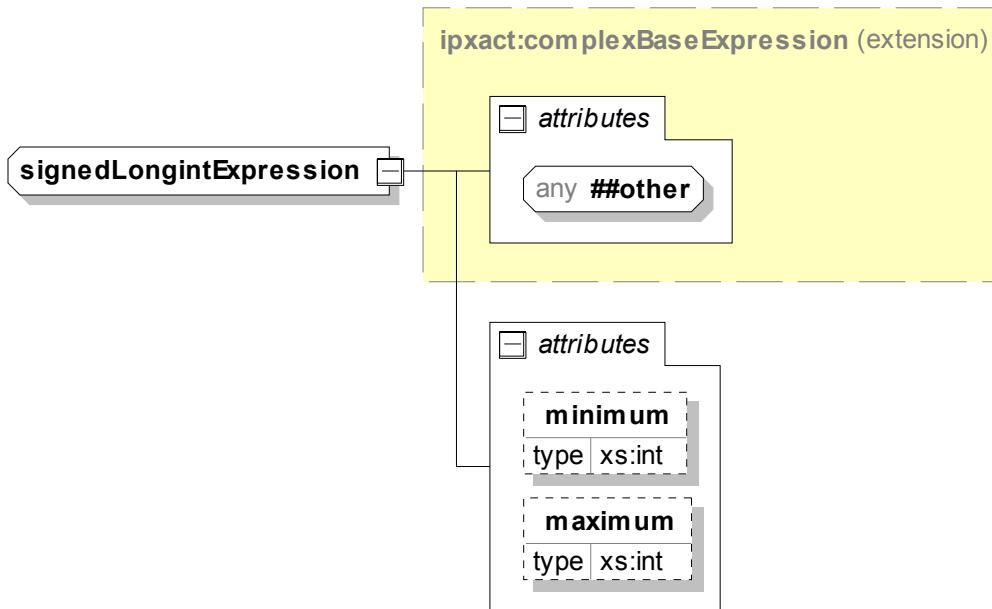
- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.6](#).

### C.3.2 signedLongintExpression

#### C.3.2.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *signedLongintExpression* element.



#### C.3.2.2 Description

The value of the *signedLongintExpression* element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 64-bit signed longint value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent a signed longint, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.3](#).

### C.3.3 stringExpression

#### C.3.3.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***stringExpression*** element.



#### C.3.3.2 Description

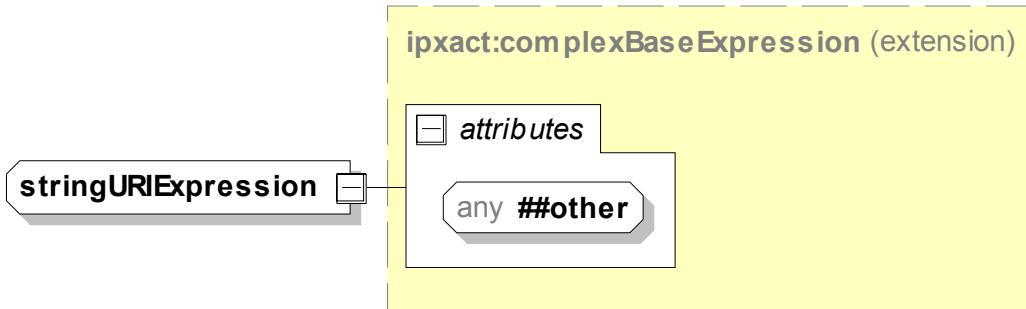
The value of the ***stringExpression*** element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a string value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). An error should be reported when the value does not represent a string.

See also [SCR 14.7](#).

### C.3.4 stringURIExpression

#### C.3.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***stringURIExpression*** element.



#### C.3.4.2 Description

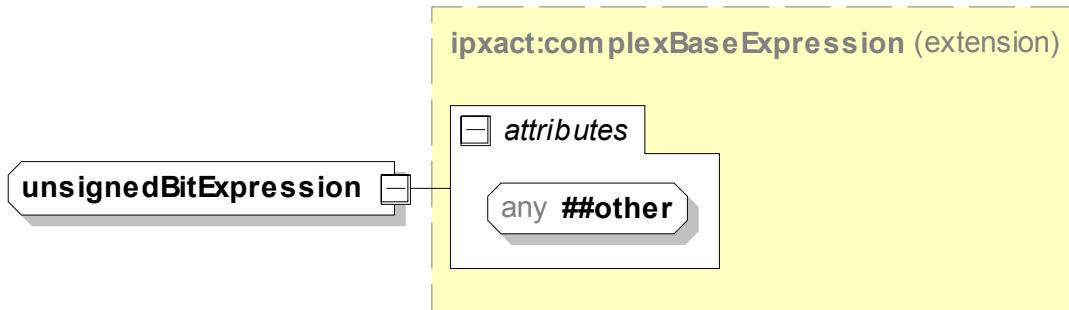
The value of the ***stringURIExpression*** element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a URI value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). This value can contain environment variables in the \${ } form, which should be resolved before evaluating the URI. An error should be reported when the value does not represent a URI.

See also [SCR 14.8](#).

### C.3.5 unsignedBitExpression

#### C.3.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***unsignedBitExpression*** element.



#### C.3.5.2 Description

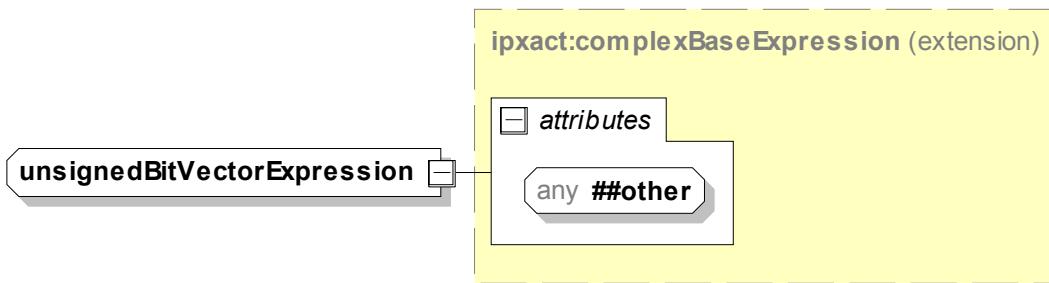
The value of the ***unsignedBitExpression*** element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 1-bit bit value (1 or 0) (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent a bit, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

See also [SCR 14.9](#).

### C.3.6 unsignedBitVectorExpression

#### C.3.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***unsignedBitVectorExpression*** element.



#### C.3.6.2 Description

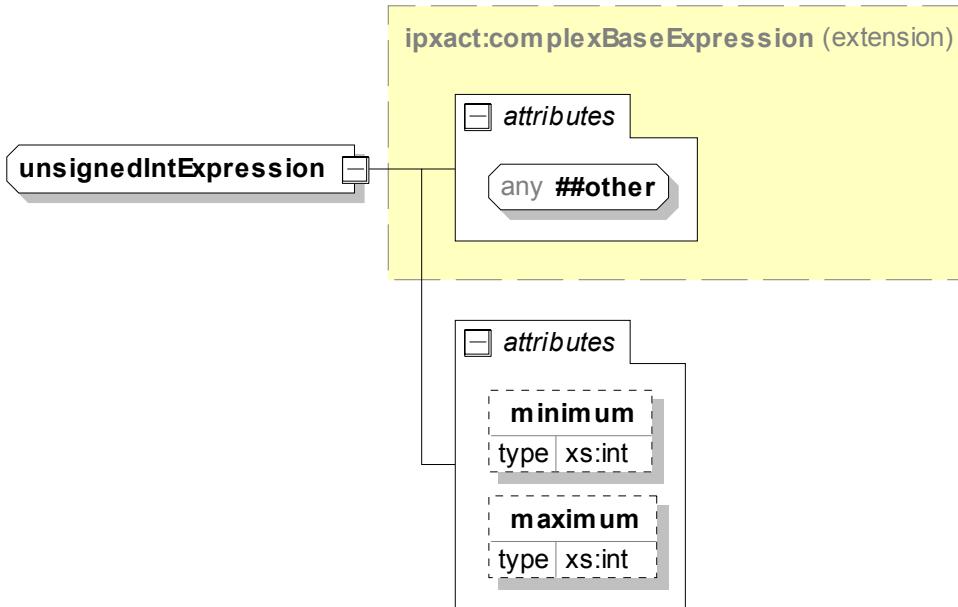
The value of the ***unsignedBitVectorExpression*** element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a vector of bits (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). The length of the bit vector is based on the width of the containing object, i.e., the port or field. When the value does not represent a bit vector, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

See also [SCR 14.10](#).

### C.3.7 *unsignedIntExpression*

#### C.3.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *unsignedIntExpression* element.



#### C.3.7.2 Description

The value of the *unsignedIntExpression* element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 32-bit *unsigned int* value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent an *unsigned int*, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

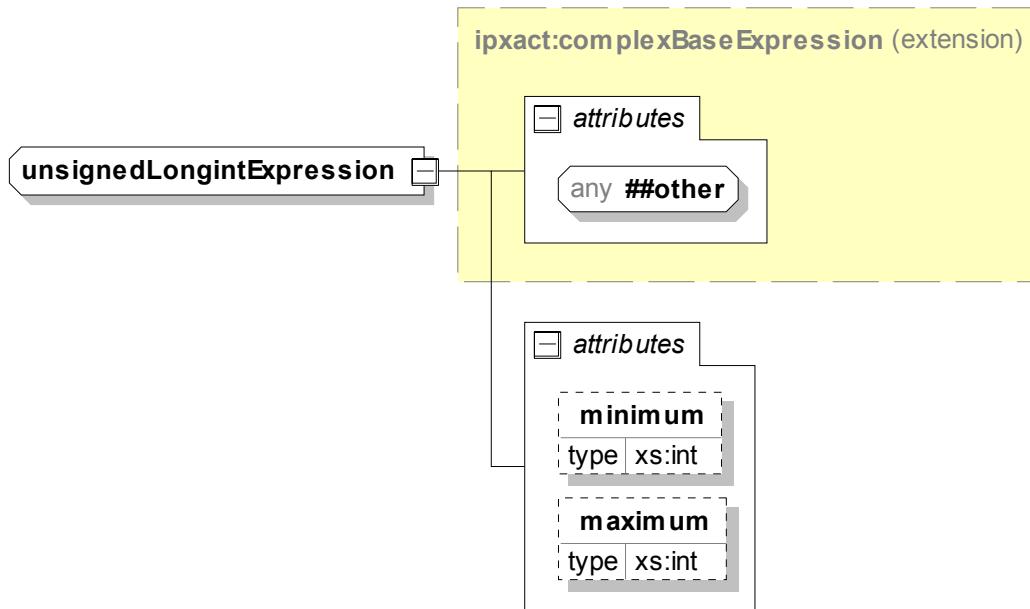
- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.4](#).

### C.3.8 unsignedLongintExpression

#### C.3.8.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *unsignedLongintExpression* element.



#### C.3.8.2 Description

The value of the *unsignedLongintExpression* element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 64-bit unsigned longint value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent an unsigned longint, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

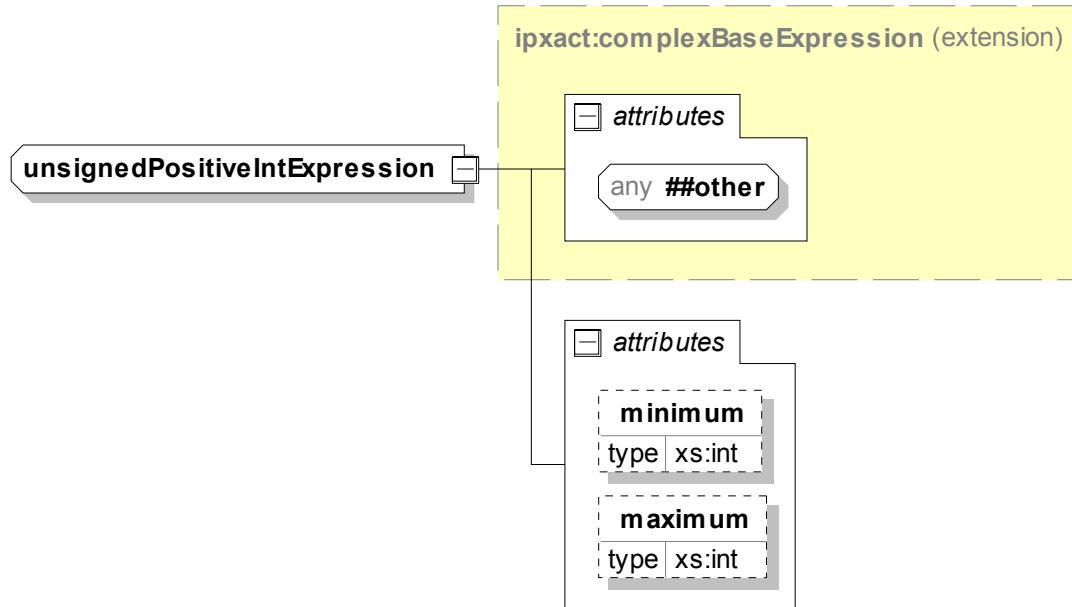
- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.1](#).

### C.3.9 ***unsignedPositiveIntExpression***

#### C.3.9.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***unsignedPositiveIntExpression*** element.



#### C.3.9.2 Description

The value of the ***unsignedPositiveIntExpression*** element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 32-bit unsigned positive int value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent an unsigned int, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast or it is not a positive number.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

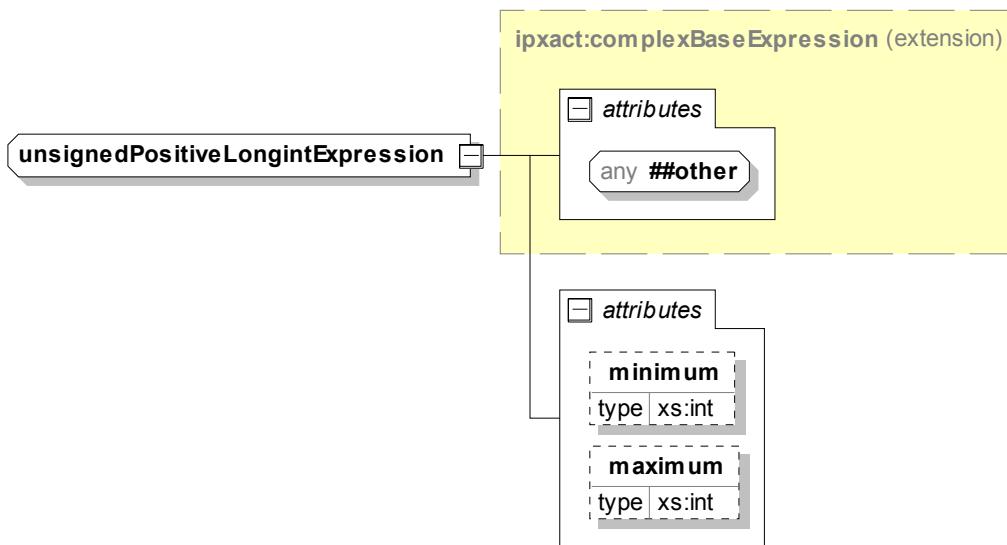
- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.5](#).

### C.3.10 unsignedPositiveLongintExpression

#### C.3.10.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* element.



#### C.3.10.2 Description

The value of the *unsignedPositiveLongintExpression* element needs to be specified as an expression that can resolve to a 64-bit unsigned positive longint value (as specified by IEEE Std 1800). When the value does not represent an unsigned longint, the parser should attempt to cast the value. An error should be reported when the value cannot be cast or it is not a positive number.

The **minimum** and **maximum** attributes can be used to further constrain the value. An error should be reported when the value is specified outside the minimum and maximum range.

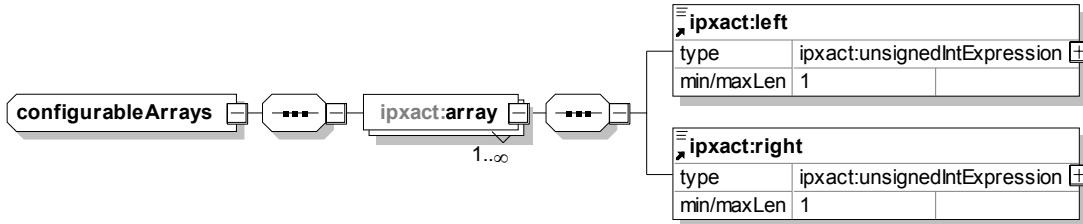
- a) **minimum** (optional) indicates the lower bound for the value of the containing element.
- b) **maximum** (optional) indicates the upper bound for the value of the containing element.

See also [SCR 14.2](#).

## C.4 configurableArrays

### C.4.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **configurableArrays** type.



### C.4.2 Description

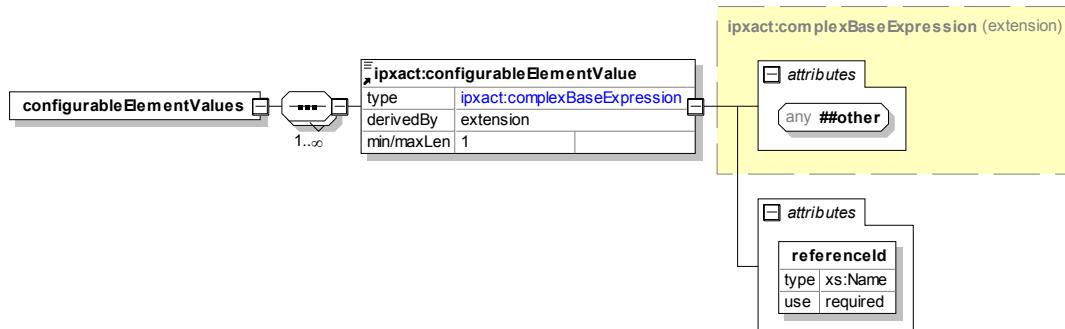
The **configurableArrays** type specifies a set of **arrays**. An **array** element contains the following elements:

- a) **left** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the left range for the bit slice used to map a port vector to the bus interface.
- b) **right** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the right range for the bit slice used to map a port vector to the bus interface.

## C.5 configurableElementValues

### C.5.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **configurableElementValues** element.



### C.5.2 Description

The **configurableElementValues** element defines the configuration for a specific component instance by providing the value of a specific component parameter. The **configurableElementValues** is an unbounded list of **configurableElementValue** elements.

- a) **configurableElementValue** (mandatory; type: *complexBaseExtension* (see [C.3](#))) is an unbounded list that specifies the value to apply to a configurable element; in this instance, it is pointed to by the **referenceId** attribute.

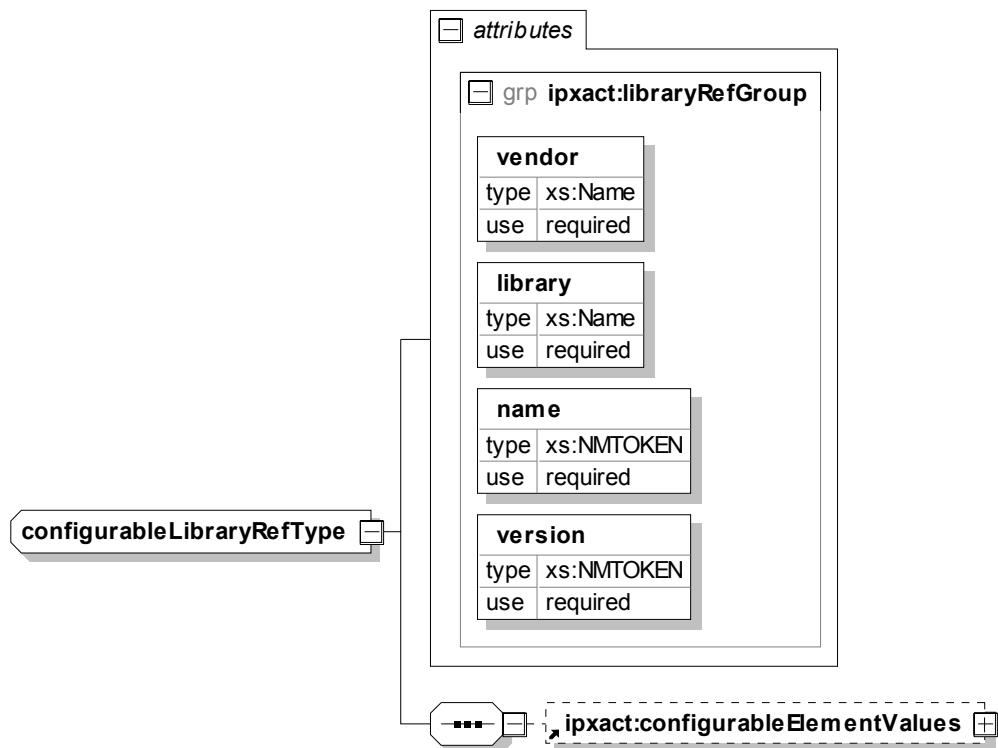
- b) The contained **referenceId** (mandatory; type: *Name*) attribute is a reference to the **parameterId** attribute of an element in the component instance.

See also [SCR 5.4](#), [SCR 5.5](#), [SCR 5.6](#), [SCR 5.7](#), [SCR 5.8](#), [SCR 5.9](#), [SCR 5.10](#), and [SCR 5.11](#).

## C.6 configurableLibraryRefType

### C.6.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *configurableLibraryRefType* type.



### C.6.2 Description

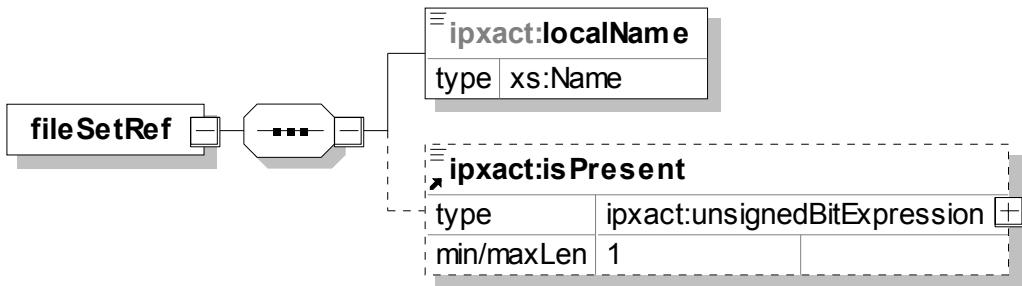
The *configurableLibraryRefType* type defines a set of four attributes that reference another IP-XACT description through the unique VLVN identifier and any configuration information.

- a) The **vendor** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the owner of the referenced description.
- b) The **library** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the library of the referenced description.
- c) The **name** attribute (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the name of the referenced description.
- d) The **version** attribute (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the version of the referenced description.
- e) **configurableElementValues** (optional) specifies the configuration for a specific component instance by providing the value of a specific component parameter. See [C.5](#).

## C.7 fileSetRef

### C.7.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **fileSetRef** element.



### C.7.2 Description

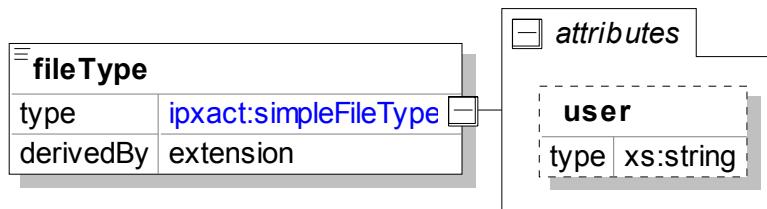
The **fileSetRef** element defines a reference to a **fileSet** contained in the containing document. The **fileSetRef** element contains the following element:

- localName** (mandatory; type: *Name*) shall contain a name of a **fileSet/name** within the local description.
- The **isPresent** (optional; type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#)); default: **1**) element defines whether the enclosing element is present in the document. See [C.10](#).

## C.8 fileType

### C.8.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **fileType** element.



### C.8.2 Description

The **fileType** element defines the format of a referenced file. The **fileType** element contains one or more of the following elements and attributes:

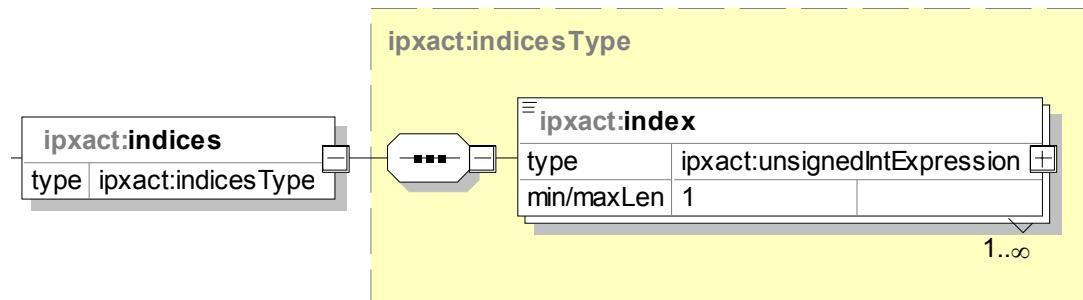
- fileType** (mandatory) describes the type of file referenced from this enumerated list of industry standard files types.
  - unknown**

- 2) **asmSource**, **cSource**, **cppSource**, **eSource**, **OVASource**, **perlSource**, **pslSource**,  
**SVASource**, **tclSource**, **veraSource**,  
**systemCSource**, **systemCSource-2.0**, **systemCSource-2.0.1**, **systemCSource-2.1**,  
**systemCSource-2.2**,  
**systemVerilogSource**, **systemVerilogSource-3.0**, **systemVerilogSource-3.1**,  
**systemVerilogSource-3.1a**,  
**verilogSource**, **verilogSource-95**, **verilogSource-2001**,  
**vhdlSource**, **vhdlSource-87**, and **vhdlSource-93**
  - 3) **swObject** and **swObjectLibrary**
  - 4) **vhdlBinaryLibrary** and **verilogBinaryLibrary**
  - 5) **executableHdl** and **unelaboratedHdl**
  - 6) **SDC**
  - 7) **user**
- b) **user** (optional; type: *string*) attribute indicates a user-defined file type name valid only when **fileType** is **user**.

## C.9 indices

### C.9.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **indices** element.



### C.9.2 Description

The **indices** element specifies a multi-dimensional list of **index** elements. A **index** (type **unsignedIntExpression** (see [C.3.7](#))) is a multi-dimensional array and follows C-semantics for indexing. The **indices** element is typically used to reference into an arrayed/vectored element, such as a port.

## C.10 isPresent

### C.10.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **isPresent** element.

<b>isPresent</b>		
type	ipxact:unsignedBitExpression	
min/maxLen	1	

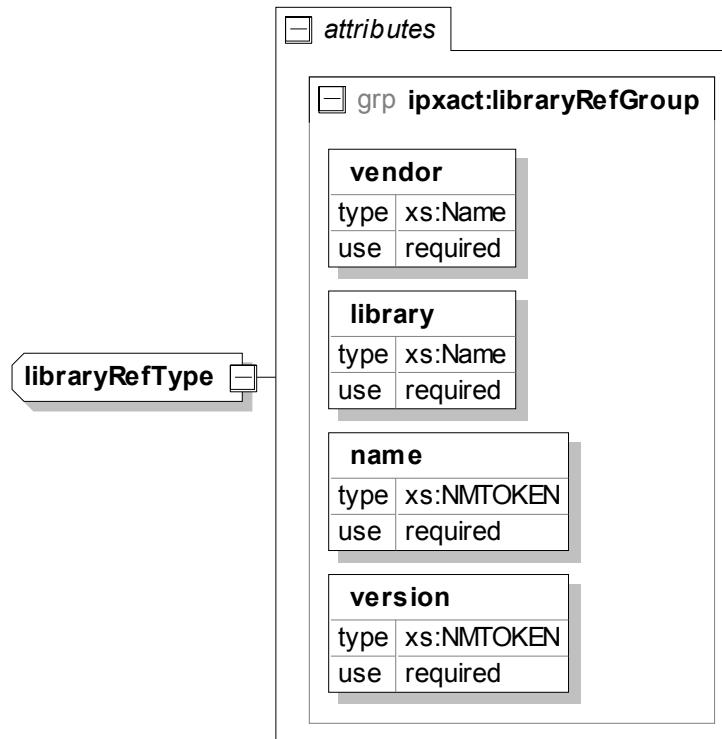
### C.10.2 Description

**isPresent** (type: *unsignedBitExpression* (see [C.3.5](#))) specifies an expression that determines how the enclosing element should be treated: *present* (evaluates to 1) or *nonpresent* (evaluates to 0). When *present*, the enclosing element shall be treated as described. When *nonpresent*, the enclosing element and all of its descendants shall be treated as if they do not exist in the file.

## C.11 libraryRefType

### C.11.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **libraryRefType** element.



### C.11.2 Description

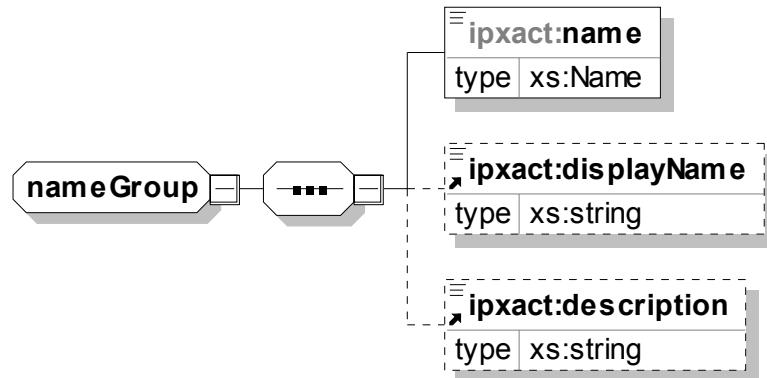
The **libraryRefType** element defines a set of four attributes that reference another IP-XACT description through the unique VLNV identifier.

- a) The **vendor** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the owner of the referenced description.
- b) The **library** attribute (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the library of the referenced description.
- c) The **name** attribute (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the name of the referenced description.
- d) The **version** attribute (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the version of the referenced description.

## C.12 nameGroup group

### C.12.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **nameGroup** group.



### C.12.2 Description

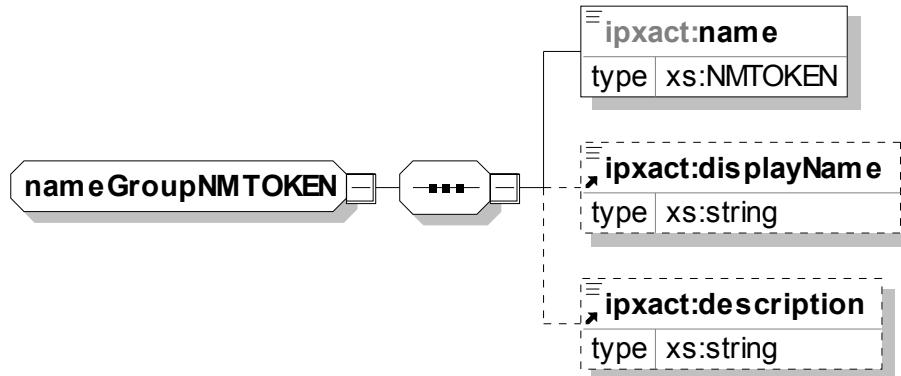
The **nameGroup** group defines any descriptive text for the containing element. The **nameGroup** group definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the containing element.
- b) **displayName** (optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the containing element.
- c) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.

## C.13 nameGroupNMOKEN group

### C.13.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***nameGroupNMOKEN*** group.



### C.13.2 Description

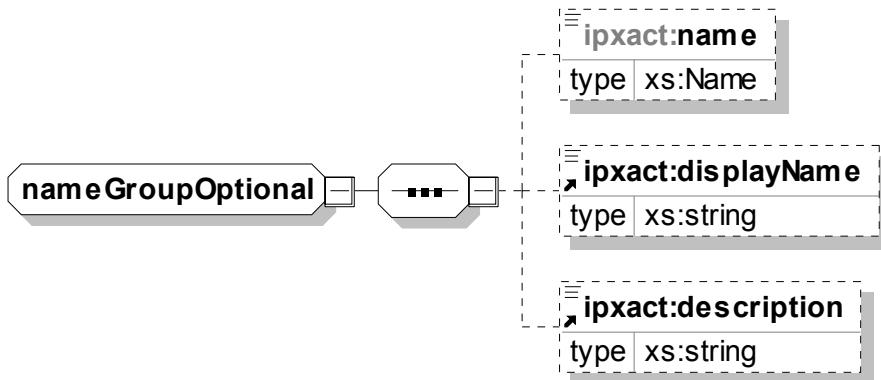
The ***nameGroupNMOKEN*** group defines any descriptive text for the containing element. The ***nameGroupNMOKEN*** group definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *NMOKEN*) identifies the containing element. The name used shall match the corresponding port name found in any **views** of the containing component.
- b) **displayName** (optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the containing element.
- c) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.

## C.14 nameGroupOptional group

### C.14.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***nameGroupOptional*** group.



### C.14.2 Description

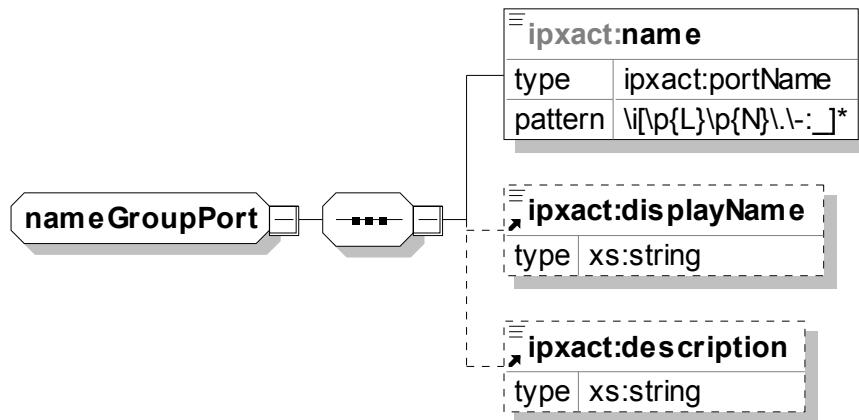
The ***nameGroupOptional*** group defines any descriptive text for the containing element. The ***nameGroupOptional*** group definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** ((optional; type: *Name*) identifies the containing element.
- b) **displayName** ((optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the containing element.
- c) **description** ((optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.

### C.15 nameGroupPort group

#### C.15.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***nameGroupPort*** group.



#### C.15.2 Description

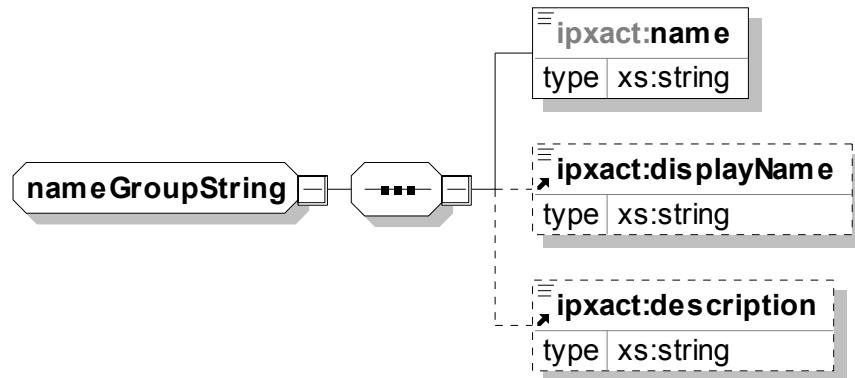
The ***nameGroupPort*** group defines any descriptive text for the containing element. The ***nameGroupPort*** group definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *portName*) identifies the containing element.
- b) **displayName** ((optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the containing element.
- c) **description** ((optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.

## C.16 nameGroupString group

### C.16.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***nameGroupString*** group.



### C.16.2 Description

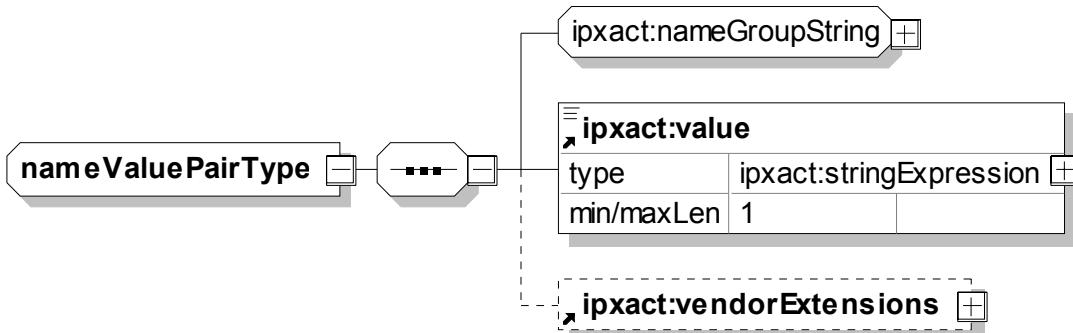
The ***nameGroupString*** group defines any descriptive text for the containing element. The ***nameGroupString*** group definition contains the following elements:

- a) **name** (mandatory; type: *string*) identifies the containing element.
- b) **displayName** (optional; type: *string*) allows a short descriptive text to be associated with the containing element.
- c) **description** (optional; type: *string*) allows a textual description of the containing element.

## C.17 nameValuePairType

### C.17.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the ***nameValuePairType*** element.



## C.17.2 Description

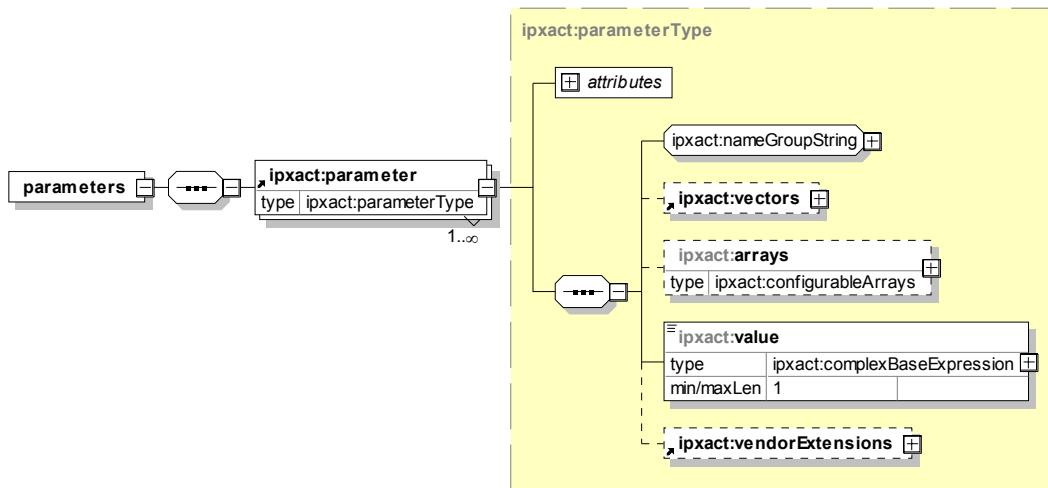
The ***nameValuePairType*** element specifies the name and value type used for resolvable elements. The ***nameValuePairType*** element contains the following elements:

- a) ***nameGroupString*** group is defined in [C.16](#).
  - b) **value** (mandatory; type: ***stringExpression*** (see [C.3.3](#))) contains the actual value of the **parameter**.
  - c) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the port. See [C.24](#).

## C.18 parameters

## C.18.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **parameters** element.



## C.18.2 Description

The **parameters** element contains an unbounded list of **parameter** elements. **parameter** (mandatory) defines a configurable element related to the containing element. The parameter definition allows for the assignment of a name, **parameterID**, and a value. The **parameter** element also allows for vendor attributes to be applied. The **parameter** element definition contains the following elements:

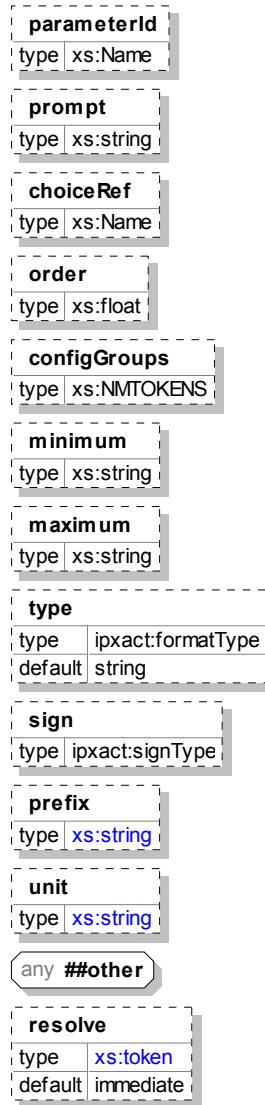
- a) **attributes** specify the parameter behavior, like **type**, **sign**, **parameterId**, etc. See [C.19](#).
  - b) **nameGroupString** is defined in [C.16](#).
  - c) **vectors** (optional) specifies the dimensions of a vector when the parameter represents a packed array or bit-vector (where the **type** is **bit**). See [C.23](#).
  - d) **arrays** (optional; type: **configurableArrays** (see [C.4](#))) specifies dimensions for a port defined as an array.
  - e) **value** (mandatory; type: **complexBaseExpression** (see [C.3](#))) contains the actual value of the **parameter**. The **value** element is further constrained by the **type**, **sign**, and **array** properties specified on the **parameter** element.
  - f) **vendorExtensions** (optional) adds any extra vendor-specific data related to the **parameter**. See [C.24](#).

See also SCR 5.2, SCR 5.16, SCR 5.20, SCR 5.21, and SCR 5.22.

## C.19 attributes

### C.19.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *attributes* for various elements.



### C.19.2 Description

The **parameter** attributes specify the parameter behavior via the following elements:

- The **parameterid** attribute (optional; type: *Name*) assigns a unique identifier to the containing parameter for reference throughout the containing description. **parameterid** is required when the element has a **resolve** type equal to **user** or **generated**, or is referenced from an expression. This **parameterid** can be referenced in two ways: by the **configurableElementValue** element (see [C.5.2](#)) in the referencing description or in an expression.
- The **prompt** attribute (optional; type: *string*) defines a prompt string that a DE can use if the **resolve** attribute is equal to **user**.

- c) The **choiceRef** attribute (optional; type: *Name*) indicates the value of the containing element is defined in the referenced **choice** element.
- d) The **order** attribute (optional; type: *float*) indicates how elements are presented, when **resolve** equals **user**. The elements are presented in ascending order.
- e) The **configGroups** attribute (optional; type: *NMTOKENS*) indicates a name to group elements together; elements with matching values for this attribute are contained in the same group. There is no semantic meaning to this attribute.
- f) The **minimum** attribute (optional; type: *string*) indicates the lower bound for the **value** of the containing element. This check is valid only for a format of **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **real**, or **shortreal**. The **type** attribute shall specify the type of the **minimum** attribute.
- g) The **maximum** attribute (optional; type: *string*) indicates the lower bound for the **value** of the containing element. This check is valid only for a format of **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **real**, or **shortreal**. The **type** attribute shall specify the type of the **maximum** attribute.
- h) The **type** attribute (optional; default: **string**) is the type to which the parameter value resolves. The value shall be one of the following:
  - 1) **bit** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **bit**, which by default is resolved to a 1-bit value, unless a vector size has been specified.
  - 2) **byte** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **byte**, which is resolved to an 8-bit integer value.
  - 3) **shortint** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **shortint**, which is resolved to a 16-bit integer value.
  - 4) **int** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **int**, which is resolved to a 32-bit integer value.
  - 5) **longint** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **longint**, which is resolved to a 64-bit integer value.
  - 6) **shortreal** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **shortreal**, which is resolved to a 32-bit floating point value.
  - 7) **real** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **real**, which is resolved to a 64-bit floating point value.
  - 8) **string** indicates the value shall resolve to a SystemVerilog **string**.
- i) The **sign** attribute (optional) indicates the signed-ness of the parameter value. This property influences only the following types: **bit**, **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint**: where the types **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint** are **signed** by default and the type **bit** is **unsigned** by default.

The **sign** property does not influence **real**, **shortreal**, **bit**, and **string** types; effectively, **sign** can be ignored for these types.
- j) The **prefix** attribute (optional; type: *string*) specifies the prefix that precedes the **unit** of a value. The **prefix** is for informational purposes only and is not applied to the value (e.g., when evaluating expressions). Its possible values are **hecto**, **kilo**, **mega**, **giga**, **tera**, **peta**, **exa**, **zetta**, **yotta**, **deci**, **centi**, **milli**, **micro**, **nano**, **pico**, **femto**, **atto**, **zepto**, and **yocto**. These represent the values as defined by the *International System of Units* [B6].
- k) The **unit** attribute (optional; type: *string*) specifies the unit of a value. The **unit** is for informational purposes only and is not applied to the value (e.g., when evaluating expressions). Its possible values are **second**, **ampere**, **kelvin**, **hertz**, **joule**, **watt**, **coulomb**, **volt**, **farad**, **ohm**, **siemens**, **henry**, and **Celsius**. These represent some of the base units and derived units as defined by the *International System of Units* [B6].
- l) The **any ##other** attribute (optional) indicates any additional attributes in other name spaces are allowed in the containing element. These additional attributes are called *vendor attributes*.

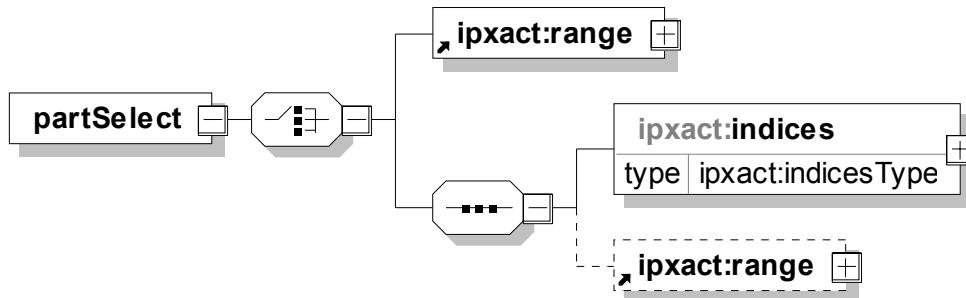
- m) The **resolve** attribute (optional; type: **token**; default: **immediate**) defines how the value for the containing element is configured. The value shall be one from the enumerated list of **immediate**, **user**, or **generated**.
  - 1) **immediate** indicates the value shall be specified in the containing element.
  - 2) **user** indicates the value shall be specified by user input and the new value stored in a referencing description under the **configurableElementValue** element (see [C.5.2](#)).
  - 3) **generated** indicates the value shall be set by a generator and the new value stored in a referencing description under the **configurableElementValue** element (see [C.5.2](#)).

See also [SCR 5.1](#).

## C.20 partSelect

### C.20.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **partSelect** element.



### C.20.2 Description

The **partSelect** element defines a selection of subelements from within a referenced port element. A part selection can consist of either a single range specification or multiple index specifications along with an optional range specification.

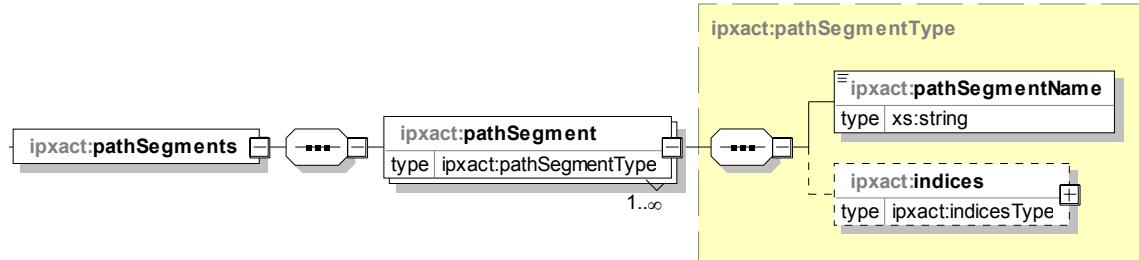
- a) **range** defines the range of bits or array elements being referenced. If **index** elements are also present, the **range** applies after all **index** elements. See [C.22](#).
- b) **indices** specifies a list of **index** elements. The **indices** specify an element in the IP-XACT object to which this **accessHandle** applies. See [C.9](#).

When multiple indices are present, they correspond to the dimensions of the defined port, account for array ranges first, and then account for vector ranges.

## C.21 pathSegments

### C.21.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **pathSegments** element.



### C.21.2 Description

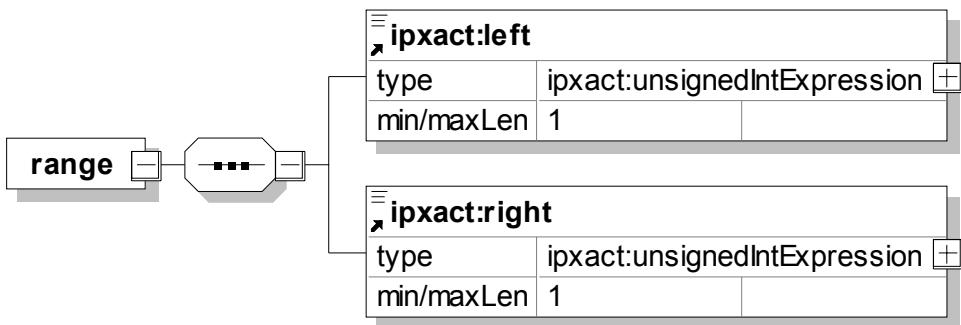
The **pathSegments** element specifies an ordered list of **pathSegment** elements. A **pathSegment** is one node in the hierarchical path. When concatenated with a desired separator, the elements in this form a language-specific path for the parent slice into the referenced view. The **pathSegment** element contains the following elements:

- a) **pathSegmentName** (mandatory; type: *string*) is one node in the path.
- b) **indices** (optional) specifies a list of **index** elements. The **indices** specify an element in the IP-XACT object to which this **accessHandle** applies. See [C.9](#).

## C.22 range

### C.22.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **range** element.



### C.22.2 Description

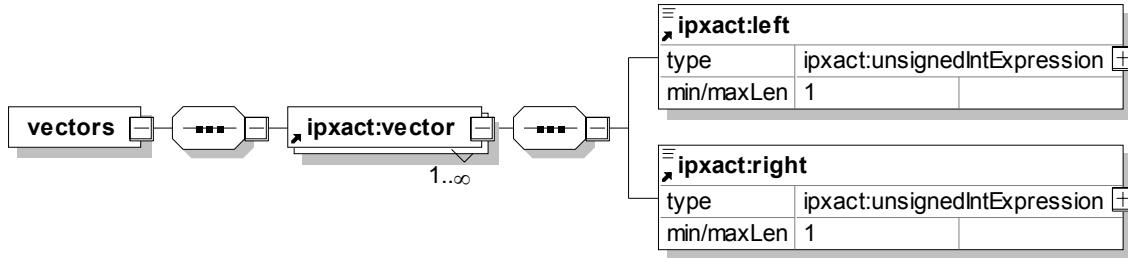
The **range** element defines the range of bits or array elements being referenced. The **range** element contains the following elements:

- a) **left** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the left range of the bit slice.
- b) **right** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the right range of the bit slice.

## C.23 vectors

### C.23.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **vectors** element.



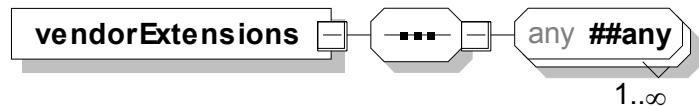
The **vectors** element specifies the dimensions of a **vector** when the parameter represents a packed array or bit-vector (where the **type** is **bit**). The **vector** element contains the following elements:

- a) **left** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the left range for the bit slice used to map a port vector to the bus interface.
- b) **right** (mandatory; type: *unsignedIntExpression* (see [C.3.8](#))) specifies the right range for the bit slice used to map a port vector to the bus interface.

## C.24 vendorExtensions

### C.24.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **vendorExtensions** element.



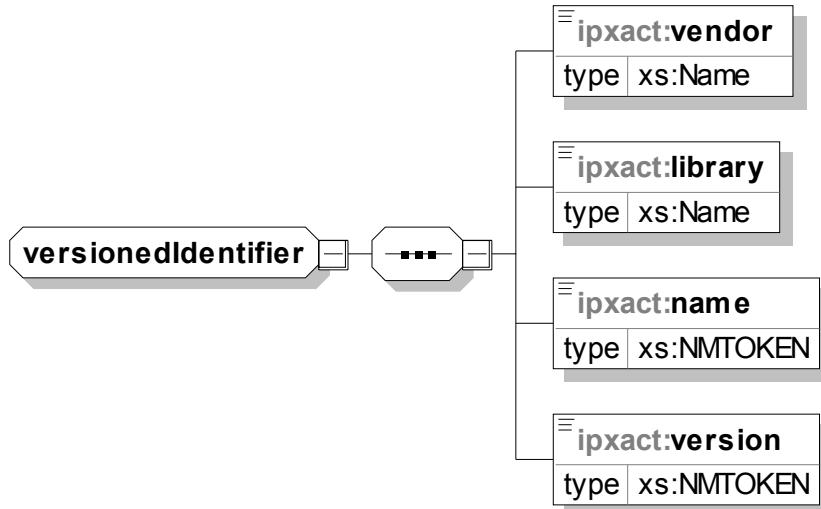
### C.24.2 Description

The **vendorExtensions** element is a place in the description in which any vendor-specific information can be stored. The **vendorExtensions** element allows any well-formed description.

## C.25 versionedIdentifier group

### C.25.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the *versionedIdentifier* group.



### C.25.2 Description

The *versionedIdentifier* group defines a unique reference of or from an IP-XACT description. Only one object with a given VLVN may be present in a DE at any given time. The timing and way to change the VLVN of an object is completely up to the user or developer. The *versionedIdentifier* group definition contains the following four subelements:

- a) **vendor** (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the owner of this description. The format of the **vendor** element is the company internet domain name in left-to-right order (e.g., `accellera.org` not `org.accellera`).
- b) **library** (mandatory; type: *Name*) identifies the library of this description. This allows a vendor to group descriptions.
- c) **name** (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the name of this description within a library.
- d) **version** (mandatory; type: *NMTOKEN*) identifies the version of this description. This allows a vendor to provide many descriptions that all have the same name, but are still uniquely identified. The **version** may appear as an alphanumeric string and contain a set of substrings, with non-alphanumeric delimiters in-between. Each IP supplier shall have their own cataloguing system for setting version numbers.

See also [SCR 1.1](#) and [SCR 1.2](#).

### C.25.3 Sorting and comparing version elements

Sorting and comparing **version** elements determines whether

- An IP is a component that has been previously imported;
- Multiple versions of the same IP exist in a design;
- A newer version of an IP exists.

To sort and compare **version** elements, subdivide the version number into major fields and subfields. Major fields may be separated by a non-alphanumeric delimiter such as ., -, \_, etc. Each major field can be compared to determine equivalence and broken down further into subfields if necessary.

#### C.25.3.1 Comparison rules

- a) Each **version** element is broken into its major fields, which are separated using the appropriate delimiter (e.g., : or .).
- b) Major fields are compared against each other from left to right.
- c) Subfields, within each major field, need to be examined if the major fields are alphanumeric. Each major field shall have alphabetical and numerical subfields that are separated from right to left.
- d) To summarize the rules for the comparison of each subfield in a major field:
  - 1) Numeric—Compare the integer values of numeric subfields.
  - 2) Alphabetic
    - i) String—Perform a simple string comparison.
    - ii) Case—Ignore alphabetic case (e.g., a and A are the same).

It is possible for different representations of version numbers to be considered equal. For example, under these rules, A1 and A01 are equal, since numerical subfields are compared numerically, and A.B equals A\_B, since delimiters are not compared.

#### C.25.3.2 Comparison examples

The following examples illustrate the sorting and comparing of a **version** elements:

##### Example 1

The first case uses: 205:75WR16 and 215:50HR15.

- a) Each of these version numbers break down into the following two major fields, separated by the : delimiter: 205 75WR16 and 215 50HR15.
- b) Major fields are compared against each other from left to right. In this example, the first major fields (205 and 215) differ between the VLVN strings and the comparison ends there. This case is also simplified since the first major field is an integer (i.e., numeric).
- c) Subfields, within each major field, need to be examined if the major fields are alphanumeric. Each major field shall have alphabetical and numerical subfields that are separated from right to left.

##### Example 2

In the next case, two VLVN have the same first major field, and their second major subfields need to be compared: e.g., 205:45R16 and 205:55R15.

- a) The first major field (205) is the same between these two VLVN, so the second major field is checked. These second major fields are broken down into the following alphabetic and numeric subfields: 45 R 16 and 55 R 15.
- b) The subfields are compared from left to right. The first (and in this case only) comparison is 45 versus 55, so these subfields are not equal. The major fields are not equivalent.

#### C.25.4 Version control

Each file conforming to the top-level schema has a set of VLVN elements that, when considered together, form a unique identifier (*a version control number*) for the information contained in that XML document.

The VLVN of any IP-XACT information is not the same as the version of the file that might contain that information.

NOTE—An XML file might be revised in a way that does not materially affect the IP-XACT information content. For example, copyright notices are updated, comments are added, and environment variable names used as part of the filenames might be changed (but still point to the same files). These changes may not necessitate changing the VLVN.

Many developers of IP libraries use a version control system to track updates and changes to the various files that contribute to the overall design and IP package information. At any time, individual files may be modified and updated as development of that design or IP progresses. At appropriate junctures, releases are made, each consisting of a particular combination of files at different levels of a version.

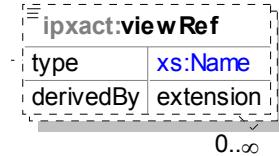
An IP-XACT description is one of the files that can be very usefully tracked in this way and updated in line with other design modifications. There is no direct link between the version number of the file and the VLVN identifier contained in that description. In many cases, however, the VLVN can be coordinated with the overall release package version.

See also [SCR 1.1](#) and [SCR 1.2](#).

## C.26 viewRef

### C.26.1 Schema

The following schema details the information contained in the **viewRef** element.



### C.26.2 Description

The occurrence of **viewRef** (type: *Name*) elements (0 to *infinity*) in an **accessHandle**, **abstractionType**, **wireTypeDef**, and **transTypeDef** elements shall meet the following rules and interpretation:

- If an **accessHandle**, **abstractionType**, **wireTypeDef**, or **transTypeDef** element does not have **viewRef** elements, then all existing component view elements are referenced implicitly. This implies there is only one **accessHandle**, **abstractionType**, **wireTypeDef**, or **transTypeDef** element in the enclosing **accessHandles**, **abstractionTypes**, **wireTypeDefs**, and **transTypeDefs** elements.
- A view name may be referenced once in all **viewRef** elements of the enclosing **accessHandles**, **abstractionTypes**, **wireTypeDefs**, or **transTypeDefs** elements.
- If a view name is not explicitly or implicitly referenced in an **accessHandles**, **abstractionTypes**, **wireTypeDefs**, or **transTypeDefs** elements, the enclosing element of the **accessHandles**, **abstractionTypes**, **wireTypeDefs**, or **transTypeDefs** element does not exist in that view.

## C.27 xml:id

The **xml:id** attribute can be specified to provide a unique identifier for the element. Refer to *xml:id Version 1.0 [xml-ref]*. The attribute value is required to be unique in the document. The attribute is not referenced by any of the features in the IP-XACT language. **xml:id** has been provided so tools can more precisely identify

nodes in the document to provide, e.g., better change control or to attach documentation and other related information to the node in the document.

**xml:id** is available on all nodes that otherwise cannot be uniquely identified, i.e., all items that can have multiple occurrences at the same level of the hierarchy.



## Annex D

(normative)

### Types

Many elements and attributes defined in the standard have associated types. These types define the legal values and ranges for input into these element and attributes.

#### D.1 boolean

The **boolean** type defines two possible values, **true** and **false**.

#### D.2 float

The **float** type defines a decimal floating point number based on the IEEE single-precision 32-bit floating point type (see IEEE Std 754-1985 [\[B2\]](#)).

#### D.3 ID or IDREF

The **ID** or **IDREF** type defines a unique identifier through the containing description. It needs to begin with a letter or underscore (\_). An **ID** or **IDREF** shall contain only letters, numbers, and the underscore (\_), dash (-), and dot (.) characters. Any leading or trailing spaces are removed.

#### D.4 instancePath

The **instancePath** type defines a series of **Name** type character strings (see [D.7](#)), separated by a slash (/). Any leading or trailing space is removed.

#### D.5 integer

The **integer** type defines a decimal integer number of infinite precision, containing the numbers 0–9.

#### D.6 libraryRefType

The **libraryRefType** type is an element type, not a data type. This type defines the four attributes of a VLVN required for a reference from one description to another description. See [C.11](#).

#### D.7 Name

The **Name** type defines a series of any characters, excluding embedded whitespace. It needs to begin with a letter, colon (:), or underscore (\_). A **Name** shall contain only letters, numbers, and the colon (:), underscore (\_), dash (-), and dot (.) characters. Any leading or trailing spaces are removed.

## D.8 NMTOKEN

The **NMTOKEN** type defines a series of any characters, excluding embedded whitespace. It shall contain only letters, numbers, and the colon (:), underscore (\_), dash (-), and dot (.) characters. Any leading or trailing spaces are removed.

## D.9 NMTOKENS

The **NMTOKENS** type defines a series of any characters, including embedded whitespace. It shall contain only letters, numbers, and the colon (:), underscore (\_), dash (-), and dot (.) characters.

## D.10 portName

The **portName** type defines a series of any characters, excluding embedded whitespace. It shall contain only letters, numbers, and the colon (:), underscore (\_), dash (-), and dot (.) characters. It also needs to begin with a letter, colon (:), or underscore (\_). Any leading or trailing spaces are removed.

## D.11 ipxactURI

The **ipxactURI** type defines a string of characters for an absolute or relative path to a file, a directory, or an executable in URI format (`xs:anyURI`), except it can contain environment variables in the  `${ENV_VAR}`  form, which are replaced by their value(s) to provide the underlying URI.

## D.12 string

The **string** type defines a series of any characters and may include spaces.

## D.13 token

The **token** type defines a series of any characters, excluding carriage-return, line-feed, and tab. Any leading or trailing spaces are removed, and all internal sequences of two or more spaces are reduced to one space.

## Annex E

(normative)

### SystemVerilog expressions

This standard utilizes *SystemVerilog expressions* as a means to specify an equation as the value of an element. Expressions can be specified for all predefined element values having an associated type (see [C.3](#) and [C.18](#)) that allows for an expression to be specified. Besides predefined types, parameters can also be specified using expressions, in which case the type attributes define the type of expression that can be specified.

#### E.1 Overview

The IP-XACT Expression Language is based on the SystemVerilog Expression Language as specified in IEEE Std 1800-2012.

The goal of the IP-XACT Expression Language is for it to be a subset of IEEE Std 1800-2012, i.e., the expressions defined in IP-XACT should be easily ported-to or incorporated-into a SystemVerilog file and interpreted by any SystemVerilog parser/processor.

The IP-XACT Expression Language, however, should also be able to represent constructs and functionality specific to the IP-XACT language. To make the language more in-line with the IP-XACT language, some functionality has been limited and some changes to the original SystemVerilog Expression Language were introduced.

#### E.2 Data-types

A subset of the SystemVerilog data-types are used by the IP-XACT Expression Language. All IP-XACT data-types map to a specific SystemVerilog data-type. The casting functionality and operators follow the same subset of the functionality specified by the SystemVerilog Expression Language.

It has been decided to not support complex, user-defined, and time data-types in IP-XACT; it has also been decided to support only 2-state values and not allow for unknown or high-impedance values. The supported data-types are shown in [Table E1](#).

**Table E1—Data-types**

Data-type	Description
<b>bit</b>	2-state data type, user-defined vector size
<b>byte</b>	2-state data type, 8-bit signed integer
<b>shortint</b>	2-state data type, 16-bit signed integer
<b>int</b>	2-state data type, 32-bit signed integer
<b>longint</b>	2-state data type, 64-bit signed integer
<b>shortreal</b>	32-bit floating point

**Table E1—Data-types (continued)**

Data-type	Description
<b>real</b>	64-bit floating point
<b>string</b>	An ordered collection of characters

### E.2.1 bit data type

The **bit** data-type is equivalent to the **bit** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.2 byte data type

The **byte** data-type is equivalent to the **byte** data-type in SystemVerilog, except it is not possible to specify an ASCII character and, therefore, ASCII characters cannot be assigned to a **byte** variable.

### E.2.3 shortint data type

The **shortint** data-type is equivalent to the **shortint** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.4 int data type

The **int** data-type is equivalent to the **int** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.5 longint data type

The **longint** data-type is equivalent to the **longint** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.6 shortreal data type

The **shortreal** data-type is equivalent to the **shortreal** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.7 real data type

The **real** data-type is equivalent to the **real** data-type in SystemVerilog.

### E.2.8 string data type

The IP-XACT Expression Language **string** data-type is equivalent to the SystemVerilog **string** datatype; just like the SystemVerilog **string**, it supports only US-ASCII characters.

To simplify the string functionality and avoid potential issues with string-length, indexing, and casting to and from **long** or **bitstring** values, however, casting, indexing, and length tests are not supported. As a result, an IP-XACT **string** can be seen as an immutable, 'simple' object without length, which cannot be cast to other types or from other types. Also, only the string-equality, inequality, concatenation, replication, and inside operators are supported (see [Table E.2](#)).

## E.2.9 Signed and unsigned data types

The IP-XACT data-types follow the same default signed/unsigned functionality as has been defined in the SystemVerilog Expression Language, i.e., the **bit** data-type is unsigned and the **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint** data-types are signed by default.

IP-XACT also allows specifying the signed-ness when assigning the values. and just like in SystemVerilog, the signed-ness can also be used when casting the value.

## E.3 Assignments

Variables and constants are fully declared and assigned using IP-XACT parameters (see [C.18](#)). In other words, the IP-XACT Expression Language itself does not support assignments and, therefore, does not support any assignment operators.

### E.3.1 Single value assignment

To assign a single parameter with an identifier of `baseAddress` having a value of '`h100`' in IP-XACT, use the following format:

```
<ipxact:parameter type="longint" parameterId="baseAddress">
  <ipxact:name>baseAddress</IP-XACT:name>
  <ipxact:value>'h100</IP-XACT:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
```

which is equivalent to the following SystemVerilog assignment:

```
longint baseAddress = 'h100;
```

### E.3.2 Parameter type

The value of a parameter is itself an expression and should be specified accordingly. The type of the parameter expression is defined by the `type` attribute. Possible values for this type attribute are `bit`, `byte`, `shortint`, `int`, `longint`, `shortreal`, `real`, `string`. These types correspond to their SystemVerilog counterparts as described in E.2.

The expression that is specified as the parameter's value is implicitly cast to the parameter's type. See [C.3](#) and [C.18](#).

### E.3.3 Parameter signing

To change the signed-ness of a parameter, use the `sign` attribute (see [C.19.2](#)), whose value can be `signed` or `unsigned`, e.g.,

```
<ipxact:parameter type="longint" parameterId="baseAddress" sign="signed">
  <ipxact:name>baseAddress</IPXACT:name>
  <ipxact:value>'h100</IPXACT:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
```

This property influences only the following types: **bit**, **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint**:

where the types **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint** are signed by default  
and the type **bit** is unsigned by default.

The **sign** property does not influence **real**, **shortreal**, **bit**, and **string** types; effectively, **sign** can be ignored for these types.

### E.3.4 Vector assignment

To create a packed array bit-string, the IP-XACT Expression Language allows the specification of vector information. Vector information can be specified only for parameters with a type of **bit**.

The following shows how to create a 8-bit packed array parameter with an identifier of `test` having the value `8'hAB`:

```
<parameter type="bit" parameterId="test">
  <name>test</name>
  <vectors>
    <vector>
      <left>7</left><right>0</right>
    </vector>
  </vectors>
  <value>8'hAB</value>
</parameter>
```

which is the equivalent of

```
bit [7:0] test = 8'hAB;
```

### E.3.5 Array assignment

To create an array for any type of parameter, the IP-XACT Expression Language allows the specification of array information and multiple initial values.

The following shows how to create an array parameter with a type of **int** and an identifier of `test` having the value `'{8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA}`:

```
<parameter type="int" parameterId="test">
  <name>test</name>
  <arrays>
    <array>
      <left>6</left><right>0</right>
    </array>
  </arrays>
  <value>'{8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA}</value>
</parameter>
```

This is the equivalent of

```
longint test [0:6] = '{8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA, 8'hAA};
```

The following shows how to create a packed bit array parameter with an identifier of `test` having the array value `{'{8'h0, 8'h1, 8'h2, 8'h3, 8'h4, 8'h5}, '{8'h6, 8'h7, 8'h8, 8'h9, 8'hA, 8'hB}}`:

```
<parameter type="bit" parameterId="test">
  <name>test</name>
  <vectors>
    <vector>
      <left>7</left><right>0</right>
    </vector>
  </vectors>
```

```

    </vector>
  </vectors>
<arrays>
  <array>
    <left>1</left><right>0</right>
    <left>5</left><right>0</right>
  </array>
</arrays>
<value>'{{8'h0,8'h1,8'h2,8'h3,8'h4,8'h5},
  '{8'h6,8'h7,8'h8,8'h9,8'hA,8'hB}}</value>
</parameter>

```

This is the equivalent of

```

bit [0:7] test [0:1] [0:5] =
  '{{8'h0,8'h1,8'h2,8'h3,8'h4,8'h5},'{8'h6,8'h7,8'h8,8'h9,8'hA,8'hB}};

```

### E.3.6 Identifiers

The **parameterId** (see [C.19.2](#)), which is used as the identifier for the parameter by the expression language, can be specified using all characters from the *XML schema NameChar definition*; however, the first character of the **parameterId** shall not be a -, :, or ., a number, or any other character as specified by the *XML schema NameStartChar definition*.

The **parameterId** shall be unique within the containing document.

### E.3.7 Identifier references

Parameters can be used in other expressions by referencing their identifier, the **parameterId**.

```

<ipxact:parameter parameterId="offset">
  <ipxact:name>offset</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:value>'h100</ipxact:addressOffset>
</ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:register>
  ...
  <ipxact:addressOffset>offset + 'h10</ipxact:addressOffset>
  ...
</ipxact:register>

```

Any parameter in the document with a **parameterId** can be referenced from an expression. However, view-dependent parameters specified inside the instantiation sections cannot be referenced from outside the instantiation that specifies the parameter.

The **parameterId** can be specified using the characters -, :, or .. However, to avoid confusion with the expression operators, these characters cannot be directly specified when referencing the parameter from an expression. In that case, these characters should be escaped first (see [E.3.7.1](#)).

*Example*

```

shiftreg_a
busa_index
error_condition
merge_ab
_bus3

```

Implementations may set a limit on the maximum length of identifiers, but the limit shall be at least 1024 characters. If an identifier exceeds the implementation-specific length limit, an error shall be reported.

### E.3.7.1 Escaped identifier references

Escaped identifier references shall start with the backslash character (\) and end with white space (a space, tab, or newline). They provide a means of including the characters that are part of the *XML schema NameChar definition*, but are not allowed to be specified directly for an identifier.

The following extra characters can be used for an escaped character: -, :, and .. Neither the leading backslash character nor the terminating white space is considered to be part of the identifier reference. Therefore, the escaped identifier reference \cpu3 is treated the same as the non-escaped identifier references cpu3.

*Example*

```
\busa:index
\clock
\error-condition
\a.b
```

### E.3.7.2 Keywords

Keywords are predefined non-escaped identifiers that are used to define the language constructs. All keywords are defined in lowercase only. A keyword preceded by an escape character (see [E.3.7.1](#)) is not interpreted as a keyword.

A subset of SystemVerilog keywords have been specified for IP-XACT. Since fewer keywords have been specified in the IP-XACT Expression Language, the other SystemVerilog keywords need to be escaped (see [E.3.7.1](#)) before processing these expressions using a SystemVerilog parser/processor.

The following keywords are reserved: **bit**, **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **shortreal**, **real**, **signed**, **unsigned**, **inside**, and **with**.

## E.4 Operators

[Table E.2](#) gives an overview of the SystemVerilog operators and how IP-XACT supports them (or not).

**Table E.2—SystemVerilog operators**

Operator token	Name	Operand data types
=	Binary assignment operator	Assignments are not supported
+= -= /= *=	Binary arithmetic assignment operators	Assignments are not supported
%=	Binary arithmetic modulus assignment operator	Assignments are not supported
&=  = ^=	Binary bit-wise assignment operators	Assignments are not supported
>>= <<=	Binary logical shift assignment operators	Assignments are not supported
>>>= <<<=	Binary arithmetic shift assignment operators	Assignments are not supported
?:	Conditional operator	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup> , string

**Table E.2—SystemVerilog operators (continued)**

Operator token	Name	Operand data types
+ -	Unary arithmetic operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup>
!	Unary logical negation operator	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup>
~ & ~&   ~  ^ ~^ ^~	Unary logical reduction operators	integral <sup>a</sup>
+ - * / **	Binary arithmetic operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup>
%	Binary arithmetic modulus operator	integral <sup>a</sup>
&   ^ ~^ ~^	Binary bit-wise operators	integral <sup>a</sup>
>> <<	Binary logical shift operators	integral <sup>a</sup>
>>> <<<	Binary arithmetic shift operators	integral <sup>a</sup>
&&    -> <->	Binary logical operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup>
< <= > >=	Binary relational operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup>
==!=	Binary case equality operators	Unknown or high-impedance values are not supported
==!=	Binary logical equality operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup> , string
==? !=?	Binary wildcard equality operators	Unknown or high-impedance values are not supported
++ --	Unary increment and decrement operators	Assignments are not supported
inside	Binary set membership operator	integral <sup>a</sup> , real <sup>b</sup> , string
dist	Binary distribution operator	Randomization is not supported
{ } { }	Concatenation and replication operators	integral <sup>a</sup> , string
{<<} {>>}	Stream operators	integral <sup>a</sup>

<sup>a</sup> integral = **bit**, **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, and **longint**<sup>b</sup> real = **real** and **shortreal**

All operators are supported except the following:

- The assignment operators are not supported, since assignments are handled using IP-XACT constructs.
- Operators that handle high-impedance and unknown equality are not supported. The IP-XACT Expression Language does not specify data-types that support high-impedance and unknown values; therefore, there is no need to support these operators.
- The binary distribution operator is not supported because it is not possible to specify randomized values.

## E.5 Math functions

The SystemVerilog Expression Language supports a set of math functions; to make the expression language more complete, the exact same set of functions is supported.

### E.5.1 Integer math function

The integer math function is shown in [Table E.3](#).

**Table E.3—Integers**

Function	Description
<code>\$clog2(x)</code>	Returns the ceiling of the log base 2 of the argument (the log rounded up to an integer value)

### E.5.2 Real math functions

The real math functions are shown in [Table E.4](#).

**Table E.4—Reals**

Function	Description
<code>\$ln(x)</code>	Natural logarithm
<code>\$log10(x)</code>	Decimal logarithm
<code>\$exp(x)</code>	Exponential
<code>\$sqrt(x)</code>	Square root
<code>\$pow(x,y)</code>	$x^{**}y$
<code>\$floor(x)</code>	Floor
<code>\$ceil(x)</code>	Ceiling
<code>\$sin(x)</code>	Sine
<code>\$cos(x)</code>	Cosine
<code>\$tan(x)</code>	Tangent
<code>\$asin(x)</code>	Arc-sine
<code>\$acos(x)</code>	Arc-cosine
<code>\$atan(x)</code>	Arc-tangent
<code>\$atan2(y,x)</code>	Arc-tangent of $y/x$
<code>\$hypot(x,y)</code>	$\sqrt{x^*x+y^*y}$
<code>\$sinh(x)</code>	Hyperbolic sine
<code>\$cosh(x)</code>	Hyperbolic cosine
<code>\$tanh(x)</code>	Hyperbolic tangent
<code>\$asinh(x)</code>	Arc-hyperbolic sine
<code>\$acosh(x)</code>	Arc-hyperbolic cosine
<code>\$atanh(x)</code>	Arc-hyperbolic tangent

## E.6 Expression language formal syntax (BNF)

The formal syntax is described using Backus-Naur Form (BNF). The syntax of the expression language source is derived from the starting symbol `constant_expression` (see [E.6.3.3](#)).

The following meta-syntax conventions used are used here:

- Keywords and punctuation are in red text.
- Syntactic categories are named in non-bold text.
- A vertical bar ( | ) separates alternatives.
- Square brackets ( [ ] ) enclose optional items.
- Braces ( { } ) enclose items that can be repeated zero or more times.

### E.6.1 Declarations: declaration data types

`casting_type ::= simple_type | constant_primary | signing`

`integer_type ::= integer_vector_type | integer_atom_type`

`integer_atom_type ::= byte | shortint | int | longint`

`integer_vector_type ::= bit`

`non_integer_type ::= shortreal | real`

`signing ::= signed | unsigned`

`simple_type ::= integer_type | non_integer_type`

### E.6.2 Behavioral statements: Case statements

#### E.6.2.1 Patterns

`assignment_pattern ::= '{ constant_expression { , constant_expression } }`  
`| '{ array_pattern_key : constant_expression { , array_pattern_key : constant_expression } }`  
`| '{ constant_expression { constant_expression { , constant_expression } } }`

`array_pattern_key ::= constant_expression | assignment_pattern_key`

`assignment_pattern_key ::= simple_type`

`assignment_pattern_expression ::= [ assignment_pattern_expression_type ] assignment_pattern`

`assignment_pattern_expression_type ::= integer_atom_type`

`constant_assignment_pattern_expression ::= assignment_pattern_expression`

#### E.6.2.2 Covergroup declarations

`open_range_list ::= open_value_range { , open_value_range }`

`open_value_range ::= value_range`

## E.6.3 Expressions

### E.6.3.1 Concatenations

```

constant_concatenation ::= { constant_expression { , constant_expression } }

constant_multiple_concatenation ::= { constant_expression constant_concatenation }

constant_streaming_expression ::= { stream_operator [ slice_size ] constant_stream_concatenation }

stream_operator ::= >> | <<

slice_size ::= simple_type | constant_expression

constant_stream_concatenation ::= { constant_stream_expression { , constant_stream_expression } }

constant_stream_expression ::= constant_expression [ with [ constant_array_range_expression ] ]

constant_array_range_expression ::= constant_expression
| constant_expression : constant_expression
| constant_expression +: constant_expression
| constant_expression -: constant_expression

```

### E.6.3.2 Subroutine calls

```

math_function_call ::= math_function_identifier [ ( list_of_arguments ) ]
list_of_arguments ::= [ constant_expression ] { , [ constant_expression ] }

```

### E.6.3.3 Expressions

```

constant_expression ::= constant_primary
| unary_operator constant_primary
| constant_expression binary_operator constant_expression
| constant_expression ?: constant_expression : constant_expression
| constant_inside_expression

constant_range_expression ::= constant_expression | constant_part_select_range

constant_part_select_range ::= constant_range | constant_indexed_range

constant_range ::= constant_expression : constant_expression

constant_indexed_range ::= constant_expression +: constant_expression
| constant_expression -: constant_expression

constant_inside_expression ::= constant_expression inside { open_range_list }

value_range ::= constant_expression | [ constant_expression : constant_expression ]

```

### E.6.3.4 Primaries

```

constant_primary ::= primary_literal
| parameter_identifier constant_select
| constant_concatenation [ | constant_range_expression | ]
| constant_multiple_concatenation [ | constant_range_expression | ]
| ( constant_expression )
| constant_streaming_expression
| constant_cast
| math_function_call
| constant_assignment_pattern_expression

```

```
primary_literal ::= number | unbased_unsized_literal | string_literal
```

```

constant_cast ::= casting_type '( constant_expression )'

constant_bit_select ::= { [ constant_expression ] }

constant_select ::= constant_bit_select [ [ constant_part_select_range ] ]

```

### E.6.3.5 Operators

```

unary_operator ::= + | - | ! | ~ | & | ~& | || | ~| | ^ | ~^ | ^~

binary_operator ::= + | - | * | / | % | == | != | && | || | ** |
| < | <= | > | >= | & | || | ^ | ~ | ~^ | >> | << | >>> | <<< | -> | >>

```

### E.6.3.6 Numbers

See A.8.7 in IEEE Std 1800-2012.

### E.6.3.7 Strings

```
string_literal ::= " { Any_ASCII_Characters } "
```

## E.6.4 General: Identifiers

```

identifier ::= \i-[:$]][\c-[:]]*
parameter_identifier ::= identifier
math_function_identifier ::= integer_math_function_identifier | real_math_function_identifier
integer_math_function_identifier ::= $clog2
real_math_function_identifier ::= $asin | $ln | $acos | $log10 | $atan | $exp | $atan2 | $sqrt | $hypot | $pow |
$sinh | $floor | $cosh | $ceil | $stanh | $sin | $asinh | $cos | $acosh | $tan | $atanh

```

## E.7 SystemVerilog conversion steps

To be able to verify the IP-XACT Expression Language using a SystemVerilog parser or tool, the IP-XACT Expression Language needs to be converted to the SystemVerilog Expression language.

This can be achieved using the following (simple) steps.

### E.7.1 Convert parameter

- Convert the vector(s) left and right information to SystemVerilog (packed) array indexes.
- Normalize the characters in the name of the parameter to valid SystemVerilog characters by replacing all -, :, and . characters and non US-ASCII characters with a predefined character (or set of characters), e.g., use an underscore (\_) instead.
- Escape all identifiers that could be interpreted as SystemVerilog keywords.
- Convert the array(s) left and right information to SystemVerilog (unpacked) array indexes.
- Convert the value and array values (see [E.7.2](#)).

## E.7.2 Convert expression

Convert all identifiers by normalizing the characters: use the same mechanism as specified by steps [c](#) and [d](#) in [E.7.1](#).

## E.8 SystemVerilog reference

The following subclauses of IEEE Std 1800-2012 have been used to determine the IP-XACT Expression Language functionality:

**6 - Data Types:** the following subclauses should be considered:

- **6.1 - General:** only the parts discussing the type operators, compatibility, and casting.
- **6.2 - Data types and data objects:** should be considered, apart from any distinctions noted in [E.2](#).
- **6.3 - Value Set:** only the subclause about the logical 0 and 1 values ([6.3.1](#)); the subclauses about strength should not be taken into consideration.
- **6.4 - Singular and aggregate types, 6.5 - Nets and variables, 6.6 - Net types, 6.7 - Net declarations, and 6.8 - Variable declarations:** should not be considered.
- **6.9 - Vector declarations:** only bit vectors should be considered. Also the declaration of vectors is handled by an IP-XACT construct and can be ignored.
- **6.10 - Implicit declarations:** can be ignored because identifiers can be created only using the IP-XACT parameter mechanism
- **6.11 - Integer data types:** only **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, and **bit** should be considered; these are 2-state data-types; therefore, all 4-state data types can be ignored.
- **6.12 - Real, shortreal and realtime data types:** only the real data-type should be considered.
- **6.13 - Void data type, 6.14 - Chandle data type, and 6.15 - Class:** are not supported by the IP-XACT Expression Language and should not be considered.
- **6.16 - String data type:** the IP-XACT string data-type functionality has been simplified considerably; only the equality, inequality, concatenation and replication operators should be considered.
- **6.17 - Event data type, 6.18 - User-defined types, 6.19 - Enumerations, and 6.20 - Constants:** cannot be specified using the IP-XACT expression language and should not be considered.
- **6.21 - Scope and lifetime:** is handled by the *IP-XACT XML Format*, which is outside of the IP-XACT Expression Language.
- **6.22 - Type compatibility:** only the parts that discuss the **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **bit**, **shortreal**, and **real** data-types should be considered.
- **6.23 - Type operator:** the type operator is not supported and should not be considered.
- **6.24 - Casting:** only the parts that discuss the **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **bit**, **shortreal**, and **real** data-types should be considered.
- **6.25 - Parameterized data types:** should not be considered.

**7 - Aggregate data types:** only the parts about packed arrays and unpacked arrays should be considered.

- **7.1 - General:** only the part on packed and unpacked arrays should be considered.
- **7.2 - Structures and 7.3 – Unions:** are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.4 - Packed and unpacked arrays:** should be fully considered.
- **7.5 - Dynamic arrays:** are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.6 - Array assignments:** are handled by the *IP-XACT XML Format*; however, the format of the assignment should still be considered.

- **7.7 - Arrays as arguments to subroutines:** subroutines are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.8 - Associative arrays:** are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.9 - Associative array methods:** are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.10 - Queues:** are not supported and should not be considered.
- **7.11 - Array querying functions and 7.12 - Array manipulation methods:** are not supported and should not be considered.

**10 – Assignment statements:** only **10.9 – Assignment patterns** should be considered, in particular **10.9.1**, which clarifies the array assignment patterns.

**11 – Operators and expressions:** the following subclauses should be considered:

- **11.1 - General:** should be considered, apart from the operators and expressions discussed in [E.4](#).
- **11.2 - Overview:** where for the operand subclause only, constant literal numbers, string literals, packed array, and unpacked arrays should be considered.
- **11.3 - Operators:** only the operators identified for the IP-XACT Expression Language should be considered and only on the data-types allowed. The assignment within an expression section can be ignored.
- **11.4 - Operator descriptions:** only Arithmetic operators, Relational operators, Equality operators ( $x$  and  $z$  excluded), Logical operators, Bitwise operators, Reduction operators, Shift operators, Conditional operators, Concatenation, Set membership, and streaming operators should be considered.
- **11.5 - Operands:** should be considered.
- **11.6 - Expression bit lengths:** should be considered for the **byte**, **shortint**, **int**, **longint**, **bit**, **shortreal**, and **real** values.
- **11.7 - Signed expressions:** the **\$signed** and **\$unsigned** system functions are not supported and should be ignored.
- **11.8 - Expression evaluation rules:** should be considered, however the subclauses about evaluating an assignment and handling of  $X$  and  $Z$  values can be ignored.
- **11.9 - Tagged union expressions and member access:** unions are not supported and can be ignored.
- **11.10 - String literal expressions:** are not supported and can be ignored.
- **11.11 - Operator overloading:** is not supported and can be ignored.
- **11.12 - Minimum, typical, and maximum delay expressions:** delay expressions are not supported and can be ignored.
- **11.13 - Let construct:** this construct is not supported and can be ignored.

**20 – Utility system tasks and system functions:** only **20.8 – Math functions** should be considered.



## Annex F

(normative)

### Tight generator interface

IP-XACT generators are tools that are invoked from within a DE to perform an operation required by the user of the DE. For example, generators can be provided to verify the configuration of a subsystem, generate an address map, or write a netlist representation of the subsystem in a target language such as Verilog or SystemC. To perform their various operations, most generators need access to the IP-XACT meta-data describing the subsystem, as currently loaded into the DE. Generators need both read- and write-access to the IP-XACT meta-data. All generators are external applications running in a separate address space from the DE.

The TGI defines how the DE and generator cooperate to achieve the desired end-goal of the user of the DE. The TGI defines the method of communication between the DE and generator, the method for invoking the generator, and the actual application programming interface (API) that can be used to read and write the IP-XACT meta-data stored in the DE. [F.1](#), [F.2](#), and [F.3](#) describe each of these three aspects of the TGI, respectively.

#### F.1 Method of communication

The DE and the generator communicate with each other by sending messages to each other utilizing the SOAP standard. SOAP provides a simple means for sending XML-format messages using HTTP or other transport protocols. The TGI restricts the set of allowed transport protocols to HTTP and a file-based protocol. All generators are required to support HTTP, but support for the file-based protocol is optional. The same rules apply to the DE—it shall support the use of HTTP, but is not required to support the file-based protocol, even though a generator may allow it. The protocols supported by a generator are specified using the **transportMethod** element within the **componentGenerator** element.

The information required to use a particular transport protocol shall be passed to the generator by the DE when it is invoked, as described in [F.2](#). For HTTP, the generator is passed a URL of the form **http://host\_name:port\_number**. All SOAP messages sent to the DE shall be sent using the referenced URL. For the file-based protocol, the generator is passed a URL of the form **file://file\_name**. In this case, all SOAP messages are written to the specified file.

Each DE and generator is responsible for setting itself up to communicate using SOAP with the appropriate transport protocol. For example, a generator written in Tcl might include the Tcl SOAP package to enable SOAP functionality. Once the communication channel is set up, the generator can read and write the IP-XACT meta-data using any legal SOAP message. The set of legal SOAP messages defines the API portion of the TGI (see [F.7](#)).

#### F.2 Generator invocation

All of the information known by the DE about a particular generator comes from an instance of the **componentGenerator** (see [6.13](#)), **abstractorGenerator** (see [8.7](#)), or **generator** (see [9.4](#)) elements. These elements provides the following information:

- a) **name** is the name of the generator as seen within the DE.
- b) **executable** is the URL defining the location of the generator.

- c) **parameters** is a list of name/value pairs defining information to be passed to the generator.
- d) **apiType** indicates the generator type: **TGI** or **none** (no communication).
- e) **transportMethods** show any transport mechanisms supported (in addition to HTTP).
- f) **phase** (not relevant to the TGI).
- g) **vendorExtensions** (not relevant to the TGI).
- h) **group** (not relevant to the TGI).

### F.2.1 Resolving the URL

The URL defining the generator executable shall resolve to one of the following forms:

- **file:path\_to\_executable** (e.g., `file:/usr/jdoe/bin/mygen.pl` or `file:../bin/mygen.pl`) defines the path for invoking the generator on the machine from which the DE was invoked.
- **file://machine\_name/path\_to\_executable** (e.g., `file://server1/tmp/othergen.pl`) defines the path for invoking a generator on the specified machine.
- **http://web\_address:port\_number** (e.g., `http://www.acme.com/generator:1500`) defines the URL of a generator implemented as a Web-based server.

All *file references* are relative to the location of the XML description in which the file reference is contained.

For the file-based generators, the DE shall invoke the generator as a sub-process with a command line built up as:

*executable -url transport\_URL generator\_parameter\_arguments*

The *generator\_parameter\_arguments* are the parameters from the **componentGenerator** element with the user-specified values. Each parameter causes two additional arguments to be passed to the generator with the following format: *-parameter\_name parameter\_value*. The DE needs to create a *transport\_URL* that specifies a protocol supported by the generator as defined by the transport methods within the **componentGenerator**. The DE is also responsible for ensuring any passed parameters can be interpreted correctly. This URL is to be used in the generator to set up the SOAP communication channel.

For Web-based generators, the DE shall send a message to the address and port defined as the executable. The format of this message is

**url=transport\_URL&generator\_parameter\_arguments**

In this case, the generator parameters are formatted using the standard HTTP parameter passing syntax. The specified transport URL shall be used by the generator for any return messages to the DE.

The invocation syntax described above applies only to generators with an API type of **TGI**. Generators with an API type of **none** are invoked as described above, excluding the **transport\_URL** argument.

### F.2.2 Example

This example shows file-based and Web-based **componentGenerator** elements.

```
<ipxact:componentGenerator>
  <ipxact:name>myGenerator</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:parameters>
    <ipxact:parameter resolve="user">
```

```

<ipxact:name>param1</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:value>default1</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:name>param2</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:value>fixedValue</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
</ipxact:parameters>
<ipxact:apiType>TGI_2014_BASE</ipxact:apiType>
<ipxact:transportMethods>
<ipxact:transportMethod>file</ipxact:transportMethod>
</ipxact:transportMethods>
<ipxact:generatorExe>../bin/myGenerator.pl</ipxact:generatorExe>
</ipxact:componentGenerator>
```

produces the following output:

```
path_to_XML/..../bin/myGenerator -url http://host:port -param1 default1
-param2 fixedValue
```

Whereas:

```

<ipxact:componentGenerator>
<ipxact:name>myWebGenerator</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:parameters>
<ipxact:parameter resolve="user">
<ipxact:name>param1</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:value>default1</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:name>param2</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:value>fixedValue</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
</ipxact:parameters>
<ipxact:apiType>TGI_2014_BASE</ipxact:apiType>
<ipxact:generatorExe>http://www.acme.com:1500</ipxact:generatorExe>
</ipxact:componentGenerator>
```

produces the following output:

```
http://www.acme.com:1500?url=http%3a%2f%2fhost%3aport&param1=default1
&param2=fixedValue
```

### F.3 TGI API

The TGI API defines the set of legal SOAP messages that can be sent from a generator to a DE, along with the format of the responses the generator can expect from a given request (message) to the DE. The API

shall provide the means of getting and setting values within the IP-XACT design currently represented in the DE. The API commands can be classified as shown in [Table F.1](#).

**Table F.1—TGI API classifications**

Category	Description	Example
<b>Get</b>	Commands that get attribute or element values. These commands are available for getting all information from the design and component schemas. If the attribute or element does not exist, this may return a default value, an empty string, or an empty array.	Get port width.
<b>Set</b>	Commands that set element values. These commands are available to set each element for which the <b>resolve</b> attribute is legal. Setting the value of the element fails unless the resolve value is <b>user</b> or <b>generator</b> . Set routines return a Boolean value where a <i>true</i> return code implies a successful operation. If <b>false</b> is returned, the SOAP fault code shall provide additional information detailing the failure.	Get parameter value.
<b>Traversal</b>	Commands that return a list of elements, which can then be traversed for further manipulation.	Get components in a design.
<b>Administrative</b>	Commands that do not deal directly with the IP-XACT meta-data.	Terminate communication.

The complete set of API commands is defined using WSDL so that it can be defined in a language-independent format.

### F.3.1 TGI fault codes

The fault codes for TGI failures are as follows:

- 1 - Unknown (undefined) error
- 2 - Illegal element ID
- 3 - Illegal value(s)
- 4 - Element is not modifiable (incompatible **resolve** value)
- 5 - Operation not supported by the DE
- 6 - Operation not supported in this version of the schema
- 7 - Operation failed

### F.3.2 Administrative commands

There are three administrative commands defined in the API.

- a) **Init** is the required first message from the generator to the DE. It tells the DE that the generator has properly connected via SOAP.
  - i) **Input**
    - i) **apiVersion** of type *string*—Indicates the API version with which the generator is defined to work.
    - ii) **failureMode** of type **apiFailureMode**—Compatibility failure mode

**fail** indicates the DE shall return an error on the `init` call if its API version does not match the one passed to the `init` call;

**error** indicates the DE shall return an error each time a potentially incompatible API call is made;

**warning** indicates the DE shall increment a warning count each time a potentially incompatible API call is made.

- iii) **message** of type `string`—Message that the DE may display to the user.

2) Returns: **status** of type `boolean`.

- b) **End** is the required last message from the generator to the DE. It tells the DE it is okay to stop listening for messages from the generator. This includes a generator return status, although the generator is not strictly required to terminate after sending the message.
- c) **Message** indicates some form of generator status to pass to the user.

## F.4 IDs and configurable values

The `handles` in TGI are classified as ***instanceIDs*** and ***IDs***. The ***instanceIDs*** reference configured entities while the ***IDs*** reference unconfigured entities. The following TGI calls show the difference between ***instanceID*** and ***ID*** explicitly for top-level elements and configurable elements:

***instanceID*** = `abstractionDefInstanceID` | `busDefInstanceID` | `componentInstanceID` |  
`abstractorInstanceID` | `designInstanceID` | `designConfigurationInstanceID`

***ID*** = `abstractionDefID` | `busDefID` | `componentID` | `abstractorID` | `designID` | `designConfigurationID` |  
`generatorChainID`

For each ***instanceID***, the `getUnconfiguredID(instanceID)` can be called to retrieve the ***ID***. For the calls that retrieve information (get calls), it is presumed the call on an ***instanceID*** also returns ***instanceIDs***, e.g., `getComponentBusInterfaceIDs(componentInstanceID)` returns `busInterfaceInstanceIDs` (configured), whereas `getComponentBusInterfaceIDs(componentID)` returns `busInterfaceIDs` (unconfigured). For clarity, the distinction between ***instanceIDs*** and ***IDs*** has not been made for non-top-level elements. Calls that modify information (edit or set calls), operate only on ***IDs*** (unconfigured), e.g., `addComponentBusInterface(componentID)` returns a new unconfigured `busInterfaceID`, whereas the call `addComponentBusInterface(componentInstanceID)` fails.

Handles returned by TGI commands are persistent for the duration of a single generator invocation provided the element being referenced is not removed. For example, if a handle represents an address space element, that handle can be utilized as often as is needed during a single generator invocation, unless the component containing the address map is removed via `removeDesignComponentInstance()`. Furthermore, persistent TGI handles to the same object are identical for the duration of the generator invocation. This enables generators to identify objects by means of their handles.

## F.5 TGI messages

The TGI is a set of messages used to query and modify an IP-XACT-compliant database. The TGI messages are composed of a SOAP envelope and a TGI body. The TGI services are specified in the `TGI.wsdl` file. Each TGI body message is an XML element whose name is the name of the TGI command and whose elements are the arguments of the TGI command. All TGI messages apply to IP-XACT XML elements, identified by an ID, i.e., a TGI server-defined constant uniquely identifying an IP-XACT XML element throughout a TGI server session.

## F.6 Vendor attributes

One case of special interest to a user may be the location of vendor attributes in the schema. These attributes are allowed in more places in the schema than the TGI allows a user to retrieve them; this goes back to the concept where one function uses many different ID types to return some data. Regardless, vendor attributes can be accessed only if the containing element has an ID.

## F.7 TGI calls

This subclause details the TGI API calls. [F.7.1](#) is an index of the various categories, and [F.7.2](#) is an index for the specific messages within each of those categories. The actual API breakouts start with subclause [F.7.3](#).

### F.7.1 Category index

Base category name	Extended category name
<a href="#">(BASE)</a>	<a href="#">(EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Abstraction definition operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Abstraction definition operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Abstractor operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Abstractor operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Abstractor view operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Abstractor view operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Access handle operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Access handle operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Address space operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Address space operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Array operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Array operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Assertion operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">BitsInLau get operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">BitsInLau get operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Bridge operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Bridge operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Bus definition operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Bus definition operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Businterface operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Businterface operations (EXTENDED)</a>
	<a href="#">Catalog operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Channel operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Channel operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Choice operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Choice operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Component instantiation operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Component instantiation operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Component operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Component operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Configurable element operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">Constraint set operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Constraint set operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Cpu operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Cpu operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Design configuration instantiation operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Design configuration instantiation operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Design configuration operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Design configuration operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Design instantiation operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">Design operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Design operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Driver operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Driver operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Element attribute operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Element attribute operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Field operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">File builder operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">File builder operations (EXTENDED)</a>

Base category name	Extended category name
<a href="#">File set operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">File set operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Generator chain operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Generator chain operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Generator operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Generator operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Global operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">Indirect interface operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Indirect interface operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Memory map operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Memory map operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Module and type parameter operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Module and type parameter operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Parameter operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">Port operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Port operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Present operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">Register file operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Register file operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Register operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Register operations (EXTENDED)</a>
	<a href="#">Remap state operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Slice operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Slice operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Typedef operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Typedef operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Vector operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Vector operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Vendor extensions operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">View operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">View operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Whitebox operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Whitebox operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">Whitebox ref operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">Whitebox ref operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">name group operations (BASE)</a>	<a href="#">name group operations (EXTENDED)</a>
<a href="#">top element operations (BASE)</a>	
<a href="#">All ID types</a>	

## F.7.2 Message indexes

### F.7.2.1 (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldBitOffset</a>	Returns the bitOffset in the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldResetIDs</a>	Returns the resetIDs in the given regField element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getResetTypeRef</a>	Returns the resetTypeRef for the given reset element
<a href="#">getResetValue</a>	Returns the value for the given reset element
<a href="#">getResetValueExpression</a>	Returns the value expression for the given reset element
<a href="#">getResetMask</a>	Returns the mask for the given reset element
<a href="#">getResetMaskExpression</a>	Returns the mask expression for the given reset element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldTypeIdentifier</a>	Returns the typeIdentifier for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldBitWidth</a>	Returns the bitWidth for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldVolatility</a>	Returns the volatility or the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldAccess</a>	Returns the access or the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldEnumeratedValueIDs</a>	Returns the enumreatedValueIDs for the given regField element
<a href="#">getEnumeratedValueUsage</a>	Returns the usage for the given enumeratedValue element
<a href="#">getEnumeratedValueValue</a>	Returns the value for the given enumeratedValue element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValue</a>	Returns the modifiedWriteValue for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValueModify</a>	Returns the modify attribute value of modifiedWriteValue for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintWriteAsRead</a>	Returns the writeAsRead for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintUseEnumeratedValues</a>	Returns the useEnumeratedValues for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintMinMax</a>	Returns the min and max for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldReadAction</a>	Returns the readAction for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldReadActionModify</a>	Returns the modify attribute value of readAction for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldTestable</a>	Returns the testAble for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldTestContraint</a>	Returns the testConstraint for the given regField element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldReserved</a>	Returns the reserved for the given regField element

### F.7.2.2 (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addRegisterFieldReset</a>	Add a reset with the given type and value to the given regField element
<a href="#">removeRegisterFieldReset</a>	Remove the given reset element

Name	Description
<a href="#">setResetMask</a>	Set the mask with the given value for the given reset element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldID</a>	Set the FieldID attribute to the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldTypeIdentifier</a>	Set the typeIdentifier to the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldVolatility</a>	Set the volatility to the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldAccess</a>	Set the access to the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">addRegisterFieldEnumeratedValue</a>	Add a enumeratedValue with the given name and value to the given regField element
<a href="#">removeRegisterFieldEnumeratedValue</a>	Remove the given enumeratedValue element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldEnumeratedValueUsage</a>	Set the usage with the given value for the given enumeratedValue element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValue</a>	Set the modifiedWriteValue with the given type for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValueModify</a>	Set the modify attribute of modifiedWriteValue with the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraint</a>	Set the writeValueConstraint elements writeAsRead, useEnumeratedValues, min, and max with the given values for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldReadAction</a>	Set the readAction with the given type for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldReadActionModify</a>	Set the modify attribute of readAction with the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldTestable</a>	Set the testable with the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldTestConstraint</a>	Set the testConstraint with the given value for the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterFieldReserved</a>	Set the reserved with the given value for the given regField element

### F.7.2.3 Abstraction definition operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefinitionBusType</a>	Returns busType for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefinitionExtends</a>	Returns extends for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefinitionPortIDs</a>	Returns abstractionDefPortIDs for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortLogicalName</a>	Returns logicalName for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortStyle</a>	Returns portStyle for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortIsAddress</a>	Returns isAddress for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortIsData</a>	Returns isData for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortIsClock</a>	Returns isClock for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortIsReset</a>	Returns isReset for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeIDs</a>	Returns abstractionDefPortModeIDs for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeGroup</a>	Returns group for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModePresence</a>	Returns presence for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeWidth</a>	Returns width for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeDirection</a>	Returns direction for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs</a>	Returns abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeDriveConstraintIDs</a>	Returns driveConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeLoadConstraintIDs</a>	Returns loadConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeTimingConstraintIDs</a>	Returns timingConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeConstraintIDs</a>	Returns mirrored abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortDefaultValue</a>	Returns defaultValue for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriver</a>	Returns requiresDriver for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriverType</a>	Returns requiresDriverType for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeInitiative</a>	Returns initiative for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeKind</a>	Returns kind for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeKindCustom</a>	Returns kind custom for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeBusWidth</a>	Returns busWidth for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolType</a>	Returns protocolType for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolTypeCustom</a>	Returns protocolType custom for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadName</a>	Returns payloadName for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadType</a>	Returns payloadType for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtension</a>	Returns payloadExtension for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory</a>	Returns payloadExtension mandatory for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.2.4 Abstraction definition operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">createAbstractionDefinition</a>	Create a new abstractionDef with the given VLVN, busDefVLVN, logicalName and type and returns its abstractionDefID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefinitionExtends</a>	Set extends with the given value for the given abstractionDef element
<a href="#">addAbstractionDefinitionPort</a>	Add abstractionDefPort with the given logicalName and type to the given abstractionDef element
<a href="#">removeAbstractionDefinitionPort</a>	Remove the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortAddress</a>	Set isAddress with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortData</a>	Set isData with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortClock</a>	Set isClock with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortReset</a>	Set isReset with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortMode</u></a>	Add abstractionDefPortMode with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeGroup</u></a>	Set group with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModePresence</u></a>	Set presence with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeWidth</u></a>	Set width with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeDirection</u></a>	Set direction with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortModeDriveConstraint</u></a>	Add driveConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortModeLoadConstraint</u></a>	Add loadConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortModeTimingConstraint</u></a>	Add timingConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeDriveConstraint</u></a>	Add mirrored driveConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeLoadConstraint</u></a>	Add mirrored loadConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeTimingConstraint</u></a>	Add mirrored timingConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortDefaultValue</u></a>	Set defaultValue with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriver</u></a>	Set requiresDriver with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriverType</u></a>	Set driverType attribute of requiresDriver with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeInitiative</u></a>	Set initiative with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeKind</u></a>	Set kind with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeKindCustom</u></a>	Set custom attribute of kind with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeBusWidth</u></a>	Set busWidth with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolType</u></a>	Set protocolType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#"><u>setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolTypeCustom</u></a>	Set custom attribute of protocolType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

Name	Description
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadName</a>	Set payloadName with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadType</a>	Set payloadType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtension</a>	Set payloadExtension with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element
<a href="#">setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory</a>	Set mandatory attribute of payloadExtension with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.2.5 Abstractor operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractorAbstractorMode</a>	Returns the abstractorMode for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorBusType</a>	Returns the busType for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorAbstractorInterfaceIDs</a>	Returns the abstractorInterfaceIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionTypeID</a> s	Returns the abstractionTypeID for the given abstractorBusInterface element
<a href="#">getAbstractorViewIDs</a>	Returns the abstractorViewIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorComponentInstantiationsID</a>	Returns the componentInstantiationIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorPortIDs</a>	Returns the portIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorGeneratorIDs</a>	Returns the generatorIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorChoiceIDs</a>	Returns the choiceIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getAbstractorFileSetIDs</a>	Returns the fileSetIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

**F.7.2.6 Abstractor operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>createAbstractor</u></a>	Create a new abstractor with the given VLNV and returns its abstractorID; fails and returns null if VLNV already exists
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionType</u></a>	Add an abstractionType with the given abstractionRef for the given abstractorBusInterface element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionType</u></a>	Remove the given abstractionType element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorView</u></a>	Add an abstractorView with the given name and envIdentifier for the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorView</u></a>	Remove the given abstractorView element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorComponentInstantiation</u></a>	Add a componentInstantiation with the given name for the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorComponentInstantiation</u></a>	Remove the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorPort</u></a>	Add a port with the given name, type, and directionOrInitiative for the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorPort</u></a>	Remove the given port element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorGenerator</u></a>	Add a generator with the given name and path to the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorGenerator</u></a>	Remove the given generator element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorChoice</u></a>	Add a choice with the given name and enumerations to the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorChoice</u></a>	Remove the given choice element
<a href="#"><u>addAbstractorFileSet</u></a>	Add a fileSet with the given name to the given abstractor element
<a href="#"><u>removeAbstractorFileSet</u></a>	Remove the given fileSet element

**F.7.2.7 Abstractor view operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractorViewEnvIdentifier</u></a>	Returns envIdentifier for the given abstractorView element
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRef</u></a>	Returns componentInstantiationRef for the given abstractorView element
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRefID</u></a>	Returns componentInstantiationID for the given abstractorView element

#### F.7.2.8 Abstractor view operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRef</a>	Set componentInstantiationRef for the given abstractorView element

#### F.7.2.9 Access handle operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAccessHandleForce</a>	Returns the value of attribute force for a given accessHandle element
<a href="#">getAccessHandleViewIDs</a>	Returns the viewIDs for a given accessHandle element
<a href="#">getAccessHandleIndices</a>	Returns the indices for a given accessHandle element
<a href="#">getAccessHandleSliceIDs</a>	Returns the sliceIDs for a given accessHandle element

#### F.7.2.10 Access handle operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setAccessHandleForce</a>	Set the given value for the attribute force for the given accessHandle element
<a href="#">addAccessHandleViewName</a>	Add a viewRef with the given name to the given accessHandle element
<a href="#">removeAccessHandleViewName</a>	Remove the viewRef with the given name from the given accessHandle element
<a href="#">addAccessHandleSlice</a>	Add a slice with the given pathSegmentNames and the given indices to the given accessHandle element
<a href="#">removeAccessHandleSlice</a>	Remove the given slice

#### F.7.2.11 Address space operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceRange</a>	Returns the range of the given addressSpace element
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceWidth</a>	Returns the width of the given addressSpace element
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceSegmentIDs</a>	Returns the segmentIDs of the given addressSpace element
<a href="#">getSegmentAddressOffset</a>	Returns the addressOffset of the given segment element
<a href="#">getSegmentRange</a>	Returns the range of the given segment element
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceAddressUnitBits</a>	Returns the addressUnitBits for the given addressSpace element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceExecutableImageIDs</a>	Returns the executableImageIDs for the given addressSpace element
<a href="#">getExecutableImageFileBuilderIDs</a>	Returns the fileBuilderIDs for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderFileType</a>	Returns the fileType for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderCommand</a>	Returns the command for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderFlags</a>	Returns the flags for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags</a>	Returns the replaceDefaultFlags for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getExecutableImageLinker</a>	Returns the linker for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">getExecutableImageLinkerFlags</a>	Returns the linkerFlags for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">getExecutableImageLinkerCommandFileID</a>	Returns the linkerCommandFileID for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">getLinkerCommandFileName</a>	Returns the name for a given linkerCommandFile
<a href="#">getLinkerCommandFileLineSwitch</a>	Returns the commandLineSwitch for a given linkerCommandFile
<a href="#">getLinkerCommandFileEnable</a>	Returns the enable for a given linkerCommandFile
<a href="#">getLinkerCommandGeneratorIDs</a>	Returns the generatorIDs for a given linkerCommandFile
<a href="#">getAddressSpaceLocalMemoryMapID</a>	Returns the localMemoryMapID for a given addressSpace element
<a href="#">getLocalMemoryMapAddressBlockIDs</a>	Returns the localAddressBlockIDs for a given localMemory map element
<a href="#">getLocalMemoryMapBankIDs</a>	Returns the localBankIDs for a given localMemory map element

#### F.7.2.12 Address space operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addAddressSpaceSegment</a>	Add a segment with the given name, addressOffset, and range to the given addressSpace element
<a href="#">removeAddressSpaceSegment</a>	Remove the given segment element
<a href="#">setAddressSpaceAddressUnitBits</a>	Set the addressUnitBits with the given value to the given address space element
<a href="#">addAddressSpaceExecutableImage</a>	Add an executableImage with the given name to the given address space element
<a href="#">removeAddressSpaceExecutableImage</a>	Remove the given executableImage element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addExecutableImageFileBuilderID</a>	Add a fileBuilder with the given fileType and command to the given executableImage element
<a href="#">removeExecutableImageFileBuilderID</a>	Remove the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">setFileBuilderFlags</a>	Set the flags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">setFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags</a>	Set the replaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">setExecutableImageLinker</a>	Set the linker with the given value for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">setExecutableImageLinkerFlags</a>	Set the linkerFlags with the given value for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">addExecutableImageLinkerCommandFile</a>	Set the linkerCommandFile with the given value for the given executableImage element
<a href="#">removeExecutableImageLinkerCommandFile</a>	Remove the given linkerCommandFile element
<a href="#">addLinkerCommandFileGenerator</a>	Set the generatorRef with the given value for the given linkerCommandFile element
<a href="#">removeLinkerCommandFileGenerator</a>	Remove the given generator element
<a href="#">addLocalMemoryMapAddressBlock</a>	Add an addressBlock with the given name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">removeLocalMemoryMapAddressBlock</a>	Remove the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">addLocalMemoryMapBank</a>	Add a localBank with the given name and baseAddress to the given localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">removeLocalMemoryMapBank</a>	Remove the given localBank element

#### F.7.2.13 Array operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getArrayIDs</a>	Returns arrayIDs of the given element
<a href="#">getArrayRange</a>	Returns range of the given array element
<a href="#">getArrayRangeExpression</a>	Returns the range expressions of the given array element

#### F.7.2.14 Array operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addArray</a>	Add an array to the given element
<a href="#">removeArray</a>	Remove the given array

**F.7.2.15 Assertion operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAssertionIDs</a>	Returns assertionIDs of the given element
<a href="#">getAssertionValue</a>	Returns value of the given assertion element
<a href="#">getAssertionValueExpression</a>	Returns expression of the given assertion element
<a href="#">addAssertion</a>	Add an assertion with the given name and given value to the given element
<a href="#">removeAssertion</a>	Remove the given assertion
<a href="#">setAssertionValue</a>	Set the value of the given assertion

**F.7.2.16 BitsInLau get operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getBitsInLauValue</a>	Returns bitsInLau value in the given element
<a href="#">getBitsInLauValueExpression</a>	Returns bitsInLau expression in the given element

**F.7.2.17 BitsInLau get operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addBitsInLauValue</a>	Add the given bitsInLau expression to the given element
<a href="#">removeBitsInLauValue</a>	Remove the bitsInLau element from the given element
<a href="#">setBitsInLauValue</a>	Set the given bitsInLau expression in the given element

**F.7.2.18 Bridge operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getBridgeMasterID</a>	Returns the busInterfaceID of the masterRef attribute in the given bridge element

**F.7.2.19 Bridge operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setBridgeMasterID</a>	Set the value of the masterRef attribute for the given busInterfaceID in the given bridge element

**F.7.2.20 Bus definition operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionDirectConnection</a>	Returns directConnection for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionBroadcast</a>	Returns broadcast for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionIsAddressable</a>	Returns isAddressable for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionExtends</a>	Returns extends for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionMaxMasters</a>	Returns maxMasters for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionMaxSlaves</a>	Returns maxSlaves for a given busDef or busDefInstance element
<a href="#">getBusDefinitionSystemGroupNames</a>	Returns systemGroupNames for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.2.21 Bus definition operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">createBusDefinition</a>	Create a new busDef with the given VLN, directConnection, and isAddressable and returns its busDefID; fails and returns null if VLN already exists
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionDirectConnection</a>	Set directionConnection with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionBroadcast</a>	Set broadcast with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionIsAddressable</a>	Set isAddressable with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionExtends</a>	Set extends with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionMaxMasters</a>	Set maxMasters with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionMaxSlaves</a>	Set maxSlaves with the given value for the given busDef element
<a href="#">setBusDefinitionSystemGroupNames</a>	Set systemGroupNames with the given value for the given busDef element

**F.7.2.22 Businterface operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceBusInstanceID</u></a>	Returns the busDefInstanceID for a given busInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceAbstractionTypeIDs</u></a>	Returns the abstractionTypeIDs for a given busInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractionTypeViewRefs</u></a>	Returns the viewRefs for a given abstractionType element
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractionTypeAbstractionInstanceID</u></a>	Returns the abstractionDefInstanceID for a given abstractionType element
<a href="#"><u>getAbstractionTypePortMapIDs</u></a>	Returns the portMapIDs for a given abstractionType element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapLogicalPortID</u></a>	Returns the logicalPortID for a given portMap element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapPhysicalPortID</u></a>	Returns the physicalPortID for a given portMap element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapRange</u></a>	Returns the range for a given logicalPort or physicalPort element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapIndices</u></a>	Returns the indices for a given physicalPort element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapLogicalTieOff</u></a>	Returns the logicalTieOff for a given portMap element
<a href="#"><u>getPortMapIsInformative</u></a>	Returns the isInformative for a given portMap element
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceInterfaceMode</u></a>	Returns the interfaceMode for a given busInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceMasterAddressSpaceID</u></a>	Returns the addressSpaceID for a given busInterface element (master only)
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceMasterBaseAddress</u></a>	Returns the baseAddress for a given busInterface element (master only)
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceSlaveMemoryMapID</u></a>	Returns the memoryMapID for a given busInterface element (slave only)
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceSlaveBridgeIDs</u></a>	Returns the bridgeIDs for a given busInterface element (slave only)
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroupIDs</u></a>	Returns the fileSetGroupIDs for a given busInterface element (slave only)
<a href="#"><u>getFileSetGroupName</u></a>	Returns the name for a given fileSetGroup element
<a href="#"><u>getFileSetGroupFileSetIDs</u></a>	Returns the fileSetIDs for a given fileSetGroup element
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceGroupName</u></a>	Returns the groupName for a given busInterface element (system, mirroredSystem, and group only)
<a href="#"><u>getBusInterfaceMirroredSlaveRemapAddressIDs</u></a>	Returns the remapAddressIDs for a given busInterface element (mirroredSlave only)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getBusInterfaceMirroredSlaveRange</a>	Returns the ranges for a given busInterface element (mirroredSlave only)
<a href="#">getBusInterfaceMonitorInterfaceMode</a>	Returns the monitor interfaceMode attribute value for a given busInterface element (monitor only)
<a href="#">getBusInterfaceConnectionRequired</a>	Returns the connectionRequired for a given busInterface element
<a href="#">getBusInterfaceBitSteering</a>	Returns the bitSteering for a given busInterface element
<a href="#">getBusInterfaceEndianness</a>	Returns the endianness for a given busInterface element

#### F.7.2.23 Businterface operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addBusInterfaceAbstractionType</a>	Add an abstractionType with the given abstractionRef to the given busInterface element
<a href="#">removeBusInterfaceAbstractionType</a>	Remove the given abstractionType element
<a href="#">addAbstractionTypeViewRef</a>	Add a viewRef with the given name to the given abstractionType element
<a href="#">removeAbstractionTypeViewRef</a>	Remove the viewRef element with the given viewName
<a href="#">addAbstractionTypePortMap</a>	Add a portMap with the given name, logicalPortName, and physicalPortNameOrTieValue to the given abstractionType
<a href="#">removeAbstractionTypePortMap</a>	Remove the given portMap element
<a href="#">setPortMapRange</a>	Set the range of the given logicalPort or physicalPort element
<a href="#">setPortMapIndices</a>	Set the indices for the given physicalPort element
<a href="#">setPortMapIsInformative</a>	Set the isInformative for the given portMap element
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceMasterAddressSpaceName</a>	Set the addressSpaceRef with the given name for the given busInterface element (master only)
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceMasterBaseAddress</a>	Set the baseAddress with the given expression for the given busInterface element (master only)
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceSlaveMemoryMapName</a>	Set the memoryMapRef with the given name for the given busInterface element (slave only)
<a href="#">addBusInterfaceSlaveBridge</a>	Add a transparentBridge with the given name for the given busInterface (slave only)
<a href="#">removeBusInterfaceSlaveBridge</a>	Remove the given bridge element
<a href="#">addBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroup</a>	Add a fileSetGroup with the given name and fileSetRefs to the given busInterface element (slave only)

Name	Description
<a href="#">removeBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroup</a>	Remove the given fileSetGroup
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceGroupName</a>	Set the group with the given name for the given busInterface element (system, mirroredSystem, and group only)
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceConnectionRequired</a>	Set connectionRequired with the given value for the given busInterface element
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceBitSteering</a>	Set bitSteering with the given value for the given busInterface element
<a href="#">setBusInterfaceEndianness</a>	Set endianness with the given value for the given busInterface element

#### F.7.2.24 Catalog operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns catalogs IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getIpxactFileVNV</a>	Returns VNV for the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#">getIpxactFileName</a>	Returns name for the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#">getCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns busDefinitions IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns abstractionDefinitions IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns components IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns abstractors IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns designs IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns designConfigurations IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">getCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles</a>	Returns generatorChains IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element
<a href="#">createCatalog</a>	Create a new catalog and returns its catalogID; fails and returns null if VNV already exists
<a href="#">addCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles</a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VNV and name to catalogs in the given catalog element
<a href="#">removeCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles</a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#">addCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles</a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VNV and name to busDefinitions in the given catalog element

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to abstractionDefinitions in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to components in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to abstractors in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to designs in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to designConfigurations in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element
<a href="#"><u>addCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Add ipxactFile with the given VLNV and name to generatorChains in the given catalog element
<a href="#"><u>removeCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles</u></a>	Remove the given ipxactFile element

#### F.7.2.25 Channel operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>getChannelBusInterfaceIDs</u></a>	Returns the busInterfaceIDs for the given channel element

#### F.7.2.26 Channel operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>addChannelBusInterface</u></a>	Add a busInterfaceRef with the given name to the given channel element
<a href="#"><u>removeChannelBusInterface</u></a>	Remove the busInterfaceRef with the given name from the given channel element

**F.7.2.27 Choice operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getChoiceEnumerationIDs</a>	Returns choiceEnumerationIDs for the given choice element
<a href="#">getEnumerationText</a>	Returns text for the given choice element
<a href="#">getEnumerationHelp</a>	Returns help for the given choice element

**F.7.2.28 Choice operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addChoiceEnumeration</a>	Add enumeration with the given name to the given choice element
<a href="#">removeChoiceEnumeration</a>	Remove the given choiceEnumeration
<a href="#">setEnumerationText</a>	Set text with the given value for the given choiceEnumeration element
<a href="#">setEnumerationHelp</a>	Set help with the given value for the given choiceEnumeration element

**F.7.2.29 Component instantiation operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationIsVirtual</a>	Returns isVirtual for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationLanguage</a>	Returns language for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationLibraryName</a>	Returns libraryName for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationPackageName</a>	Returns packageName for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationModuleName</a>	Returns moduleName for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationArchitectureName</a>	Returns architectureName for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationConfigurationName</a>	Returns configurationName for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilderIDs</a>	Returns defaultFileBuilderIDs for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationFileSetRefIDs</a>	Returns fileSetRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getFileSetRefLocalName</a>	Returns localName for the given fileSetRef element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRefIDs</a>	Returns constraintSetRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">getConstraintSetRefLocalName</a>	Returns localName for the given constraintSetRefRef element
<a href="#">getComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRefIDs</a>	Returns whiteboxElementRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

#### F.7.2.30 Component instantiation operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationIsVirtual</a>	Set isVirtual with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationLanguage</a>	Set language with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationLibraryName</a>	Set libraryName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationPackageName</a>	Set packageName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationModuleName</a>	Set moduleName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationArchitectureName</a>	Set architectureName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">setComponentInstantiationConfigurationName</a>	Set configurationName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">addComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilder</a>	Add defaultFileBuilder with the given fileType to the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">removeComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilder</a>	Remove the given defaultFileBuilder element
<a href="#">addComponentInstantiationFileSetRef</a>	Add fileSetRef with the given localName to the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">removeComponentInstantiationFileSetRef</a>	Remove the given fileSetRef element
<a href="#">addComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRef</a>	Add constraintRefSet with the given localName to the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">removeComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRef</a>	Remove the given constraintSetRef element
<a href="#">addComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRef</a>	Add whiteboxElementRef with the given name, pathSegmentName, and indices to the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#">removeComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRef</a>	Remove the given whiteboxElementRef element

**F.7.2.31 Component operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>getComponentBusInterfaceIDs</u></a>	Returns the busInterfaceIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentIndirectInterfaceIDs</u></a>	Returns the indirectInterfaceIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentChannelIDs</u></a>	Returns the channelIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentRemapStateIDs</u></a>	Returns the remapStateIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentAddressSpaceIDs</u></a>	Returns the addressSpaceIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentMemoryMapIDs</u></a>	Returns the memoryMapIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentViewIDs</u></a>	Returns the viewIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentSelectedViewIDs</u></a>	Returns the selected viewIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentComponentInstantiationIDs</u></a>	Returns the componentInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentDesignInstantiationIDs</u></a>	Returns the designInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiationIDs</u></a>	Returns the designConfigurationInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentPortIDs</u></a>	Returns the portIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentGeneratorIDs</u></a>	Returns the generatorIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentChoiceIDs</u></a>	Returns the choiceIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentFileSetIDs</u></a>	Returns the fileSetIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentWhiteboxElementIDs</u></a>	Returns the whiteboxElementIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentCpuIDs</u></a>	Returns the cpuIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentOtherClockDriverIDs</u></a>	Returns the clockDriverIDs for a given component or component instance element
<a href="#"><u>getComponentResetTypeID</u></a>	Returns the resetTypeID for a given component or component instance element

**F.7.2.32 Component operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>createComponent</u></a>	Create a new component with the given VLNV and returns its componentID; fails and returns null if VLNV already exists
<a href="#"><u>addComponentBusInterface</u></a>	Add a busInterface with the given name, busType, interfaceMode, and group to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentBusInterface</u></a>	Remove the given busInterface element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentIndirectInterface</u></a>	Add an indirectInterface with the given name, indirectAddress, indirectData, memoryMapRef or busInterfaceRef to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentIndirectInterface</u></a>	Remove the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentChannel</u></a>	Add a channel with the given name and busInterfaceRefs to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentChannel</u></a>	Remove the given channel element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentRemapState</u></a>	Add a remapState with the given name to the given component
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentRemapState</u></a>	Remove the given remapState element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentAddressSpace</u></a>	Add an addressSpace with the given name, range, and width to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentAddressSpace</u></a>	Remove the given addressSpace element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentMemoryMap</u></a>	Add a memoryMap with the given name to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentMemoryMap</u></a>	Remove the given memoryMap element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentView</u></a>	Add a view with the given name and envIdentifier to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentView</u></a>	Remove the given view element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentComponentInstantiation</u></a>	Add a componentInstantiation with the given name to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentComponentInstantiation</u></a>	Remove the given componentInstantiation element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentDesignInstantiation</u></a>	Add a designInstantiation with the given name and designRef to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentDesignInstantiation</u></a>	Remove the given designInstantiation element
<a href="#"><u>addComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiation</u></a>	Add a designConfigurationInstantiation with the given name and designConfigurationRef to the given component element
<a href="#"><u>removeComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiation</u></a>	Remove the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addComponentPort</a>	Add a port with the given name, type, and directionOrInitiative to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentPort</a>	Remove the given port element
<a href="#">addComponentGenerator</a>	Add a generator with the given name and path to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentGenerator</a>	Remove the given generator element
<a href="#">addComponentChoice</a>	Add a choice with the given name and enumerations to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentChoice</a>	Remove the given choice element
<a href="#">addComponentFileSet</a>	Add a fileSet with the given name to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentFileSet</a>	Remove the given fileSet element
<a href="#">addComponentWhiteboxElement</a>	Add a whiteboxElement with the given name and type to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentWhiteboxElement</a>	Remove the given whiteboxElement element
<a href="#">addComponentCpu</a>	Add a cpu with the given name to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentCpu</a>	Remove the given cpu element
<a href="#">addComponentOtherClockDriver</a>	Add a clockDriver with the given name, period, offset, value, and duration to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentOtherClockDriver</a>	Remove the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">addComponentResetType</a>	Add a resetType with the given name to the given component element
<a href="#">removeComponentResetType</a>	Remove the given resetType element

#### F.7.2.33 Configurable element operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementIDs</a>	Returns all configurableElementIDs of the given unconfigured element
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueExpression</a>	Returns the value of a given configurable element (default value)
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueExpression</a>	Returns the expression of a given configurable element (default expression)
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueIDs</a>	Returns all configurableElementValueIDs of the given configured element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueValue</a>	Returns the value of a given configurable element value (actual value)
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueValueExpression</a>	Returns the expression of a given configurable element value (actual expression)
<a href="#">getConfigurableElementValueReferenceID</a>	Returns the referenceID of a given configurable element value
<a href="#">getUnconfiguredID</a>	Returns the unconfiguredID of a given configured element
<a href="#">setConfigurableElementValue</a>	Set the value of a given configurable element (default value)
<a href="#">addConfigurableElementValue</a>	Add a configurable element value with the given expression to the given configured element and the given referenceID
<a href="#">removeConfigurableElementValue</a>	Remove the given configurable element value
<a href="#">setConfigurableElementValueValue</a>	Set the given expression as value for the given configurable element value
<a href="#">setConfigurableElementValueReferenceID</a>	Set the given referenceID for the given configurable element value

#### F.7.2.34 Constraint set operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getConstraintSetReferenceName</a>	Returns the value of the constraintSetId attribute for the given constraintSet
<a href="#">getConstraintSetRange</a>	Returns the range for the given constraintSet
<a href="#">getConstraintSetDriveConstraints</a>	Returns the driveConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet
<a href="#">getDriveConstraintType</a>	Returns the type for a given driveConstraint element: function class
<a href="#">getDriveConstraintValue</a>	Returns the value for a given driveConstraint element Format depends on the constraint type
<a href="#">getConstraintSetLoadConstraints</a>	Returns the loadConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet
<a href="#">getLoadConstraintType</a>	Returns the type for a given loadConstraint element: function class
<a href="#">getLoadConstraintValue</a>	Returns the value for a given loadConstraint element Format is cell function and strength or cell class and strength
<a href="#">getLoadConstraintCount</a>	Returns the count for a given loadConstraint element
<a href="#">getConstraintSetTimingConstraints</a>	Returns the timingConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet

Name	Description
<a href="#">getTimingConstraintClockDetails</a>	Returns the clockDetails for a given timingConstraint indicating the clock name, clock edge, and delay type
<a href="#">getTimingConstraintValue</a>	Returns the value for a given timingConstraint element indicating the cycle time percentage

#### F.7.2.35 Constraint set operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setConstraintSetReferenceName</a>	Set the given referenceName for the constraintSetId attribute for the given constraint set
<a href="#">setConstraintSetRange</a>	Set the given range for the given constraintSet
<a href="#">addConstraintSetDriveConstraint</a>	Add a new driveConstraint with the given type to the given constraintSet
<a href="#">removeConstraintSetDriveConstraint</a>	Remove the given driveConstraint
<a href="#">setDriveConstraintValue</a>	Set the given value for the given driveConstraint element
<a href="#">addConstraintSetLoadConstraint</a>	Add a new loadConstraint with the given type to the given constraintSet
<a href="#">removeConstraintSetLoadConstraint</a>	Remove the given loadConstraint
<a href="#">setLoadConstraintValue</a>	Set the given value for the given loadConstraint element
<a href="#">setLoadConstraintCount</a>	Set the given count for the given loadConstraint element
<a href="#">addConstraintSetTimingConstraint</a>	Add a new timingConstraint with the given clockName to the given constraintSet
<a href="#">removeConstraintSetTimingConstraint</a>	Remove the given timingConstraint
<a href="#">setTimingConstraintValue</a>	Set the given value for the given timingConstraint
<a href="#">setTimingConstraintClockEdge</a>	Set the given clockEdge for the given timingConstraint
<a href="#">setTimingConstraintDelayType</a>	Set the given delayType for the given timingConstraint

#### F.7.2.36 Cpu operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getCpuAddressSpaceIDs</a>	Returns addressSpaceIDs for the given cpu element

**F.7.2.37 Cpu operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addCpuAddressSpace</a>	Add the given addressSpace name to the given cpu element

**F.7.2.38 Design configuration instantiation operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationInstantiationLanguage</a>	Returns language for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationInstantiationDesignConfiguratio_nInstanceID</a>	Returns a designConfigurationInstanceID for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

**F.7.2.39 Design configuration instantiation operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setDesignConfigurationInstantiationLanguage</a>	Set language with the given value for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

**F.7.2.40 Design configuration operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationDesignRef</a>	Returns designVNV for the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfigurationIDs</a>	Returns generatorChainConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfigurationIDs</a>	Returns interconnectionConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">getInterconnectionConfigurationInterconnectionID</a>	Returns interconnectionID for the given interconnectionConfiguration element
<a href="#">getInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstantiationsIDs</a>	Returns abstractorInstancesIDs for the given interconnectionConfiguration element
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceComponentInstanceReference</a>	Returns componentRef for the given abstractorInstancesInterface element
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceBusInterfaceReference</a>	Returns busRef for the given abstractorInstancesInterface element
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstanceIDs</a>	Returns the abstractorInstanceIDs for the given abstractorInstances element
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstanceName</a>	Returns instanceName for the given abstractorInstance element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstanceViewName</a>	Returns viewName for the given abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationViewConfigurationIDs</a>	Returns viewConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationViewConfigurationIDs</a>	Returns instanceName for the given viewConfiguration element
<a href="#">getViewConfigurationViewID</a>	Returns configured viewID for the given viewConfiguration element
<a href="#">createDesignConfiguration</a>	Create a new designConfiguration with the given VLNV and returns its designID; fails and returns null if VLNV already exists
<a href="#">setDesignConfigurationDesignRef</a>	Set designRef with the given VLNV for the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">addDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfiguration</a>	Add generatorChainConfiguration with the given VLNV to the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">removeDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfiguration</a>	Remove the given generatorChainConfiguration element
<a href="#">addDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfiguration</a>	Add interconnectionConfiguration with the given interconnectionRef, VLNV, instance, and viewName to the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">removeDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfiguration</a>	Remove the given interconnectionConfiguration element
<a href="#">addInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstances</a>	Add abstractorInstances with the given VLNV, instance, and viewName to the given interconnectionConfiguration element
<a href="#">removeInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstances</a>	Remove the given abstractorInstances element
<a href="#">addAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstance</a>	Add abstractorInstance with the given VLNV, instance, and viewName to the given abstractorInstances element
<a href="#">removeAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstance</a>	Remove the given abstractorInstance element
<a href="#">addDesignConfigurationViewConfiguration</a>	Add viewConfiguration with the given instanceName and viewName to the given designConfiguration element
<a href="#">removeDesignConfigurationViewConfiguration</a>	Remove the given viewConfiguration element

#### F.7.2.41 Design configuration operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceIDs</a>	Returns the abstractorInstancesInterfaceIDs for the given abstractorInstances element
<a href="#">getAbstractorInstanceID</a>	Returns the abstractorInstanceID for the abstractorInstance element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addAbstractorInstancesInterface</a>	Add abstractorInstancesInterface with the given componentRef and busRef to the given abstractorInstances element
<a href="#">removeAbstractorInstancesInterface</a>	Remove the given abstractorInstancesInterface element

#### F.7.2.42 Design instantiation operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getDesignInstantiationDesignInstanceID</a>	Returns a designInstanceID for the given designInstantiation element

#### F.7.2.43 Design operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getDesignComponentInstanceIDs</a>	Returns componentInstanceIDs for the given design element
<a href="#">getComponentInstanceName</a>	Returns name for the given componentInstance element
<a href="#">getDesignInterconnectionIDs</a>	Returns interconnectionsIDs for the given design element
<a href="#">getInterconnectionActiveInterfaceIDs</a>	Returns activeInterfaceIDs for the given interconnection element
<a href="#">getActiveInterfaceComponentInstanceReference</a>	Returns componentRef for the given activeInterface element
<a href="#">getActiveInterfaceBusInterfaceReference</a>	Returns busRef for the given activeInterface element
<a href="#">getActiveInterfaceExcludePorts</a>	Returns excludePorts for the given activeInterface element
<a href="#">getInterconnectionHierInterfaceIDs</a>	Returns hierInterfaceIDs for the given activeInterface element
<a href="#">getHierInterfaceBusInterfaceReference</a>	Returns busRef for the given hierInterface element
<a href="#">getDesignMonitorInterconnectionIDs</a>	Returns monitorInterconnectionIDs for the given design element
<a href="#">getMonitorInterconnectionMonitoredActiveInterfaceID</a>	Returns monitorActiveInterfaceID for the given monitorInterconnection element
<a href="#">getMonitoredActiveInterfaceComponentInstanceReference</a>	Returns componentRef for the given monitoredActiveInterface element
<a href="#">getMonitoredActiveInterfaceBusInterfaceReference</a>	Returns busRef for the given monitoredActiveInterface element
<a href="#">getMonitoredActiveInterfacePath</a>	Returns path for the given monitoredActiveInterface element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterfaceIDs</a>	Returns monitorInterfaceIDs for the given monitorInterconnection element
<a href="#">getDesignAdHocConnectionIDs</a>	Returns adHocConnectionsIDs for the given design element
<a href="#">getAdHocConnectionTiedValue</a>	Returns tiedValue for the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">getAdHocConnectionInternalPortReferenceIDs</a>	Returns internalPortReferenceIDs for the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">getAdHocInternalPortReferenceComponentInstanceReference</a>	Returns componentRef for the given internalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocInternalPortReferencePortReference</a>	Returns portRef for the given internalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocInternalPortReferenceRange</a>	Returns range for the given internalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocInternalPortReferenceIndices</a>	Returns indices for the given internalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocConnectionExternalPortReferenceIDs</a>	Returns externalPortReferenceIDs for the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">getAdHocExternalPortReferencePortReference</a>	Returns componentRef for the given externalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocExternalPortReferenceRange</a>	Returns portRef for the given externalPortReference element
<a href="#">getAdHocExternalPortReferenceIndices</a>	Returns range for the given externalPortReference element
<a href="#">createDesign</a>	Create a new design with the given VLVN and returns its designID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists
<a href="#">addDesignComponentInstance</a>	Add componentInstance with the given VLVN and instance name to the given design element
<a href="#">removeDesignComponentInstance</a>	Remove the given componentInstance element
<a href="#">addDesignInterconnection</a>	Add interconnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and busRef to the given design element
<a href="#">removeDesignInterconnection</a>	Remove the given interconnection element
<a href="#">addInterconnectionActiveInterface</a>	Add activeInterface with the given componentInstanceRef and busRef to the given interconnection element
<a href="#">removeInterconnectionActiveInterface</a>	Remove the given activeInterface element
<a href="#">setActiveInterfaceExcludePorts</a>	Set excludePorts with the given value for the given activeInterface element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addInterconnectionHierInterface</a>	Add hierInterface with the given busRef to the given interconnection element
<a href="#">removeInterconnectionHierInterface</a>	Remove the given hierInterface element
<a href="#">addDesignMonitorConnection</a>	Add monitorInterconnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and busRef to the given design element
<a href="#">removeDesignMonitorConnection</a>	Remove the given monitorInterconnection element
<a href="#">addMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterface</a>	Add monitorInterface with the given componentInstanceRef and busRef to the given monitorInterconnection element
<a href="#">removeMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterface</a>	Remove the given monitorInterface interface
<a href="#">addDesignAdHocConnection</a>	Add adHocConnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and portRef to the given design element
<a href="#">addDesignExternalAdHocConnection</a>	Add adHocConnection with the given name and portRef to the given design element
<a href="#">removeDesignAdHocConnection</a>	Remove the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">setAdHocConnectionTiedValue</a>	Set tiedValue with the given value for the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">addAdHocConnectionInternalPortReference</a>	Add internalPortReference with the given componentInstanceRef and portRef to the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">removeAdHocConnectionInternalPortReference</a>	Remove the given internalPortReference element
<a href="#">setAdHocInternalPortReferenceRange</a>	Set range with the given range for the given internalPortReference
<a href="#">setAdHocInternalPortReferenceIndices</a>	Set indices with the given indices for the given internalPortReference
<a href="#">addAdHocConnectionExternalPortReference</a>	Add externalPortReference with the portRef to the given adHocConnection element
<a href="#">removeAdHocConnectionExternalPortReference</a>	Remove the given externalPortReference element
<a href="#">setAdHocExternalPortReferenceRange</a>	Set range with the given range for the given externalPortReference
<a href="#">setAdHocExternalPortReferenceIndices</a>	Set indices with the given indices for the given externalPortReference

**F.7.2.44 Design operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">SetMonitoredActiveInterfacePath</a>	Set path with the given value for the given monitoredActiveInterface element
<a href="#">SetMonitorInterfacePath</a>	Set path with the given value for the given monitorInterface element

**F.7.2.45 Driver operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getDriverRange</a>	Returns the range of the given driver element
<a href="#">getDriverDefaultValue</a>	Returns the default value of the given driver element
<a href="#">getDriverClockDriverID</a>	Returns the clockDriverID of the given driver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPeriodUnits</a>	Returns the clockPeriodUnits of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPeriod</a>	Returns the clockPeriod of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPulseOffsetUnits</a>	Returns the clockPulseOffsetUnits of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPulseOffset</a>	Returns the clockPulseOffset of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPulseValue</a>	Returns the clockPulseValue of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPulseDurationUnits</a>	Returns the clockPulseDurationUnits of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getClockDriverClockPulseDuration</a>	Returns the clockPulseDuration of the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">getDriverSingleShotDriverID</a>	Returns the singleShotDriverID of the given driver element
<a href="#">getSingleShotDriverSingleShotOffset</a>	Returns the singleShotOffset of the given singleShotDriver element
<a href="#">getSingleShotDriverSingleShotValue</a>	Returns the singleShotValue of the given singleShotDriver element
<a href="#">getSingleShotDriverSingleShotDuration</a>	Returns the singleShotDuration of the given singleShotDriver element

**F.7.2.46 Driver operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setDriverRange</a>	Set the range of the given driver
<a href="#">addDriverDefaultValue</a>	Add the given default value to the given driver element
<a href="#">removeDriverDefaultValue</a>	Remove the default value from the given driver element
<a href="#">addDriverClockDriver</a>	Add a clock driver with the given details to the given driver element
<a href="#">removeDriverClockDriver</a>	Remove the clock driver from the given driver element
<a href="#">setClockDriverClockPeriodUnits</a>	Set the units attribute of the clockPeriod element in the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">setClockDriverClockPulseOffsetUnits</a>	Set the units attribute of the clockPulseOffset element in the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">setClockDriverClockPulseDurationUnits</a>	Set the units attribute of the clockPulseDuration element in the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">addDriverSingleShotDriver</a>	Add a single shot driver with the given details to the given driver element
<a href="#">removeDriverSingleShotDriver</a>	Remove the single shot driver from the given driver element

**F.7.2.47 Element attribute operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAttributeValue</a>	Returns value of the attribute with the given name in the given element
<a href="#">getAttributeValueExpression</a>	Returns expression of the attribute with the given name in the given element

**F.7.2.48 Element attribute operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addAttribute</a>	Add attribute with the given name and expression to the given element
<a href="#">removeAttribute</a>	Remove attribute with the given name from the given element
<a href="#">setAttributeValue</a>	Set attribute with the given name to the given expression in the given element

**F.7.2.49 Field operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldID</a>	Returns the value of the FieldID attribute in the given regField element

**F.7.2.50 File builder operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getFileBuilderFileType</a>	Return fileType for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderCommand</a>	Return command for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getFileBuilderFlags</a>	Return flags for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldID</a>	Return replaceDefaultFlags for the given fileBuilder element

**F.7.2.51 File builder operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setFileBuilderCommand</a>	Set command with the given value for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">setFileBuilderFlags</a>	Set flags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element
<a href="#">setFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags</a>	Set replaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

**F.7.2.52 File set operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getFileSetGroups</a>	Returns groups for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">getFileSetFileIDs</a>	Returns fileIDs for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">getFileFileTypes</a>	Returns fileTypes for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileIsStructural</a>	Returns isStructural for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileIsIncludeFile</a>	Returns isIncludeFile for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileHasExternalDeclarations</a>	Returns hasExternalDeclarations for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileLogicalName</a>	Returns logicalName for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileExportedNames</a>	Returns exportedNames for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileBuildCommand</a>	Returns buildCommand for the given file element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getFileBuildCommandFlags</a>	Returns buildCommandFlags for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileBuildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags</a>	Returns buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileBuildCommandTargetName</a>	Returns buildCommandTargetName for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileDependencies</a>	Returns dependencies for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileDefineSymbolIDs</a>	Returns fileDefineIDs for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileDefineSymbolValue</a>	Returns value for the given fileDefine element
<a href="#">getFileImageTypes</a>	Returns imageTypes for the given file element
<a href="#">getFileSetDefaultFileBuilderIDs</a>	Returns fileBuilderIDs for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">getFileSetDependencies</a>	Returns dependencies for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">getFileSetFunctionIDs</a>	Returns functionsIDs for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">getFunctionReplicate</a>	Returns replicate for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionEntryPoint</a>	Returns entryPoint for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionFileID</a>	Returns fileID for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionReturnType</a>	Returns returnType for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionArgumentIDs</a>	Returns argumentIDs for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionArgumentDataType</a>	Returns dataType for the given argumentID element
<a href="#">getFunctionDisabled</a>	Returns disabled for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionSourceFileIDs</a>	Returns sourceFileIDs for the given function element
<a href="#">getFunctionSourceFileName</a>	Returns sourceName for the given functionSourceFile element
<a href="#">getFunctionSourceFileType</a>	Returns fileType for the given functionSourceFile element
<a href="#">getFunctionSourceFileTypeUser</a>	Returns user attribute for fileType for the given functionSourceFile element

#### F.7.2.53 File set operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setFileSetGroups</a>	Set groups with the given value for the given fileSet element
<a href="#">addFileSetFile</a>	Add file with the given name and fileTypes to the given fileSet element

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>removeFileSetFile</u></a>	Remove the given file
<a href="#"><u>setFileIsStructural</u></a>	Set isStructural with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileIsIncludeFile</u></a>	Set isIncludeFile with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileHasExternalDeclarations</u></a>	Set hasExternalDeclarations with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileLogicalName</u></a>	Set logicalName with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileExportedNames</u></a>	Set exportedNames with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileBuildCommand</u></a>	Set buildCommand with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileBuildCommandFlags</u></a>	Set buildCommandFlags with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileBuildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags</u></a>	Set buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>setFileBuildCommandTargetName</u></a>	Set buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>addFileDependency</u></a>	Add given dependency to the given file element
<a href="#"><u>removeFileSetDependency</u></a>	Remove the given dependency from the given file element
<a href="#"><u>addFileDefineSymbol</u></a>	Add fileDefine with the given name and value to the given file element
<a href="#"><u>removeFileDefineSymbol</u></a>	Remove the given fileDefine element
<a href="#"><u>setImageTypes</u></a>	Set imageTypes with the given value for the given file element
<a href="#"><u>addFileSetDefaultFileBuilder</u></a>	Add defaultFileBuilder with the given fileType to the given file element
<a href="#"><u>removeFileSetDefaultFileBuilder</u></a>	Remove the given defaultFileBuilder element
<a href="#"><u>addFileSetDependency</u></a>	Add given dependency to the given fileSet element
<a href="#"><u>removeFileSetDependency</u></a>	Remove the given dependency from the given fileSet element
<a href="#"><u>addFileSetFunction</u></a>	Add function with the given fileRef to the given fileSet element
<a href="#"><u>removeFileSetFunction</u></a>	Remove the given function element
<a href="#"><u>setFunctionReplicate</u></a>	Set replicate to the given value for the given function element

Name	Description
<a href="#">setFunctionEntryPoint</a>	Set entryPoint to the given value for the given function element
<a href="#">setFunctionReturnType</a>	Set returnType to the given value for the given function element
<a href="#">addFunctionArgument</a>	Add argument with given name and value to the given function element
<a href="#">removeFunctionArgument</a>	Remove the given argument
<a href="#">setFunctionArgumentDataType</a>	Set datatype with the given type for the given argument element
<a href="#">setFunctionDisabled</a>	Set disabled to the given value for the given function element
<a href="#">addFunctionSourceFile</a>	Add sourceFile with the given sourceName and fileType to the given function element
<a href="#">removeFunctionSourceFile</a>	Remove the given sourceFile element
<a href="#">setFunctionSourceTypeUser</a>	Set user attribute for the given sourceFile element

#### F.7.2.54 Generator chain operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGroupSelectorIDs</a>	Returns generatorChainSelectorGroupSelectorIDs for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">getGroupSelectorSelectionOperator</a>	Returns multipleGroupSelectionOperation for a given groupSelector element
<a href="#">getGroupSelectorSelectionNames</a>	Returns names for a given groupSelector element
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGeneratorChainIDs</a>	Returns generatorChainIDs for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelectorIDs</a>	Returns generatorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelectorIDs for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainGeneratorIDs</a>	Returns generatorIDs for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainGroups</a>	Returns chainGroups for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainChoiceIDs</a>	Returns choiceIDs for the given generatorChain element

**F.7.2.55 Generator chain operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">createGeneratorChain</a>	Create a new generatorChain with the given VLVN and returns its generatorChainID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists
<a href="#">addGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGroupSelector</a>	Add generatorChainMultipleGroupSelector with the given names for a given generatorChain element
<a href="#">setGroupSelectorSelectionOperator</a>	Set multipleGroupSelectionOperation with the given value for a given groupSelector element
<a href="#">addGeneratorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelector</a>	Add generatorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelector with the given names for the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">addGeneratorChainGenerator</a>	Add generator with the given generatorExe to the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">addGeneratorChainGroup</a>	Add chainGroup with the given value to the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">removeGeneratorChainGroup</a>	Remove chainGroup with the given value from the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">addGeneratorChainChoice</a>	Add choice with the given name and enumerations to the given generatorChain element
<a href="#">removeGeneratorChainChoice</a>	Remove the given choice element

**F.7.2.56 Generator operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getGeneratorHidden</a>	Returns hidden for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorScope</a>	Returns scope for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorPhase</a>	Returns phase for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorApiType</a>	Returns apiType for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorTransportMethods</a>	Returns transportMethods for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorExecutable</a>	Returns generatorExe for the given generator element
<a href="#">getGeneratorGroups</a>	Returns group names for the given generator element

### F.7.2.57 Generator operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setGeneratorHidden</a>	Set hidden with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">setGeneratorScope</a>	Set scope with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">setGeneratorPhase</a>	Set phase with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">setGeneratorApiType</a>	Set apiType with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">setGeneratorTransportMethods</a>	Set transportMethods with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">setGeneratorExecutable</a>	Set generatorExe with the given value for the given generator element
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefIDs</a>	Set groups with the given value for the given generator element

### F.7.2.58 Global operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAbstractionDefIDs</a>	Returns all registered abstractionDefIDs
<a href="#">getBusDefIDs</a>	Returns all registered busDefIDs
<a href="#">getComponentIDs</a>	Returns all registered componentIDs
<a href="#">getDesignIDs</a>	Returns all registered designIDs
<a href="#">getDesignConfigurationIDs</a>	Returns all registered designConfigurationIDs
<a href="#">getAbstractorIDs</a>	Returns all registered abstractorIDs
<a href="#">getGeneratorChainIDs</a>	Returns all registered generatorChainIDs
<a href="#">getCatalogIDs</a>	Returns all registered catalogIDs
<a href="#">getDesignID</a>	Returns the designID of the current or top design associated with the currently invoked generator
<a href="#">getGeneratorContextComponentInstanceID</a>	Returns the componentInstanceID associated with the currently invoked generator
<a href="#">getXML</a>	Returns XML fragment
<a href="#">message</a>	Send message level and message text to DE
<a href="#">init</a>	API initialization function Must be called before any other API call

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>end</u></a>	Terminate connection to the DE
<a href="#"><u>save</u></a>	Save all edits done in generator to DE; document must be valid
<a href="#"><u>registerVLNV</u></a>	Register the VLNV contained in the given file, possibly replacing an existing VLNV
<a href="#"><u> unregisterVLNV</u></a>	Unregister the given VLNV
<a href="#"><u>registerCatalogVLNVs</u></a>	Register all VLNVs in the given catalog
<a href="#"><u> unregisterCatalogVLNVs</u></a>	Unregister all VLNVs in the given catalog

#### F.7.2.59 Indirect interface operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceIndirectAddress</u></a>	Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceIndirectData</u></a>	Returns indirectData for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceMemoryMapID</u></a>	Returns memoryMapID for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceBridgeIDs</u></a>	Returns bridgeIDs for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceBitSteering</u></a>	Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>getIndirectInterfaceEndianness</u></a>	Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element

#### F.7.2.60 Indirect interface operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#"><u>addIndirectInterfaceBridge</u></a>	Add bridge with the given busInterfaceRef to the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>removeIndirectInterfaceBridge</u></a>	Remove the given bridge element
<a href="#"><u>setIndirectInterfaceBitSteering</u></a>	Set the bitSteering with the given value for the given indirectInterface element
<a href="#"><u>setIndirectInterfaceEndianness</u></a>	Set the endianness with the given value for the given indirectInterface element

**F.7.2.61 Memory map operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getMemoryMapElementIDs</a>	Returns the memoryMapElementIDs for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">getMemoryMapElementType</a>	Returns the elementType for the given memoryMapElement element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockBaseAddress</a>	Returns the baseAddress for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockTypeIdentifier</a>	Returns the typeIdentifier for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockRange</a>	Returns the range for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockWidth</a>	Returns the width for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockUsage</a>	Returns the usage for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockVolatility</a>	Returns the volatility for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockAccess</a>	Returns the access for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockRegisterIDs</a>	Returns the registerIDs for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getAddressBlockRegisterFileIDs</a>	Returns the registerFileIDs for the given address Block element
<a href="#">getBankAlignment</a>	Returns the value of the bankAlignment attribute for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getBankBaseAddress</a>	Returns the baseAddress for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getBankBlockAndSubspaceElementIDs</a>	Returns the bankIDs, addressBlockIDs, and subSpaceMapIDs for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getBankUsage</a>	Returns the usage for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getBankVolatility</a>	Returns the volatility for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getBankAccess</a>	Returns the access for the given bank or localBank element
<a href="#">getSubspaceMapMasterID</a>	Returns an associated busInterfaceID of the masterRef for the given subspaceMap element
<a href="#">getSubspaceMapSegmentID</a>	Returns an associated segmentID of the segmentRef for the given subspaceMap
<a href="#">getSubspaceMapBaseAddress</a>	Returns the baseAddress for the given subspaceMap
<a href="#">getMemoryMapRemapIDs</a>	Returns the memoryRemapIDs for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getMemoryRemapState</a>	Returns the state for a given memoryRemap element
<a href="#">getMemoryRemapElementIDs</a>	Returns the bankIDs, addressBlockIDs, and subSpaceMapIDs for the given memoryRemap element
<a href="#">getMemoryMapAddressUnitBits</a>	Returns the addressUnitBits for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">getMemoryMapShared</a>	Returns the shared for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

#### F.7.2.62 Memory map operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addMemoryMapAddressBlock</a>	Add an addressBlock with the given name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">removeMemoryMapAddressBlock</a>	Remove the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">setAddressBlockRange</a>	Set the range with the given value for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">setAddressBlockTypeIdentifier</a>	Set the typeIdentifier with the given value for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">setAddressBlockUsage</a>	Set the usage with the given value for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">setAddressBlockVolatility</a>	Set the volatility with the given value for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">setAddressBlockAccess</a>	Set the access with the given value for the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">addAddressBlockRegister</a>	Add a register with the given name, offset, and size, and a field with the given name, offset, and width to the given addressBlock
<a href="#">removeAddressBlockRegister</a>	Remove the given register element
<a href="#">addAddressBlockRegisterFile</a>	Add a registerFile with the given name, addressOffset, and range to the given addressBlock element
<a href="#">removeAddressBlockRegisterFile</a>	Remove the given registerFile element
<a href="#">addMemoryMapBank</a>	Add a bank with the given name, baseAddress, and alignment to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">removeMemoryMapBank</a>	Remove the given bank element
<a href="#">addBankBank</a>	Add a bank with the given name, baseAddress, and alignment to the given bank element
<a href="#">removeBankBank</a>	Remove the given bank element

Name	Description
<a href="#">setBankUsage</a>	Set usage with the given value for the given bank element
<a href="#">setBankVolatility</a>	Set volatility with the given value for the given bank element
<a href="#">setBankAccess</a>	Set access with the given value for the given bank element
<a href="#">addMemoryMapSubspaceMap</a>	Add a subspaceMap with the given name, masterRef, and baseAddress to the given memory map
<a href="#">removeMemoryMapSubspaceMap</a>	Remove the given subspaceMap element
<a href="#">setMemoryRemapSegmentRef</a>	Set the segmentRef with the given value for the given subspaceMap element
<a href="#">addMemoryMapRemapWithAddressBlock</a>	Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing an addressBlock with the given addressBlock name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">addMemoryMapRemapWithBank</a>	Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing a bank with the given bankName, baseAddress, and alignment to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
<a href="#">addMemoryMapRemapWithSubspaceMap</a>	Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing a subspaceMap with the given subspaceName, baseAddress, and masterRef to the given memoryMap element
<a href="#">removeMemoryMapRemap</a>	Remove the given memoryRemap element
<a href="#">setMemoryMapShared</a>	Set the shared with the given value for the given memoryMap element

#### F.7.2.63 Module and type parameter operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getModuleOrTypeParameterIDs</a>	Returns moduleOrTypeParameterIDs of the given element
<a href="#">getModuleOrTypeParameterValue</a>	Returns value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element
<a href="#">getModuleOrTypeParameterValueExpression</a>	Returns expression of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element
<a href="#">getModuleOrTypeParameterDataType</a>	Returns the data type value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element
<a href="#">getModuleOrTypeParameterUsageType</a>	Returns the usage value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element

**F.7.2.64 Module and type parameter operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addModuleOrTypeParameter</a>	Add a moduleOrTypeParameter with the given name and given value to the given element
<a href="#">removeModuleOrTypeParameter</a>	Remove the given moduleOrTypeParameter
<a href="#">setModuleOrTypeParameterValue</a>	Set the value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter
<a href="#">setModuleOrTypeParameterDataType</a>	Set the data type value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter
<a href="#">setModuleOrTypeParameterUsageType</a>	Set the usage value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter

**F.7.2.65 Parameter operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getParameterIDs</a>	Returns parameterIDs of the given element
<a href="#">getParameterValue</a>	Returns value of the given parameter element
<a href="#">getParameterValueExpression</a>	Returns expression of the given parameter element
<a href="#">addParameter</a>	Add a parameter with the given name and given value to the given element
<a href="#">removeParameter</a>	Remove the given parameter
<a href="#">setParameterValue</a>	Set the value of the given parameter

**F.7.2.66 Port operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getPortStyle</a>	Returns the style (wire or transactional) for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortAllLogicalDirectionsAllowed</a>	Returns allLogicalDirectionsAllowed for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortDirection</a>	Returns direction for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortWireTypeDefIDs</a>	Returns wireTypeDefIDs for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortDriverIDs</a>	Returns driverIDs for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortConstraintSetIDs</a>	Returns constraintSetIDs for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortInitiative</a>	Returns initiative for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortKind</a>	Returns kind for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortKindCustom</a>	Returns custom for the given port element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getPortBusWidth</a>	Returns busWidth for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolType</a>	Returns protocolType for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolTypeCustom</a>	Returns custom attribute of protocolType for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolPayloadName</a>	Returns payloadName for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolPayloadType</a>	Returns payloadType for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolPayloadExtension</a>	Returns payloadExtension for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory</a>	Returns mandatory attribute of payloadExtension for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortTransTypeDefIDs</a>	Returns transTypeDefIDs for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortMaxConnections</a>	Returns maxConnections for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortMinConnections</a>	Returns minConnections for the given port element
<a href="#">getPortAccessType</a>	Returns accessType for the given port element

**F.7.2.67 Port operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setPortAllLogicalDirectionsAllowed</a>	Set allLogicalDirectionsAllowed with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">addPortWireTypeDef</a>	Add wireTypeDef for the given port element
<a href="#">removePortWireTypeDef</a>	Remove the given wireTypeDef element
<a href="#">addPortDefaultDriver</a>	Add defaultDriver with the given value to the given port element
<a href="#">removePortDefaultDriver</a>	Remove the given defaultDriver element
<a href="#">addPortClockDriver</a>	Add clockDriver with the given clock period, pulse offset, pulse value, and pulse duration to the given port element
<a href="#">removePortClockDriver</a>	Remove the given clockDriver element
<a href="#">addPortSingleShotDriver</a>	Add singleShotDriver with the given offset, value, and duration to the given port element
<a href="#">removePortSingleShotDriver</a>	Remove the given singleShort driver element
<a href="#">addPortConstraintSet</a>	Add constraintSet to the given port element
<a href="#">removePortConstraintSet</a>	Remove the given constraintSet element
<a href="#">setPortKind</a>	Set kind with the given value for the given port element

Name	Description
<a href="#">setPortKindCustom</a>	Set attribute custom of kind with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setPortBusWidth</a>	Set busWidth with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setPortProtocolType</a>	Set protocolType with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setPortProtocolTypeCustom</a>	Set attribute custom of protocolType with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">addPortProtocolPayload</a>	Add a payload with the given type to the given port element
<a href="#">removePortProtocolPayload</a>	Remove the given payload
<a href="#">setProtocolPayloadName</a>	Set payload name with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setProtocolPayloadExtension</a>	Set payload extension with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory</a>	Set attribute mandatory of payload extension with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">addPortTransTypeDef</a>	Add transTypeDef for the given port element
<a href="#">removePortTransTypeDef</a>	Remove the given transTypeDef element
<a href="#">setPortMaxConnections</a>	Set maxConnections with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setPortMinConnections</a>	Set minConnections with the given value for the given port element
<a href="#">setPortAccessType</a>	Set portAccessType with the given value for the given port element

#### F.7.2.68 Present operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getIsPresentValue</a>	Returns the value of the isPresent element of the given element
<a href="#">getIsPresentValueExpression</a>	Returns the expression of the isPresent element of the given element
<a href="#">setIsPresentValue</a>	Set the expression of the isPresent element of the given element
<a href="#">addIsPresent</a>	Add an isPresent element to the given element with the given expression
<a href="#">removeIsPresent</a>	Remove the isPresent element from the given element

#### F.7.2.69 Register file operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getRegisterFileID</a>	Returns the value of the RegisterFileID attribute in the given registerFile element
<a href="#">getRegisterFileDimensions</a>	Returns the dim in the given registerFile element
<a href="#">getRegisterFileAddressOffset</a>	Returns the addressOffset in the given registerFile element
<a href="#">getRegisterFileTypeIdentifier</a>	Returns the typeIdentifier in the given registerFile element
<a href="#">setRegisterFileID</a>	Returns the range in the given registerFile element

#### F.7.2.70 Register file operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setRegisterFileID</a>	Set the value of the RegisterFileID attribute in the given registerFile element
<a href="#">setRegisterFileDimensions</a>	Set the dim with the given value n the given registerFile element
<a href="#">getRegisterFileTypeIdentifier</a>	Set the typeIdentifier with the given value n the given registerFile element

#### F.7.2.71 Register operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getRegisterDimensions</a>	Returns dim for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterAddressOffset</a>	Returns addressOffset for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterTypeIdentifier</a>	Returns typeIdentifier for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterSize</a>	Returns size for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterVolatility</a>	Returns volatility for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterAccess</a>	Returns access for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterFieldIDs</a>	Returns fieldIDs for the given register element
<a href="#">getRegisterAlternateRegisterIDs</a>	Returns alternativeRegisterIDs for the given register element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterState</a>	Returns state for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterGroups</a>	Returns groups for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterTypeIdentifier</a>	Returns typeIdentifier for the given alternateRegister element

Name	Description
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterVolatility</a>	Returns volatility for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterAccess</a>	Returns access for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterFieldIDs</a>	Returns fieldIDs for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getRegisterResetValue</a>	Returns resetValue derived from fieldResetValues for the given resetType and register element
<a href="#">getRegisterResetMask</a>	Returns resetMask derived from fieldResetMasks for the given resetType and register element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterResetValue</a>	Returns resetValue derived from fieldResetValues for the given resetType and alternateRegister element
<a href="#">getAlternateRegisterResetMask</a>	Returns resetMask derived from fieldResetMasks for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

#### F.7.2.72 Register operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">setRegisterDimensions</a>	Set dim with the given value for the given register element
<a href="#">setRegisterTypeIdentifier</a>	Set typeIdentifier with the given value for the given register element
<a href="#">setRegisterVolatility</a>	Set volatility with the given value for the given register element
<a href="#">setRegisterAccess</a>	Set access with the given value for the given register element
<a href="#">addRegisterField</a>	Add regField with the given name, offset, and width to the given register element
<a href="#">removeRegisterField</a>	Remove the given regField element
<a href="#">addRegisterAlternateRegister</a>	Add alternateRegister with the given groups to the given register element
<a href="#">removeRegisterAlternateRegister</a>	Remove the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterState</a>	Set state with the given value for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterTypeIdentifier</a>	Set typeIdentifier with the given value for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterVolatility</a>	Set volatility with the given value for the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterAccess</a>	Set access with the given value for the given alternateRegister element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addAlternateRegisterField</a>	Add regField with the given name, offset, and width to the given alternateRegister element
<a href="#">removeAlternateRegisterField</a>	Remove the given regField element
<a href="#">setRegisterResetValue</a>	Set the fieldResetValues with the given register reset value expression for the given resetType and register element
<a href="#">setRegisterResetMask</a>	Set the fieldResetMasks with the given register reset mask expression for the given resetType and register element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterResetValue</a>	Set the fieldResetValues with the given alternateRegister reset value expression for the given resetType and alternateRegister element
<a href="#">setAlternateRegisterResetMask</a>	Set the fieldResetMasks with the given alternateRegister reset mask expression for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

#### F.7.2.73 Remap state operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getRemapStateRemapPortIDs</a>	Returns remapPortIDs for the given remapState element
<a href="#">getRemapPortPortID</a>	Returns the portID of the portRef for the given remapPort element
<a href="#">getRemapPortPortIndex</a>	Returns the portIndex for the given remapPort element
<a href="#">getRemapPortValue</a>	Returns the value for the given remapPort element
<a href="#">addRemapStateRemapPort</a>	Add a remapPort with the given portRef and value to the given remapState element
<a href="#">removeRemapStateRemapPort</a>	Remove the given remapPort element
<a href="#">setRemapPortPortIndex</a>	Set the portIndex with the given value for the given remapPort

#### F.7.2.74 Slice operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getSlicePathSegmentIDs</a>	Returns the pathSegmentIDs for a given slice element
<a href="#">getPathSegmentName</a>	Returns the pathSegmentName for a given pathSegment element
<a href="#">getPathSegmentIndices</a>	Returns the indices for a given pathSegment element
<a href="#">getSliceRange</a>	Returns the range for a given slice element

**F.7.2.75 Slice operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addSlicePathSegment</a>	Add a pathSegment with the given pathSegmentNames and indices to the given slice element
<a href="#">removeSlicePathSegment</a>	Remove the given pathSegment element
<a href="#">setSliceRange</a>	Set the range to the given range for the given slice element

**F.7.2.76 Typedef operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getTypeDefTypeName</a>	Returns the typeName for the given typeDef element
<a href="#">getTypeDefTypeDefinitions</a>	Returns the typeDefinitions for the given typeDef element
<a href="#">getTypeDefTypeParameterIDs</a>	Returns the typeParameterIDs for the given transTypeDef or serviceTypeDef element
<a href="#">getTypeDefServiceTypeDefIDs</a>	Returns the serviceTypeDefIDs for the given transTypeDef element
<a href="#">getTypeDefViewIDs</a>	Returns the viewIDs for the given typeDef element

**F.7.2.77 Typedef operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setTypeDefTypeName</a>	Set the typeName with the given value for the given typeDef element
<a href="#">setTypeDefTypeDefinitions</a>	Set the typeDefinitions with the given definitions for the given typeDef element
<a href="#">addTypeDefTypeParameter</a>	Add a typeParameter with the given name and value to the given typeDef element
<a href="#">removeTypeDefTypeParameter</a>	Remove the given typeParameter
<a href="#">addTypeDefServiceTypeDef</a>	Add a serviceTypeDef with the given typeName to the given typeDef element
<a href="#">removeTypeDefServiceTypeDef</a>	Remove the given serviceTypeDef
<a href="#">addTypeDefViewName</a>	Add the given viewName to the viewRefs in the given typeDef element
<a href="#">removeTypeDefViewName</a>	Removed the given viewName from the viewRefs in the given typeDef element

#### F.7.2.78 Vector operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getVectorIDs</a>	Returns vectorIDs of the given element
<a href="#">getVectorRange</a>	Returns range of the given vector element
<a href="#">getVectorRangeExpression</a>	Returns the range expressions of the given vector element

#### F.7.2.79 Vector operations (EXTENDED)

Name	Description
<a href="#">addVector</a>	Add a vector to the given element
<a href="#">removeVector</a>	Remove the given vector

#### F.7.2.80 Vendor extensions operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getVendorExtensions</a>	Returns vendorExtensionID of the given element
<a href="#">addVendorExtensions</a>	Add a vendor extension with given value to the given element
<a href="#">removeVendorExtensions</a>	Remove the given vendor extension
<a href="#">setVendorExtensions</a>	Set the value of the given vendor extension

#### F.7.2.81 View operations (BASE)

Name	Description
<a href="#">getViewEnvIdentifier</a>	Returns envIdentifier for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewComponentInstantiationRef</a>	Returns componentInstantiationRef for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewComponentInstantiationID</a>	Returns componentInstantiationID for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewDesignInstantiationRef</a>	Returns designInstantiationRef for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewDesignInstantiationID</a>	Returns designInstantiationID for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationRef</a>	Returns designConfigurationInstantiationRef for the given view element
<a href="#">getViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationID</a>	Returns designConfigurationInstantiationID for the given view element

**F.7.2.82 View operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setViewComponentInstantiationRef</a>	Set componentInstantiationRef for the given view element
<a href="#">setViewDesignInstantiationRef</a>	Set designInstantiationRef for the given view element
<a href="#">setViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationRef</a>	Set designConfigurationInstantiationRef for the given view element

**F.7.2.83 Whitebox operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getWhiteboxElementType</a>	Returns whiteboxType for the given whiteboxElement
<a href="#">getWhiteboxElementDriveable</a>	Returns driveable for the given whiteboxElement

**F.7.2.84 Whitebox operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setWhiteboxElementDriveable</a>	Set driveable with the given value for the given whiteBox element

**F.7.2.85 Whitebox ref operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getWhiteboxElementRefID</a>	Returns the value of the attribute name in the given whiteboxElementRef element
<a href="#">getWhiteboxElementRefLocationIDs</a>	Returns the whiteboxElementReflocationIDs for the given whiteboxElementRef element
<a href="#">getWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlicesIDs</a>	Returns the slideIDs for the given whiteboxElementRefLocationID

**F.7.2.86 Whitebox ref operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">addWhiteboxElementRefLocation</a>	Adds a whiteboxElementRefLocation element to a given whiteboxElementRef element
<a href="#">removeWhiteboxElementRefLocation</a>	Removes the given whiteboxElementRefLocation element

Name	Description
<a href="#">addWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlice</a>	Adds a slice to a given whiteboxElementRefLocation element
<a href="#">removeWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlice</a>	Removes the given slice element

**F.7.2.87 name group operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getName</a>	Returns name of the given element
<a href="#">getDisplayName</a>	Returns display name of the given element
<a href="#">getDescription</a>	Returns description of the given element
<a href="#">addDisplayName</a>	Add given display name to the given element; fails if display name is already set
<a href="#">removeDisplayName</a>	Remove display name from the given element; fails if display name is not already set
<a href="#">setDisplayName</a>	Set given display name for the given element; fails if display name is not already set
<a href="#">addDescription</a>	Add given description to the given element; fails if description is already set
<a href="#">removeDescription</a>	Remove description from the given element; fails if description is not already set
<a href="#">setDescription</a>	Set given description for the given element; fails if description is not already set

**F.7.2.88 name group operations (EXTENDED)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">setName</a>	Set name of the given element

**F.7.2.89 top element operations (BASE)**

Name	Description
<a href="#">getID</a>	Returns ID of the element with the given VLVN or null if this element does not exist
<a href="#">getVLVN</a>	Returns VLVN of the element with the given ID
<a href="#">getXMLPath</a>	Returns location of the XML file that is registered with the VLVN of the given top-element

Name	Description
<a href="#">edit</a>	Signal start of editing of the given top-element
<a href="#">setXMLPath</a>	Set new location for the XML file that is registered with the VLVN of the given top-element

### F.7.3 (BASE)

#### F.7.3.1 getRegisterFieldBitOffset

Description: Returns the bitOffset in the given regField element

- Returns: `offset` of type **Number** - Field bit offset
- Input: `regFieldID` of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

#### F.7.3.2 getRegisterFieldResetIDs

Description: Returns the resetIDs in the given regField element

- Returns: `resetIDs` of type **String[]** - List of reset handles
- Input: `regFieldID` of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

#### F.7.3.3 getResetTypeRef

Description: Returns the resetTypeRef for the given reset element

- Returns: `typeRef` of type **String** - Reset type
- Input: `resetID` of type **String** - Handle to a reset element

#### F.7.3.4 getResetValue

Description: Returns the value for the given reset element

- Returns: `value` of type **Number** - Reset value
- Input: `resetID` of type **String** - Handle to a reset element

#### F.7.3.5 getResetValueExpression

Description: Returns the value expression for the given reset element

- Returns: `expression` of type **String** - Reset value expression
- Input: `resetID` of type **String** - Handle to a reset element

#### F.7.3.6 getResetMask

Description: Returns the mask for the given reset element

- Returns: `mask` of type **Number** - Reset mask
- Input: `resetID` of type **String** - Handle to a reset element

#### F.7.3.7 getResetMaskExpression

Description: Returns the mask expression for the given reset element

- Returns: `expression` of type **String** - Reset mask expression

- Input: `resetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a reset element

#### **F.7.3.8 getRegisterFieldTypelIdentifier**

Description: Returns the typeIdentifier for the given regField element

- Returns: `typeIdentifier` of type ***String*** - Field type identifier
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### **F.7.3.9 getRegisterFieldBitWidth**

Description: Returns the bitWidth for the given regField element

- Returns: `width` of type ***Number*** - Field bit width
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### **F.7.3.10 getRegisterFieldVolatility**

Description: Returns the volatility or the given regField element

- Returns: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - Field volatility
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### **F.7.3.11 getRegisterFieldAccess**

Description: Returns the access or the given regField element

- Returns: `access` of type ***String*** - Field access
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### **F.7.3.12 getRegisterFieldEnumeratedValueIDs**

Description: Returns the enumreatedValueIDs for the given regField element

- Returns: `enumeratedValueIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of enumeratedValue handles
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### **F.7.3.13 getEnumeratedValueUsage**

Description: Returns the usage for the given enumeratedValue element

- Returns: `usage` of type ***String*** - EnumeratedValue usage
- Input: `enumeratedValueID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a enumeratedValue element

#### **F.7.3.14 getEnumeratedValueValue**

Description: Returns the value for the given enumeratedValue element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Number*** - EnumeratedValue value
- Input: `enumeratedValueID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a enumeratedValue element

#### **F.7.3.15 getRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValue**

Description: Returns the modifiedWriteValue for the given regField element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - Field modifiedWriteValue type
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.16 getRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValueModify

Description: Returns the modify attribute value of modifiedWriteValue for the given regField element

- Returns: `modify` of type ***String*** - Field modifiedWriteValue modify
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.17 getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintWriteAsRead

Description: Returns the writeAsRead for the given regField element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Field writeAsRead value
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.18 getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintUseEnumeratedValues

Description: Returns the useEnumeratedValues for the given regField element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Field useEnumatedValues value
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.19 getRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraintMinMax

Description: Returns the min and max for the given regField element

- Returns: `minmax` of type ***Number[]*** - Field min at index 0 and max at index 1 value
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.20 getRegisterFieldReadAction

Description: Returns the readAction for the given regField element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - Field readAction type
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.21 getRegisterFieldReadActionModify

Description: Returns the modify attribute value of readAction for the given regField element

- Returns: `modify` of type ***String*** - Field readAction modify
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.22 getRegisterFieldTestable

Description: Returns the testAble for the given regField element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Field testable value
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.23 getRegisterFieldTestConstraint

Description: Returns the testConstraint for the given regField element

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - Field testConstraint value
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

### F.7.3.24 getRegisterFieldReserved

Description: Returns the reserved for the given regField element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Field reserved value
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

## F.7.4 (EXTENDED)

### F.7.4.1 addRegisterFieldReset

Description: Add a reset with the given type and value to the given regField element

- Returns: resetID of type **String** - Handle to a new reset element
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: typeRef of type **String** - Reset type name
- Input: value of type **String** - Reset value expression

### F.7.4.2 removeRegisterFieldReset

Description: Remove the given reset element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: resetID of type **String** - Handle to a reset element

### F.7.4.3 setResetMask

Description: Set the mask with the given value for the given reset element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: resetID of type **String** - Handle to a reset element
- Input: mask of type **String** - Reset mask expression

### F.7.4.4 setRegisterFieldID

Description: Set the FieldID attribute to the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: id of type **String** - FieldID attribute value

### F.7.4.5 setRegisterFieldTypeIdentifier

Description: Set the typeIdentifier to the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: typeIdentifier of type **String** - RegField typeIdentifier

### F.7.4.6 setRegisterFieldVolatility

Description: Set the volatility to the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

- Input: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - RegField volatility

#### F.7.4.7 **setRegisterFieldAccess**

Description: Set the access to the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: `access` of type ***String*** - RegField access

#### F.7.4.8 **addRegisterFieldEnumeratedValue**

Description: Add a enumeratedValue with the given name and value to the given regField element

- Returns: `enumeratedValueID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new enumeratedValue element
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - EnumeratedValue name
- Input: `value` of type ***String*** - EnumeratedValue value

#### F.7.4.9 **removeRegisterFieldEnumeratedValue**

Description: Remove the given enumeratedValue element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `enumeratedValueID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a enumeratedValue element

#### F.7.4.10 **setRegisterFieldEnumeratedValueUsage**

Description: Set the usage with the given value for the given enumeratedValue element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `enumeratedValueID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a enumeratedValue element
- Input: `usage` of type ***String*** - EnumeratedValue usage

#### F.7.4.11 **setRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValue**

Description: Set the modifiedWriteValue with the given type for the given regField element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: `type` of type ***String*** - ModifiedWriteValue type

#### F.7.4.12 **setRegisterFieldModifiedWriteValueModify**

Description: Set the modify attribute of modifiedWriteValue with the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: `modify` of type ***String*** - ModifiedWriteValue modify

#### F.7.4.13 setRegisterFieldWriteValueConstraint

Description: Set the writeValueConstraint elements writeAsRead, useEnumeratedValues, min, and max with the given values for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: writeAsRead of type **Boolean** - WriteValueConstraint writeAsRead or null
- Input: useEnumeratedValues of type **Boolean** - WriteValueConstraint useEnumeratedValues or null
- Input: minmax of type **Number[]** - WriteValueConstraint minmax or null

#### F.7.4.14 setRegisterFieldReadAction

Description: Set the readAction with the given type for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: type of type **String** - ReadAction type

#### F.7.4.15 setRegisterFieldReadActionModify

Description: Set the modify attribute of readAction with the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: modify of type **String** - ReadAction modify

#### F.7.4.16 setRegisterFieldTestable

Description: Set the testable with the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - Testable value

#### F.7.4.17 setRegisterFieldTestConstraint

Description: Set the testConstraint with the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: value of type **String** - TestConstraint value

#### F.7.4.18 setRegisterFieldReserved

Description: Set the reserved with the given value for the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - Reserved value

## F.7.5 Abstraction definition operations (BASE)

### F.7.5.1 getAbstractionDefinitionBusType

Description: Returns busType for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

- Returns: busDefVLNV of type **String[]** - BusDef VLNV
- Input: abstractionDefID | abstractionDefInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

### F.7.5.2 getAbstractionDefinitionExtends

Description: Returns extends for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

- Returns: abstractionDefVLNV of type **String** - AbstractionDef VLNV
- Input: abstractionDefID | abstractionDefInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

### F.7.5.3 getAbstractionDefinitionPortIDs

Description: Returns abstractionDefPortIDs for the given abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractionDefPort handles
- Input: abstractionDefID | abstractionDefInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionDef or abstractionDefInstance element

### F.7.5.4 getAbstractionDefPortLogicalName

Description: Returns logicalName for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: logicalName of type **String** - Logical port name
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

### F.7.5.5 getAbstractionDefPortStyle

Description: Returns portStyle for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: style of type **String** - Logical port mode (onMaster, onSlave, onSystem)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

### F.7.5.6 getAbstractionDefPortIsAddress

Description: Returns isAddress for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port isAddress
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

### F.7.5.7 getAbstractionDefPortIsData

Description: Returns isData for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port isData
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.8 getAbstractionDefPortIsClock

Description: Returns isClock for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port isClock
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.9 getAbstractionDefPortIsReset

Description: Returns isReset for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port isReset
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.10 getAbstractionDefPortModelIDs

Description: Returns abstractionDefPortModeIDs for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortModeIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractionDefPortMode handles
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.11 getAbstractionDefPortModeGroup

Description: Returns group for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: group of type **String** - Logical port group
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.12 getAbstractionDefPortModePresence

Description: Returns presence for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: presence of type **String** - Logical port presence
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.13 getAbstractionDefPortModeWidth

Description: Returns width for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: width of type **Number** - Logical port width
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.14 getAbstractionDefPortModeDirection

Description: Returns direction for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: direction of type **String** - Logical port direction
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

### F.7.5.15 getAbstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs

Description: Returns abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstraction-DefPortModeConstraint handles
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

### F.7.5.16 getAbstractionDefPortModeDriveConstraintIDs

Description: Returns driveConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

- Returns: driveConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - DriveConstraint type
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

### F.7.5.17 getAbstractionDefPortModeLoadConstraintIDs

Description: Returns loadConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

- Returns: loadConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - LoadConstraint type
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

### F.7.5.18 getAbstractionDefPortModeTimingConstraintIDs

Description: Returns timingConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

- Returns: timingConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - TimingConstraint clock name
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortModeConstraint element

### F.7.5.19 getAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeConstraintIDs

Description: Returns mirrored abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortModeConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstraction-DefPortModeConstraint handles
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

### F.7.5.20 getAbstractionDefPortDefaultValue

Description: Returns defaultValue for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Number** - Logical port default value
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

### F.7.5.21 getAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriver

Description: Returns requiresDriver for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port requiresDriver value
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.22 getAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriverType

Description: Returns requiresDriverType for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - Logical port requiresDriver type value
- Input: `abstractionDefPortID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

#### F.7.5.23 getAbstractionDefPortModelInitiative

Description: Returns initiative for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `initiative` of type ***String*** - Logical port initiative
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.24 getAbstractionDefPortModeKind

Description: Returns kind for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `kind` of type ***String*** - Logical port kind
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.25 getAbstractionDefPortModeKindCustom

Description: Returns kind custom for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `kindCustom` of type ***String*** - Logical port kind custom
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.26 getAbstractionDefPortModeBusWidth

Description: Returns busWidth for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `busWidth` of type ***Number*** - Logical port busWidth
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.27 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolType

Description: Returns protocolType for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - Logical port type
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

#### F.7.5.28 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolTypeCustom

Description: Returns protocolType custom for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: `typeCustom` of type ***String*** - Logical port type custom
- Input: `abstractionDefPortModeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

**F.7.5.29 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadName**

Description: Returns payloadName for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: name of type **String** - Logical port payload name
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

**F.7.5.30 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadType**

Description: Returns payloadType for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: type of type **String** - Logical port payload type
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

**F.7.5.31 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtension**

Description: Returns payloadExtension for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: extension of type **String** - Logical port extension
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

**F.7.5.32 getAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory**

Description: Returns payloadExtension mandatory for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port extension mandatory
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element

**F.7.6 Abstraction definition operations (EXTENDED)****F.7.6.1 createAbstractionDefinition**

Description: Create a new abstractionDef with the given VLVN, busDefVLVN, logicalName and type and returns its abstractionDefID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: abstractionDefID of type **String** - Handle to a new abstractionDef element
- Input: abstractionDefVLVN of type **String[]** - AbstractionDef VLVN
- Input: busDefVLVN of type **String[]** - BusDef VLVN
- Input: logicalName of type **String** - Logical port name
- Input: type of type **String** - Logical port style (wire or transactional)

**F.7.6.2 setAbstractionDefinitionExtends**

Description: Set extends with the given value for the given abstractionDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefID of type **String** - handle to an abstractionDef element
- Input: abstractionDefVLVN of type **String[]** - AbstractionDef VLVN

### F.7.6.3 addAbstractionDefinitionPort

Description: Add abstractionDefPort with the given logicalName and type to the given abstractionDef element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to a new abstractionDefPort element
- Input: abstractionDefID of type **String** - handle to an abstractionDef element
- Input: logicalName of type **String** - Logical port name
- Input: type of type **String** - Logical port style (wire or transactional)

### F.7.6.4 removeAbstractionDefinitionPort

Description: Remove the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

### F.7.6.5 setAbstractionDefPortAddress

Description: Set isAddress with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: isAddress of type **Boolean** - Represents logical port an address

### F.7.6.6 setAbstractionDefPortData

Description: Set isData with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: isData of type **Boolean** - Represents logical port data

### F.7.6.7 setAbstractionDefPortClock

Description: Set isClock with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: isClock of type **Boolean** - Represents logical port a clock

### F.7.6.8 setAbstractionDefPortReset

Description: Set isReset with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: isReset of type **Boolean** - Represents logical port a reset

### F.7.6.9 addAbstractionDefPortMode

Description: Add abstractionDefPortMode with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to a new abstractionDefPort-Mode element
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

- Input: mode of type ***String*** - Logical port mode (onMaster, onSlave, onSystem)

#### F.7.6.10 setAbstractionDefPortModeGroup

Description: Set group with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: group of type ***String*** - Logical port group

#### F.7.6.11 setAbstractionDefPortModePresence

Description: Set presence with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: presence of type ***String*** - Logical port presence

#### F.7.6.12 setAbstractionDefPortModeWidth

Description: Set width with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: width of type ***String*** - Logical port width

#### F.7.6.13 setAbstractionDefPortModeDirection

Description: Set direction with the given value for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: direction of type ***String*** - Logical port direction

#### F.7.6.14 addAbstractionDefPortModeDriveConstraint

Description: Add driveConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: driveConstraintID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new driveConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: type of type ***String*** - DriveConstraint type

#### F.7.6.15 addAbstractionDefPortModeLoadConstraint

Description: Add loadConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: loadConstraintID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new loadConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type ***String*** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: type of type ***String*** - LoadConstraint type

#### F.7.6.16 addAbstractionDefPortModeTimingConstraint

Description: Add timingConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a new timingConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: clockName of type **String** - TimingConstraint clock name

#### F.7.6.17 addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeDriveConstraint

Description: Add mirrored driveConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: driveConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a new driveConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: type of type **String** - DriveConstraint type

#### F.7.6.18 addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeLoadConstraint

Description: Add mirrored loadConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a new loadConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: type of type **String** - LoadConstraint type

#### F.7.6.19 addAbstractionDefPortMirroredModeTimingConstraint

Description: Add mirrored timingConstraint with the given type for the given abstractionDefPortMode element

- Returns: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a new timingConstraint element
- Input: abstractionDefPortModeID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPortMode element
- Input: clockName of type **String** - TimingConstraint clock name

#### F.7.6.20 setAbstractionDefPortDefaultValue

Description: Set defaultValue with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: value of type **Number** - Logical port default value

#### F.7.6.21 setAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriver

Description: Set requiresDriver with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port requiresDriver value

### F.7.6.22 setAbstractionDefPortRequiresDriverType

Description: Set driverType attribute of requiresDriver with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: type of type **String** - Logical port requiresDriver type value

### F.7.6.23 setAbstractionDefPortModelInitiative

Description: Set initiative with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: initiative of type **String** - Logical port initiative

### F.7.6.24 setAbstractionDefPortModeKind

Description: Set kind with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: kind of type **String** - Logical port kind

### F.7.6.25 setAbstractionDefPortModeKindCustom

Description: Set custom attribute of kind with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: kindCustom of type **String** - Logical port kind custom

### F.7.6.26 setAbstractionDefPortModeBusWidth

Description: Set busWidth with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: busWidth of type **Number** - Logical port busWidth

### F.7.6.27 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolType

Description: Set protocolType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: type of type **String** - Logical port type

### F.7.6.28 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolTypeCustom

Description: Set custom attribute of protocolType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element

- Input: typeCustom of type **String** - Logical port type custom

#### **F.7.6.29 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadName**

Description: Set payloadName with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: name of type **String** - Logical port payload name

#### **F.7.6.30 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadType**

Description: Set payloadType with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: type of type **String** - Logical port payload type

#### **F.7.6.31 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtension**

Description: Set payloadExtension with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: extension of type **String** - Logical port extension

#### **F.7.6.32 setAbstractionDefPortModeProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory**

Description: Set mandatory attribute of payloadExtension with the given value for the given abstractionDefPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionDefPortID of type **String** - Handle to abstractionDefPort element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - Logical port extension mandatory

### **F.7.7 Abstractor operations (BASE)**

#### **F.7.7.1 getAbstractorAbstractorMode**

Description: Returns the abstractorMode for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: mode of type **String** - Abstractor mode value
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

#### **F.7.7.2 getAbstractorBusType**

Description: Returns the busType for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: busDefVLNV of type **String[]** - BusDef VLNV
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.3 getAbstractorAbstractorInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns the abstractorInterfaceIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: abstractorBusInterfaceIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractorBusInterface handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.4 getAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionTypeIDs

Description: Returns the abstractionTypeIDs for the given abstractorBusInterface element

- Returns: abstractionTypeIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractionType handles
- Input: abstractorBusInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorBusInterface element

### F.7.7.5 getAbstractorViewIDs

Description: Returns the abstractorViewIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: abstractorViewIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractorView handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.6 getAbstractorComponentInstantiationsID

Description: Returns the componentInstantiationIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: componentInstantiationIDs of type **String[]** - List of componentInstantiation handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.7 getAbstractorPortIDs

Description: Returns the portIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: portIDs of type **String[]** - List of port handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.8 getAbstractorGeneratorIDs

Description: Returns the generatorIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: generatorIDs of type **String[]** - List of generator handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.9 getAbstractorChoiceIDs

Description: Returns the choiceIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: choiceIDs of type **String[]** - List of choice handles
- Input: abstractorID | abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

### F.7.7.10 getAbstractorFileSetIDs

Description: Returns the fileSetIDs for the given abstractor or abstractorInstance element

- Returns: `fileSetIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileSet handles
- Input: `abstractorID` | `abstractorInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractor or abstractorInstance element

## F.7.8 Abstractor operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.8.1 createAbstractor

Description: Create a new abstractor with the given VLVN and returns its abstractorID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: `abstractorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new abstractor
- Input: `abstractorVLVN` of type ***String[]*** - VLVN for a new abstractor
- Input: `mode` of type ***String*** - Abstractor mode
- Input: `busDefVLVN` of type ***String*** - BusDef VLVN
- Input: `busInterfaceName` of type ***String*** - First busInterface name
- Input: `busInterfaceName` of type ***String*** - Second busInterfaceName

### F.7.8.2 addAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionType

Description: Add an abstractionType with the given abstractionRef for the given abstractorBusInterface element

- Returns: `abstractionTypeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new abstractionType
- Input: `abstractorBusInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorBusInterface element
- Input: `abstractionRef` of type ***String[]*** - AbstractionDef VLVN

### F.7.8.3 removeAbstractorBusInterfaceAbstractionType

Description: Remove the given abstractionType element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `abstractionTypeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractionType element

### F.7.8.4 addAbstractorView

Description: Add an abstractorView with the given name and envIdentifier for the given abstractor element

- Returns: `abstractorViewID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new abstractorView
- Input: `abstractorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractor element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Abstractor view name
- Input: `envIdentifier` of type ***String[]*** - Abstractor view envIdentifier

### F.7.8.5 removeAbstractorView

Description: Remove the given abstractorView element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `abstractorViewID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorView element

### F.7.8.6 addAbstractorComponentInstantiation

Description: Add a componentInstantiation with the given name for the given abstractor element

- Returns: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a new componentInstantiation
- Input: abstractorID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor element
- Input: name of type **String** - ComponentIntstanciation name

### F.7.8.7 removeAbstractorComponentInstantiation

Description: Remove the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.8.8 addAbstractorPort

Description: Add a port with the given name, type, and directionOrInitiative for the given abstractor element

- Returns: portID of type **String** - Handle to a new port
- Input: abstractorID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor element
- Input: name of type **String** - port name
- Input: type of type **String** - Port type (wire or transactional)
- Input: directionOrInitiative of type **String** - Port direction or initiative

### F.7.8.9 removeAbstractorPort

Description: Remove the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.8.10 addAbstractorGenerator

Description: Add a generator with the given name and path to the given abstractor element

- Returns: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a new generator
- Input: abstractorID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor element
- Input: name of type **String** - Generator name
- Input: generatorExecutable of type **String** - Path to generator executable

### F.7.8.11 removeAbstractorGenerator

Description: Remove the given generator element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.8.12 addAbstractorChoice

Description: Add a choice with the given name and enumerations to the given abstractor element

- Returns: choiceID of type **String** - Handle to a new choice
- Input: abstractorID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor element

- Input: name of type **String** - Choice name
- Input: enumerations of type **String[]** - List of enumerations

#### F.7.8.13 removeAbstractorChoice

Description: Remove the given choice element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: choiceID of type **String** - Handle to a choice element

#### F.7.8.14 addAbstractorFileSet

Description: Add a fileSet with the given name to the given abstractor element

- Returns: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a new fileSet
- Input: abstractorID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractor element
- Input: name of type **String** - FileSet name

#### F.7.8.15 removeAbstractorFileSet

Description: Remove the given fileSet element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSet element

### F.7.9 Abstractor view operations (BASE)

#### F.7.9.1 getAbstractorViewEnvIdentifier

Description: Returns envIdentifier for the given abstractorView element

- Returns: envIdentifier of type **String[]** - View envIdentifier
- Input: abstractorViewID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorView element

#### F.7.9.2 getAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRef

Description: Returns componentInstantiationRef for the given abstractorView element

- Returns: componentInstantiationName of type **String** - Name of componentInstantiation
- Input: abstractorViewID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorView element

#### F.7.9.3 getAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRefID

Description: Returns componentInstantiationID for the given abstractorView element

- Returns: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation
- Input: abstractorViewID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorView element

### F.7.10 Abstractor view operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.10.1 setAbstractorViewComponentInstantiationRef

Description: Set componentInstantiationRef for the given abstractorView element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractorViewID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorView element

- Input: componentInstantiationRef of type ***String*** - componentInstantiation name

## F.7.11 Access handle operations (BASE)

### F.7.11.1 getAccessHandleForce

Description: Returns the value of attribute force for a given accessHandle element

- Returns: force of type ***Boolean*** - Value of the force attribute
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element

### F.7.11.2 getAccessHandleViewIDs

Description: Returns the viewIDs for a given accessHandle element

- Returns: viewIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of view handles
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element

### F.7.11.3 getAccessHandleIndices

Description: Returns the indices for a given accessHandle element

- Returns: indices of type ***Number[]*** - List of indices
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element

### F.7.11.4 getAccessHandleSliceIDs

Description: Returns the sliceIDs for a given accessHandle element

- Returns: sliceIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of slice handles
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element

## F.7.12 Access handle operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.12.1 setAccessHandleForce

Description: Set the given value for the attribute force for the given accessHandle element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element
- Input: force of type ***Boolean*** - Value of the attribute force

### F.7.12.2 addAccessHandleViewName

Description: Add a viewRef with the given name to the given accessHandle element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element
- Input: viewName of type ***String*** - View name

### F.7.12.3 removeAccessHandleViewName

Description: Remove the viewRef with the given name from the given accessHandle element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: accessHandleID of type ***String*** - Handle to an accessHandle element

- Input: viewName of type **String** - View name

#### F.7.12.4 addAccessHandleSlice

Description: Add a slice with the given pathSegmentNames and the given indices to the given accessHandle element

- Returns: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a new slice
- Input: accessHandleID of type **String** - Handle to an accessHandle element
- Input: pathSegmentNames of type **String[]** - List of pathSegmentNames
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

#### F.7.12.5 removeAccessHandleSlice

Description: Remove the given slice

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element

### F.7.13 Address space operations (BASE)

#### F.7.13.1 getAddressSpaceRange

Description: Returns the range of the given addressSpace element

- Returns: range of type **Number** - AddressSpace range
- Input: addressSpaceID of type **String** - Handle to an addressSpace element

#### F.7.13.2 getAddressSpaceWidth

Description: Returns the width of the given addressSpace element

- Returns: width of type **Number** - AddressSpace width
- Input: addressSpaceID of type **String** - Handle to an addressSpace element

#### F.7.13.3 getAddressSpaceSegmentIDs

Description: Returns the segmentIDs of the given addressSpace element

- Returns: segmentIDs of type **String[]** - List of segment handles
- Input: addressSpaceID of type **String** - Handle to an addressSpace element

#### F.7.13.4 getSegmentAddressOffset

Description: Returns the addressOffset of the given segment element

- Returns: addressOffset of type **Number** - Segment address offset
- Input: segmentID of type **String** - Handle to a segment element

#### F.7.13.5 getSegmentRange

Description: Returns the range of the given segment element

- Returns: range of type **Number** - Segment range
- Input: segmentID of type **String** - Handle to a segment element

### F.7.13.6 getAddressSpaceAddressUnitBits

Description: Returns the addressUnitBits for the given addressSpace element

- Returns: `addressUnitBits` of type ***Number*** - AddressSpace addressUnitBits
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

### F.7.13.7 getAddressSpaceExecutableImageIDs

Description: Returns the executableImageIDs for the given addressSpace element

- Returns: `executableImageIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of executableImage handles
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

### F.7.13.8 getExecutableImageFileBuilderIDs

Description: Returns the fileBuilderIDs for the given executableImage element

- Returns: `fileBuilderIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileBuilder handles
- Input: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an executableImage element

### F.7.13.9 getFileBuilderFileType

Description: Returns the fileType for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: `fileType` of type ***String*** - FileBuilder FileType
- Input: `fileBuilderID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.13.10 getFileBuilderCommand

Description: Returns the command for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: `command` of type ***String*** - FileBuilder command
- Input: `fileBuilderID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.13.11 getFileBuilderFlags

Description: Returns the flags for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: `flags` of type ***String*** - FileBuilder flags
- Input: `fileBuilderID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.13.12 getFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Returns the replaceDefaultFlags for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - FileBuilder replaceDefaultFlags
- Input: `fileBuilderID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.13.13 getExecutableImageLinker

Description: Returns the linker for the given executableImage element

- Returns: `linker` of type ***String*** - Linker value
- Input: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an executableImage element

#### F.7.13.14 getExecutableImageLinkerFlags

Description: Returns the linkerFlags for the given executableImage element

- Returns: `linkerFlags` of type ***String*** - LinkerFlags value
- Input: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an executableImage element

#### F.7.13.15 getExecutableImageLinkerCommandFileID

Description: Returns the linkerCommandFileID for the given executableImage element

- Returns: `linkerCommandFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile
- Input: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an executableImage element

#### F.7.13.16 getLinkerCommandFileName

Description: Returns the name for a given linkerCommandFile

- Returns: `fileName` of type ***Uri*** - LinkerCommandFile filename
- Input: `linkerCommandFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile

#### F.7.13.17 getLinkerCommandFileLineSwitch

Description: Returns the commandLineSwitch for a given linkerCommandFile

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - LinkerCommandFile commandLineSwitch value
- Input: `linkerCommandFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile

#### F.7.13.18 getLinkerCommandFileEnable

Description: Returns the enable for a given linkerCommandFile

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - LinkerCommandFile enable value
- Input: `linkerCommandFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile

#### F.7.13.19 getLinkerCommandGeneratorIDs

Description: Returns the generatorIDs for a given linkerCommandFile

- Returns: `generatorIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of generator handles
- Input: `linkerCommandFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile

#### F.7.13.20 getAddressSpaceLocalMemoryMapID

Description: Returns the localMemoryMapID for a given addressSpace element

- Returns: `localMemoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a localMemoryMap
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

#### F.7.13.21 getLocalMemoryMapAddressBlockIDs

Description: Returns the localAddressBlockIDs for a given localMemory map element

- Returns: `localAddressBlockIDs` of type ***String[]*** - Handle to a localAddressBlock
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

**F.7.13.22 getLocalMemoryMapBankIDs**

Description: Returns the localBankIDs for a given localMemory map element

- Returns: `localBankIDs` of type ***String[]*** - Handle to a localBank
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

**F.7.14 Address space operations (EXTENDED)****F.7.14.1 addAddressSpaceSegment**

Description: Add a segment with the given name, addressOffset, and range to the given addressSpace element

- Returns: `segmentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new segment element
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Segment name
- Input: `addressOffset` of type ***String*** - Segment addressOffset
- Input: `range` of type ***String*** - Segment range

**F.7.14.2 removeAddressSpaceSegment**

Description: Remove the given segment element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `segmentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a segment element

**F.7.14.3 setAddressSpaceAddressUnitBits**

Description: Set the addressUnitBits with the given value to the given address space element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element
- Input: `addressUnitBits` of type ***Number*** - AddressSpace addressUnitBits

**F.7.14.4 addAddressSpaceExecutableImage**

Description: Add an executableImage with the given name to the given address space element

- Returns: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new executableImage element
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - ExecutableImage name

**F.7.14.5 removeAddressSpaceExecutableImage**

Description: Remove the given executableImage element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `executableImageID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an executableImage element

**F.7.14.6 addExecutableImageFileBuilderID**

Description: Add a fileBuilder with the given fileType and command to the given executableImage element

- Returns: `fileBuilderID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new fileBuilder element

- Input: executableImageID of type **String** - Handle to an executableImage element
- Input: fileType of type **String** - FileBuilder fileType
- Input: command of type **String** - FileBuilder commands

#### F.7.14.7 removeExecutableImageFileBuilderID

Description: Remove the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type Boolean - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

#### F.7.14.8 setFileBuilderFlags

Description: Set the flags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element
- Input: flags of type **String** - FileBuilder flags

#### F.7.14.9 setFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Set the replaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - FileBuilder replaceDefaultFlags

#### F.7.14.10 setExecutableImageLinker

Description: Set the linker with the given value for the given executableImage element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: executableImageID of type **String** - Handle to an executableImage element
- Input: linker of type **String** - ExecutableImage linker

#### F.7.14.11 setExecutableImageLinkerFlags

Description: Set the linkerFlags with the given value for the given executableImage element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: executableImageID of type **String** - Handle to an executableImage element
- Input: linkerFlags of type **String** - ExecutableImage linkerFlags

#### F.7.14.12 addExecutableImageLinkerCommandFile

Description: Set the linkerCommandFile with the given value for the given executableImage element

- Returns: linkerCommandFileID of type **String** - Handle to a new linkerCommandFile element
- Input: executableImageID of type **String** - Handle to an executableImage element
- Input: name of type **String** - ExecutableImage linkerCommandFile
- Input: commandLineSwitch of type **String** - Flag on the command line specifying the linker command file
- Input: enable of type **Boolean** - Indicates whether to use this linker command file in the default scenario

#### F.7.14.13 removeExecutableImageLinkerCommandFile

Description: Remove the given linkerCommandFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: linkerCommandFileID of type **String** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile

#### F.7.14.14 addLinkerCommandFileGenerator

Description: Set the generatorRef with the given value for the given linkerCommandFile element

- Returns: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a new generator element
- Input: linkerCommandFileID of type **String** - Handle to a linkerCommandFile
- Input: generatorRef of type **String** - Generator name

#### F.7.14.15 removeLinkerCommandFileGenerator

Description: Remove the given generator element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

#### F.7.14.16 addLocalMemoryMapAddressBlock

Description: Add an addressBlock with the given name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given localMemoryMap element

- Returns: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to a new addressBlock element
- Input: localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a localMemoryMap element
- Input: name of type **String** - AddressBlock name
- Input: baseAddress of type **Number** - AddressBlock baseAddress
- Input: range of type **Number** - AddressBlock range
- Input: width of type **Number** - AddressBlock width

#### F.7.14.17 removeLocalMemoryMapAddressBlock

Description: Remove the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element

#### F.7.14.18 addLocalMemoryMapBank

Description: Add a localBank with the given name and baseAddress to the given localMemoryMap element

- Returns: localBankID of type **String** - Handle to a new localBank element
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: name of type **String** - LocalBank name
- Input: baseAddress of type **Number** - LocalBank baseAddress

#### F.7.14.19 removeLocalMemoryMapBank

Description: Remove the given localBank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: localBankID of type **String** - Handle to a localBank element

## F.7.15 Array operations (BASE)

### F.7.15.1 getArrayIDs

Description: Returns arrayIDs of the given element

- Returns: arrayIDs of type **String[]** - List of array handles
- Input: arrayContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an array element

### F.7.15.2 getArrayRange

Description: Returns range of the given array element

- Returns: range of type **Number[]** - Range with left in index 0 and right in index 1
- Input: arrayID of type **String** - Handle to an array element

### F.7.15.3 getArrayRangeExpression

Description: Returns the range expressions of the given array element

- Returns: rangeExpression of type **String[]** - Range expression with left index 0 and right in index 1
- Input: arrayID of type **String** - Handle to an array element

## F.7.16 Array operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.16.1 addArray

Description: Add an array to the given element

- Returns: arrayID of type **String** - Handle to new array
- Input: arrayContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an array element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range expression with left in index 0 and right in index 1

### F.7.16.2 removeArray

Description: Remove the given array

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: arrayID of type **String** - Handle to an array element

## F.7.17 Assertion operations (BASE)

### F.7.17.1 getAssertionIDs

Description: Returns assertionIDs of the given element

- Returns: assertionIDs of type **String[]** - List of assertion handles
- Input: assertionContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has assertion elements

### F.7.17.2 getAssertionValue

Description: Returns value of the given assertion element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Assertion value
- Input: assertionID of type **String** - Handle to an assertion element

### F.7.17.3 getAssertionValueExpression

Description: Returns expression of the given assertion element

- Returns: expression of type **String** - Assertion expression
- Input: assertionID of type **String** - Handle to an assertion element

### F.7.17.4 addAssertion

Description: Add an assertion with the given name and given value to the given element

- Returns: assertionID of type **String** - Handle to a new assertion
- Input: assertionContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has assertion elements
- Input: name of type **String** - Assertion name
- Input: expression of type **String** - Assertion expression

### F.7.17.5 removeAssertion

Description: Remove the given assertion

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: assertionID of type **String** - Handle to an assertion element

### F.7.17.6 setAssertionValue

Description: Set the value of the given assertion

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: assertionID of type **String** - Handle to an assertion element
- Input: expression of type **String** - Assertion expression

## F.7.18 BitsInLau get operations (BASE)

### F.7.18.1 getBitsInLauValue

Description: Returns bitsInLau value in the given element

- Returns: value of type **Number** - BitsInLau value
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a bitsInLau element

### F.7.18.2 getBitsInLauValueExpression

Description: Returns bitsInLau expression in the given element

- Returns: expression of type **String** - BitsInLau expression
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a bitsInLau element

## F.7.19 BitsInLau get operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.19.1 addBitsInLauValue

Description: Add the given bitsInLau expression to the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a bitsInLau element
- Input: expression of type **string** - BitsInLau expression

### F.7.19.2 removeBitsInLauValue

Description: Remove the bitsInLau element from the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a bitsInLau element

### F.7.19.3 setBitsInLauValue

Description: Set the given bitsInLau expression in the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a bitsInLau element
- Input: expression of type **String** - BitsInLau expression

## F.7.20 Bridge operations (BASE)

### F.7.20.1 getBridgeMasterID

Description: Returns the busInterfaceID of the masterRef attribute in the given bridge element

- Returns: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to bus interface master
- Input: bridgeID of type **String** - Handle to a bridge element

## F.7.21 Bridge operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.21.1 setBridgeMasterID

Description: Set the value of the masterRef attribute for the given busInterfaceID in the given bridge element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bridgeID of type **String** - Handle to a bridge element
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a bus interface master

## F.7.22 Bus definition operations (BASE)

### F.7.22.1 getBusDefinitionDirectConnection

Description: Returns directConnection for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - BusDef directionConnection
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.2 getBusDefinitionBroadcast**

Description: Returns broadcast for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: value of type ***Boolean*** - BusDef broadcast
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.3 getBusDefinitionIsAddressable**

Description: Returns isAddressable for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: value of type ***Boolean*** - BusDef isAddressable
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.4 getBusDefinitionExtends**

Description: Returns extends for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: busDefVLNV of type ***String[]*** - BusDef VLNV
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.5 getBusDefinitionMaxMasters**

Description: Returns maxMasters for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: value of type ***Number*** - BusDef maxMasters
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.6 getBusDefinitionMaxSlaves**

Description: Returns maxSlaves for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: value of type ***Number*** - BusDef maxSlaves
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.22.7 getBusDefinitionSystemGroupNames**

Description: Returns systemGroupNames for a given busDef or busDefInstance element

- Returns: groupNames of type ***String[]*** - BusDef systemGroupNames
- Input: busDefID | busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef or busDefInstance element

**F.7.23 Bus definition operations (EXTENDED)****F.7.23.1 createBusDefinition**

Description: Create a new busDef with the given VLNV, directConnection, and isAddressable and returns its busDefID; fails and returns null if VLNV already exists

- Returns: busDefID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new busDef element
- Input: busDefVLNV of type ***String[]*** - BusDef VLNV

- Input: directConnection of type **Boolean** - BusDef directionConnection
- Input: isAddressable of type **Boolean** - BusDef isAddressable

#### F.7.23.2 setBusDefinitionDirectConnection

Description: Set directionConnection with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - BusDef directionConnection

#### F.7.23.3 setBusDefinitionBroadcast

Description: Set broadcast with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - BusDef broadcast

#### F.7.23.4 setBusDefinitionIsAddressable

Description: Set isAddressable with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - BusDef isAddressable

#### F.7.23.5 setBusDefinitionExtends

Description: Set extends with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: busDefVNV of type **String[]** - BusDef VNV

#### F.7.23.6 setBusDefinitionMaxMasters

Description: Set maxMasters with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: value of type **Number** - BusDef maxMasters

#### F.7.23.7 setBusDefinitionMaxSlaves

Description: Set maxSlaves with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busDefID of type **String** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: value of type **Number** - BusDef maxSlaves

#### F.7.23.8 setBusDefinitionSystemGroupNames

Description: Set systemGroupNames with the given value for the given busDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: busDefID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDef element
- Input: groupNames of type ***String[]*** - BusDef systemGroupNames

## F.7.24 Businterface operations (BASE)

### F.7.24.1 getBusInterfaceBusInstanceID

Description: Returns the busDefInstanceID for a given busInterface element

- Returns: busDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busDefInstance
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

### F.7.24.2 getBusInterfaceAbstractionTypeIDs

Description: Returns the abstractionTypeIDs for a given busInterface element

- Returns: abstractionTypeIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of abstractionType handles
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

### F.7.24.3 getAbstractionTypeViewRefs

Description: Returns the viewRefs for a given abstractionType element

- Returns: viewNames of type ***String[]*** - List of view names
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractionType element

### F.7.24.4 getAbstractionTypeAbstractionInstanceID

Description: Returns the abstractionDefInstanceID for a given abstractionType element

- Returns: abstractionDefInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a abstractionDefInstance
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractionType element

### F.7.24.5 getAbstractionTypePortMapIDs

Description: Returns the portMapIDs for a given abstractionType element

- Returns: portMapIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of portMap handles
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractionType element

### F.7.24.6 getPortMapLogicalPortID

Description: Returns the logicalPortID for a given portMap element

- Returns: logicalPortID of type ***String*** - Handle to a logicalPort
- Input: portMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element

### F.7.24.7 getPortMapPhysicalPortID

Description: Returns the physicalPortID for a given portMap element

- Returns: physicalPortID of type ***String*** - Handle to a physicalPort
- Input: portMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element

#### F.7.24.8 getPortMapRange

Description: Returns the range for a given logicalPort or physicalPort element

- Returns: `range` of type ***Number[]*** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: `logicalPortID | physicalPortID` of type ***String*** - logicalPortID | physicalPortID

#### F.7.24.9 getPortMapIndices

Description: Returns the indices for a given physicalPort element

- Returns: `indices` of type ***Number[]*** - List of indices
- Input: `physicalPortID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a physicalPort element

#### F.7.24.10 getPortMapLogicalTieOff

Description: Returns the logicalTieOff for a given portMap element

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - Tie off value for logical port in port map
- Input: `portMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element

#### F.7.24.11 getPortMapIsInformative

Description: Returns the isInformative for a given portMap element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates if portmap should be nestlisted (false) or not (true)
- Input: `portMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element

#### F.7.24.12 getBusInterfaceInterfaceMode

Description: Returns the interfaceMode for a given busInterface element

- Returns: `interfaceMode` of type ***String*** - Interface mode (e.g., master, slave, system)
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.13 getBusInterfaceMasterAddressSpaceID

Description: Returns the addressSpaceID for a given busInterface element (master only)

- Returns: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.14 getBusInterfaceMasterBaseAddress

Description: Returns the baseAddress for a given busInterface element (master only)

- Returns: `baseAddress` of type ***Number*** - Base address
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.15 getBusInterfaceSlaveMemoryMapID

Description: Returns the memoryMapID for a given busInterface element (slave only)

- Returns: `memoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMap
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.16 getBusInterfaceSlaveBridgeIDs

Description: Returns the bridgeIDs for a given busInterface element (slave only)

- Returns: `bridgeIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of bridge handles
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.17 getBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroupIDs

Description: Returns the fileSetGroupIDs for a given busInterface element (slave only)

- Returns: `fileSetGroupIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileSetGroup handles
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.18 getFileSetName

Description: Returns the name for a given fileSetGroup element

- Returns: `name` of type ***String*** - FileSetGroup name
- Input: `fileSetGroupID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSetGroup element

#### F.7.24.19 getFileSetGroupFileSetIDs

Description: Returns the fileSetIDs for a given fileSetGroup element

- Returns: `fileSetIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileSet handles
- Input: `fileSetGroupID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSetGroup element

#### F.7.24.20 getBusInterfaceGroupName

Description: Returns the groupName for a given busInterface element (system, mirroredSystem, and group only)

- Returns: `name` of type ***String*** - Group name
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.21 getBusInterfaceMirroredSlaveRemapAddressIDs

Description: Returns the remapAddressIDs for a given busInterface element (mirroredSlave only)

- Returns: `remapAddressIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of remapAddress handles
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.22 getBusInterfaceMirroredSlaveRange

Description: Returns the ranges for a given busInterface element (mirroredSlave only)

- Returns: `range` of type ***Number*** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.23 getBusInterfaceMonitorInterfaceMode

Description: Returns the monitor interfaceMode attribute value for a given busInterface element (monitor only)

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - InterfaceMode value
- Input: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.24 getBusInterfaceConnectionRequired

Description: Returns the connectionRequired for a given busInterface element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - ConnectionRequired value
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.25 getBusInterfaceBitSteering

Description: Returns the bitSteering for a given busInterface element

- Returns: value of type **String** - BitSteering value
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.24.26 getBusInterfaceEndianness

Description: Returns the endianness for a given busInterface element

- Returns: value of type **String** - Endianness value
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element

### F.7.25 Businterface operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.25.1 addBusInterfaceAbstractionType

Description: Add an abstractionType with the given abstractionRef to the given busInterface element

- Returns: abstractionTypeID of type **String** - Handle to a new abstractionType element
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: abstractionRef of type **String[]** - AbstractionDef VLNV

#### F.7.25.2 removeBusInterfaceAbstractionType

Description: Remove the given abstractionType element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionType element

#### F.7.25.3 addAbstractionTypeViewRef

Description: Add a viewRef with the given name to the given abstractionType element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionType element
- Input: viewRef of type **String** - View name

#### F.7.25.4 removeAbstractionTypeViewRef

Description: Remove the viewRef element with the given viewName

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractionType element
- Input: viewRef of type **String** - View name

**F.7.25.5 addAbstractionTypePortMap**

Description: Add a portMap with the given name, logicalPortName, and physicalPortNameOrTieValue to the given abstractionType

- Returns: portMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new portMap element
- Input: abstractionTypeID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractionType element
- Input: logicalPortName of type ***String*** - Logical port name
- Input: physicalPortNameOrTieValue of type ***String*** - Physical port name or logical tie off value

**F.7.25.6 removeAbstractionTypePortMap**

Description: Remove the given portMap element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element

**F.7.25.7 setPortMapRange**

Description: Set the range of the given logicalPort or physicalPort element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: logicalPortID | physicalPortID of type ***String*** - logicalPortID | physicalPortID
- Input: range of type ***String[]*** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

**F.7.25.8 setPortMapIndices**

Description: Set the indices for the given physicalPort element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: physicalPortID of type ***String*** - Handle to a physicalPort element
- Input: indices of type ***String[]*** - List of indices

**F.7.25.9 setPortMapIsInformative**

Description: Set the isInformative for the given portMap element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a portMap element
- Input: value of type ***Boolean*** - IsInformative value

**F.7.25.10 setBusInterfaceMasterAddressSpaceName**

Description: Set the addressSpaceRef with the given name for the given busInterface element (master only)

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - AddressSpace name

**F.7.25.11 setBusInterfaceMasterBaseAddress**

Description: Set the baseAddress with the given expression for the given busInterface element (master only)

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element

- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - baseAddress expression

#### F.7.25.12 setBusInterfaceSlaveMemoryMapName

Description: Set the memoryMapRef with the given name for the given busInterface element (slave only)

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: name of type **String** - MemoryMap name

#### F.7.25.13 addBusInterfaceSlaveBridge

Description: Add a transparentBridge with the given name for the given busInterface (slave only)

- Returns: bridgeID of type **String** - Handle to a new bridge element
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: name of type **String** - BusInterface name for masterRef attribute

#### F.7.25.14 removeBusInterfaceSlaveBridge

Description: Remove the given bridge element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bridgeID of type **String** - Handle to a bridge element

#### F.7.25.15 addBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroup

Description: Add a fileSetGroup with the given name and fileSetRefs to the given busInterface element (slave only)

- Returns: fileSetGroupID of type **String** - Handle to a new fileSetGroup element
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: group of type **String** - Group name
- Input: fileSetRefs of type **String[]** - List of fileSet names

#### F.7.25.16 removeBusInterfaceSlaveFileSetGroup

Description: Remove the given fileSetGroup

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileSetGroupID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSetGroup element

#### F.7.25.17 setBusInterfaceGroupName

Description: Set the group with the given name for the given busInterface element (system, mirroredSystem, and group only)

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: group of type **String** - group name

#### F.7.25.18 setBusInterfaceConnectionRequired

Description: Set connectionRequired with the given value for the given busInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: value of type ***Boolean*** - ConnectionRequired value

#### F.7.25.19 setBusInterfaceBitSteering

Description: Set bitSteering with the given value for the given busInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: value of type ***String*** - BitSteering value

#### F.7.25.20 setBusInterfaceEndianness

Description: Set endianness with the given value for the given busInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface element
- Input: value of type ***String*** - Endianness value

### F.7.26 Catalog operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.26.1 getCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns catalogs IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type ***String*** - Handle to a catalog element

#### F.7.26.2 getIpxactFileVLNV

Description: Returns VLNV for the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: VLNV of type ***String[]*** - VLNV
- Input: ipxactFileID of type ***String*** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.3 getIpxactFileName

Description: Returns name for the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: fileName of type ***String*** - File name
- Input: ipxactFileID of type ***String*** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.4 getCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns busDefinitions IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type ***String*** - Handle to a catalog element

#### F.7.26.5 getCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns abstractionDefinitions IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type ***String*** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.6 getCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns components IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type **String[]** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.7 getCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns abstractors IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type **String[]** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.8 getCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns designs IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type **String[]** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.9 getCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns designConfigurations IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type **String[]** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.10 getCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles

Description: Returns generatorChains IpxactFileIDs for the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileIDs of type **String[]** - List of ipxactFile handles
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

### F.7.26.11 createCatalog

Description: Create a new catalog and returns its catalogID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a new catalog element
- Input: catalogVLNV of type **String[]** - Catalog VLVN

### F.7.26.12 addCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VLVN and name to catalogs in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: catalogVLNV of type **String[]** - Catalog VLVN
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Catalog file name

### F.7.26.13 removeCatalogCatalogsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.14 addCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VLVN and name to busDefinitions in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: busDefVLNV of type **String[]** - BusDef VLVN
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Bus definition file name

#### F.7.26.15 removeCatalogBusDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.16 addCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VLVN and name to abstractionDefinitions in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: abstractionDefVLNV of type **String[]** - AbstractionDef VLVN
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Abstraction definition file name

#### F.7.26.17 removeCatalogAbstractionDefinitionsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.18 addCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VLVN and name to components in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: componentVLNV of type **String[]** - Component VLVN
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Component file name

#### F.7.26.19 removeCatalogComponentsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.20 addCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VLVN and name to abstractors in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element

- Input: abstractorVNV of type **String[]** - Abstractor VNV
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Abstractor file name

#### F.7.26.21 removeCatalogAbstractorsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.22 addCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VNV and name to designs in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: designVNV of type **String[]** - Design VNV
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Design file name

#### F.7.26.23 removeCatalogDesignsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.24 addCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VNV and name to designConfigurations in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: designConfigurationVNV of type **String[]** - DesignConfiguration VNV
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Design configuration file name

#### F.7.26.25 removeCatalogDesignConfigurationsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

#### F.7.26.26 addCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles

Description: Add ipxactFile with the given VNV and name to generatorChains in the given catalog element

- Returns: ipxactFileID of type **String** - Handle to an ipxactFile element
- Input: catalogID of type **String** - Handle to a catalog element
- Input: generatorChainVNV of type **String[]** - GeneratorChain VNV
- Input: fileName of type **String** - Generator chain file name

### F.7.26.27 removeCatalogGeneratorChainsIpxactFiles

Description: Remove the given ipxactFile element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `ipxactFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an ipxactFile element

## F.7.27 Channel operations (BASE)

### F.7.27.1 getChannelBusInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns the busInterfaceIDs for the given channel element

- Returns: `busInterfaceIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of busInterfaceIDs
- Input: `channelID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a channel element

## F.7.28 Channel operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.28.1 addChannelBusInterface

Description: Add a busInterfaceRef with the given name to the given channel element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `channelID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a channel element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - BusInterface name

### F.7.28.2 removeChannelBusInterface

Description: Remove the busInterfaceRef with the given name from the given channel element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `channelID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a channel element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - BusInterface name

## F.7.29 Choice operations (BASE)

### F.7.29.1 getChoiceEnumerationIDs

Description: Returns choiceEnumerationIDs for the given choice element

- Returns: `choiceEnumerationIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of choiceEnumeration handles
- Input: `choiceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a choice element

### F.7.29.2 getEnumerationText

Description: Returns text for the given choice element

- Returns: `text` of type ***String*** - Enumeration tex
- Input: `choiceEnumerationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a choiceEnumeration element

### F.7.29.3 getEnumerationHelp

Description: Returns help for the given choice element

- Returns: `help` of type ***String*** - Enumeration help

- Input: choiceEnumerationID of type **String** - Handle to a choiceEnumeration element

### F.7.30 Choice operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.30.1 addChoiceEnumeration

Description: Add enumeration with the given name to the given choice element

- Returns: choiceEnumerationID of type **String** - Handle to a new choiceEnumeration
- Input: choiceID of type **String** - Handle to a choice element
- Input: name of type **String** - ChoiceEnumeration name

#### F.7.30.2 removeChoiceEnumeration

Description: Remove the given choiceEnumeration

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: choiceEnumerationID of type **String** - Handle to a choiceEnumeration element

#### F.7.30.3 setEnumerationText

Description: Set text with the given value for the given choiceEnumeration element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: choiceEnumerationID of type **String** - Handle to a choiceEnumeration element
- Input: text of type **String** - ChoiceEnumeration text

#### F.7.30.4 setEnumerationHelp

Description: Set help with the given value for the given choiceEnumeration element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: choiceEnumerationID of type **String** - Handle to a choiceEnumeration element
- Input: help of type **String** - ChoiceEnumeration help

### F.7.31 Component instantiation operations (BASE)

#### F.7.31.1 getComponentInstantiationIsVirtual

Description: Returns isVirtual for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - ComponentInstantiation isVirtual value
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

#### F.7.31.2 getComponentInstantiationLanguage

Description: Returns language for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: language of type **String** - ComponentInstantiation language
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.3 getComponentInstantiationLibraryName

Description: Returns libraryName for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `libraryName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation libraryName
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.4 getComponentInstantiationPackageName

Description: Returns packageName for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `packageName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation packageName
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.5 getComponentInstantiationModuleName

Description: Returns moduleName for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `moduleName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation moduleName
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.6 getComponentInstantiationArchitectureName

Description: Returns architectureName for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `architectureName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation architectureName
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.7 getComponentInstantiationConfigurationName

Description: Returns configurationName for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `configurationName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation configurationName
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.8 getComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilderIDs

Description: Returns defaultFileBuilderIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `fileBuilderIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileBuilder handles
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.9 getComponentInstantiationFileSetRefIDs

Description: Returns fileSetRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: `fileSetRefIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileSetRef handles
- Input: `componentInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.10 getFileSetRefLocalName

Description: Returns locaName for the given fileSetRef element

- Returns: localName of type **String** - FileSetRef localName
- Input: fileSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSetRef element

### F.7.31.11 getComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRefIDs

Description: Returns constraintSetRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: constraintSetRefIDs of type **String[]** - List of constraintSetRef handles
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

### F.7.31.12 getConstraintSetRefLocalName

Description: Returns locaName for the given constraintSetRefRef element

- Returns: localName of type **String** - ConstraintSetRef localName
- Input: constraintSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSetRef element

### F.7.31.13 getComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRefIDs

Description: Returns whiteboxElementRefIDs for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: whiteboxElementRefIDs of type **String[]** - List of whiteboxElementRef handles
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

## F.7.32 Component instantiation operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.32.1 setComponentInstantiationIsVirtual

Description: Set isVirtual with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - isVirtual value

### F.7.32.2 setComponentInstantiationLanguage

Description: Set language with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: language of type **String** - Language value

### F.7.32.3 setComponentInstantiationLibraryName

Description: Set libraryName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: libraryName of type **String** - LibraryName value

#### F.7.32.4 setComponentInstantiationPackageName

Description: Set packageName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: packageName of type **String** - PackageName value

#### F.7.32.5 setComponentInstantiationModuleName

Description: Set moduleName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: moduleName of type **String** - ModuleName value

#### F.7.32.6 setComponentInstantiationArchitectureName

Description: Set architectureName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: architectureName of type **String** - ArchitectureName value

#### F.7.32.7 setComponentInstantiationConfigurationName

Description: Set configurationName with the given value for the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: configurationName of type **String** - ConfigurationName value

#### F.7.32.8 addComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilder

Description: Add defaultFileBuilder with the given fileType to the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a new fileBuilder
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: fileType of type **String** - DefaultFileBuilder fileType

#### F.7.32.9 removeComponentInstantiationDefaultFileBuilder

Description: Remove the given defaultFileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

#### F.7.32.10 addComponentInstantiationFileSetRef

Description: Add fileSetRef with the given localName to the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: fileSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a new fileSetRef
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: localName of type **String** - FileSetRef localName

#### F.7.32.11 removeComponentInstantiationFileSetRef

Description: Remove the given fileSetRef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSetRef element

#### F.7.32.12 addComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRef

Description: Add constraintRefSet with the given localName to the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: constraintSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a new constraintSetRef
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: localName of type **String** - ConstraintSetRef localName

#### F.7.32.13 removeComponentInstantiationConstraintSetRef

Description: Remove the given constraintSetRef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: constraintSetRefID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSetRef element

#### F.7.32.14 addComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRef

Description: Add whiteboxElementRef with the given name, pathSegmentName, and indices to the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: whiteboxElementRefID of type **String** - Handle to a new whiteboxElementRef
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element
- Input: name of type **String** - WhiteboxElementRef name
- Input: pathSegmentName of type **String** - WhiteboxElementRef pathSegment name
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - WhiteboxElement indices

#### F.7.32.15 removeComponentInstantiationWhiteboxElementRef

Description: Remove the given whiteboxElementRef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: whiteboxElementRefID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRef element

### F.7.33 Component operations (BASE)

#### F.7.33.1 getComponentBusInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns the busInterfaceIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: busInterfaceIDs of type **String[]** - List of busInterface handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.2 getComponentIndirectInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns the indirectInterfaceIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: indirectInterfaceIDs of type **String[]** - List of indirectInterface handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.3 getComponentChannelIDs

Description: Returns the channelIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: channelIDs of type **String[]** - List of channel handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.4 getComponentRemapStateIDs

Description: Returns the remapStateIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: remapStateIDs of type **String[]** - List of remapState handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.5 getComponentAddressSpaceIDs

Description: Returns the addressSpaceIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: addressSpaceIDs of type **String[]** - List of addressSpace handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.6 getComponentMemoryMapIDs

Description: Returns the memoryMapIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: memoryMapIDs of type **String[]** - List of memoryMap handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.7 getComponentViewIDs

Description: Returns the viewIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: viewIDs of type **String[]** - List of view handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.8 getComponentSelectedViewIDs

Description: Returns the selected viewIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `viewIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of view handles (list contains selected views only)
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.9 getComponentComponentInstantiationIDs

Description: Returns the componentInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `componentInstantiationIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of componentInstantiation handles
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.10 getComponentDesignInstantiationIDs

Description: Returns the designInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `designInstantiationIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of designInstantiation handles
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.11 getComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiationIDs

Description: Returns the designConfigurationInstantiationIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `designConfigurationInstantiationIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of designConfigurationInstantiation handles
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.12 getComponentPortIDs

Description: Returns the portIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `portIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of portID handles
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.13 getComponentGeneratorIDs

Description: Returns the generatorIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `generatorIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of generatorID handles
- Input: `componentID | componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### F.7.33.14 getComponentChoiceIDs

Description: Returns the choiceIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: `choiceIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of choiceID handles

- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### **F.7.33.15 getComponentFileSetIDs**

Description: Returns the fileSetIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: fileSetIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of fileSetID handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### **F.7.33.16 getComponentWhiteboxElementIDs**

Description: Returns the whiteboxElementIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: whiteboxElementIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of whiteboxElement handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### **F.7.33.17 getComponentCpuIDs**

Description: Returns the cpuIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: cpuIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of cpu handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### **F.7.33.18 getComponentOtherClockDriverIDs**

Description: Returns the clockDriverIDs for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: clockDriverIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of clockDriver handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

#### **F.7.33.19 getComponentResetTypeIDs**

Description: Returns the resetTypeID for a given component or component instance element

- Returns: resetTypeID of type ***String[]*** - List of resetType handles
- Input: componentID | componentInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a component or componentInstance element

### **F.7.34 Component operations (EXTENDED)**

#### **F.7.34.1 createComponent**

Description: Create a new component with the given VLVN and returns its componentID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: componentID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new component
- Input: componentVLVN of type ***String[]*** - VLVN for a new component

#### F.7.34.2 addComponentBusInterface

Description: Add a busInterface with the given name, busType, interfaceMode, and group to the given component element

- Returns: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a new busInterface
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - BusInterface name
- Input: busVNV of type **String[]** - BusDef VNV
- Input: interfaceMode of type **String** - InterfaceMode string
- Input: group of type **String** - group

#### F.7.34.3 removeComponentBusInterface

Description: Remove the given busInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: busInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a busInterface element

#### F.7.34.4 addComponentIndirectInterface

Description: Add an indirectInterface with the given name, indirectAddress, indirectData, memoryMapRef or busInterfaceRef to the given component element

- Returns: indirectInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a new indirectInterface
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - IndirectInterface name
- Input: indirectAddress of type **String[]** - IndirectAddress value
- Input: indirectData of type **String[]** - IndirectData value
- Input: memoryMapRef of type **String** - Name of memoryMap or null
- Input: busInterfaceRef of type **String** - Name of busInterface or null

#### F.7.34.5 removeComponentIndirectInterface

Description: Remove the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: indirectInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

#### F.7.34.6 addComponentChannel

Description: Add a channel with the given name and busInterfaceRefs to the given component element

- Returns: channelID of type **String** - Handle to a new channel
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - Channel name
- Input: busInterfaceRefs of type **String[]** - List of busInterface names

#### F.7.34.7 removeComponentChannel

Description: Remove the given channel element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: channelID of type **String** - Handle to a channel element

#### F.7.34.8 addComponentRemapState

Description: Add a remapState with the given name to the given component

- Returns: `remapStateID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new remapState
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - RemapState name

#### F.7.34.9 removeComponentRemapState

Description: Remove the given remapState element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `remapStateID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a remapState element

#### F.7.34.10 addComponentAddressSpace

Description: Add an addressSpace with the given name, range, and width to the given component element

- Returns: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new addressSpace
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - AddressSpace name
- Input: `range` of type ***Number*** - AddressSpace range
- Input: `width` of type ***Number*** - AddressSpace width

#### F.7.34.11 removeComponentAddressSpace

Description: Remove the given addressSpace element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `addressSpaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressSpace element

#### F.7.34.12 addComponentMemoryMap

Description: Add a memoryMap with the given name to the given component element

- Returns: `memoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new memoryMap
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - MemoryMap name

#### F.7.34.13 removeComponentMemoryMap

Description: Remove the given memoryMap element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `memoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMap element

#### F.7.34.14 addComponentView

Description: Add a view with the given name and envIdentifier to the given component element

- Returns: `viewID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new view
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - View name
- Input: `envIdentifier` of type ***String[]*** - EnvIdentifier value

#### F.7.34.15 removeComponentView

Description: Remove the given view element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

#### F.7.34.16 addComponentComponentInstantiation

Description: Add a componentInstantiation with the given name to the given component element

- Returns: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a new componentInstantiation
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - ComponentInstantiation name

#### F.7.34.17 removeComponentComponentInstantiation

Description: Remove the given componentInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation element

#### F.7.34.18 addComponentDesignInstantiation

Description: Add a designInstantiation with the given name and designRef to the given component element

- Returns: designInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a new designInstantiation
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - DesignInstantiation name
- Input: designVNV of type **String[]** - Design VNV

#### F.7.34.19 removeComponentDesignInstantiation

Description: Remove the given designInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: designInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a designInstantiation element

#### F.7.34.20 addComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiation

Description: Add a designConfigurationInstantiation with the given name and designConfigurationRef to the given component element

- Returns: designConfigurationInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a new designConfigurationInstantiation
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - DesignConfigurationInstantiation name
- Input: designConfigurationVNV of type **String[]** - DesignConfiguration VNV

#### F.7.34.21 removeComponentDesignConfigurationInstantiation

Description: Remove the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: `designConfigurationInstantiationID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a `designConfigurationInstantiation` element

#### F.7.34.22 **addComponentPort**

Description: Add a port with the given name, type, and directionOrInitiative to the given component element

- Returns: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new port
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Port name
- Input: `type` of type ***String*** - Port wire type (wire or transactional)
- Input: `directionOrInitiative` of type ***String*** - Port direction or initiative

#### F.7.34.23 **removeComponentPort**

Description: Remove the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.34.24 **addComponentGenerator**

Description: Add a generator with the given name and path to the given component element

- Returns: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new generator
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Generator name
- Input: `generatorExecutable` of type ***String*** - Path to generator executable

#### F.7.34.25 **removeComponentGenerator**

Description: Remove the given generator element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element

#### F.7.34.26 **addComponentChoice**

Description: Add a choice with the given name and enumerations to the given component element

- Returns: `choiceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new choice
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Choice name
- Input: `enumerations` of type ***String[]*** - List of enumeration values

#### F.7.34.27 **removeComponentChoice**

Description: Remove the given choice element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `choiceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a choice element

#### F.7.34.28 addComponentFileSet

Description: Add a fileSet with the given name to the given component element

- Returns: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new fileSet
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - FileSet name

#### F.7.34.29 removeComponentFileSet

Description: Remove the given fileSet element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element

#### F.7.34.30 addComponentWhiteboxElement

Description: Add a whiteboxElement with the given name and type to the given component element

- Returns: `whiteboxElementID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new whiteboxElement
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - WhiteboxElement name
- Input: `type` of type ***String*** - Whitebox element type

#### F.7.34.31 removeComponentWhiteboxElement

Description: Remove the given whiteboxElement element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `whiteboxElementID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a whiteboxElement element

#### F.7.34.32 addComponentCpu

Description: Add a cpu with the given name to the given component element

- Returns: `cpuID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new cpu
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Cpu name
- Input: `addressSpaceRefs` of type ***String[]*** - List of addressSpace names

#### F.7.34.33 removeComponentCpu

Description: Remove the given cpu element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `cpuID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a cpu

#### F.7.34.34 addComponentOtherClockDriver

Description: Add a clockDriver with the given name, period, offset, value, and duration to the given component element

- Returns: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new clockDriver
- Input: `componentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - ClockDriver name

- Input: period of type **Number** - Clock period
- Input: offset of type **Number** - Clock pulse offset
- Input: value of type **Number** - Clock pulse value
- Input: duration of type **Number** - Clock pulse duration

#### **F.7.34.35 removeComponentOtherClockDriver**

Description: Remove the given clockDriver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### **F.7.34.36 addComponentResetType**

Description: Add a resetType with the given name to the given component element

- Returns: resetTypeID of type **String** - Handle to a new resetType
- Input: componentID of type **String** - Handle to a component element
- Input: name of type **String** - ResetType name

#### **F.7.34.37 removeComponentResetType**

Description: Remove the given resetType element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: resetTypeID of type **String** - Handle to a resetType element

### **F.7.35 Configurable element operations (BASE)**

#### **F.7.35.1 getConfigurableElementIDs**

Description: Returns all configurableElementIDs of the given unconfigured element

- Returns: configurableElementIDs of type **String[]** - List of configurable element handles
- Input: unconfiguredElementID of type **String** - Handle to an unconfigured element

#### **F.7.35.2 getConfigurableElementValue**

Description: Returns the value of a given configurable element (default value)

- Returns: value of type **String** - Default configurable element value
- Input: configurableElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element

#### **F.7.35.3 getConfigurableElementValueExpression**

Description: Returns the expression of a given configurable element (default expression)

- Returns: expression of type **String** - Default configurable element expression
- Input: configurableElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element

#### **F.7.35.4 getConfigurableElementValueIDs**

Description: Returns all configurableElementValueIDs of the given configured element

- Returns: configurableElementValueIDs of type **String[]** - List of configurable element value handles

- Input: configuredElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configured element

#### F.7.35.5 getConfigurableElementValueValue

Description: Returns the value of a given configurable element value (actual value)

- Returns: value of type **String** - Value of the configurable element value
- Input: configurableElementValueID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element value

#### F.7.35.6 getConfigurableElementValueValueExpression

Description: Returns the expression of a given configurable element value (actual expression)

- Returns: expression of type **String** - Expression of the configurable element value
- Input: configurableElementValueID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element value

#### F.7.35.7 getConfigurableElementValueReferenceID

Description: Returns the referenceID of a given configurable element value

- Returns: referenceID of type **String** - ReferenceID of the configurable element value
- Input: configurableElementValueID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element value

#### F.7.35.8 getUnconfiguredID

Description: Returns the unconfiguredID of a given configured element

- Returns: unconfiguredElementID of type **String** - Handle to a unconfigured element
- Input: configuredElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configured element

#### F.7.35.9 setConfigurableElementValue

Description: Set the value of a given configurable element (default value)

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: configurableElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configurable element
- Input: expression of type **String** - New expression

#### F.7.35.10 addConfigurableElementValue

Description: Add a configurable element value with the given expression to the given configured element and the given referenceID

- Returns: configurableElementValueID of type **String** - Handle to new configurableElementValue
- Input: configuredElementID of type **String** - Handle to a configured element
- Input: referenceID of type **String** - Reference to a configurable element
- Input: expression of type **String** - New expression

#### F.7.35.11 removeConfigurableElementValue

Description: Remove the given configurable element value

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: configurableElementValueID of type ***String*** - Handle to a configurable element value

#### F.7.35.12 setConfigurableElementValueValue

Description: Set the given expression as value for the given configurable element value

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: configurableElementValueID of type ***String*** - Handle to a configurable element value
- Input: expression of type ***String*** - New expression

#### F.7.35.13 setConfigurableElementValueReferenceID

Description: Set the given referenceID for the given configurable element value

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: configurableElementValueID of type ***String*** - Handle to a configurable element value
- Input: referenceID of type ***String*** - New referenceID

### F.7.36 Constraint set operations (BASE)

#### F.7.36.1 getConstraintSetReferenceName

Description: Returns the value of the constraintSetId attribute for the given constraintSet

- Returns: referenceName of type ***String*** - ConstraintSetId attribute value
- Input: constraintSetID of type ***String*** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.36.2 getConstraintSetRange

Description: Returns the range for the given constraintSet

- Returns: range of type ***String[]*** - Range with left in index 0 and right in index 1
- Input: constraintSetID of type ***String*** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.36.3 getConstraintSetDriveConstraints

Description: Returns the driveConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet

- Returns: driveConstraintIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of driveConstraint handles
- Input: constraintSetID of type ***String*** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.36.4 getDriveConstraintType

Description: Returns the type for a given driveConstraint element: function class

- Returns: value of type ***String*** - Drive constraint type
- Input: driveConstraintID of type ***String*** - Handle to a driveConstraint element

#### F.7.36.5 getDriveConstraintValue

Description: Returns the value for a given driveConstraint element Format depends on the constraint type

- Returns: value of type ***String*** - Drive constraint value

- Input: driveConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a driveConstraint element

#### F.7.36.6 getConstraintSetLoadConstraints

Description: Returns the loadConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet

- Returns: loadConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - List of loadConstraint handles
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.36.7 getLoadConstraintType

Description: Returns the type for a given loadConstraint element: function class

- Returns: value of type **String** - Load constraint type
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element

#### F.7.36.8 getLoadConstraintValue

Description: Returns the value for a given loadConstraint element Format is cell function and strength or cell class and strength

- Returns: value of type **String** - Load constraint value
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element

#### F.7.36.9 getLoadConstraintCount

Description: Returns the count for a given loadConstraint element

- Returns: value of type **Number** - Load constraint count
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element

#### F.7.36.10 getConstraintSetTimingConstraints

Description: Returns the timingConstraintIDs for a given constraintSet

- Returns: timingConstraintIDs of type **String[]** - List of timingConstraint handles
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.36.11 getTimingConstraintClockDetails

Description: Returns the clockDetails for a given timingConstraint indicating the clock name, clock edge, and delay type

- Returns: clockDetails of type **String[]** - Clock details with clock name, clock edge, and delay type
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element

#### F.7.36.12 getTimingConstraintValue

Description: Returns the value for a given timingConstraint element indicating the cycle time percentage

- Returns: value of type **Number** - Timing constraint value in cycle time percentage
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element

### F.7.37 Constraint set operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.37.1 setConstraintSetReferenceName

Description: Set the given referenceName for the constraintSetId attribute for the given constraint set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element
- Input: referenceName of type **String** - ConstraintSetId attribute value

#### F.7.37.2 setConstraintSetRange

Description: Set the given range for the given constraintSet

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

#### F.7.37.3 addConstraintSetDriveConstraint

Description: Add a new driveConstraint with the given type to the given constraintSet

- Returns: driveConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to new driveConstraint
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element
- Input: type of type **String** - DriveConstraint type

#### F.7.37.4 removeConstraintSetDriveConstraint

Description: Remove the given driveConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: driveConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a driveConstraint element

#### F.7.37.5 setDriveConstraintValue

Description: Set the given value for the given driveConstraint element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: driveConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a driveConstraint element
- Input: value of type **String** - DriveConstraint value

#### F.7.37.6 addConstraintSetLoadConstraint

Description: Add a new loadConstraint with the given type to the given constraintSet

- Returns: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to new loadConstraint
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element
- Input: type of type **String** - LoadConstraint type

#### F.7.37.7 removeConstraintSetLoadConstraint

Description: Remove the given loadConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element

### F.7.37.8 setLoadConstraintValue

Description: Set the given value for the given loadConstraint element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element
- Input: value of type **String** - LoadConstraint value

### F.7.37.9 setLoadConstraintCount

Description: Set the given count for the given loadConstraint element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: loadConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a loadConstraint element
- Input: count of type **String** - LoadConstraint count

### F.7.37.10 addConstraintSetTimingConstraint

Description: Add a new timingConstraint with the given clockName to the given constraintSet

- Returns: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to new timingConstraint
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element
- Input: clockName of type **String** - timingConstraint clock name

### F.7.37.11 removeConstraintSetTimingConstraint

Description: Remove the given timingConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element

### F.7.37.12 setTimingConstraintValue

Description: Set the given value for the given timingConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element
- Input: value of type **String** - timingConstraint value

### F.7.37.13 setTimingConstraintClockEdge

Description: Set the given clockEdge for the given timingConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element
- Input: clockEdge of type **String** - timingConstraint clock edge

### F.7.37.14 setTimingConstraintDelayType

Description: Set the given delayType for the given timingConstraint

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: timingConstraintID of type **String** - Handle to a timingConstraint element
- Input: delayType of type **String** - timingConstraint delay type

## F.7.38 Cpu operations (BASE)

### F.7.38.1 getCpuAddressSpaceIDs

Description: Returns addressSpaceIDs for the given cpu element

- Returns: addressSpaceIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of addressSpace handles
- Input: cpuID of type ***String*** - Handle to a cpu element

## F.7.39 Cpu operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.39.1 addCpuAddressSpace

Description: Add the given addressSpace name to the given cpu element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: cpuID of type ***String*** - Handle to a cpu element
- Input: addressSpaceRef of type ***String*** - Name of an addressSpace

## F.7.40 Design configuration instantiation operations (BASE)

### F.7.40.1 getDesignConfigurationInstantiationLanguage

Description: Returns language for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

- Returns: language of type ***String*** - DesignConfigurationInstantiation language
- Input: designConfigurationInstantiationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfigurationInstantiation element

### F.7.40.2 getDesignConfigurationInstantiationDesignConfigurationInstanceID

Description: Returns a designConfigurationInstanceID for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

- Returns: designInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfigurationInstance
- Input: designConfigurationInstantiationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfigurationInstantiation element

## F.7.41 Design configuration instantiation operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.41.1 setDesignConfigurationInstantiationLanguage

Description: Set language with the given value for the given designConfigurationInstantiation element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: designConfigurationInstantiationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfigurationInstantiation element
- Input: language of type ***String*** - DesignConfigurationInstantiation language

## F.7.42 Design configuration operations (BASE)

### F.7.42.1 getDesignConfigurationDesignRef

Description: Returns designVLNV for the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: designVLNV of type **String[]** - Design VLNV
- Input: designConfigurationID | designConfigurationInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration or designConfigurationInstance element

### F.7.42.2 getDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfigurationIDs

Description: Returns generatorChainConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: generatorChainConfigurationIDs of type **String[]** - List of generatorChainConfiguration handles
- Input: designConfigurationID | designConfigurationInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration or designConfigurationInstance element

### F.7.42.3 getDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfigurationIDs

Description: Returns interconnectionConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: interconnectionConfigurationIDs of type **String[]** - List of interconnectionConfiguration handles
- Input: designConfigurationID | designConfigurationInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration or designConfigurationInstance element

### F.7.42.4 getInterconnectionConfigurationInterconnectionID

Description: Returns interconnectionID for the given interconnectionConfiguration element

- Returns: interconnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnection
- Input: interconnectionConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnectConfiguration element

### F.7.42.5 getInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstantiationsIDs

Description: Returns abstractorInstancesIDs for the given interconnectionConfiguration element

- Returns: abstractorInstancesIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractorInstances handles
- Input: interconnectionConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnectConfiguration element

### F.7.42.6 getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceComponentInstanceReference

Description: Returns componentRef for the given abstractorInstancesInterface element

- Returns: componentInstanceName of type **String** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: abstractorInstancesInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstancesInterface element

### F.7.42.7 getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceBusInterfaceReference

Description: Returns busRef for the given abstractorInstancesInterface element

- Returns: busInterfaceIName of type **String** - BusInterface name

- Input: abstractorInstancesInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstancesInterface element

#### F.7.42.8 getAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstanceIDs

Description: Returns the abstractorInstanceIDs for the given abstractorInstances element

- Returns: abstractorInstanceIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractorInstance handles
- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element

#### F.7.42.9 getAbstractorInstanceName

Description: Returns instanceName for the given abstractorInstance element

- Returns: instanceName of type **String** - Abstractor instance name
- Input: abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstanceElement

#### F.7.42.10 getAbstractorInstanceViewName

Description: Returns viewName for the given abstractorInstance element

- Returns: viewName of type **String** - Abstractor view name
- Input: abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstanceElement

#### F.7.42.11 getDesignConfigurationViewConfigurationIDs

Description: Returns viewConfigurationIDs for the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: viewConfigurationIDs of type **String[]** - List of viewConfiguration handles
- Input: designConfigurationID | designConfigurationInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration or designConfigurationInstance element

#### F.7.42.12 getViewConfigurationInstanceName

Description: Returns instanceName for the given viewConfiguration element

- Returns: instanceName of type **String** - Component instance name
- Input: viewConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a viewConfiguration element

#### F.7.42.13 getViewConfigurationViewID

Description: Returns configured viewID for the given viewConfiguration element

- Returns: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view (configured)
- Input: viewConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a viewConfiguration element

#### F.7.42.14 createDesignConfiguration

Description: Create a new designConfiguration with the given VLVN and returns its designID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: designConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration element
- Input: designConfigurationVLVN of type **String[]** - DesignConfiguration VLVN

#### F.7.42.15 setDesignConfigurationDesignRef

Description: Set designRef with the given VLVN for the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: designConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration element
- Input: designVLNV of type **String** - Design VLVN

#### F.7.42.16 addDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfiguration

Description: Add generatorChainConfiguration with the given VLVN to the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: generatorChainConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChainConfiguration element
- Input: designConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration element
- Input: generatorVLNV of type **String** - Generator VLVN

#### F.7.42.17 removeDesignConfigurationGeneratorChainConfiguration

Description: Remove the given generatorChainConfiguration element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorChainConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChainConfiguration element

#### F.7.42.18 addDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfiguration

Description: Add interconnectionConfiguration with the given interconnectionRef, VLVN, instance, and viewName to the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: interconnectionConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnectionConfiguration
- Input: designConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to a designConfiguration element
- Input: interconnectionRef of type **String** - Interconnection name
- Input: abstractorVLNV of type **String** - Abstractor VLVN
- Input: instanceName of type **String** - Abstractor instance name
- Input: viewName of type **String** - Abstractor instance view name

#### F.7.42.19 removeDesignConfigurationInterconnectionConfiguration

Description: Remove the given interconnectionConfiguration element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: interconnectionConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnectionConfiguration element

#### F.7.42.20 addInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstances

Description: Add abstractorInstances with the given VLVN, instance, and viewName to the given interconnectionConfiguration element

- Returns: abstractorInstancesID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element
- Input: interconnectionConfigurationID of type **String** - Handle to an interconnectionConfiguration element

- Input: abstractorVNV of type ***String*** - Abstractor VNV
- Input: instanceName of type ***String*** - Abstractor instance name
- Input: viewName of type ***String*** - Abstractor instance view name

#### **F.7.42.21 removeInterconnectionConfigurationAbstractorInstances**

Description: Remove the given abstractorInstances element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element

#### **F.7.42.22 addAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstance**

Description: Add abstractorInstance with the given VNV, instance, and viewName to the given abstractorInstances element

- Returns: abstractorInstanceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorInstantiations element
- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element
- Input: abstractorVNV of type ***String*** - Abstractor VNV
- Input: instanceName of type ***String*** - Abstractor instance name
- Input: viewName of type ***String*** - Abstractor instance view name

#### **F.7.42.23 removeAbstractorInstancesAbstractorInstance**

Description: Remove the given abstractorInstance element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type ***String*** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element

#### **F.7.42.24 addDesignConfigurationViewConfiguration**

Description: Add viewConfiguration with the given instanceName and viewName to the given designConfiguration element

- Returns: viewConfigurationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a viewConfiguration element
- Input: designConfigurationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfiguration element
- Input: componentInstanceName of type ***String*** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: viewName of type ***String*** - Component view name

#### **F.7.42.25 removeDesignConfigurationViewConfiguration**

Description: Remove the given viewConfiguration element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: viewConfigurationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a viewConfiguration element

### **F.7.43 Design configuration operations (EXTENDED)**

#### **F.7.43.1 getAbstractorInstancesInterfaceIDs**

Description: Returns the abstractorInstancesInterfaceIDs for the given abstractorInstances element

- Returns: abstractorInstancesInterfaceIDs of type ***String*** - List of abstractorInstancesInterface element handles

- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element

#### F.7.43.2 getAbstractorInstanceID

Description: Returns the abstractorInstanceID for the abstractorInstance element

- Returns: abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Abstractor instance handle
- Input: abstractorInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstanceElement

#### F.7.43.3 addAbstractorInstancesInterface

Description: Add abstractorInstancesInterface with the given componentRef and busRef to the given abstractorInstances element

- Returns: abstractorInstancesInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstancesInterface element
- Input: abstractorInstancesID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstances element
- Input: componentInstanceName of type **String** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: busRef of type **String** - BusInterface name

#### F.7.43.4 removeAbstractorInstancesInterface

Description: Remove the given abstractorInstancesInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: abstractorInstancesInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to an abstractorInstancesInterface element

### F.7.44 Design instantiation operations (BASE)

#### F.7.44.1 getDesignInstantiationDesignInstanceID

Description: Returns a designInstanceID for the given designInstantiation element

- Returns: designInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a designInstance
- Input: designInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a designInstantiation element

### F.7.45 Design operations (BASE)

#### F.7.45.1 getDesignComponentInstanceIDs

Description: Returns componentInstanceIDs for the given design element

- Returns: componentInstanceIDs of type **String[]** - List of componentInstance handles
- Input: designID | designInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a design or designInstance element

#### F.7.45.2 getComponentInstanceName

Description: Returns name for the given componentInstance element

- Returns: name of type **String** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstance element

### F.7.45.3 getDesignInterconnectionIDs

Description: Returns interconnectionsIDs for the given design element

- Returns: `interconnectionIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of interconnection handles
- Input: `designID` | `designInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a design or designInstance element

### F.7.45.4 getInterconnectionActiveInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns activeInterfaceIDs for the given interconnection element

- Returns: `activeInterfaceIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of activeInterface handles
- Input: `interconnectionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element

### F.7.45.5 getActiveInterfaceComponentInstanceReference

Description: Returns componentRef for the given activeInterface element

- Returns: `componentInstanceName` of type ***String*** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: `activeInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element

### F.7.45.6 getActiveInterfaceBusInterfaceReference

Description: Returns busRef for the given activeInterface element

- Returns: `busInterfaceName` of type ***String*** - BusInterface name of component instance
- Input: `activeInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element

### F.7.45.7 getActiveInterfaceExcludePorts

Description: Returns excludePorts for the given activeInterface element

- Returns: `excludePortNames` of type ***String[]*** - List of port names to be excluded from connecting
- Input: `activeInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element

### F.7.45.8 getInterconnectionHierInterfaceIDs

Description: Returns hierInterfaceIDs for the given activeInterface element

- Returns: `hierInterfaceIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of hierInterface handles
- Input: `interconnectionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element

### F.7.45.9 getHierInterfaceBusInterfaceReference

Description: Returns busRef for the given hierInterface element

- Returns: `busInterfaceName` of type ***String*** - Bus interface name of top component
- Input: `hierInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an hierInterface element

### F.7.45.10 getDesignMonitorInterconnectionIDs

Description: Returns monitorInterconnectionIDs for the given design element

- Returns: `monitorInterconnectionIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of monitorInterconnection handles

- Input: designID | designInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a design or designInstance element

#### **F.7.45.11 getMonitorInterconnectionMonitoredActiveInterfaceID**

Description: Returns monitorActiveInterfaceID for the given monitorInterconnection element

- Returns: monitoredInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitoredInterface
- Input: monitorInterconnectionID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterconnection element

#### **F.7.45.12 getMonitoredActiveInterfaceComponentInstanceReference**

Description: Returns componentRef for the given monitoredActiveInterface element

- Returns: componentInstanceName of type **String** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element

#### **F.7.45.13 getMonitoredActiveInterfaceBusInterfaceReference**

Description: Returns busRef for the given monitoredActiveInterface element

- Returns: busInterfaceName of type **String** - BusInterface name
- Input: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element

#### **F.7.45.14 getMonitoredActiveInterfacePath**

Description: Returns path for the given monitoredActiveInterface element

- Returns: path of type **String** - Hierarchical path separated by slash character
- Input: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element

#### **F.7.45.15 getMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterfaceIDs**

Description: Returns monitorInterfaceIDs for the given monitorInterconnection element

- Returns: monitorInterfaceIDs of type **String[]** - List of monitorInterface handles
- Input: monitorInterconnectionID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterconnection element

#### **F.7.45.16 getDesignAdHocConnectionIDs**

Description: Returns adHocConnectionsIDs for the given design element

- Returns: adHocConnectionIDs of type **String[]** - List of adHocConnection handles
- Input: designID | designInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to a design or designInstance element

#### **F.7.45.17 getAdHocConnectionTiedValue**

Description: Returns tiedValue for the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: value of type **String** - AdHoc connection tied value
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element

#### F.7.45.18 getAdHocConnectionInternalPortReferenceIDs

Description: Returns internalPortReferenceIDs for the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: adHocInternalPortReferenceIDs of type **String[]** - List of adHocInternalPortReference handles
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element

#### F.7.45.19 getAdHocInternalPortReferenceComponentInstanceReference

Description: Returns componentRef for the given internalPortReference element

- Returns: componentInstanceName of type **String** - ComponentInstance name
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.20 getAdHocInternalPortReferencePortReference

Description: Returns portRef for the given internalPortReference element

- Returns: portName of type **String** - Port name
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.21 getAdHocInternalPortReferenceRange

Description: Returns range for the given internalPortReference element

- Returns: range of type **Number[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.22 getAdHocInternalPortReferenceIndices

Description: Returns indices for the given internalPortReference element

- Returns: indices of type **Number[]** - List of indices
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.23 getAdHocConnectionExternalPortReferenceIDs

Description: Returns externalPortReferenceIDs for the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: adHocExternalPortReferenceIDs of type **String[]** - List of adHocExternalPortReference handles
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element

#### F.7.45.24 getAdHocExternalPortReferencePortReference

Description: Returns componentRef for the given externalPortReference element

- Returns: portName of type **String** - Port name
- Input: adHocExternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.25 getAdHocExternalPortReferenceRange

Description: Returns portRef for the given externalPortReference element

- Returns: `range` of type ***Number[]*** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: `adHocExternalPortReferenceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.26 getAdHocExternalPortReferenceIndices

Description: Returns range for the given externalPortReference element

- Returns: `indices` of type ***Number[]*** - List of indices
- Input: `adHocExternalPortReferenceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.27 createDesign

Description: Create a new design with the given VLN and returns its designID; fails and returns null if VLN already exists

- Returns: `designID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a design element
- Input: `designVLN` of type ***String[]*** - Design VLN

#### F.7.45.28 addDesignComponentInstance

Description: Add componentInstance with the given VLN and instance name to the given design element

- Returns: `componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a component instance element
- Input: `designID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a design element
- Input: `componentVLN` of type ***String[]*** - Component VLN
- Input: `componentInstanceName` of type ***String*** - Component instance name

#### F.7.45.29 removeDesignComponentInstance

Description: Remove the given componentInstance element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `componentInstanceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a componentInstance element

#### F.7.45.30 addDesignInterconnection

Description: Add interconnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and busRef to the given design element

- Returns: `interconnectionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element
- Input: `designID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a design element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - Interconnection name
- Input: `componentInstanceRef` of type ***String*** - Component instance name
- Input: `busInterfaceRef` of type ***String*** - Bus interface name

#### F.7.45.31 removeDesignInterconnection

Description: Remove the given interconnection element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: interconnectionID of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element

#### F.7.45.32 addInterconnectionActiveInterface

Description: Add activeInterface with the given componentInstanceRef and busRef tot the given interconnection element

- Returns: activeInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element
- Input: interconnectionID of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element
- Input: componentInstanceRef of type ***String*** - Component instance name
- Input: busInterfaceRef of type ***String*** - Bus interface name

#### F.7.45.33 removeInterconnectionActiveInterface

Description: Remove the given activeInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: activeInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element

#### F.7.45.34 setActiveInterfaceExcludePorts

Description: Set excludePorts with the given value for the given activeInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: activeInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an activeInterface element
- Input: excludePortNames of type ***String[]*** - List of port names to be excluded from connecting

#### F.7.45.35 addInterconnectionHierInterface

Description: Add hierInterface with the given busRef to the given interconnection element

- Returns: hierInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an hierInterface element
- Input: interconnectionID of type ***String*** - Handle to an interconnection element
- Input: busInterfaceRef of type ***String*** - Bus interface name

#### F.7.45.36 removeInterconnectionHierInterface

Description: Remove the given hierInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: hierInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an hierInterface element

#### F.7.45.37 addDesignMonitorConnection

Description: Add monitorInterconnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and busRef to the given design element

- Returns: monitorInterconnectionID of type ***String*** - Handle to a monitorInterconnection element
- Input: designID of type ***String*** - Handle to a design element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - MonitorInterconnection name
- Input: componentInstanceRef of type ***String*** - Component instance name
- Input: busInterfaceRef of type ***String*** - Bus interface name

#### F.7.45.38 removeDesignMonitorConnection

Description: Remove the given monitorInterconnection element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: monitorInterconnectionID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterconnection element

#### F.7.45.39 addMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterface

Description: Add monitorInterface with the given componentInstanceRef and busRef to the given monitorInterconnection element

- Returns: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element
- Input: monitorInterconnectionID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterconnection element
- Input: componentInstanceRef of type **String** - Component instance name
- Input: busInterfaceRef of type **String** - Bus interface name

#### F.7.45.40 removeMonitorInterconnectionMonitorInterface

Description: Remove the given monitorInterface interface

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element

#### F.7.45.41 addDesignAdHocConnection

Description: Add adHocConnection with the given name, componentInstanceRef, and portRef to the given design element

- Returns: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element
- Input: designID of type **String** - Handle to a design element
- Input: name of type **String** - AdHocConnection name
- Input: componentInstanceRef of type **String** - Component instance name
- Input: portRef of type **String** - Port name

#### F.7.45.42 addDesignExternalAdHocConnection

Description: Add adHocConnection with the given name and portRef to the given design element

- Returns: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element
- Input: designID of type **String** - Handle to a design element
- Input: name of type **String** - AdHocConnection name
- Input: portRef of type **String** - Port name

#### F.7.45.43 removeDesignAdHocConnection

Description: Remove the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element

#### F.7.45.44 setAdHocConnectionTiedValue

Description: Set tiedValue with the given value for the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element
- Input: tiedValue of type **String** - AdHocConnection tied value

#### F.7.45.45 addAdHocConnectionInternalPortReference

Description: Add internalPortReference with the given componentInstanceRef and portRef to the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an internalPortReference element
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element
- Input: componentInstanceRef of type **String** - Component instance name
- Input: portRef of type **String** - Port name

#### F.7.45.46 removeAdHocConnectionInternalPortReference

Description: Remove the given internalPortReference element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.47 setAdHocInternalPortReferenceRange

Description: Set range with the given range for the given internalPortReference

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

#### F.7.45.48 setAdHocInternalPortReferenceIndices

Description: Set indices with the given indices for the given internalPortReference

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocInternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocInternalPortReference element
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

#### F.7.45.49 addAdHocConnectionExternalPortReference

Description: Add externalPortReference with the portRef to the given adHocConnection element

- Returns: adHocExternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an externalPortReference element
- Input: adHocConnectionID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocConnection element
- Input: portRef of type **String** - Port name

#### F.7.45.50 removeAdHocConnectionExternalPortReference

Description: Remove the given externalPortReference element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocExternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element

#### F.7.45.51 setAdHocExternalPortReferenceRange

Description: Set range with the given range for the given externalPortReference

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocExternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

#### F.7.45.52 setAdHocExternalPortReferenceIndices

Description: Set indices with the given indices for the given externalPortReference

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: adHocExternalPortReferenceID of type **String** - Handle to an adHocExternalPortReference element
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

### F.7.46 Design operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.46.1 SetMonitoredActiveInterfacePath

Description: Set path with the given value for the given monitoredActiveInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: monitoredActiveInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitoredActiveInterface element
- Input: path of type **String** - Hierarchical path separated by slash

#### F.7.46.2 SetMonitorInterfacePath

Description: Set path with the given value for the given monitorInterface element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: monitorInterfaceID of type **String** - Handle to a monitorInterface element
- Input: path of type **String** - Hierarchical path separated by slash

### F.7.47 Driver operations (BASE)

#### F.7.47.1 getDriverRange

Description: Returns the range of the given driver element

- Returns: range of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

#### F.7.47.2 getDriverDefaultValue

Description: Returns the default value of the given driver element

- Returns: `defaultValue` of type ***String*** - Default value
- Input: `driverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a driver element

#### F.7.47.3 getDriverClockDriverID

Description: Returns the clockDriverID of the given driver element

- Returns: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to the clockDriver
- Input: `driverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a driver element

#### F.7.47.4 getClockDriverClockPeriodUnits

Description: Returns the clockPeriodUnits of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPeriodUnits` of type ***String*** - Clock period units value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.5 getClockDriverClockPeriod

Description: Returns the clockPeriod of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPeriod` of type ***Number*** - Clock period value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.6 getClockDriverClockPulseOffsetUnits

Description: Returns the clockPulseOffsetUnits of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPulseOffsetUnits` of type ***String*** - Clock pulse offset units value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.7 getClockDriverClockPulseOffset

Description: Returns the clockPulseOffset of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPulseOffset` of type ***Number*** - Clock pulse offset value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.8 getClockDriverClockPulseValue

Description: Returns the clockPulseValue of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPulseValue` of type ***Number*** - Clock pulse value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.9 getClockDriverClockPulseDurationUnits

Description: Returns the clockPulseDurationUnits of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPulseDurationUnits` of type ***String*** - Clock pulse duration units value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.10 getClockDriverClockPulseDuration

Description: Returns the clockPulseDuration of the given clockDriver element

- Returns: `clockPulseDuration` of type **Number** - Clock pulse duration value
- Input: `clockDriverID` of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.47.11 getDriverSingleShotDriverID

Description: Returns the singleShotDriverID of the given driver element

- Returns: `singleShotDriverID` of type **String** - Handle to the singleShotDriver
- Input: `driverID` of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

#### F.7.47.12 getSingleShotDriverSingleShotOffset

Description: Returns the singleShotOffset of the given singleShotDriver element

- Returns: `singleShotOffset` of type **Number** - Single shot offset
- Input: `singleShotDriverID` of type **String** - Handle to a singleShotDriver element

#### F.7.47.13 getSingleShotDriverSingleShotValue

Description: Returns the singleShotValue of the given singleShotDriver element

- Returns: `singleShotValue` of type **Number** - Single shot value
- Input: `singleShotDriverID` of type **String** - Handle to a singleShotDriver element

#### F.7.47.14 getSingleShotDriverSingleShotDuration

Description: Returns the singleShotDuration of the given singleShotDriver element

- Returns: `singleShotDuration` of type **Number** - Single shot duration
- Input: `singleShotDriverID` of type **String** - Handle to a singleShotDriver element

### F.7.48 Driver operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.48.1 setDriverRange

Description: Set the range of the given driver

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `driverID` of type **String** - Handle to a driver element
- Input: `range` of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

#### F.7.48.2 addDriverDefaultValue

Description: Add the given default value to the given driver element

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `driverID` of type **String** - Handle to a driver element
- Input: `expression` of type **String** - Default value expression

### F.7.48.3 removeDriverDefaultValue

Description: Remove the default value from the given driver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element
- Input: period of type **String** - Clock period expression
- Input: offset of type **String** - Clock pulse offset expression
- Input: value of type **String** - Clock pulse value expression
- Input: duration of type **String** - Clock pulse duration expression

### F.7.48.4 addDriverClockDriver

Description: Add a clock driver with the given details to the given driver element

- Returns: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a new clockDriver
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

### F.7.48.5 removeDriverClockDriver

Description: Remove the clock driver from the given driver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

### F.7.48.6 setClockDriverClockPeriodUnits

Description: Set the units attribute of the clockPeriod element in the given clockDriver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element
- Input: units of type **String** - Units value

### F.7.48.7 setClockDriverClockPulseOffsetUnits

Description: Set the units attribute of the clockPulseOffset element in the given clockDriver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element
- Input: units of type **String** - Units value

### F.7.48.8 setClockDriverClockPulseDurationUnits

Description: Set the units attribute of the clockPulseDuration element in the given clockDriver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element
- Input: units of type **String** - Units value

### F.7.48.9 addDriverSingleShotDriver

Description: Add a single shot driver with the given details to the given driver element

- Returns: singleShotDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a new singleShotDriver
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

- Input: offset of type **String** - Single shot offset expression
- Input: value of type **String** - Single shot value expression
- Input: duration of type **String** - Single shot duration expression

#### F.7.48.10 removeDriverSingleShotDriver

Description: Remove the single shot driver from the given driver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: driverID of type **String** - Handle to a driver element

### F.7.49 Element attribute operations (BASE)

#### F.7.49.1 getAttributeValue

Description: Returns value of the attribute with the given name in the given element

- Returns: value of type **String** - Attribute value
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an attribute
- Input: name of type **String** - Attribute name

#### F.7.49.2 getAttributeValueExpression

Description: Returns expression of the attribute with the given name in the given element

- Returns: expression of type **String** - Attribute expression
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an attribute
- Input: name of type **String** - Attribute name

### F.7.50 Element attribute operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.50.1 addAttribute

Description: Add attribute with the given name and expression to the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an attribute
- Input: name of type **String** - Attribute name
- Input: expression of type **String** - Attribute expression

#### F.7.50.2 removeAttribute

Description: Remove attribute with the given name from the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an attribute
- Input: name of type **String** - Attribute name

#### F.7.50.3 setAttributeValue

Description: Set attribute with the given name to the given expression in the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: elementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an attribute

- Input: name of type **String** - Attribute name
- Input: expression of type **String** - Attribute expression

## F.7.51 Field operations (BASE)

### F.7.51.1 getRegisterFieldID

Description: Returns the value of the FieldID attribute in the given regField element

- Returns: id of type **String** - FieldID attribute value
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

## F.7.52 File builder operations (BASE)

### F.7.52.1 getFileBuilderFileType

Description: Return fileType for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: fileType of type **String** - FileBuilder fileType
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.52.2 getFileBuilderCommand

Description: Return command for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: command of type **String** - FileBuilder command
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.52.3 getFileBuilderFlags

Description: Return flags for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: flags of type **String** - FileBuilder flags
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

### F.7.52.4 getFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Return replaceDefaultFlags for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - FileBuilder replace default flags
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

## F.7.53 File builder operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.53.1 setFileBuilderCommand

Description: Set command with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element
- Input: command of type **String** - FileBuilder command

### F.7.53.2 setFileBuilderFlags

Description: Set flags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element
- Input: flags of type **String** - FileBuilder flags

### F.7.53.3 setFileBuilderReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Set replaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given fileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type **String** - Handle to a fileBuilder element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - FileBuilder replace default flags

## F.7.54 File set operations (BASE)

### F.7.54.1 getFileSetGroups

Description: Returns groups for the given fileSet element

- Returns: groups of type **String[]** - FileSet groups
- Input: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSet element

### F.7.54.2 getFileSetFileIDs

Description: Returns fileIDs for the given fileSet element

- Returns: fileIDs of type **String[]** - List of file handles
- Input: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSet element

### F.7.54.3 getFileFileTypes

Description: Returns fileTypes for the given file element

- Returns: fileTypes of type **String[]** - File fileType
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

### F.7.54.4 getFileIsStructural

Description: Returns isStructural for the given file element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - File isStructural value
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

### F.7.54.5 getFileIsIncludeFile

Description: Returns isIncludeFile for the given file element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - File inIncludeFile value
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.6 getFileHasExternalDeclarations

Description: Returns hasExternalDeclarations for the given file element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - File hasExternalDeclarations value
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.7 getFileLogicalName

Description: Returns logicalName for the given file element

- Returns: logicalName of type **String** - File logicalName value
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.8 getFileExportedNames

Description: Returns exportedNames for the given file element

- Returns: exportedNames of type **String[]** - File exportedNames
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.9 getFileBuildCommand

Description: Returns buildCommand for the given file element

- Returns: command of type **String** - File buildCommand
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.10 getFileBuildCommandFlags

Description: Returns buildCommandFlags for the given file element

- Returns: flags of type **String** - File buildCommand flags
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.11 getFileBuildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Returns buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags for the given file element

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - File buildCommands replace default flags
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.12 getFileBuildCommandTargetName

Description: Returns buildCommandTargetName for the given file element

- Returns: name of type **String** - File buildCommands target name
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.13 getFileDependencies

Description: Returns dependencies for the given file element

- Returns: dependencies of type **String[]** - File dependencies
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.14 getFileDefineSymbolIDs

Description: Returns fileDefineIDs for the given file element

- Returns: `fileDefineIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileDefine handles
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.15 getFileDefineSymbolValue

Description: Returns value for the given fileDefine element

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - FileDefine value
- Input: `fileDefineID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileDefine element

#### F.7.54.16 getFileImageTypes

Description: Returns imageTypes for the given file element

- Returns: `imageTypes` of type ***String[]*** - File imageTypes
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element

#### F.7.54.17 getFileSetDefaultFileBuilderIDs

Description: Returns fileBuilderIDs for the given fileSet element

- Returns: `fileBuilderIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of fileBuilder handles
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element

#### F.7.54.18 getFileSetDependencies

Description: Returns dependencies for the given fileSet element

- Returns: `dependencies` of type ***String[]*** - FileSet dependencies
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element

#### F.7.54.19 getFileSetFunctionIDs

Description: Returns functionsIDs for the given fileSet element

- Returns: `functionIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of function handles
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element

#### F.7.54.20 getFunctionReplicate

Description: Returns replicate for the given function element

- Returns: `replicate` of type ***Boolean*** - Function replicate
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

#### F.7.54.21 getFunctionEntryPoint

Description: Returns entryPoint for the given function element

- Returns: `entryPoint` of type ***String*** - Function entryPoint
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.22 getFunctionFileID

Description: Returns fileID for the given function element

- Returns: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.23 getFunctionReturnType

Description: Returns returnType for the given function element

- Returns: `returnType` of type ***String*** - Function returnType
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.24 getFunctionArgumentIDs

Description: Returns argumentIDs for the given function element

- Returns: `argumentIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of argument handles
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.25 getFunctionArgumentDataType

Description: Returns dataType for the given argumentID element

- Returns: `dataType` of type ***String*** - Argument data type
- Input: `argumentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an argument element

### F.7.54.26 getFunctionDisabled

Description: Returns disabled for the given function element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Function disabled
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.27 getFunctionSourceFileIDs

Description: Returns sourceFileIDs for the given function element

- Returns: `functionSourceFileIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of sourceFile handles
- Input: `functionID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.54.28 getFunctionSourceFileName

Description: Returns sourceName for the given functionSourceFile element

- Returns: `name` of type ***String*** - SourceFile name
- Input: `functionSourceFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a functionSourceFile element

### F.7.54.29 getFunctionSourceType

Description: Returns fileType for the given functionSourceFile element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - SourceFile type
- Input: `functionSourceFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a functionSourceFile element

### F.7.54.30 getFunctionSourceTypeUser

Description: Returns user attribute for fileType for the given functionSourceFile element

- Returns: `user` of type ***String*** - SourceFile type user
- Input: `functionSourceFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a functionSourceFile element

## F.7.55 File set operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.55.1 setFileSetGroups

Description: Set groups with the given value for the given fileSet element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element
- Input: `groups` of type ***String[]*** - FileSet groups

### F.7.55.2 addFileSetFile

Description: Add file with the given name and fileTypes to the given fileSet element

- Returns: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new file
- Input: `fileSetID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - File name
- Input: `fileTypes` of type ***String[]*** - File fileTypes

### F.7.55.3 removeFileSetFile

Description: Remove the given file

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element

### F.7.55.4 setFileIsStructural

Description: Set isStructural with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - File isStructural value

### F.7.55.5 setFileIsIncludeFile

Description: Set isIncludeFile with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - File inIncludeFile value

### F.7.55.6 setFileHasExternalDeclarations

Description: Set hasExternalDeclarations with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `fileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element

- Input: value of type **Boolean** - File hasExternalDeclarations value

#### F.7.55.7 setFileLogicalName

Description: Set logicalName with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: logicalName of type **String** - File logicalName value

#### F.7.55.8 setFileExportedNames

Description: Set exportedNames with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: exportedNames of type **String[]** - File exportedNames

#### F.7.55.9 setFileBuildCommand

Description: Set buildCommand with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: command of type **String** - File buildCommand

#### F.7.55.10 setFileBuildCommandFlags

Description: Set buildCommandFlags with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: flags of type **String** - File buildCommand flags

#### F.7.55.11 setFileBuildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags

Description: Set buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - File buildCommand replace default flags

#### F.7.55.12 setFileBuildCommandTargetName

Description: Set buildCommandReplaceDefaultFlags with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element
- Input: name of type **String** - File buildCommand target name

#### F.7.55.13 addFileDependency

Description: Add given dependency to the given file element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type **String** - Handle to a file element

- Input: dependency of type ***String*** - File dependency

#### **F.7.55.14 removeFileSetDependency**

Description: Remove the given dependency from the given file element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: dependency of type ***String*** - File dependency

#### **F.7.55.15 addFileDefineSymbol**

Description: Add fileDefine with the given name and value to the given file element

- Returns: fileDefineID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new fileDefine
- Input: fileID of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: name of type ***String*** - FileDefine name
- Input: value of type ***String*** - FileDefine value

#### **F.7.55.16 removeFileDefineSymbol**

Description: Remove the given fileDefine element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileDefineID of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileDefine element

#### **F.7.55.17 setFileImageTypes**

Description: Set imageTypes with the given value for the given file element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileID of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: imageTypes of type ***String[]*** - File imageTypes

#### **F.7.55.18 addFileSetDefaultFileBuilder**

Description: Add defaultFileBuilder with the given fileType to the given file element

- Returns: fileBuilderID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new fileBuilder
- Input: fileID of type ***String*** - Handle to a file element
- Input: fileType of type ***String*** - DefaultFileBuilder fileType

#### **F.7.55.19 removeFileSetDefaultFileBuilder**

Description: Remove the given defaultFileBuilder element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileBuilderID of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileBuilder element

#### **F.7.55.20 addFileSetDependency**

Description: Add given dependency to the given fileSet element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileSetID of type ***String*** - Handle to a fileSet element
- Input: dependency of type ***String*** - FileSet dependency

### F.7.55.21 removeFileSetDependency

Description: Remove the given dependency from the given fileSet element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSet element
- Input: dependency of type **String** - FileSet dependency

### F.7.55.22 addFileSetFunction

Description: Add function with the given fileRef to the given fileSet element

- Returns: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a new function
- Input: fileSetID of type **String** - Handle to a fileSet element
- Input: fileRef of type **String** - Reference to the file that contains the entry point for the function

### F.7.55.23 removeFileSetFunction

Description: Remove the given function element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element

### F.7.55.24 setFunctionReplicate

Description: Set replicate to the given value for the given function element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element
- Input: replicate of type **Boolean** - Function replicate

### F.7.55.25 setFunctionEntryPoint

Description: Set entryPoint to the given value for the given function element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element
- Input: entryPoint of type **String** - Function entryPoint

### F.7.55.26 setFunctionReturnType

Description: Set returnType to the given value for the given function element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element
- Input: returnType of type **String** - Function returnType

### F.7.55.27 addFunctionArgument

Description: Add argument with given name and value to the given function element

- Returns: argumentID of type **String** - Handle to a new argument
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element
- Input: name of type **String** - Argument name
- Input: value of type **String** - Argument value

### F.7.55.28 removeFunctionArgument

Description: Remove the given argument

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: argumentID of type **String** - Handle to an argument element

### F.7.55.29 setFunctionArgumentDataType

Description: Set datatype with the given type for the given argument element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: argumentID of type **String** - Handle to an argument element
- Input: dataType of type **String** - Argument dataType

### F.7.55.30 setFunctionDisabled

Description: Set disabled to the given value for the given function element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionID of type **String** - Handle to a function element
- Input: disabled of type **Boolean** - Function disabled

### F.7.55.31 addFunctionSourceFile

Description: Add sourceFile with the given sourceName and fileType to the given function element

- Returns: functionSourceFileID of type **String** - Handle to a new sourceFile
- Input: functionID of type String - **Handle** to a function element
- Input: sourceFileName of type **String** - Source file name
- Input: fileType of type **String** - Source file type

### F.7.55.32 removeFunctionSourceFile

Description: Remove the given sourceFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionSourceFileID of type **String** - Handle to a functionSourceFile element

### F.7.55.33 setFunctionSourceFileTypeUser

Description: Set user attribute for the given sourceFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: functionSourceFileID of type **String** - Handle to a functionSourceFile element
- Input: user of type **String** - Source file type user

## F.7.56 Generator chain operations (BASE)

### F.7.56.1 getGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGroupSelectorIDs

Description: Returns generatorChainSelectorGroupSelectorIDs for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: groupSelectorIDs of type **String[]** - List of groupSelector handles
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

### F.7.56.2 getGroupSelectorSelectionOperator

Description: Returns multipleGroupSelectionOperation for a given groupSelector element

- Returns: operator of type **String** - Operator expression
- Input: groupSelectorID of type **String** - Handle to a groupSelector element

### F.7.56.3 getGroupSelectorSelectionNames

Description: Returns names for a given groupSelector element

- Returns: names of type **String[]** - List of generator(chain) group names
- Input: groupSelectorID of type **String** - Handle to a groupSelector element

### F.7.56.4 getGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGeneratorChainIDs

Description: Returns generatorChainIDs for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: generatorChainIDs of type **String[]** - List of generatorChain handles
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

### F.7.56.5 getGeneratorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelectorIDs

Description: Returns generatorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelectorIDs for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: groupSelectorIDs of type **String[]** - List of groupSelector handles
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

### F.7.56.6 getGeneratorChainGeneratorIDs

Description: Returns generatorIDs for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: generatorIDs of type **String** - List of generator handles
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

### F.7.56.7 getGeneratorChainGroups

Description: Returns chainGroups for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: groups of type **String[]** - List of chainGroups
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

### F.7.56.8 getGeneratorChainChoiceIDs

Description: Returns choiceIDs for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: choiceIDs of type **String[]** - List of choice handles
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element

## F.7.57 Generator chain operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.57.1 createGeneratorChain

Description: Create a new generatorChain with the given VLVN and returns its generatorChainID; fails and returns null if VLVN already exists

- Returns: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a new generatorChain element
- Input: generatorChainVLVN of type **String[]** - GeneratorChain VLVN

### F.7.57.2 addGeneratorChainGeneratorChainSelectorGroupSelector

Description: Add generatorChainMultipleGroupSelector with the given names for a given generatorChain element

- Returns: groupSelectorID of type **String** - Handle to a groupSelector element
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: names of type **String[]** - Non-empty list of names

### F.7.57.3 setGroupSelectorSelectionOperator

Description: Set multipleGroupSelectionOperation with the given value for a given groupSelector element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: groupSelectorID of type **String** - Handle to a groupSelector element
- Input: operator of type **String** - MultipleGroupSelectorOperator attribute value that can take ‘or’ or ‘and’

### F.7.57.4 addGeneratorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelector

Description: Add generatorChainComponentGeneratorSelectorGroupSelector with the given names for the given generatorChain element

- Returns: groupSelectorID of type **String** - Handle to a groupSelector element
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: names of type **String[]** - Non-empty list of names

### F.7.57.5 addGeneratorChainGenerator

Description: Add generator with the given generatorExe to the given generatorChain element

- Returns: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: generatorExecutable of type **String** - Path to generator executable

### F.7.57.6 addGeneratorChainGroup

Description: Add chainGroup with the given value to the given generatorChain element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: group of type **String** - ChainGroup value

### F.7.57.7 removeGeneratorChainGroup

Description: Remove chainGroup with the given value from the given generatorChain element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: group of type **String** - ChainGroup value

### F.7.57.8 addGeneratorChainChoice

Description: Add choice with the given name and enumerations to the given generatorChain element

- Returns: choiceID of type **String** - Handle to a choice element
- Input: generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to a generatorChain element
- Input: name of type **String** - Choice name
- Input: enumerations of type **String[]** - Choice enumeration values

### F.7.57.9 removeGeneratorChainChoice

Description: Remove the given choice element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: choiceID of type **String** - Handle to a choice element

## F.7.58 Generator operations (BASE)

### F.7.58.1 getGeneratorHidden

Description: Returns hidden for the given generator element

- Returns: hidden of type **String** - Generator hidden
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.2 getGeneratorScope

Description: Returns scope for the given generator element

- Returns: scope of type **String** - Generator scope
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.3 getGeneratorPhase

Description: Returns phase for the given generator element

- Returns: phase of type **Number** - Generator phase
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.4 getGeneratorApiType

Description: Returns apiType for the given generator element

- Returns: apiType of type **String** - Generator apiType
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.5 getGeneratorTransportMethods

Description: Returns transportMethods for the given generator element

- Returns: `transportMethods` of type ***String[]*** - Generator transportMethods
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.6 getGeneratorExecutable

Description: Returns generatorExe for the given generator element

- Returns: `executable` of type ***String*** - Generator executable
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element

### F.7.58.7 getGeneratorGroups

Description: Returns group names for the given generator element

- Returns: `groups` of type ***String[]*** - Generator groups
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element

## F.7.59 Generator operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.59.1 setGeneratorHidden

Description: Set hidden with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: `hidden` of type ***String*** - Generator hidden

### F.7.59.2 setGeneratorScope

Description: Set scope with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: `scope` of type ***String*** - Generator scope

### F.7.59.3 setGeneratorPhase

Description: Set phase with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: `phase` of type ***Number*** - Generator phase

### F.7.59.4 setGeneratorApiType

Description: Set apiType with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `generatorID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: `apiType` of type ***String*** - Generator apiType

### F.7.59.5 setGeneratorTransportMethods

Description: Set transportMethods with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: transportMethods of type **String[]** - Generator transportMethods

### F.7.59.6 setGeneratorExecutable

Description: Set generatorExe with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: executable of type **String** - Generator executable

### F.7.59.7 setGeneratorGroups

Description: Set groups with the given value for the given generator element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: generatorID of type **String** - Handle to a generator element
- Input: groups of type **String[]** - Generator groups

## F.7.60 Global operations (BASE)

### F.7.60.1 getAbstractionDefIDs

Description: Returns all registered abstractionDefIDs

- Returns: abstractionDefIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstraction definition handles

### F.7.60.2 getBusDefIDs

Description: Returns all registered busDefIDs

- Returns: busDefIDs of type **String[]** - List of bus definition handles

### F.7.60.3 getComponentIDs

Description: Returns all registered componentIDs

- Returns: componentIDs of type **String[]** - List of component handles

### F.7.60.4 getDesignIDs

Description: Returns all registered designIDs

- Returns: designIDs of type **String[]** - List of design handles

### F.7.60.5 getDesignConfigurationIDs

Description: Returns all registered designConfigurationIDs

- Returns: designConfigurationIDs of type **String[]** - List of design configuration handles

### F.7.60.6 getAbstractorIDs

Description: Returns all registered abstractorIDs

- Returns: abstractorIDs of type **String[]** - List of abstractor handles

### F.7.60.7 getGeneratorChainIDs

Description: Returns all registered generatorChainIDs

- Returns: generatorChainIDs of type **String[]** - List of generator chain handles

### F.7.60.8 getCatalogIDs

Description: Returns all registered catalogIDs

- Returns: catalogIDs of type **String[]** - List of catalog handles

### F.7.60.9 getDesignID

Description: Returns the designID of the current or top design associated with the currently invoked generator

- Returns: designID of type **String** - Handle to current or top design
- Input: top of type **Boolean** - Indicates if the call must return top (true) or current (false) designID

### F.7.60.10 getGeneratorContextComponentInstanceID

Description: Returns the componentInstanceID associated with the currently invoked generator

- Returns: componentInstanceID of type **String** - Handle to componentInstance
- Input: generatorName of type **String** - Name of the currently invoked generator

### F.7.60.11 getXML

Description: Returns XML fragment

- Returns: xmlString of type **String** - XML fragment
- Input: elementID of type **String** - IP-XACT XML element

### F.7.60.12 message

Description: Send message level and message text to DE

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: severity of type **String** - message level
- Input: message of type **String** - message text

### F.7.60.13 init

Description: API initialization function Must be called before any other API call

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: apiVersion of type **String** - Indicates the API version with which the generator is defined to work
- Input: failureMode of type **String** - Compatibility failure mode: fail—DE should return an error on the init call if its API version does not match the one passed to the init call; error—DE should

return an error each time a potentially incompatible API call is made; warning—DE should increment a warning count each time a potentially incompatible API call is made

- Input: message of type ***String*** - Message that the DE may display to the user

#### F.7.60.14 end

Description: Terminate connection to the DE

- Returns: status of type ***Number*** - Status indicator from the DE Non-zero implies an error
- Input: gen\_status of type ***Number*** - Status indicator from the generator Non-zero implies an error
- Input: message of type ***String*** - Message that the DE may display to the user

#### F.7.60.15 save

Description: Save all edits done in generator to DE; document must be valid

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

#### F.7.60.16 registerVLNV

Description: Register the VLNV contained in the given file, possibly replacing an existing VLNV

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: fileName of type ***String*** - Location of file that is to be registered
- Input: replace of type ***Boolean*** - Replace existing VLNV with new content

#### F.7.60.17 unregisterVLNV

Description: Unregister the given VLNV

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: VLNV of type ***String[]*** - VLNV that is to be unregistered

#### F.7.60.18 registerCatalogVLNVs

Description: Register all VLNVs in the given catalog

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: catalogID of type ***String*** - Catalog who's VLNVs are to be registered

#### F.7.60.19 unregisterCatalogVLNVs

Description: Unregister all VLNVs in the given catalog

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: catalogID of type ***String*** - Catalog who's VLNVs are to be unregistered

### F.7.61 Indirect interface operations (BASE)

#### F.7.61.1 getIndirectInterfaceIndirectAddress

Description: Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: indirectAddress of type ***String*** - IndirectAddress value
- Input: indirectInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

### F.7.61.2 getIndirectInterfaceIndirectData

Description: Returns indirectData for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `indirectData` of type ***String*** - IndirectData value
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

### F.7.61.3 getIndirectInterfaceMemoryMapID

Description: Returns memoryMapID for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `memoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMap
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

### F.7.61.4 getIndirectInterfaceBridgeIDs

Description: Returns bridgeIDs for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `bridgeIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of bridge handles
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

### F.7.61.5 getIndirectInterfaceBitSteering

Description: Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - BitSteering value
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

### F.7.61.6 getIndirectInterfaceEndianness

Description: Returns indirectAddress for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `value` of type ***String*** - Endianness value
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element

## F.7.62 Indirect interface operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.62.1 addIndirectInterfaceBridge

Description: Add bridge with the given busInterfaceRef to the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `bridgeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new bridge
- Input: `indirectInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element
- Input: `busInterfaceRef` of type ***String*** - Value for MasterRef attribute

### F.7.62.2 removeIndirectInterfaceBridge

Description: Remove the given bridge element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `bridgeID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bridge element

### F.7.62.3 setIndirectInterfaceBitSteering

Description: Set the bitSteering with the given value for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: indirectInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element
- Input: value of type ***String*** - BitSteering value

#### F.7.62.4 setIndirectInterfaceEndianness

Description: Set the endianness with the given value for the given indirectInterface element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: indirectInterfaceID of type ***String*** - Handle to an indirectInterface element
- Input: value of type ***String*** - Endianness value

### F.7.63 Memory map operations (BASE)

#### F.7.63.1 getMemoryMapElementIDs

Description: Returns the memoryMapElementIDs for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: memoryMapElementIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of memoryMapElement handles
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

#### F.7.63.2 getMemoryMapElementType

Description: Returns the elementType for the given memoryMapElement element

- Returns: memoryType of type ***String*** - MemoryType (addressBlock, bank, subSpaceMap)
- Input: memoryMapElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMapElement element

#### F.7.63.3 getAddressBlockBaseAddress

Description: Returns the baseAddress for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: baseAddress of type ***Number*** - AddressBlock base address
- Input: addressBlockID of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

#### F.7.63.4 getAddressBlockTypeIdentifier

Description: Returns the typeIdentifier for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: typeIdentifier of type ***String*** - AddressBlock type identifier
- Input: addressBlockID of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

#### F.7.63.5 getAddressBlockRange

Description: Returns the range for the given address Block element

- Returns: range of type ***Number*** - AddressBlock range
- Input: addressBlockID of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

#### F.7.63.6 getAddressBlockWidth

Description: Returns the width for the given address Block element

- Returns: width of type ***Number*** - AddressBlock width
- Input: addressBlockID of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.7 getAddressBlockUsage

Description: Returns the usage for the given address Block element

- Returns: `usage` of type ***String*** - AddressBlock usage
- Input: `addressBlockID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.8 getAddressBlockVolatility

Description: Returns the volatility for the given address Block element

- Returns: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - AddressBlock volatility
- Input: `addressBlockID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.9 getAddressBlockAccess

Description: Returns the access for the given address Block element

- Returns: `access` of type ***String*** - AddressBlock access
- Input: `addressBlockID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.10 getAddressBlockRegisterIDs

Description: Returns the registerIDs for the given address Block element

- Returns: `registerIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of register handles
- Input: `addressBlockID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.11 getAddressBlockRegisterFileIDs

Description: Returns the registerFileIDs for the given address Block element

- Returns: `registerFileIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of registerFile handles
- Input: `addressBlockID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.63.12 getBankAlignment

Description: Returns the value of the bankAlignment attribute for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `alignment` of type ***String*** - Bank alignment
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.13 getBankBaseAddress

Description: Returns the baseAddress for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `baseAddress` of type ***Number*** - Bank base address
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.14 getBankBlockAndSubspaceElementIDs

Description: Returns the bankIDs, addressBlockIDs, and subSpaceMapIDs for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `memoryElementIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of bank, addressBlock, and subspaceMap handles
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.15 getBankUsage

Description: Returns the usage for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `usage` of type ***String*** - Bank usage
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.16 getBankVolatility

Description: Returns the volatility for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - Bank volatility
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.17 getBankAccess

Description: Returns the access for the given bank or localBank element

- Returns: `access` of type ***String*** - Bank access
- Input: `bankID | localBankID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a bank or localBank element

### F.7.63.18 getSubspaceMapMasterID

Description: Returns an associated busInterfaceID of the masterRef for the given subspaceMap element

- Returns: `busInterfaceID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a busInterface
- Input: `subspaceMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a subspaceMap element

### F.7.63.19 getSubspaceMapSegmentID

Description: Returns an associated segmentID of the segmentRef for the given subspaceMap

- Returns: `segmentID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a segment
- Input: `subspaceMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a subspaceMap element

### F.7.63.20 getSubspaceMapBaseAddress

Description: Returns the baseAddress for the given subspaceMap

- Returns: `baseAddress` of type ***Number*** - SubspaceMap base address
- Input: `subspaceMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a subspaceMap element

### F.7.63.21 getMemoryMapRemapIDs

Description: Returns the memoryRemapIDs for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: `memoryRemapIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of memoryRemap handles
- Input: `memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

### F.7.63.22 getMemoryRemapState

Description: Returns the state for a given memoryRemap element

- Returns: `state` of type ***String*** - MemoryRemap state
- Input: `memoryRemapID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a memoryRemap element

### F.7.63.23 getMemoryRemapElementIDs

Description: Returns the bankIDs, addressBlockIDs, and subSpaceMapIDs for the given memoryRemap element

- Returns: memoryMapElementIDs of type **String[]** - List of bank, addressBlock, and subspace-Map handles
- Input: memoryRemapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryRemap element

### F.7.63.24 getMemoryMapAddressUnitBits

Description: Returns the addressUnitBits for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: addressUnitBits of type **Number** - Memory map address unit bits
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

### F.7.63.25 getMemoryMapShared

Description: Returns the shared for the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: shared of type **String** - Memory map shared
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

## F.7.64 Memory map operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.64.1 addMemoryMapAddressBlock

Description: Add an addressBlock with the given name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to a new addressBlock element
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
- Input: name of type **String** - AddressBlock name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - AddressBlock base address
- Input: range of type **String** - AddressBlock range
- Input: width of type **String** - AddressBlock width

### F.7.64.2 removeMemoryMapAddressBlock

Description: Remove the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element

### F.7.64.3 setAddressBlockRange

Description: Set the range with the given value for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: range of type **String** - AddressBlock range

#### F.7.64.4 setAddressBlockTypeIdentifier

Description: Set the typeIdentifier with the given value for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: typeIdentifier of type **String** - AddressBlock typeIdentifier

#### F.7.64.5 setAddressBlockUsage

Description: Set the usage with the given value for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: usage of type **String** - AddressBlock usage

#### F.7.64.6 setAddressBlockVolatility

Description: Set the volatility with the given value for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: volatile of type **Boolean** - AddressBlock volatility

#### F.7.64.7 setAddressBlockAccess

Description: Set the access with the given value for the given addressBlock element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: access of type **String** - AddressBlock access

#### F.7.64.8 addAddressBlockRegister

Description: Add a register with the given name, offset, and size, and a field with the given name, offset, and width to the given addressBlock

- Returns: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a new register element
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: name of type **String** - Register name
- Input: offset of type **String** - Register offset
- Input: size of type **String** - Register size
- Input: fieldName of type **String** - Field name
- Input: fieldOffset of type **String** - Field offset
- Input: fieldWidth of type **String** - Field width

#### F.7.64.9 removeAddressBlockRegister

Description: Remove the given register element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element

#### F.7.64.10 addAddressBlockRegisterFile

Description: Add a registerFile with the given name, addressOffset, and range to the given addressBlock element

- Returns: registerFileID of type **String** - Handle to a new registerFile element
- Input: addressBlockID of type **String** - Handle to an addressBlock element
- Input: name of type **String** - RegisterFile name
- Input: addressOffset of type **String** - RegisterFile address offset
- Input: range of type **String** - RegisterFile range

#### F.7.64.11 removeAddressBlockRegisterFile

Description: Remove the given registerFile element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerFileID of type **String** - Handle to a registerFile element

#### F.7.64.12 addMemoryMapBank

Description: Add a bank with the given name, baseAddress, and alignment to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: bankID of type **String** - Handle to a new bank element
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
- Input: name of type **String** - Bank name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - Bank base address
- Input: alignment of type **String** - BankAlignment

#### F.7.64.13 removeMemoryMapBank

Description: Remove the given bank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element

#### F.7.64.14 addBankBank

Description: Add a bank with the given name, baseAddress, and alignment to the given bank element

- Returns: bankID of type **String** - Handle to a new bank element
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element
- Input: name of type **String** - Bank name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - Bank base address
- Input: alignment of type **String** - BankAlignment

#### F.7.64.15 removeBankBank

Description: Remove the given bank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element

#### F.7.64.16 setBankUsage

Description: Set usage with the given value for the given bank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element
- Input: usage of type **String** - Bank usage

#### F.7.64.17 setBankVolatility

Description: Set volatility with the given value for the given bank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element
- Input: volatile of type **Boolean** - Bank volatility

#### F.7.64.18 setBankAccess

Description: Set access with the given value for the given bank element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: bankID | localBankID of type **String** - Handle to bank or localBank element
- Input: access of type **String** - Bank access

#### F.7.64.19 addMemoryMapSubspaceMap

Description: Add a subspaceMap with the given name, masterRef, and baseAddress to the given memory map

- Returns: subspaceMapID of type **String** - Handle to a new subspaceMap element
- Input: memoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap element
- Input: name of type **String** - SubspaceMap name
- Input: masterRef of type **String** - SubspaceMap masterRef
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - SubspaceMap base address

#### F.7.64.20 removeMemoryMapSubspaceMap

Description: Remove the given subspaceMap element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: subspaceMapID of type **String** - Handle to a subspaceMap element

#### F.7.64.21 setMemoryRemapSegmentRef

Description: Set the segmentRef with the given value for the given subspaceMap element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: subspaceMapID of type **String** - Handle to a subspaceMap element
- Input: segmentRef of type **String** - SubspaceMap segmentRef

#### F.7.64.22 addMemoryMapRemapWithAddressBlock

Description: Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing an addressBlock with the given addressBlock name, baseAddress, range, and width to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: memoryRemapID of type **String** - Handle to a new memoryRemap element

- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
- Input: state of type **String** - MemoryRemap state
- Input: remapName of type **String** - MemoryRemap name
- Input: name of type **String** - AddressBlock name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - AddressBlock base address
- Input: range of type **String** - AddressBlock range
- Input: width of type **Number** - AddressBlock width

#### F.7.64.23 addMemoryMapRemapWithBank

Description: Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing a bank with the given bankName, baseAddress, and alignment to the given memoryMap or localMemoryMap element

- Returns: memoryRemapID of type **String** - Handle to a new memoryRemap element
- Input: memoryMapID | localMemoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap or localMemoryMap element
- Input: state of type **String** - MemoryRemap state
- Input: remapName of type **String** - MemoryRemap name
- Input: name of type **String** - Bank name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - Bank base address
- Input: alignment of type **String** - BankAlignment

#### F.7.64.24 addMemoryMapRemapWithSubspaceMap

Description: Add a memoryRemap with the given state and name containing a subspaceMap with the given subspaceName, baseAddress, and masterRef to the given memoryMap element

- Returns: memoryRemapID of type **String** - Handle to a new memoryRemap element
- Input: memoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap element
- Input: state of type **String** - MemoryRemap state
- Input: remapName of type **String** - MemoryRemap name
- Input: name of type **String** - SubspaceMap name
- Input: baseAddress of type **String** - SubspaceMap base address
- Input: masterRef of type **String** - SubspaceMap masterRef

#### F.7.64.25 removeMemoryMapRemap

Description: Remove the given memoryRemap element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: memoryRemapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryRemap element

#### F.7.64.26 setMemoryMapShared

Description: Set the shared with the given value for the given memoryMap element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: memoryMapID of type **String** - Handle to a memoryMap element
- Input: shared of type **String** - MemoryMap shared enumeration value

## F.7.65 Module and type parameter operations (BASE)

### F.7.65.1 getModuleOrTypeParameterIDs

Description: Returns moduleOrTypeParameterIDs of the given element

- Returns: moduleOrTypeParameterIDs of type ***String[]*** - List of moduleOrTypeParameter handles
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterContainerElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to an element that has moduleOrTypeParameter elements

### F.7.65.2 getModuleOrTypeParameterValue

Description: Returns value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element

- Returns: value of type ***String*** - ModuleOrTypeParameter value
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element

### F.7.65.3 getModuleOrTypeParameterValueExpression

Description: Returns expression of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element

- Returns: expression of type ***String*** - ModuleOrTypeParameter expression
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element

### F.7.65.4 getModuleOrTypeParameterDataType

Description: Returns the data type value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element

- Returns: dataType of type ***String*** - Datatype value
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element

### F.7.65.5 getModuleOrTypeParameterUsageType

Description: Returns the usage value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter element

- Returns: usageType of type ***String*** - Usage value
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element

## F.7.66 Module and type parameter operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.66.1 addModuleOrTypeParameter

Description: Add a moduleOrTypeParameter with the given name and given value to the given element

- Returns: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new moduleOrTypeParameter
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterContainerElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to an element that has moduleOrTypeParameter elements
- Input: name of type ***String*** - moduleOrTypeParameter name
- Input: expression of type ***String*** - moduleOrTypeParameter expression

### F.7.66.2 removeModuleOrTypeParameter

Description: Remove the given moduleOrTypeParameter

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type **String** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element

### F.7.66.3 setModuleOrTypeParameterValue

Description: Set the value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type **String** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element
- Input: expression of type **String** - moduleOrTypeParameter expression

### F.7.66.4 setModuleOrTypeParameterDataType

Description: Set the data type value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type **String** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element
- Input: dataType of type **String** - moduleOrTypeParameter data type value

### F.7.66.5 setModuleOrTypeParameterUsageType

Description: Set the usage value of the given moduleOrTypeParameter

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: moduleOrTypeParameterID of type **String** - Handle to a moduleOrTypeParameter element
- Input: usageType of type **String** - moduleOrTypeParameter usage value

## F.7.67 Parameter operations (BASE)

### F.7.67.1 getParameterIDs

Description: Returns parameterIDs of the given element

- Returns: parameterIDs of type **String[]** - List of parameter handles
- Input: parameterContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has parameter elements

### F.7.67.2 getParameterValue

Description: Returns value of the given parameter element

- Returns: value of type **String** - Parameter value
- Input: parameterID of type **String** - Handle to a parameter element

**F.7.67.3 getParameterValueExpression**

Description: Returns expression of the given parameter element

- Returns: expression of type ***String*** - Parameter expression
- Input: parameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a parameter element

**F.7.67.4 addParameter**

Description: Add a parameter with the given name and given value to the given element

- Returns: parameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a new parameter
- Input: parameterContainerElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to an element that has parameter elements
- Input: name of type ***String*** - Parameter name
- Input: expression of type ***String*** - Parameter expression

**F.7.67.5 removeParameter**

Description: Remove the given parameter

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: parameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a parameter element

**F.7.67.6 setParameterValue**

Description: Set the value of the given parameter

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: parameterID of type ***String*** - Handle to a parameter element
- Input: expression of type ***String*** - Parameter expression

**F.7.68 Port operations (BASE)****F.7.68.1 getPortStyle**

Description: Returns the style (wire or transactional) for the given port element

- Returns: style of type ***String*** - Port style (wire or transactional)
- Input: portID of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

**F.7.68.2 getPortAllLogicalDirectionsAllowed**

Description: Returns allLogicalDirectionsAllowed for the given port element

- Returns: value of type ***Boolean*** - Port allLogicalDirectionsAllowed
- Input: portID of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

**F.7.68.3 getPortDirection**

Description: Returns direction for the given port element

- Returns: direction of type ***String*** - Port direction
- Input: portID of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.4 getPortWireTypeDefIDs

Description: Returns wireTypeDefIDs for the given port element

- Returns: wireTypeDefIDs of type **String[]** - List of wireTypeDef handles
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.5 getPortDriverIDs

Description: Returns driverIDs for the given port element

- Returns: driverID of type **String[]** - List of driver handles
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.6 getPortConstraintSetIDs

Description: Returns constraintSetIDs for the given port element

- Returns: constraintSetIDs of type **String[]** - List of constraintSet handles
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.7 getPortInitiative

Description: Returns initiative for the given port element

- Returns: initiative of type **String** - Port initiative
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.8 getPortKind

Description: Returns kind for the given port element

- Returns: kind of type **String** - Port kind
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.9 getPortKindCustom

Description: Returns custom for the given port element

- Returns: customKind of type **String** - Port kind custom
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.10 getPortBusWidth

Description: Returns busWidth for the given port element

- Returns: width of type **Number** - Port busWidth
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.68.11 getPortProtocolType

Description: Returns protocolType for the given port element

- Returns: type of type **String** - Port protocolType
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.12 getPortProtocolTypeCustom

Description: Returns custom attribute of protocolType the given port element

- Returns: `customType` of type ***String*** - Port protocolType custom
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.13 getPortProtocolPayloadName

Description: Returns payloadName for the given port element

- Returns: `name` of type ***String*** - Port payloadName
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.14 getPortProtocolPayloadType

Description: Returns payloadType for the given port element

- Returns: `type` of type ***String*** - Port payloadType
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.15 getPortProtocolPayloadExtension

Description: Returns payloadExtension for the given port element

- Returns: `extension` of type ***String*** - Port payloadExtension
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.16 getPortProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory

Description: Returns mandatory attribute of payloadExtension for the given port element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Port payloadExtension mandatory
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.17 getPortTransTypeDefIDs

Description: Returns transTypeDefIDs for the given port element

- Returns: `transTypeDefIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of transTypeDef handles
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.18 getPortMaxConnections

Description: Returns maxConnections for the given port element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Number*** - Port max connections
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.19 getPortMinConnections

Description: Returns minConnections for the given port element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Number*** - Port min connections
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.68.20 getPortAccessType

Description: Returns accessType for the given port element

- Returns: `accessType` of type ***String*** - Port access type
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

## F.7.69 Port operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.69.1 setPortAllLogicalDirectionsAllowed

Description: Set allLogicalDirectionsAllowed with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Port allLogicalDirectionAllowed value

### F.7.69.2 addPortWireTypeDef

Description: Add wireTypeDef for the given port element

- Returns: `wireTypeDefID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new wireTypeDef
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

### F.7.69.3 removePortWireTypeDef

Description: Remove the given wireTypeDef element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `wireTypeDefID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a wireTypeDef element

### F.7.69.4 addPortDefaultDriver

Description: Add defaultDriver with the given value to the given port element

- Returns: `driverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new driver
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `value` of type ***Number*** - Default driver value

### F.7.69.5 removePortDefaultDriver

Description: Remove the given defaultDriver element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `driverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a driver element

### F.7.69.6 addPortClockDriver

Description: Add clockDriver with the given clock period, pulse offset, pulse value, and pulse duration to the given port element

- Returns: `clockDriverID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new clockDriver
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `period` of type ***Number*** - Clock period
- Input: `offset` of type ***Number*** - Clock pulse offset

- Input: value of type **Number** - Clock pulse value
- Input: duration of type **Number** - Clock pulse duration

#### F.7.69.7 removePortClockDriver

Description: Remove the given clockDriver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: clockDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a clockDriver element

#### F.7.69.8 addPortSingleShotDriver

Description: Add singleShotDriver with the given offset, value, and duration to the given port element

- Returns: singleShotDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a new singleShotDriver
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: offset of type **Number** - SingleShot offset
- Input: value of type **Number** - SingleShot value
- Input: duration of type **Number** - SingleShot duration

#### F.7.69.9 removePortSingleShotDriver

Description: Remove the given singleShort driver element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: singleShotDriverID of type **String** - Handle to a singleShot driver element

#### F.7.69.10 addPortConstraintSet

Description: Add constraintSet to the given port element

- Returns: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a new constraintSet
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element

#### F.7.69.11 removePortConstraintSet

Description: Remove the given constraintSet element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: constraintSetID of type **String** - Handle to a constraintSet element

#### F.7.69.12 setPortKind

Description: Set kind with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: kind of type **String** - Port kind

#### F.7.69.13 setPortKindCustom

Description: Set attribute custom of kind with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: customKind of type **String** - Port kind custom

#### F.7.69.14 setPortBusWidth

Description: Set busWidth with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: width of type **Number** - Port busWidth

#### F.7.69.15 setPortProtocolType

Description: Set protocolType with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: type of type **String** - Port type

#### F.7.69.16 setPortProtocolTypeCustom

Description: Set attribute custom of protocolType with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: customType of type **String** - Port type custom

#### F.7.69.17 addPortProtocolPayload

Description: Add a payload with the given type to the given port element

- Returns: protocolPayloadID of type **String** - Handle to a new protocolPayloadID
- Input: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: type of type **String** - Payload type

#### F.7.69.18 removePortProtocolPayload

Description: Remove the given payload

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: protocolPayloadID of type **String** - Handle to a protocolPayload element

#### F.7.69.19 setProtocolPayloadName

Description: Set payload name with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: protocolPayloadID of type **String** - Handle to a protocolPayload element
- Input: name of type **String** - Payload name

#### F.7.69.20 setProtocolPayloadExtension

Description: Set payload extension with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: protocolPayloadID of type **String** - Handle to a protocolPayload element
- Input: extension of type **String** - Payload extension

**F.7.69.21 setProtocolPayloadExtensionMandatory**

Description: Set attribute mandatory of payload extension with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `protocolPayloadID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a protocolPayload element
- Input: `mandatory` of type ***Boolean*** - Payload extension mandatory

**F.7.69.22 addPortTransTypeDef**

Description: Add transTypeDef for the given port element

- Returns: `transTypeDefID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new transTypeDef
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element

**F.7.69.23 removePortTransTypeDef**

Description: Remove the given transTypeDef element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `transTypeDefID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a transTypeDef element

**F.7.69.24 setPortMaxConnections**

Description: Set maxConnections with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `value` of type ***Number*** - Port maxConnections

**F.7.69.25 setPortMinConnections**

Description: Set minConnections with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `value` of type ***Number*** - Port minConnections

**F.7.69.26 setPortAccessType**

Description: Set portAccessType with the given value for the given port element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `portID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a port element
- Input: `accessType` of type ***String*** - Port PortAccessType

**F.7.70 Present operations (BASE)****F.7.70.1 getIsPresentValue**

Description: Returns the value of the isPresent element of the given element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Boolean*** - Value of isPresent element
- Input: `isPresentContainerElementID` of type ***String*** - Handle to an element that has an isPresent element

### F.7.70.2 getIsPresentValueExpression

Description: Returns the expression of the isPresent element of the given element

- Returns: expression of type **String** - Expression of isPresent element
- Input: isPresentContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an isPresent element

### F.7.70.3 setIsPresentValue

Description: Set the expression of the isPresent element of the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: isPresentContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an isPresent element
- Input: expression of type **String** - New expression

### F.7.70.4 addIsPresent

Description: Add an isPresent element to the given element with the given expression

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: isPresentContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an isPresent element
- Input: expression of type **String** - New expression

### F.7.70.5 removeIsPresent

Description: Remove the isPresent element from the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: isPresentContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has an isPresent element

## F.7.71 Register file operations (BASE)

### F.7.71.1 getRegisterFileID

Description: Returns the value of the RegisterFileID attribute in the given registerFile element

- Returns: id of type **String** - RegisterFile id
- Input: registerFileID of type **String** - Handle to a registerFile element

### F.7.71.2 getRegisterFileDimensions

Description: Returns the dim in the given registerFile element

- Returns: dimensions of type **Number[]** - RegisterFile dimensions
- Input: registerFileID of type **String** - Handle to a registerFile element

### F.7.71.3 getRegisterFileAddressOffset

Description: Returns the addressOffset in the given registerFile element

- Returns: addressOffset of type **Number** - RegisterFile addressOffset
- Input: registerFileID of type **String** - Handle to a registerFile element

#### F.7.71.4 getRegisterFileTypeIdentifier

Description: Returns the typeIdentifier in the given registerFile element

- Returns: `typeIdentifier` of type ***String*** - RegisterFile typeIdentifier
- Input: `registerFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a registerFile element

#### F.7.71.5 getRegisterFileRange

Description: Returns the range in the given registerFile element

- Returns: `range` of type ***Number*** - RegisterFile range
- Input: `registerFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a registerFile element

### F.7.72 Register file operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.72.1 setRegisterFileID

Description: Set the value of the RegisterFileID attribute in the given registerFile element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `registerFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a registerFile element
- Input: `id` of type ***String*** - Value of RegisterFileID attribute

#### F.7.72.2 setRegisterFileDimensions

Description: Set the dim with the given value n the given registerFile element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `registerFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a registerFile element
- Input: `dimensions` of type ***Number[]*** - RegisterFile dim

#### F.7.72.3 getRegisterFileTypeIdentifier

Description: Set the typeIdentifier with the given value n the given registerFile element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `registerFileID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a registerFile element
- Input: `typeIdentifier` of type ***String*** - RegisterFile typeIdentifier

### F.7.73 Register operations (BASE)

#### F.7.73.1 getRegisterDimensions

Description: Returns dim for the given register element

- Returns: `dimensions` of type ***Number[]*** - List of dimension values
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

#### F.7.73.2 getRegisterAddressOffset

Description: Returns addressOffset for the given register element

- Returns: `addressOffset` of type ***Number*** - Register address offset
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.3 getRegisterTypeIdentifier

Description: Returns typeIdentifier for the given register element

- Returns: `typeIdentifier` of type ***String*** - Register typeIdentifier
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.4 getRegisterSize

Description: Returns size for the given register element

- Returns: `size` of type ***Number*** - Register size
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.5 getRegisterVolatility

Description: Returns volatility for the given register element

- Returns: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - Register volatility
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.6 getRegisterAccess

Description: Returns access for the given register element

- Returns: `access` of type ***String*** - Register access
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.7 getRegisterFieldIDs

Description: Returns fieldIDs for the given register element

- Returns: `regFieldIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of regField handles
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.8 getRegisterAlternateRegisterIDs

Description: Returns alternativeRegisterIDs for the given register element

- Returns: `alternateRegisterIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of alternateRegister handles
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element

### F.7.73.9 getAlternateRegisterState

Description: Returns state for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `state` of type ***String*** - AlternateRegister state
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.10 getAlternateRegisterGroups

Description: Returns groups for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `groups` of type ***String[]*** - AlternateRegister groups
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.11 getAlternateRegisterTypeIdentifier

Description: Returns typeIdentifier for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `typeIdentifier` of type ***String*** - AlternateRegister typeIdentifier
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.12 getAlternateRegisterVolatility

Description: Returns volatility for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `volatile` of type ***Boolean*** - AlternateRegister volatility
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.13 getAlternateRegisterAccess

Description: Returns access for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `access` of type ***String*** - AlternateRegister access
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.14 getAlternateRegisterFieldIDs

Description: Returns fieldIDs for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `regFieldIDs` of type ***String[]*** - List of regField handles
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

### F.7.73.15 getRegisterResetValue

Description: Returns resetValue derived from fieldResetValues for the given resetType and register element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Number*** - Register reset value
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

### F.7.73.16 getRegisterResetMask

Description: Returns resetMask derived from fieldResetMasks for the given resetType and register element

- Returns: `mask` of type ***Number*** - Register reset mask
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

### F.7.73.17 getAlternateRegisterResetValue

Description: Returns resetValue derived from fieldResetValues for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

- Returns: `value` of type ***Number*** - AlternateRegister reset value
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

### F.7.73.18 getAlternateRegisterResetMask

Description: Returns resetMask derived from fieldResetMasks for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

- Returns: mask of type **Number** - AlternateRegister reset mask
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: resetTypeRef of type **String** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

## F.7.74 Register operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.74.1 setRegisterDimensions

Description: Set dim with the given value for the given register element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: dimensions of type **Number[]** - List of dimension values

### F.7.74.2 setRegisterTypeIdentifier

Description: Set typeIdentifier with the given value for the given register element

- Returns: status of type Boolean - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: typeIdentifier of type **String** - Register typeIdentifier

### F.7.74.3 setRegisterVolatility

Description: Set volatility with the given value for the given register element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: volatile of type **Boolean** - Register volatility

### F.7.74.4 setRegisterAccess

Description: Set access with the given value for the given register element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: access of type **String** - Register access

### F.7.74.5 addRegisterField

Description: Add regField with the given name, offset, and width to the given register element

- Returns: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a new regField element
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: name of type **String** - RegField name
- Input: offset of type **String** - RegField offset
- Input: width of type **String** - RegField width

#### F.7.74.6 removeRegisterField

Description: Remove the given regField element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: regFieldID of type **String** - Handle to a regField element

#### F.7.74.7 addRegisterAlternateRegister

Description: Add alternateRegister with the given groups to the given register element

- Returns: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a new alternateRegister element
- Input: registerID of type **String** - Handle to a register element
- Input: name of type **String** - AlternateRegister name
- Input: groups of type **String[]** - AlternateRegister groups

#### F.7.74.8 removeRegisterAlternateRegister

Description: Remove the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

#### F.7.74.9 setAlternateRegisterState

Description: Set state with the given value for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: state of type **String** - AlternateRegister state

#### F.7.74.10 setAlternateRegisterTypeIdentifier

Description: Set typeIdentifier with the given value for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: typeIdentifier of type **String** - AlternateRegister typeIdentifier

#### F.7.74.11 setAlternateRegisterVolatility

Description: Set volatility with the given value for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: volatile of type **Boolean** - AlternateRegister volatility

#### F.7.74.12 setAlternateRegisterAccess

Description: Set access with the given value for the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: alternateRegisterID of type **String** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: access of type **String** - AlternateRegister access

#### F.7.74.13 addAlternateRegisterField

Description: Add regField with the given name, offset, and width to the given alternateRegister element

- Returns: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a new regField element
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: `name` of type ***String*** - RegField name
- Input: `offset` of type ***String*** - RegField offset
- Input: `width` of type ***String*** - RegField width

#### F.7.74.14 removeAlternateRegisterField

Description: Remove the given regField element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `regFieldID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a regField element

#### F.7.74.15 setRegisterResetValue

Description: Set the fieldResetValues with the given register reset value expression for the given resetType and register element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element
- Input: `valueExpression` of type ***String*** - Register reset value expression
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

#### F.7.74.16 setRegisterResetMask

Description: Set the fieldResetMasks with the given register reset mask expression for the given resetType and register element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `registerID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a register element
- Input: `maskExpression` of type ***String*** - Register reset mask expression
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

#### F.7.74.17 setAlternateRegisterResetValue

Description: Set the fieldResetValues with the given alternateRegister reset value expression for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element
- Input: `valueExpression` of type ***String*** - AlternateRegister reset value expression
- Input: `resetTypeRef` of type ***String*** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

#### F.7.74.18 setAlternateRegisterResetMask

Description: Set the fieldResetMasks with the given alternateRegister reset mask expression for the given resetType and alternateRegister element

- Returns: `status` of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `alternateRegisterID` of type ***String*** - Handle to a alternateRegister element

- Input: maskExpression of type **String** - AlternateRegister reset mask expression
- Input: resetTypeRef of type **String** - ResetType name (null represents default type)

## F.7.75 Remap state operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.75.1 getRemapStateRemapPortIDs

Description: Returns remapPortIDs for the given remapState element

- Returns: remapPortIDs of type **String[]** - List of remapPort handles
- Input: remapStateID of type **String** - Handle to a remapState element

### F.7.75.2 getRemapPortPortID

Description: Returns the portID of the portRef for the given remapPort element

- Returns: portID of type **String** - Handle to a port element
- Input: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a remapPort element

### F.7.75.3 getRemapPortPortIndex

Description: Returns the portIndex for the given remapPort element

- Returns: portIndex of type **Number** - remapPortID portIndex value
- Input: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a remapPort element

### F.7.75.4 getRemapPortValue

Description: Returns the value for the given remapPort element

- Returns: value of type **Number** - remapPort value
- Input: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a remapPort element

### F.7.75.5 addRemapStateRemapPort

Description: Add a remapPort with the given portRef and value to the given remapState element

- Returns: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a new remapPort element
- Input: remapStateID of type **String** - Handle to a remapState element
- Input: portRef of type **String** - RemapPort PortRef value
- Input: value of type **Number** - RemapPort value

### F.7.75.6 removeRemapStateRemapPort

Description: Remove the given remapPort element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a remapPort element

### F.7.75.7 setRemapPortPortIndex

Description: Set the portIndex with the given value for the given remapPort

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: remapPortID of type **String** - Handle to a remapPort element
- Input: portIndex of type **Number** - RemapPort portIndex value

## F.7.76 Slice operations (BASE)

### F.7.76.1 getSlicePathSegmentIDs

Description: Returns the pathSegmentIDs for a given slice element

- Returns: pathSegmentIDs of type **String[]** - List of pathSegment handles
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element

### F.7.76.2 getPathSegmentName

Description: Returns the pathSegmentName for a given pathSegment element

- Returns: name of type **String** - The value of the pathSegmentName
- Input: pathSegmentID of type **String** - Handle to a pathSegment element

### F.7.76.3 getPathSegmentIndices

Description: Returns the indices for a given pathSegment element

- Returns: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices
- Input: pathSegmentID of type **String** - Handle to a pathSegment element

### F.7.76.4 getSliceRange

Description: Returns the range for a given slice element

- Returns: range of type **Number[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element

## F.7.77 Slice operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.77.1 addSlicePathSegment

Description: Add a pathSegment with the given pathSegmentNames and indices to the given slice element

- Returns: pathSegmentID of type **String** - Handle to a new pathSegment
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element
- Input: pathSegmentName of type **String** - path segment name
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

### F.7.77.2 removeSlicePathSegment

Description: Remove the given pathSegment element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: pathSegmentID of type **String** - Handle to a pathSegment element

### F.7.77.3 setSliceRange

Description: Set the range to the given range for the given slice element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range with left at index 0 and right at index 1

## F.7.78 Typedef operations (BASE)

### F.7.78.1 getTypeDefTypeName

Description: Returns the typeName for the given typeDef element

- Returns: typeName of type **String** - TypeName value
- Input: typeDefElementID of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element

### F.7.78.2 getTypeDefTypeDefinitions

Description: Returns the typeDefinitions for the given typeDef element

- Returns: typeDefinitions of type **String[]** - List of typeDefinitions
- Input: typeDefElementID of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element

### F.7.78.3 getTypeDefTypeParameterIDs

Description: Returns the typeParameterIDs for the given transTypeDef or serviceTypeDef element

- Returns: typeParameterIDs of type **String[]** - List of typeParameter handles
- Input: transTypeDefID | serviceTypeDefID of type **String** - Handle to a transTypeDef or serviceTypeDef element

### F.7.78.4 getTypeDefServiceTypeDefIDs

Description: Returns the serviceTypeDefIDs for the given transTypeDef element

- Returns: serviceTypeDefIDs of type **String[]** - List of serviceTypeDef handles
- Input: transTypeDefID of type **String** - Handle to a transTypeDef element

### F.7.78.5 getTypeDefViewIDs

Description: Returns the viewIDs for the given typeDef element

- Returns: viewIDs of type **String[]** - List of view handles
- Input: typeDefElementID of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element

## F.7.79 Typedef operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.79.1 setTypeDefTypeName

Description: Set the typeName with the given value for the given typeDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: typeDefElementID of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element
- Input: typeName of type **String** - Value of the typeName element

### F.7.79.2 setTypeDefTypeDefinitions

Description: Set the typeDefinitions with the given definitions for the given typeDef element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: typeDefElementID of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element
- Input: typeDefinition of type **String[]** - List of type definitions

### F.7.79.3 addTypeDefTypeParameter

Description: Add a typeParameter with the given name and value to the given typeDef element

- Returns: `typeParameterID` of type **String** - Handle to a new typeParameter
- Input: `transTypeDefID | serviceTypeDefID` of type **String** - Handle to a transTypeDef or serviceTypeDef element
- Input: `name` of type **String** - TypeParameter name
- Input: `expression` of type **String** - TypeParameter expression

### F.7.79.4 removeTypeDefTypeParameter

Description: Remove the given typeParameter

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `typeParameterID` of type **String** - Handle to a typeParameter

### F.7.79.5 addTypeDefServiceTypeDef

Description: Add a serviceTypeDef with the given typeName to the given typeDef element

- Returns: `serviceTypeDefID` of type **String** - Handle to a new serviceTypeDef
- Input: `transTypeDefID` of type **String** - Handle to a transTypeDef element
- Input: `typeName` of type **String** - ServiceDef typeName

### F.7.79.6 removeTypeDefServiceTypeDef

Description: Remove the given serviceTypeDef

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `serviceTypeDefID` of type **String** - Handle to a typeParameter

### F.7.79.7 addTypeDefViewName

Description: Add the given viewName to the viewRefs in the given typeDef element

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `typeDefElementID` of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element
- Input: `viewName` of type **String** - Reference to a view

### F.7.79.8 removeTypeDefViewName

Description: Removed the given viewName from the viewRefs in the given typeDef element

- Returns: `status` of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: `typeDefElementID` of type **String** - Handle to a typeDef element
- Input: `viewName` of type **String** - Reference to a view

## F.7.80 Vector operations (BASE)

### F.7.80.1 getVectorIDs

Description: Returns vectorIDs of the given element

- Returns: `vectorIDs` of type **String[]** - List of vector handles

- Input: vectorContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vector element

### F.7.80.2 getVectorRange

Description: Returns range of the given vector element

- Returns: range of type **Number[]** - Range with left in index 0 and right in index 1
- Input: vectorID of type **String** - Handle to a vector element

### F.7.80.3 getVectorRangeExpression

Description: Returns the range expressions of the given vector element

- Returns: rangeExpression of type **String[]** - Range expression with left index 0 and right in index 1
- Input: vectorID of type **String** - Handle to a vector element

## F.7.81 Vector operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.81.1 addVector

Description: Add a vector to the given element

- Returns: vectorID of type **String** - Handle to new vector
- Input: vectorContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vector element
- Input: range of type **String[]** - Range expression with left in index 0 and right in index 1

### F.7.81.2 removeVector

Description: Remove the given vector

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: vectorID of type **String** - Handle to a vector element

## F.7.82 Vendor extensions operations (BASE)

### F.7.82.1 getVendorExtensions

Description: Returns vendorExtensionID of the given element

- Returns: vendorExtensions of type **String** - VendorExtension handle
- Input: vendorExtensionsContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vendor extension element

### F.7.82.2 addVendorExtensions

Description: Add a vendor extension with given value to the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: vendorExtensionsContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vendor extension element
- Input: vendorExtensions of type **String** - Vendor extension value

### F.7.82.3 removeVendorExtensions

Description: Remove the given vendor extension

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: vendorExtensionsContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vendor extension element

### F.7.82.4 setVendorExtensions

Description: Set the value of the given vendor extension

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: vendorExtensionsContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a vendor extension element
- Input: vendorExtensions of type **String** - Vendor extension value

## F.7.83 View operations (BASE)

### F.7.83.1 getViewEnvIdentifier

Description: Returns envIdentifier for the given view element

- Returns: envIdentifier of type **String[]** - View envIdentifier
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

### F.7.83.2 getViewComponentInstantiationRef

Description: Returns componentInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: componentInstantiationName of type **String** - Name of componentInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

### F.7.83.3 getViewComponentInstantiationID

Description: Returns componentInstantiationID for the given view element

- Returns: componentInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a componentInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

### F.7.83.4 getViewDesignInstantiationRef

Description: Returns designInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: designInstantiationName of type **String** - Name of designInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

### F.7.83.5 getViewDesignInstantiationID

Description: Returns designInstantiationID for the given view element

- Returns: designInstantiationID of type **String** - Handle to a designInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type **String** - Handle to a view element

**F.7.83.6 getViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationRef**

Description: Returns designConfigurationInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: designConfigurationInstantiationName of type ***String*** - Name of designConfigurationInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type ***String*** - Handle to a view element

**F.7.83.7 getViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationID**

Description: Returns designConfigurationInstantiationID for the given view element

- Returns: designConfigurationInstantiationID of type ***String*** - Handle to a designConfiguredInstantiation
- Input: viewID of type ***String*** - Handle to a view element

**F.7.84 View operations (EXTENDED)****F.7.84.1 setViewComponentInstantiationRef**

Description: Set componentInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: viewID of type ***String*** - Handle to a view element
- Input: componentInstantiationRef of type ***String*** - ComponentInstantiation name

**F.7.84.2 setViewDesignInstantiationRef**

Description: Set designInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: viewID of type ***String*** - Handle to a view element
- Input: designInstantiationRef of type ***String*** - DesignInstantiation name

**F.7.84.3 setViewDesignConfigurationInstantiationRef**

Description: Set designConfigurationInstantiationRef for the given view element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: viewID of type ***String*** - Handle to a view element
- Input: designConfigurationInstantiationRef of type ***String*** - DesignConfigurationInstantiation name

**F.7.85 Whitebox operations (BASE)****F.7.85.1 getWhiteboxElementType**

Description: Returns whiteboxType for the given whiteboxElement

- Returns: type of type ***String*** - Whitebox whiteboxType
- Input: whiteboxElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a whiteboxElement element

### F.7.85.2 getWhiteboxElementDrivable

Description: Returns driveable for the given whiteboxElement

- Returns: value of type **Boolean** - Whitebox driveable
- Input: whiteboxElementID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElement

## F.7.86 Whitebox operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.86.1 setWhiteboxElementDrivable

Description: Set driveable with the given value for the given whiteBox element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: whiteboxElementID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElement element
- Input: value of type **Boolean** - WhiteboxElement driveable

## F.7.87 Whitebox ref operations (BASE)

### F.7.87.1 getWhiteboxElementRefID

Description: Returns the value of the attribute name in the given whiteboxElementRef element

- Returns: whiteboxElementID of type **String** - Value of the attribute name
- Input: whiteboxElementRefID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRef element

### F.7.87.2 getWhiteboxElementRefLocationIDs

Description: Returns the whiteboxElementReflocationIDs for the given whiteboxElementRef element

- Returns: whiteboxElementRefLocationIDs of type **String[]** - List of whiteboxElementRefLocation handles
- Input: whiteboxElementRefID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRef element

### F.7.87.3 getWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlicesIDs

Description: Returns the slideIDs for the given whiteboxElementRefLocationID

- Returns: sliceIDs of type **String[]** - List of slices
- Input: whiteboxElementRefLocationID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRefLocation element

## F.7.88 Whitebox ref operations (EXTENDED)

### F.7.88.1 addWhiteboxElementRefLocation

Description: Adds a whiteboxElementRefLocation element to a given whiteboxElementRef element

- Returns: whiteboxElementRefLocationID of type **String** - Handle to a new whiteboxElementRefLocation
- Input: whiteboxElementRefID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRef element
- Input: pathSegmentName of type **String** - path segment name
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

**F.7.88.2 removeWhiteboxElementRefLocation**

Description: Removes the given whiteboxElementRefLocation element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: whiteboxElementRefLocationID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRefLocation element

**F.7.88.3 addWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlice**

Description: Adds a slice to a given whiteboxElementRefLocation element

- Returns: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a new slice
- Input: whiteboxElementRefLocationID of type **String** - Handle to a whiteboxElementRefLocation element
- Input: pathSegmentName of type **String** - path segment name
- Input: indices of type **String[]** - List of indices

**F.7.88.4 removeWhiteboxElementRefLocationSlice**

Description: Removes the given slice element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: sliceID of type **String** - Handle to a slice element

**F.7.89 name group operations (BASE)****F.7.89.1 getName**

Description: Returns name of the given element

- Returns: name of type **String** - Name of the given element
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup

**F.7.89.2 getDisplayName**

Description: Returns display name of the given element

- Returns: displayName of type **String** - Display name of the given element
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup

**F.7.89.3 getDescription**

Description: Returns description of the given element

- Returns: description of type **String** - Description of the given element
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | topElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup

**F.7.89.4 addDisplayName**

Description: Add given display name to the given element; fails if display name is already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup
- Input: displayName of type **String** - New display name

#### F.7.89.5 removeDisplayName

Description: Remove display name from the given element; fails if display name is not already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup

#### F.7.89.6 setDisplayName

Description: Set given display name for the given element; fails if display name is not already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | generatorChainID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup
- Input: displayName of type **String** - New display name

#### F.7.89.7 addDescription

Description: Add given description to the given element; fails if description is already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | topElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup
- Input: description of type **String** - New description

#### F.7.89.8 removeDescription

Description: Remove description from the given element; fails if description is not already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | topElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup

#### F.7.89.9 setDescription

Description: Set given description for the given element; fails if description is not already set

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID | topElementID of type **String** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup
- Input: description of type **String** - New description

### F.7.90 name group operations (EXTENDED)

#### F.7.90.1 setName

Description: Set name of the given element

- Returns: status of type **Boolean** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)

- Input: nameGroupContainerElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to an element that has a nameGroup
- Input: name of type ***String*** - New name

## F.7.91 top element operations (BASE)

### F.7.91.1 **getID**

Description: Returns ID of the element with the given VLVN or null if this element does not exist

- Returns: topElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to element with given VLVN
- Input: VLVN of type ***String[]*** - List of string values representing a VLVN

### F.7.91.2 **getVLVN**

Description: Returns VLVN of the element with the given ID

- Returns: VLVN of type ***String[]*** - VLVN of the element with the given ID
- Input: topElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a top-level element

### F.7.91.3 **getXMLPath**

Description: Returns location of the XML file that is registered with the VLVN of the given top-element

- Returns: path of type ***String*** - Location of the XML file
- Input: topElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a top-level element
- Input: dereference of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates if links are to be dereferenced

### F.7.91.4 **edit**

Description: Signal start of editing of the given top-element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: topElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a top-level element

### F.7.91.5 **setXMLPath**

Description: Set new location for the XML file that is registered with the VLVN of the given top-element

- Returns: status of type ***Boolean*** - Indicates call is successful (true) or not (false)
- Input: topElementID of type ***String*** - Handle to a top-level element
- Input: path of type ***String*** - New location of XML file

## F.7.92 All ID types

This subclause lists the TGI ID types.

<b>abstractionDefID</b>	<b>abstractionDefInstanceID</b>	<b>abstractionDefPortID</b>	<b>abstractionDefPortModeConstraintID</b>
<b>abstractionDefPortModeID</b>	<b>abstractionTypeID</b>	<b>abstractorBusInterfaceID</b>	<b>abstractorID</b>
<b>abstractorInstanceID</b>	<b>abstractorInstancesID</b>	<b>abstractorInstancesInterfacingID</b>	<b>abstractorViewID</b>

<b>activeInterfaceID</b>	<b>adHocConnectionID</b>	<b>adHocExternalPortRefere nceID</b>	<b>adHocExternalPortRefere nceID</b>
<b>adHocInternalPortRefere nceID</b>	<b>addressBlockID</b>	<b>addressSpaceID</b>	<b>alternateRegisterID</b>
<b>argumentID</b>	<b>arrayID</b>	<b>arrayID</b>	<b>assertionID</b>
<b>bankID</b>	<b>bridgeID</b>	<b>busDefID</b>	<b>busDefInstanceID</b>
<b>busInterfaceID</b>	<b>catalogID</b>	<b>channelID</b>	<b>choiceEnumerationID</b>
<b>choiceID</b>	<b>clockDriverID</b>	<b>componentID</b>	<b>componentInstanceID</b>
<b>componentInstantiationI D</b>	<b>configurableElementID</b>	<b>configurableElementValu eID</b>	<b>constraintSetID</b>
<b>constraintSetRefID</b>	<b>constraintSetID</b>	<b>constraintSetRefID</b>	<b>cpuID</b>
<b>designConfigurationID</b>	<b>designConfigurationInsta ntiationID</b>	<b>designID</b>	<b>designInstanceID</b>
<b>designInstantiationID</b>	<b>driveConstraintID</b>	<b>driveConstraintID</b>	<b>driverID</b>
<b>enumeratedValueID</b>	<b>executableImageID</b>	<b>fileBuilderID</b>	<b>fileDefineID</b>
<b>fileID</b>	<b>fileSetGroupID</b>	<b>fileSetID</b>	<b>fileSetRefID</b>
<b>functionID</b>	<b>functionSourceFileID</b>	<b>generatorChainConfigura tionID</b>	<b>generatorChainID</b>
<b>generatorID</b>	<b>groupSelectorID</b>	<b>hierInterfaceID</b>	<b>indirectInterfaceID</b>
<b>interconnectionConfigura tionID</b>	<b>interconnectionID</b>	<b>ipxactFileID</b>	<b>linkerCommandFileID</b>
<b>loadConstraintID</b>	<b>localAddressBlockID</b>	<b>localBankID</b>	<b>localMemoryMapID</b>
<b>logicalPortID</b>	<b>memoryElementID</b>	<b>memoryMapElementID</b>	<b>memoryMapID</b>
<b>memoryRemapID</b>	<b>moduleOrTypeParameter ID</b>	<b>monitorInterconnectionI D</b>	<b>monitorInterfaceID</b>
<b>monitoredInterfaceID</b>	<b>parameterID</b>	<b>pathSegmentID</b>	<b>physicalPortID</b>
<b>portID</b>	<b>portMapID</b>	<b>protocolPayloadID</b>	<b>referenceID</b>
<b>regFieldID</b>	<b>registerFileID</b>	<b>registerID</b>	<b>remapAddressID</b>
<b>remapPortID</b>	<b>remapStateID</b>	<b>resetID</b>	<b>resetTypeID</b>
<b>segmentID</b>	<b>serviceTypeDefID</b>	<b>singleShotDriverID</b>	<b>sliceID</b>
<b>subspaceMapID</b>	<b>timingConstraintID</b>	<b>timingConstraintID</b>	<b>topElementID</b>
<b>transTypeDefID</b>	<b>typeParameterID</b>	<b>unconfiguredElementID</b>	<b>vectorID</b>
<b>viewConfigurationID</b>	<b>viewID</b>	<b>whiteboxElementID</b>	<b>whiteboxElementRefID</b>
<b>whiteboxElementRefLoca tionID</b>	<b>wireTypeDefID</b>		

## Annex G

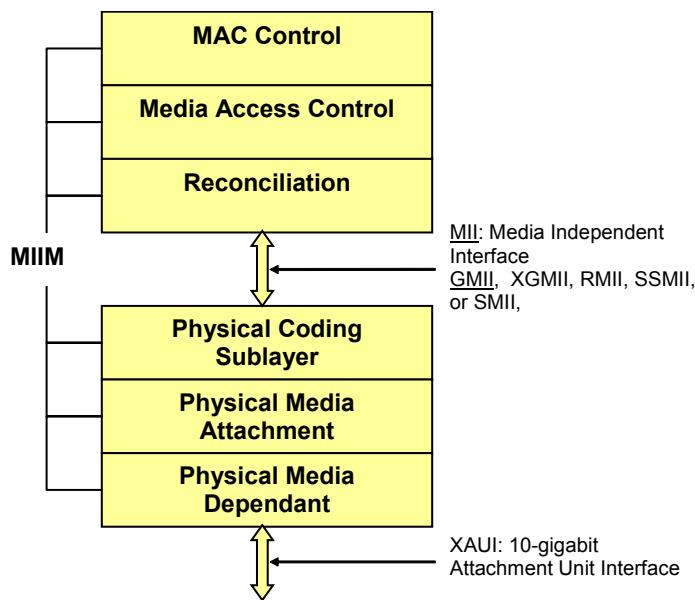
(informative)

### External bus with an internal/digital interface

While the current use of IP-XACT schema may be viewed as describing single chip implementations, the schemas works equally well at the package- and board-level. Often a PHY component exists that interconnects the internal and external bus. Some interface standards define both of these interfaces, some define only the internal, and some define only the external. A common point of confusion is to use an external bus standard as an interface on an internal component. This is legal if the component carries the full PHY implementation, but this often makes the component very technology- or implementation-dependent.

#### G.1 Example: ethernet interfaces

An Ethernet bus might be described as more than a single wire, and in a system that includes Ethernet buses, it might also include all the interfaces shown in [Figure G.1](#).



**Figure G.1—Ethernet interface examples**

**XAU**I: 10-gigabit Attachment Unit Interface

**MII**: Media-Independent Interface

**GMII**: Gigabit Media-Independent Interface

**XGMII**: 10-gigabit media-independent interface

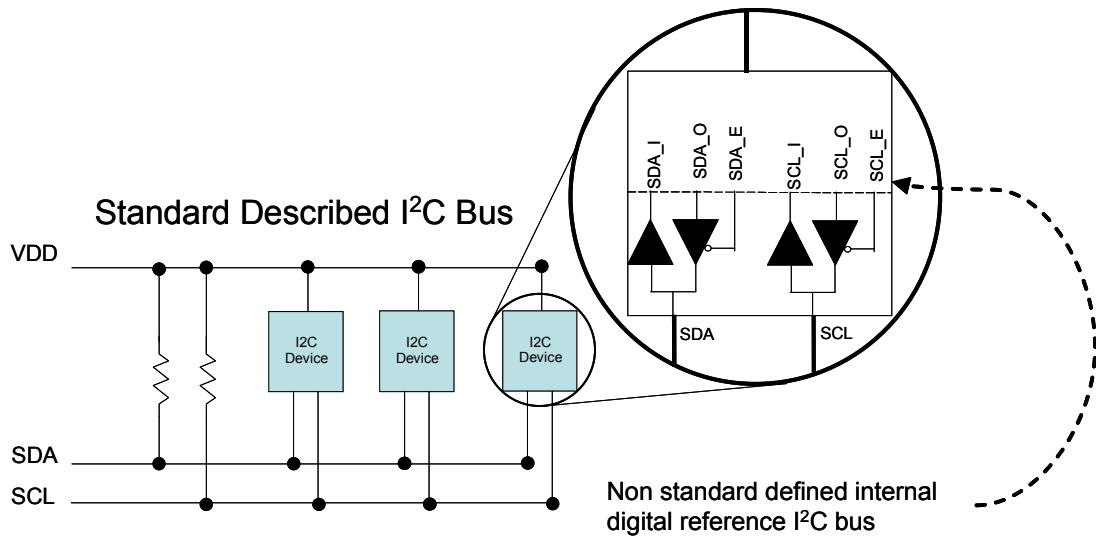
**RMII**: Reduced MII, 7-pin interface

**SSMII**: Source Synchronous MII

**SMII**: Serial Media-Independent Interface, this provides an interface to Ethernet MAC. The SMII provides the same interface as the MII, but with a reduced pin-out. The reduction in ports is achieved by multiplexing data and control information to a port transmit port and a single receive port.

## G.2 Example: I<sup>2</sup>C bus

The I<sup>2</sup>C bus is a two-wire bus with a clock and data line. The standard described bus is the two-wire bus. IP-XACT has defined an additional, related bus that is the internal digital interface. The internal digital interface shown in [Figure G.2](#) contains three pins for each external pin: for SDA (the data line), the internal pins are defined as input, output, and enable as SDA\_I, SDA\_O, and SDA\_E; in a similar manner, for the clock bus SCL, the internal pins are defined again for the functions of input, output, and enable as SCL\_I, SCL\_O, and SCL\_E.



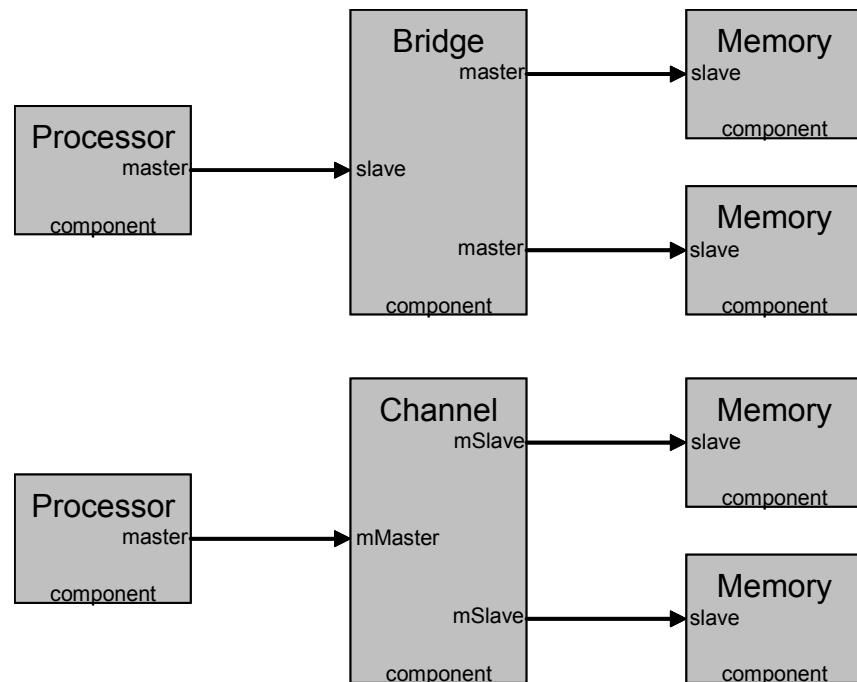
**Figure G.2—I<sup>2</sup>C interface example**

## Annex H

(informative)

### Bridges and channels

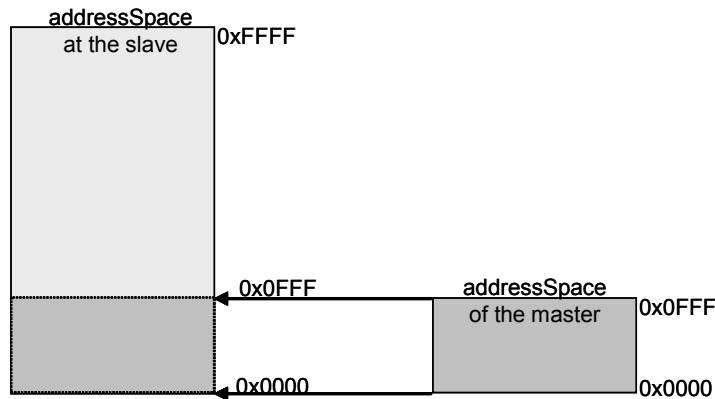
This annex describes the basic address calculations of the two interconnect schemes contained inside an IP-XACT component: a **bridge** statement that describes an interconnect between a slave interface and a master interface, and a **channel** statement that describes an interconnect between a mirrored-master interface and a mirrored-slave interface. [Figure H.1](#) highlights bridge and channel components in IP-XACT. For precise details on the addressing equations, see [Clause 12](#).



**Figure H.1—Bridge and channel components**

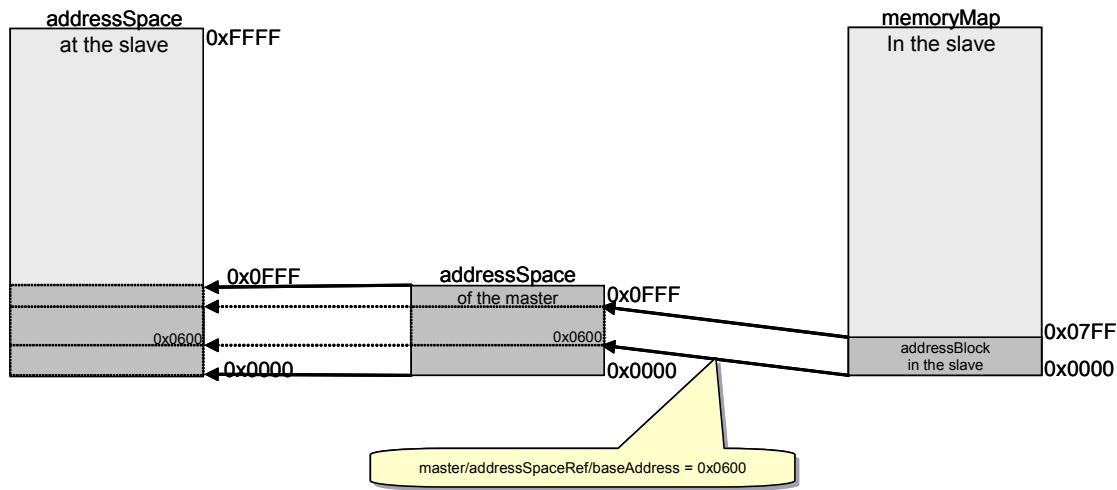
## H.1 Transparent bridge

A transparent bridge locates the start of the master interface's address space at the start of the address space seen at the slave interface; thus, the address is not modified from the slave interface of the bridge into the **addressSpace** of the master interface. In [Figure H.2](#), the master interface address space range 0x0000 to 0x0FFF maps to the address range 0x0000 to 0x0FFF as seen in the address space at the slave interface.



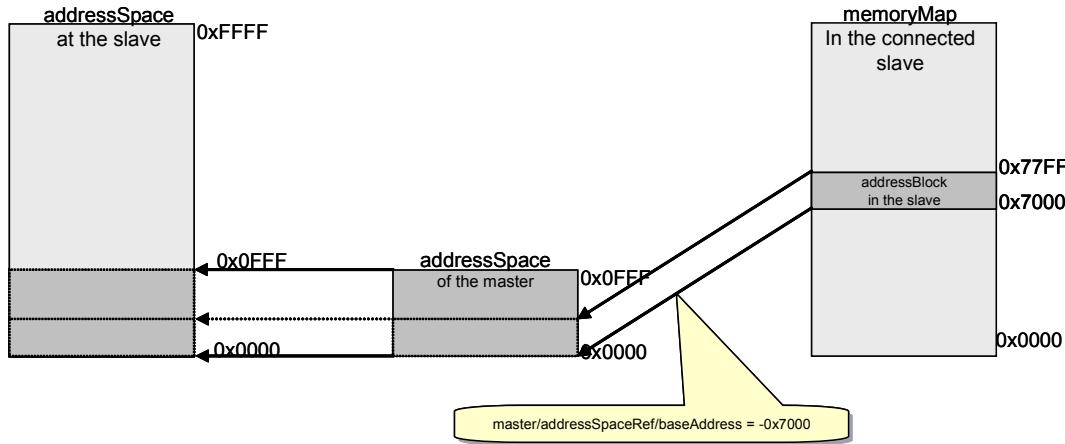
**Figure H.2—Transparent bridge slave interface address range**

An address block from another component connected to the bridge's master interface may appear in the master's address space. The base address of the connected address block is offset in the address space of the master interface by the **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress**. This also offsets the address block by the same amount in the address space at the slave interface. In [Figure H.3](#), the **addressBlock** from the connected slave range 0x0000 to 0x07FF maps to the address range 0x0600 to 0x0DFF (offset by **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress = 0x0600**) as seen in the address space of the master interface and to the address range 0x0600 to 0x0DFF as seen in the address space at the slave interface.



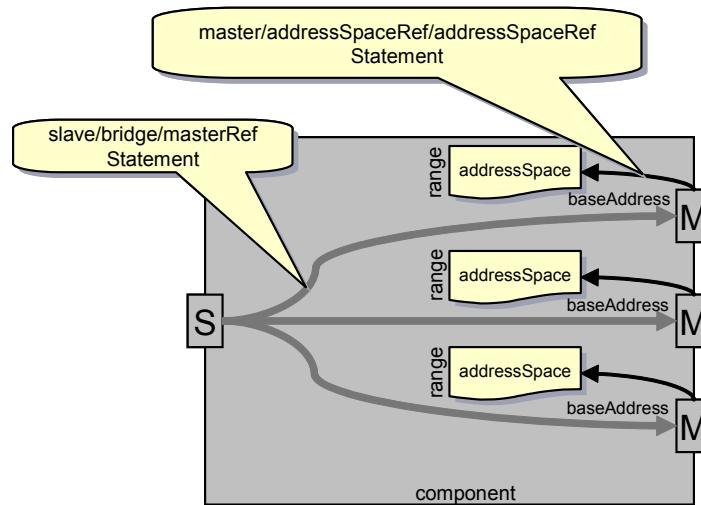
**Figure H.3—Offsetting an address block in a transparent bridge**

[Figure H.4](#) shows it is also possible to offset the **addressBlock** from the connected slave in the negative direction. The **addressBlock** from the connected slave range 0x7000 to 0x77FF maps to the address range 0x0000 to 0x07FF (offset by **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress** = -0x7000) as seen in the address space of the master interface and to the address range 0x0000 to 0x07FF as seen in the address space at the slave interface.



**Figure H.4—Negative offsetting of an address block in a transparent bridge**

[Figure H.5](#) shows the references between the various elements and attributes in a transparent bridge.

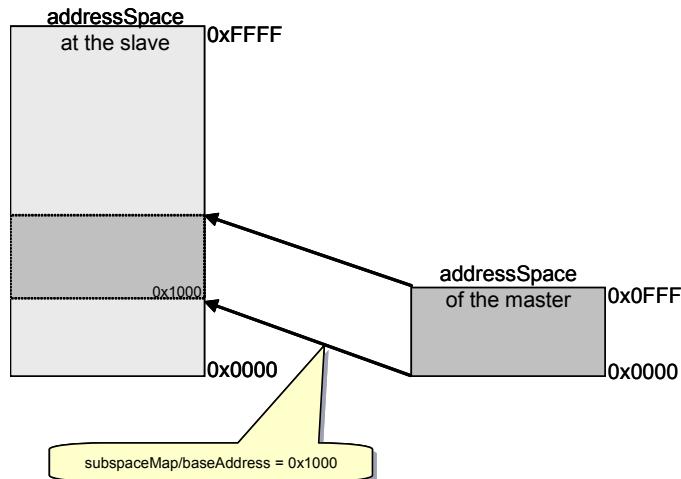


**Figure H.5—Transparent bridge references**

## H.2 Opaque bridge

### H.2.1 Without an address space segment reference

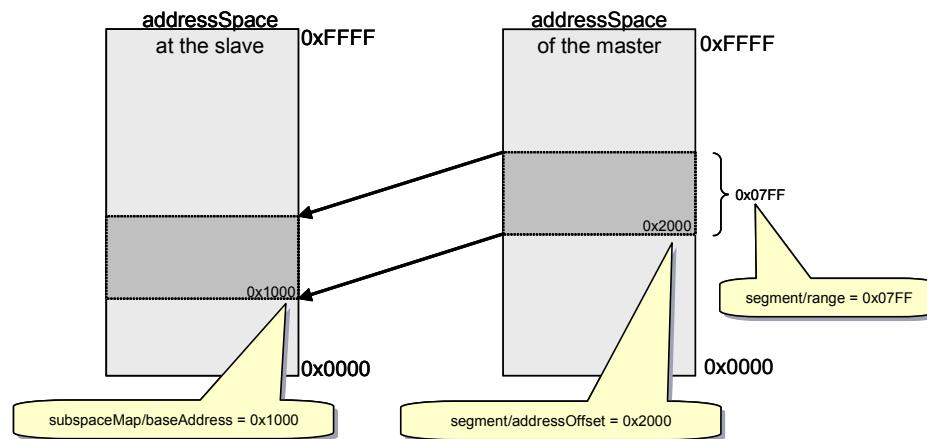
An opaque bridge that references only a master interface locates the start of the master interface's address space at the base address specified in the subspace map referenced by the slave interface; thus, the address is modified (offset by **subspaceMap/baseAddress**) from the slave interface into the **addressSpace** of the master interface. In [Figure H.6](#), the slave interface address range 0x1000 to 0x1FFF maps to address range 0x0000 to 0x0FFF in the master interface's address space. The **range** of the addresses mapped is determined by the **range** of the **addressSpace**.



**Figure H.6—Opaque bridge slave interface address range without segment reference**

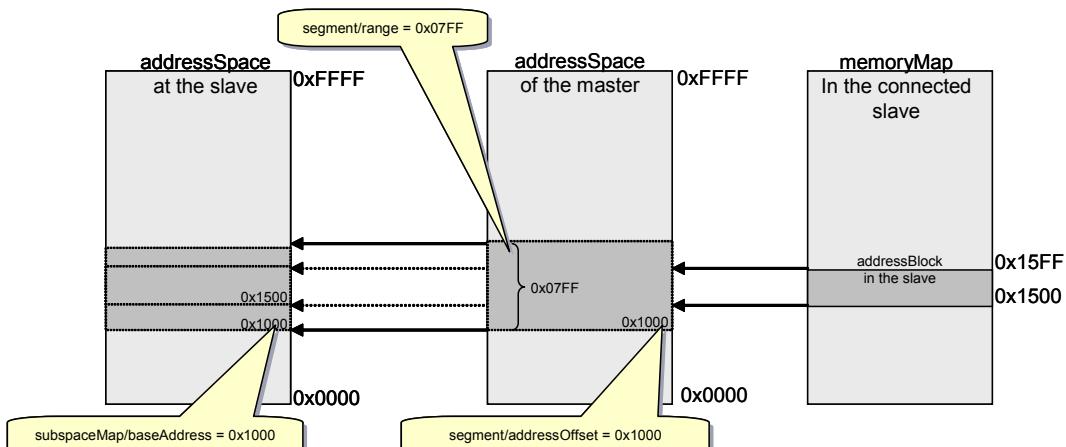
## H.2.2 With an address space segment reference

An opaque bridge with an **addressSpace** segment reference locates the start of the master interface's address space segment at the base address specified in the subspace map referenced by the slave interface; thus, the address is modified (offset by **subspaceMap/baseAddress**) from the slave interface into the **addressSpace** of the master interface. In [Figure H.7](#), the slave interface address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF maps to address range 0x2000 to 0x27FF in the master interface's address space. The **range** of the addresses mapped is determined by the **range** of the address space's segment.



**Figure H.7—Opaque bridge slave interface address range with segment reference**

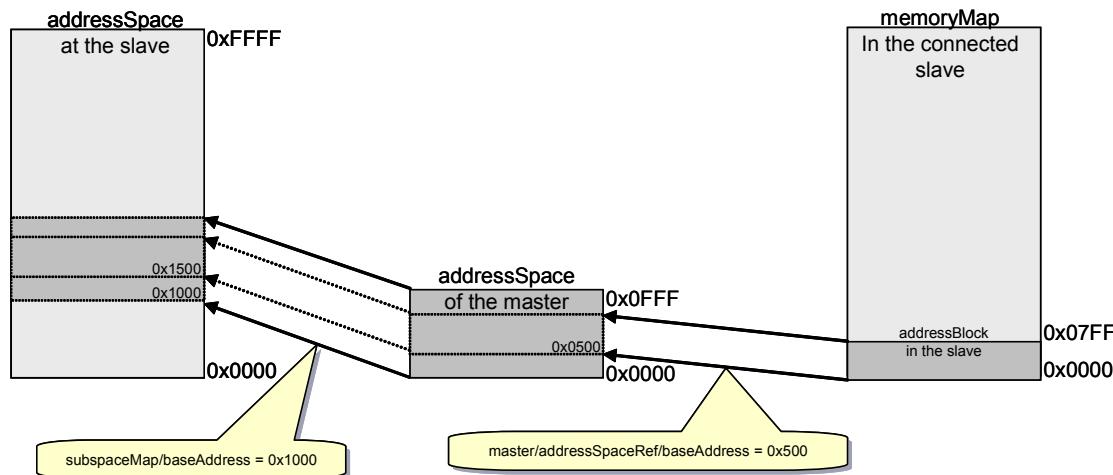
It is also possible to preserve the addressing across an opaque bridge. In [Figure H.8](#), the slave interface address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF maps to address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF in the master interface's address space. The **range** of the addresses mapped is determined by the **range** of the address space's segment.



**Figure H.8—Opaque bridge with transparent addressing**

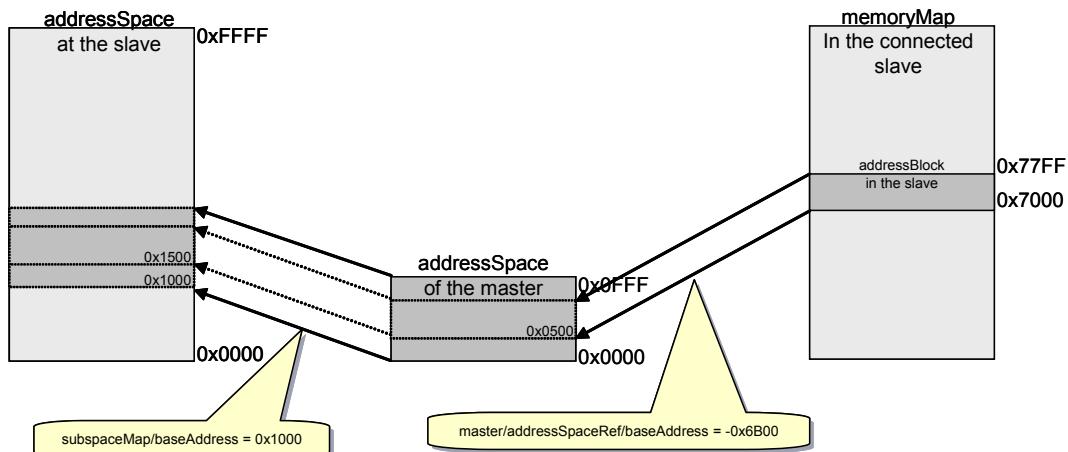
### H.2.3 Effect of a master interface address space base address

The effect of the master interface address space base address applies with or without a segment reference. An address block from another component connected to the bridge's master interface may appear in the master's address space. The base address of the connected address block is offset in the address space of the master interface by the **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress**. This also offsets the address block by the same amount in the address space at the slave interface. In [Figure H.9](#), the **addressBlock** from the connected slave range 0x0000 to 0x07FF maps to the address range 0x0500 to 0x0CFF (offset by **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress** = 0x0500) as seen in the address space of the master interface and to the address range 0x1500 to 0x1CFF (offset by **subspaceMap/baseAddress** = 0x1000) as seen in the address space at the slave interface.



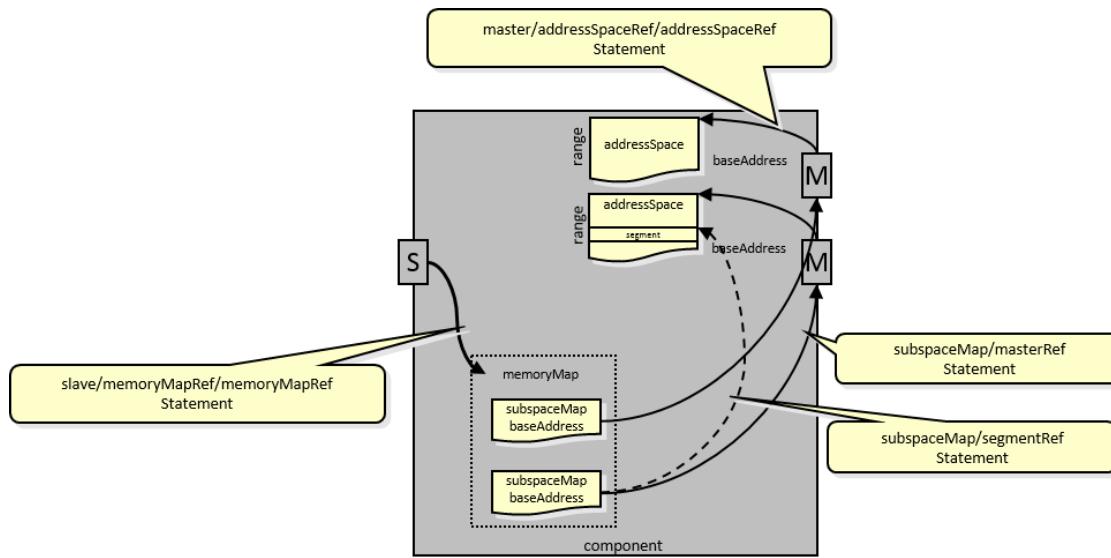
**Figure H.9—Offsetting an address block in an opaque bridge**

[Figure H.10](#) shows it is also possible to offset the **addressBlock** from the connected slave in the negative direction. The **addressBlock** from the connected slave range 0x7000 to 0x77FF maps to the address range 0x0500 to 0x0CFF (offset by **master/addressSpaceRef/baseAddress** = -0x6B00) as seen in the address space of the master interface and to the address range 0x1500 to 0x1CFF (offset by **subspaceMap/baseAddress** = 0x1000) as seen in the address space at the slave interface.



**Figure H.10—Negative offsetting of an address block in an opaque bridge**

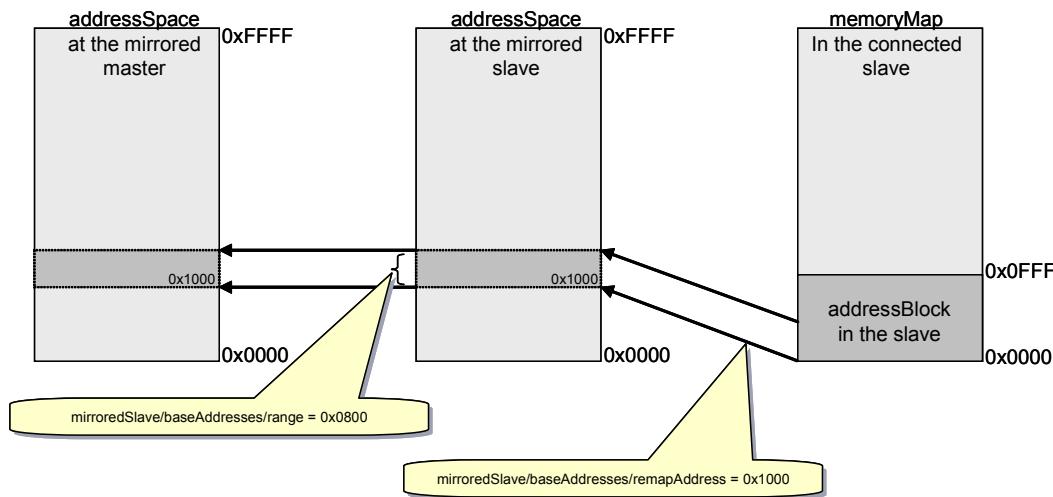
[Figure H.11](#) shows the references between the various elements and attributes in an opaque bridge.



**Figure H.11—Opaque bridge references**

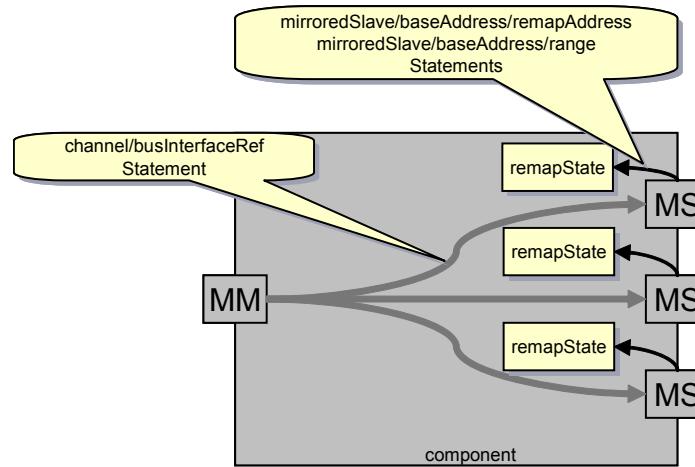
### H.3 Channel with address remapping

A mirrored-slave interface that is part of a channel may provide a remap address for the connected slave interface. This remap address is an offset of the base address of the address block in the connected slave interface, as shown in [Figure H.12](#). This offset is the addition the **remapAddress** element's value (see [6.10](#)) to the base address of the memory map from the slave. The **range** element also modifies (and potentially narrows) the range of the entire memory map of the connected slave. In [Figure H.12](#), the slave interface address range 0x0000 to 0xFFFF maps to the address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF (offset by **mirrorSlave/baseAddress/remapAddress** = 0x1000 and narrowed by **mirrorSlave/baseAddress/range** = 0x0800) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-slave interface.



**Figure H.12—Address remapping in a channel**

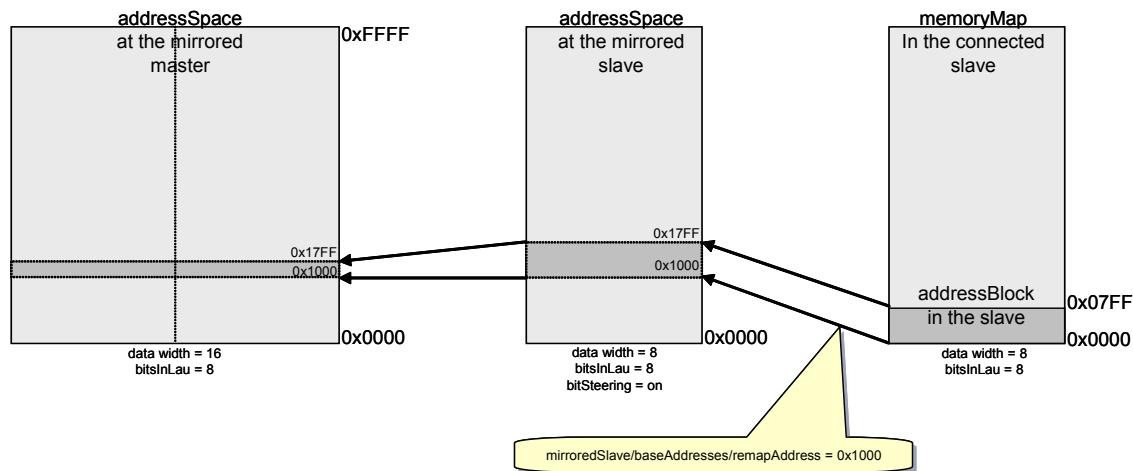
[Figure H.13](#) shows the references between the various elements and attributes in a channel with address remapping.



**Figure H.13—Channel with remapping references**

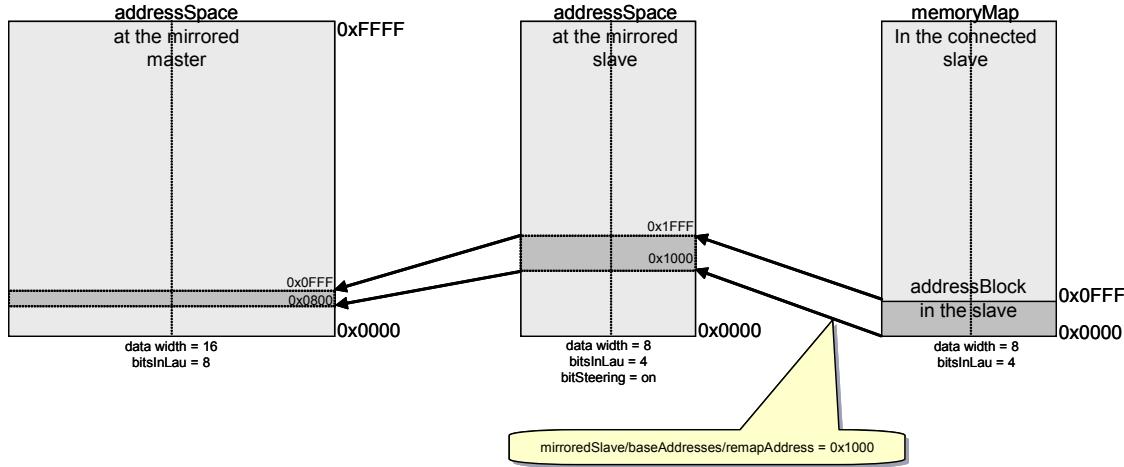
#### H.4 Channel with bit steering

A mirrored-slave interface that is part of a channel may have a **bitSteering** element. If the **bitSteering** element is **on**, the base address and range of an address block as seen across a channel are modified only by the ratio of the **bitsInLau** of the mirrored-slave and the mirrored-master interfaces. In [Figure H.14](#), the slave interface address range 0x0000 to 0x07FF maps to the address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF (offset by **mirrorSlave/baseAddress/remapAddress** = 0x1000) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-slave interface and maps to the address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF (multiplied by the ratio of the mirrored-slave and mirrored-master **bitsInLau** 8/8 = 1, and independent of the width of the logical data ports) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-master interface.



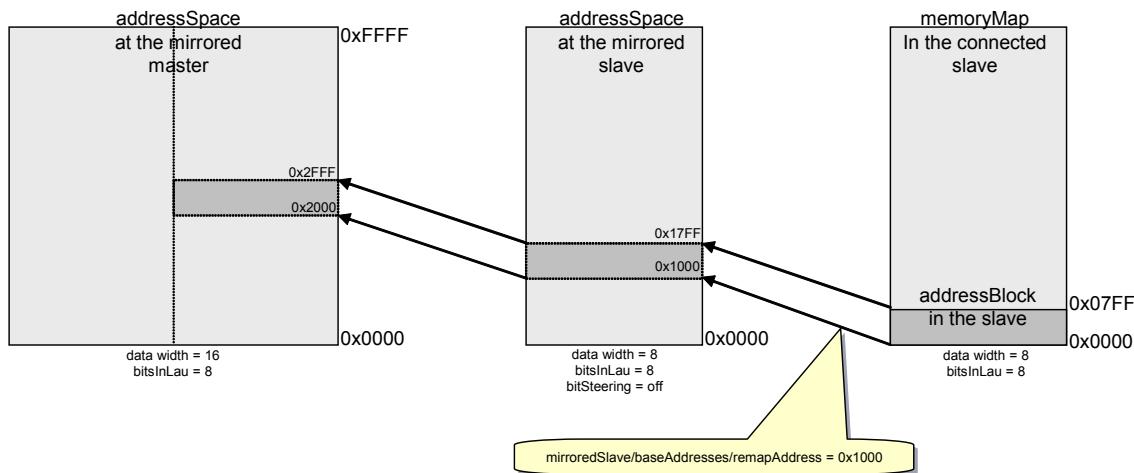
**Figure H.14—Channel with equal bitsInLau and bitSteering = on**

In [Figure H.15](#), the **bitSteering** element is **on**, and there are differing **bitsInLau** across the channel. The slave interface address range 0x0000 to 0x0FFF maps to the address range 0x1000 to 0x1FFF (offset by **mirrorSlave/baseAddress/remapAddress** = 0x1000) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-slave interface and maps to the address range 0x0800 to 0x0FFF (multiplied by the ratio of the mirrored-slave and mirrored-master **bitsInLau** 4/8 = 1/2, and independent of the width of the logical data ports) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-master interface.



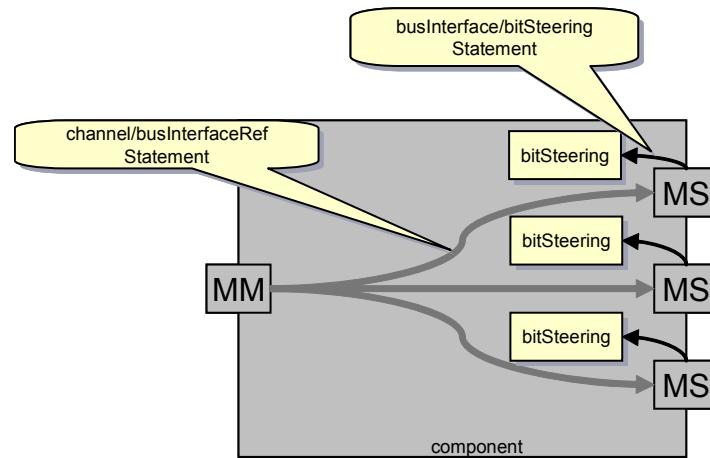
**Figure H.15—Channel with non-equal bitsInLau and bitSteering = on**

If **bitSteering** is **off**, the base address and range of an address block as seen across a channel is modified by the ratio of the **bitsInLau** and the logical data-width of the mirrored-slave and mirrored-master interfaces. In [Figure H.16](#), the slave interface address range 0x0000 to 0x07FF maps to the address range 0x1000 to 0x17FF (offset by **mirrorSlave/baseAddress/remapAddress** = 0x1000) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-slave interface and maps to the address range 0x2000 to 0x2FFF (multiplied by the ratio of mirrored-slave and mirrored-master **bitsInLau** 8/8 = 1, and multiplied by the ratio mirrored-master logical data-width divided by the mirrored-slave logical data-width 16/8 = 2) in the address space as seen at the mirrored-master interface.



**Figure H.16—Channel with bitSteering = off**

[Figure H.17](#) shows the references between the various elements and attributes in a channel with **bitSteering** references.



**Figure H.17—Channel with bitSteering references**

## Annex I

(informative)

### Examples

This annex shows a set of examples [B10] covering some practical uses of IP-XACT (syntax) and a series of pointers to the various syntax definitions, as appropriate. Within each example, any LINK: comments show the relevant [cross-reference](#) to that element's image/descriptions.

#### I.1 abstractionDefinition - RTL

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example abstraction definition used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document. This file represents an RTL abstraction.
-->
<!-- LINK: abstractionDefinition: see 5.3, Abstraction definition -->
<ipxact:abstractionDefinition xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance" xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
index.xsd">
<ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
<ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
<ipxact:name>SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
<ipxact:busType vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinitionExtension" version="1.0"/>
<ipxact:ports>
<!-- LINK: port: see 5.4, Ports -->
<!-- Simple wire port -->
<ipxact:port>
<ipxact:logicalName>Data</ipxact:logicalName>
<ipxact:displayName>Data Bus</ipxact:displayName>
<ipxact:description>The data bus</ipxact:description>
<!-- LINK: wire: see 5.5, Wire ports -->
<ipxact:wire>
<!-- LINK: qualifier: see 5.6, Qualifiers -->
<ipxact:qualifier>
<ipxact:isData>true</ipxact:isData>
</ipxact:qualifier>
<ipxact:onMaster>
<!-- LINK: wirePort: see 5.7, Wire port group -->
<ipxact:presence>required</ipxact:presence>
<ipxact:width>8</ipxact:width>
<ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>
<!-- LINK: modeConstraints: see 5.8, Wire port mode (and mirrored
mode) constraints -->
<ipxact:modeConstraints>
<ipxact:timingConstraint clockName="Clk">40</
ipxact:timingConstraint>
</ipxact:modeConstraints>
</ipxact:onMaster>
<ipxact:onSlave>
```

```
<ipxact:width>8</ipxact:width>
    <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
</ipxact:onSlave>
    <ipxact:defaultValue>'ff</ipxact:defaultValue>
</ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:logicalName>Address</ipxact:logicalName>
    <ipxact:displayName>Address Bus</ipxact:displayName>
    <ipxact:description>The address bus</ipxact:description>
    <!-- LINK: wire: see 5.5, Wire ports -->
    <ipxact:wire>
        <!-- LINK: qualifier: see 5.6, Qualifiers -->
        <ipxact:qualifier>
            <ipxact:isAddress>true</ipxact:isAddress>
        </ipxact:qualifier>
        <ipxact:onMaster>
            <!-- LINK: wirePort: see 5.7, Wire port group -->
            <ipxact:presence>required</ipxact:presence>
            <ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>
        </ipxact:onMaster>
        <ipxact:onSlave>
            <ipxact:width>8</ipxact:width>
            <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
        </ipxact:onSlave>
        <ipxact:defaultValue>'ff</ipxact:defaultValue>
    </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- Simple clock port to show system elements -->
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:logicalName>Clk</ipxact:logicalName>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:qualifier>
            <ipxact:isClock>true</ipxact:isClock>
        </ipxact:qualifier>
        <ipxact:onSystem>
            <ipxact:group>SystemSignals</ipxact:group>
            <ipxact:width>1</ipxact:width>
            <ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>
        </ipxact:onSystem>
        <ipxact:onMaster>
            <ipxact:presence>optional</ipxact:presence>
            <ipxact:width>1</ipxact:width>
            <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
        </ipxact:onMaster>
        <ipxact:onSlave>
            <ipxact:presence>optional</ipxact:presence>
            <ipxact:width>1</ipxact:width>
            <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
        </ipxact:onSlave>
        <ipxact:requiresDriver driverType="singleShot">true</
ipxact:requiresDriver>
    </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- Conditionally existing logical port -->
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:isPresent>UsingParity</ipxact:isPresent>
    <ipxact:logicalName>Parity</ipxact:logicalName>
    <ipxact:wire>
```

```

<ipxact:onMaster>
    <ipxact:presence>required</ipxact:presence>
    <ipxact:width>1</ipxact:width>
    <ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>
</ipxact:onMaster>
<ipxact:onSlave>
    <ipxact:presence>required</ipxact:presence>
    <ipxact:width>1</ipxact:width>
    <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
</ipxact:onSlave>
</ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
</ipxact:ports>
<ipxact:description>Example RTL abstraction definition used in the IP-XACT standard.</ipxact:description>
<ipxact:parameters>
    <ipxact:parameter parameterId="UsingParity" type="bit"
        resolve="generated">
        <ipxact:name>UsingParity</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:description>Set to true if parity interface being used.</ipxact:description>
        <ipxact:value>0</ipxact:value>
    </ipxact:parameter>
</ipxact:parameters>
</ipxact:abstractionDefinition>

```

## I.2 abstractionDefinition - TLM

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example abstraction definition used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document. This is a trivial TLM abstraction.
-->
<!-- LINK: abstractionDefinition: see 5.3, Abstraction definition -->
<ipxact:abstractionDefinition xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
    instance" xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
        index.xsd">
    <ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
    <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
    <ipxact:name>SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
    <ipxact:busType vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
        name="SampleBusDefinitionExtension" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:ports>
        <!-- LINK: port: see 5.4, Ports -->
        <!-- Simple transactional port -->
        <ipxact:port>
            <ipxact:logicalName>Transport</ipxact:logicalName>
            <!-- LINK: transactional: see 5.9, Transactional ports -->
            <ipxact:transactional>
                <ipxact:onMaster>
                    <!-- abstractionDefinition/transactionalPort -->
                    <ipxact:presence>optional</ipxact:presence>
                    <ipxact:initiative>provides</ipxact:initiative>
                    <ipxact:kind>simple_socket</ipxact:kind>

```

```
<ipxact:busWidth>8</ipxact:busWidth>
<!-- LINK: protocol: see <a href="#">6.12.8, Component transactional protocol/
payload definition -->
<ipxact:protocol>
  <ipxact:protocolType>tlm</ipxact:protocolType>
  <ipxact:payload>
    <ipxact:name>tlm2</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:type>generic</ipxact:type>
  </ipxact:payload>
  </ipxact:protocol>
</ipxact:onMaster>
<ipxact:onSlave>
  <ipxact:initiative>requires</ipxact:initiative>
  <ipxact:kind>simple_socket</ipxact:kind>
  <ipxact:protocol>
    <ipxact:protocolType>tlm</ipxact:protocolType>
    <ipxact:payload>
      <ipxact:name>tlm2</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:type>generic</ipxact:type>
    </ipxact:payload>
    </ipxact:protocol>
  </ipxact:onSlave>
  </ipxact:transactional>
</ipxact:port>
</ipxact:ports>
<ipxact:description>Example TLM abstraction definition used in the IP-XACT
standard.</ipxact:description>
</ipxact:abstractionDefinition>
```

### I.3 abstractor

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example abstractor used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document.
-->
<!-- LINK: abstractor: see <a href="#">8.1, Abstractor -->
<ipxact:abstractor xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accelera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accelera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
  index.xsd">
  <ipxact:vendor>accelera.org</ipxact:vendor>
  <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
  <ipxact:name>SampleAbstractor</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
  <ipxact:abstractorMode>master</ipxact:abstractorMode>
  <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
    name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
  <!-- LINK: abstractorInterfaces: see 8.2, Abstractor interfaces -->
  <ipxact:abstractorInterfaces>
    <!-- master interface -->
    <ipxact:abstractorInterface>
      <ipxact:name>Master</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:abstractionTypes>
        <ipxact:abstractionType>
```

```

        <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM" version="1.0"/>
    </ipxact:abstractionType>
</ipxact:abstractionTypes>
</ipxact:abstractorInterface>
<!-- mirrored master interface -->
<ipxact:abstractorInterface>
    <ipxact:name>MirroredMaster</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:abstractionTypes>
        <ipxact:abstractionType>
            <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL" version="1.0"/>
        </ipxact:abstractionType>
    </ipxact:abstractionTypes>
</ipxact:abstractorInterface>
</ipxact:abstractorInterfaces>

<!-- Remaining content in abstractor is optional and similar enough -->
<!-- to a component that it is excluded from the example -->

</ipxact:abstractor>

```

## I.4 busDefinition

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example bus definition used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document
-->
<!-- LINK: busDefinition/busDefinition: see 5.2, Bus definition -->
<ipxact:busDefinition xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
index.xsd">
    <ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
    <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
    <ipxact:name>SampleBusDefinitionExtension</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
    <ipxact:directConnection>true</ipxact:directConnection>
    <ipxact:broadcast>true</ipxact:broadcast>
    <ipxact:isAddressable>false</ipxact:isAddressable>
    <ipxact:extends vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
        name="SampleBusDefinitionBase" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:maxMasters>1</ipxact:maxMasters>
    <ipxact:maxSlaves>16</ipxact:maxSlaves>
    <ipxact:systemGroupNames>
        <ipxact:systemGroupName>SystemSignals</ipxact:systemGroupName>
    </ipxact:systemGroupNames>
    <ipxact:description>Example bus definition used in the IP-XACT standard.</
        ipxact:description>
    <!-- ipxact:parameters - excluded for brevity - see component example -->
    <!-- ipxact:assertions - excluded for brevity - see component example -->
    <!-- ipxact:vendorExtensions - excluded for brevity - see component example
-->
</ipxact:busDefinition>

```

## I.5 catalog

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example catalog used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document
-->
<!-- LINK: catalog: see 11.1, catalog -->
<ipxact:catalog xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
        index.xsd">
    <ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
    <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
    <ipxact:name>SampleCatalog</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
    <ipxact:description>Example catalog used in the IP-XACT standard.</
        ipxact:description>
    <ipxact:busDefinitions>
        <!-- LINK: catalog/ipxactFile: see 11.2, ipxactFile -->
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
            <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
                name="SampleBusDefinitionBase" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:name>./SampleBusDefinitionBase.xml</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:description>File included for semantic validation only.</
                ipxact:description>
        </ipxact:ipxactFile>
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
            <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
                name="SampleBusDefinitionExtension" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:name>./SampleBusDefinitionExtension.xml</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:description>Sample extended busDefinition</ipxact:description>
        </ipxact:ipxactFile>
    </ipxact:busDefinitions>
    <ipxact:abstractionDefinitions>
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
            <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
                name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:name>./SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL.xml</ipxact:name>
        </ipxact:ipxactFile>
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
            <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
                name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:name>./SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM.xml</ipxact:name>
        </ipxact:ipxactFile>
    </ipxact:abstractionDefinitions>
    <!-- ipxact:components -->
    <ipxact:components>
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
            <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
                name="SampleComponent" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:name>./SampleComponent.xml</ipxact:name>
        </ipxact:ipxactFile>
    </ipxact:components>
    <!-- ipxact:abstractors -->
    <ipxact:abstractors>
        <ipxact:ipxactFile>
```

```

<ipxact:vlnv vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
  name="SampleAbstractor" version="1.0"/>
  <ipxact:name>./SampleAbstractor.xml</ipxact:name>
</ipxact:ipxactFile>
</ipxact:abstractors>
<!-- ipxact:designs -->
<ipxact:designs>
  <ipxact:ipxactFile>
    <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample" name="SampleDesign"
      version="1.0"/>
      <ipxact:name>./SampleDesign.xml</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:ipxactFile>
  </ipxact:designs>
<!-- ipxact:designConfigurations -->
<ipxact:designConfigurations>
  <ipxact:ipxactFile>
    <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
      name="SampleDesignConfiguration" version="1.0"/>
      <ipxact:name>./SampleDesignConfiguration.xml</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:ipxactFile>
</ipxact:designConfigurations>
<ipxact:generatorChains>
  <ipxact:ipxactFile>
    <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
      name="SampleGeneratorChain" version="1.0"/>
      <ipxact:name>./SampleGeneratorChain.xml</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:ipxactFile>
  <ipxact:ipxactFile>
    <ipxact:vlnv vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
      name="SampleGeneratorChainForReference" version="1.0"/>
      <ipxact:name>./SampleGeneratorChainForReference.xml</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:ipxactFile>
  </ipxact:generatorChains>
</ipxact:catalog>

```

## I.6 component

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example component used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document.
-->
<!-- LINK: component: see 6.1, Component -->
<ipxact:component xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accelera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accelera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
  index.xsd">
  <ipxact:vendor>accelera.org</ipxact:vendor>
  <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
  <ipxact:name>SampleComponent</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
  <ipxact:busInterfaces>
    <!-- LINK: busInterface: 6.5.1, busInterface -->
    <!-- Basic slave interface with both RTL and TLM representations -->
    <ipxact:busInterface>
      <ipxact:name>Slave</ipxact:name>

```

```
<ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
<!-- LINK: abstractionTypes: 6.5.6, Abstraction types -->
<ipxact:abstractionTypes>
    <ipxact:abstractionType>
        <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
        <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL" version="1.0">
            <!-- Configure abstraction to have the 'Parity' logical port -->
            <ipxact:configurableElementValues>
                <ipxact:configurableElementValue referenceId="UsingParity">1
                </ipxact:configurableElementValue>
            </ipxact:configurableElementValues>
        </ipxact:abstractionRef>
        <ipxact:portMaps>
            <!-- LINK: portMap: 6.5.7, Port map -->
            <ipxact:portMap>
                <ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>Data</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:physicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>slv_data</ipxact:name>
                    <ipxact:partSelect>
                        <ipxact:range>
                            <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left>
                            <ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
                        </ipxact:range>
                    </ipxact:partSelect>
                </ipxact:physicalPort>
            </ipxact:portMap>
            <ipxact:portMap>
                <ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>Address</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:physicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>slv_addr</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:physicalPort>
            </ipxact:portMap>
            <ipxact:portMap>
                <ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>Parity</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:physicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>slv_parity</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:physicalPort>
            </ipxact:portMap>
            <!-- Mapping to clock port included for 'information' only - not
for connecting -->
            <ipxact:portMap>
                <ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>Clk</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:physicalPort>
                    <ipxact:name>clk</ipxact:name>
                </ipxact:physicalPort>
                <ipxact:isInformative>true</ipxact:isInformative>
            </ipxact:portMap>
        </ipxact:portMaps>
    </ipxact:abstractionType>
```

```

<ipxact:abstractionType>
    <ipxact:viewRef>TLMview</ipxact:viewRef>
    <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:portMaps>
        <ipxact:portMap>
            <ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:name>Transport</ipxact:name>
            </ipxact:logicalPort>
            <ipxact:physicalPort>
                <ipxact:name>slv_transaction</ipxact:name>
            </ipxact:physicalPort>
        </ipxact:portMap>
    </ipxact:portMaps>
</ipxact:abstractionType>
</ipxact:abstractionTypes>
<!-- LINK: interfaceMode: see 6.5.2, Interface modes -->
<!-- LINK: slave: see 6.5.4, Slave interface -->
<ipxact:slave>
    <ipxact:memoryMapRef memoryMapRef="SimpleMapWithBlock"/>
</ipxact:slave>
<!-- This interface must be connected in any containing design -->
<ipxact:connectionRequired>true</ipxact:connectionRequired>
</ipxact:busInterface>
<!-- Basic master interface with both RTL and TLM representations -->
<ipxact:busInterface>
    <ipxact:name>Master</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:abstractionTypes>
        <ipxact:abstractionType>
            <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
            <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_RTL" version="1.0">
                <!-- Configure abstraction to not have the 'Parity' logical port -->
                <!-- This is the default but included to make it explicit -->
                <ipxact:configurableElementValues>
                    <ipxact:configurableElementValue referenceId="UsingParity">
                    </ipxact:configurableElementValue>
                </ipxact:configurableElementValues>
            </ipxact:abstractionRef>
            <ipxact:portMaps>
                <ipxact:portMap>
                    <ipxact:logicalPort>
                        <ipxact:name>Data</ipxact:name>
                    </ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:physicalPort>
                        <ipxact:name>mst_data</ipxact:name>
                    </ipxact:physicalPort>
                </ipxact:portMap>
                <ipxact:portMap>
                    <ipxact:logicalPort>
                        <ipxact:name>Address</ipxact:name>
                    </ipxact:logicalPort>
                    <ipxact:physicalPort>
                        <ipxact:name>mst_addr</ipxact:name>
                    </ipxact:physicalPort>
                </ipxact:portMap>
            </ipxact:portMaps>
        </ipxact:abstractionType>
    </ipxact:abstractionTypes>
</ipxact:busInterface>

```

```
<!-- Mapping to clock port included for 'information' only - not
for connecting -->
    <ipxact:portMap>
        <ipxact:logicalPort>
            <ipxact:name>Clk</ipxact:name>
        </ipxact:logicalPort>
        <ipxact:physicalPort>
            <ipxact:name>clk</ipxact:name>
        </ipxact:physicalPort>
        <ipxact:isInformative>true</ipxact:isInformative>
    </ipxact:portMap>
</ipxact:portMaps>
</ipxact:abstractionType>
<ipxact:abstractionType>
    <ipxact:viewRef>TLMview</ipxact:viewRef>
    <ipxact:abstractionRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleAbstractionDefinition_TLM" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:portMaps>
        <ipxact:portMap>
            <ipxact:logicalPort>
                <ipxact:name>Transport</ipxact:name>
            </ipxact:logicalPort>
            <ipxact:physicalPort>
                <ipxact:name>mst_transaction</ipxact:name>
            </ipxact:physicalPort>
        </ipxact:portMap>
    </ipxact:portMaps>
</ipxact:abstractionType>
</ipxact:abstractionTypes>
<!-- LINK: master: see 6.5.3, Master interface -->
<ipxact:master>
    <ipxact:addressSpaceRef addressSpaceRef="simpleAddressSpace"/>
</ipxact:master>
</ipxact:busInterface>
<ipxact:busInterface>
    <ipxact:name>MirroredMaster</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:mirroredMaster/>
</ipxact:busInterface>
<ipxact:busInterface>
    <ipxact:name>MirroredSlave</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
    <!-- LINK: master: see 6.5.5, Mirrored slave interface -->
    <ipxact:mirroredSlave>
        <ipxact:baseAddresses>
            <ipxact:remapAddress>0x40000000</ipxact:remapAddress>
            <ipxact:range>0x1000</ipxact:range>
        </ipxact:baseAddresses>
    </ipxact:mirroredSlave>
</ipxact:busInterface>
<ipxact:busInterface>
    <ipxact:name>SlaveWithTransparentBridge</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
    <ipxact:slave>
        <ipxact:transparentBridge masterRef="Master"/>
    </ipxact:slave>
```

```

</ipxact:busInterface>
<ipxact:busInterface>
  <ipxact:name>SlaveForSubspaceMap</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
  <ipxact:slave>
    <ipxact:memoryMapRef memoryMapRef="SimpleMapWithSubspace"/>
  </ipxact:slave>
</ipxact:busInterface>
<ipxact:busInterface>
  <ipxact:name>Monitor</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:busType vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
name="SampleBusDefinition" version="1.0"/>
  <ipxact:monitor interfaceMode="slave"/>
</ipxact:busInterface>
</ipxact:busInterfaces>
<ipxact:indirectInterfaces>
  <!-- LINK: indirectInterface: see 6.6, Indirect interfaces -->
<ipxact:indirectInterface>
  <ipxact:name>IndirectMemoryInterface</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:indirectAddressRef>IAR</ipxact:indirectAddressRef>
  <ipxact:indirectDataRef>IDR</ipxact:indirectDataRef>
  <ipxact:memoryMapRef>MapForMemory</ipxact:memoryMapRef>
</ipxact:indirectInterface>
</ipxact:indirectInterfaces>
<ipxact:channels>
  <!-- LINK: channel: see 6.7, Component channels -->
<ipxact:channel>
  <ipxact:name>theChannel</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:busInterfaceRef>
    <ipxact:localName>MirroredMaster</ipxact:localName>
  </ipxact:busInterfaceRef>
  <ipxact:busInterfaceRef>
    <ipxact:localName>MirroredSlave</ipxact:localName>
  </ipxact:busInterfaceRef>
</ipxact:channel>
</ipxact:channels>
<ipxact:remapStates>
  <!-- LINK: remapStates: see 6.10.2, Remap states-->
<ipxact:remapState>
  <ipxact:name>Boot</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:description>Defines the remap state associated with the component
at boot time.</ipxact:description>
</ipxact:remapState>
<ipxact:remapState>
  <ipxact:name>Normal</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:description>Defines the remap state associated with the component
after boot time.</ipxact:description>
</ipxact:remapState>
</ipxact:remapStates>
<ipxact:addressSpaces>
  <!-- LINK: addressSpace: see 6.8.1, addressSpaces -->
<ipxact:addressSpace>
  <ipxact:name>simpleAddressSpace</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:range>4*(2***30)</ipxact:range>
  <ipxact:width>32</ipxact:width>
</ipxact:addressSpace>
</ipxact:addressSpaces>
<ipxact:memoryMaps>

```

```
<!-- LINK: memoryMap: see 6.9.1, memoryMaps -->
<ipxact:memoryMap>
    <ipxact:name>SimpleMapWithBlock</ipxact:name>
    <!-- Address block starts at address 0, containing 1024 addressable 8-
bit -->
    <!-- units, organized into larger 32-bit units. -->
    <!-- LINK: addressBlock: see 6.9.2, Address block -->
    <ipxact:addressBlock>
        <ipxact:name>SimpleAddressBlock</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:baseAddress>0x0</ipxact:baseAddress>
        <!-- LINK: addressBlockDefinitionGroup: see 6.9.3, Address block
definition group -->
        <ipxact:range>2**10</ipxact:range>
        <ipxact:width>32</ipxact:width>
        <!-- LINK: memoryBlockData: see 6.9.4, memoryBlockData group -->
        <ipxact:usage>register</ipxact:usage>
        <ipxact:volatile>false</ipxact:volatile>
        <ipxact:access>read-write</ipxact:access>
        <!-- LINK: registerData: see 6.11.1, Register data -->
        <!-- LINK: register: see 6.11.2, Register -->
        <ipxact:register>
            <ipxact:name>BasicRegister</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:addressOffset>0x4</ipxact:addressOffset>
            <!-- LINK: registerDefinitionGroup: see 6.11.3, Register definition
group -->
            <ipxact:size>32</ipxact:size>
            <ipxact:volatile>true</ipxact:volatile>
            <ipxact:access>read-writeOnce</ipxact:access>
            <!-- LINK: field: see 6.11.8, Register bit fields -->
            <ipxact:field>
                <ipxact:name>F1</ipxact:name>
                <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
                <ipxact:resets>
                    <ipxact:reset>
                        <ipxact:value>0x0</ipxact:value>
                    </ipxact:reset>
                    <ipxact:reset resetTypeRef="SOFT">
                        <ipxact:value>0xf</ipxact:value>
                        <ipxact:mask>0xa</ipxact:mask>
                    </ipxact:reset>
                </ipxact:resets>
                <ipxact:bitWidth>4</ipxact:bitWidth>
                <!-- LINK: fieldData: see 6.11.9 Field data group -->
                <ipxact:access>writeOnce</ipxact:access>
            <!-- Document pre-defined values that can be written to this field -->
            <ipxact:enumeratedValues>
                <!-- LINK: enumeratedValue: see 6.11.10, Enumeration values -->
                <ipxact:enumeratedValue>
                    <ipxact:name>SetPos0</ipxact:name>
                    <ipxact:value>0x1</ipxact:value>
                </ipxact:enumeratedValue>
                <ipxact:enumeratedValue>
                    <ipxact:name>SetPos1</ipxact:name>
                    <ipxact:value>0x2</ipxact:value>
                </ipxact:enumeratedValue>
            </ipxact:enumeratedValues>
        </ipxact:field>
        <ipxact:field>
            <ipxact:name>F2</ipxact:name>
```

```
<ipxact:bitOffset>4</ipxact:bitOffset>
<ipxact:resets>
    <ipxact:reset>
        <ipxact:value>0x0</ipxact:value>
    </ipxact:reset>
</ipxact:resets>
<ipxact:bitWidth>4</ipxact:bitWidth>
<ipxact:modifiedWriteValue>oneToClear</ipxact:modifiedWriteValue>
<ipxact:readAction>modify</ipxact:readAction>
<ipxact:testable testConstraint="readOnly">true</ipxact:testable>
</ipxact:field>
<ipxact:field>
    <ipxact:name>F3</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:bitOffset>8</ipxact:bitOffset>
    <ipxact:bitWidth>4</ipxact:bitWidth>
    <!-- LINK: writeValueConstraint: see 6.11.11, Write value constraint
-->
<ipxact:writeValueConstraint>
    <ipxact:minimum>0x1</ipxact:minimum>
    <ipxact:maximum>0x2</ipxact:maximum>
</ipxact:writeValueConstraint>
</ipxact:field>
<ipxact:field>
    <ipxact:name>F4</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:bitOffset>12</ipxact:bitOffset>
    <ipxact:bitWidth>20</ipxact:bitWidth>
    <ipxact:reserved>true</ipxact:reserved>
</ipxact:field>
</ipxact:register>
<ipxact:register>
    <ipxact:name>IAR</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:addressOffset>0x8</ipxact:addressOffset>
    <ipxact:size>32</ipxact:size>
    <ipxact:field fieldID="IAR">
        <ipxact:name>IAR</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
        <ipxact:bitWidth>32</ipxact:bitWidth>
    </ipxact:field>
</ipxact:register>
<ipxact:register>
    <ipxact:name>IDR</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:addressOffset>0xc</ipxact:addressOffset>
    <ipxact:size>32</ipxact:size>
    <ipxact:field fieldID="IDR">
        <ipxact:name>IDR</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
        <ipxact:bitWidth>32</ipxact:bitWidth>
    </ipxact:field>
</ipxact:register>
<ipxact:register>
    <ipxact:name>RegisterWithAlternate</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:addressOffset>0x10</ipxact:addressOffset>
    <ipxact:size>32</ipxact:size>
    <ipxact:access>write-only</ipxact:access>
    <ipxact:field>
        <ipxact:name>F</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
        <ipxact:bitWidth>32</ipxact:bitWidth>
    </ipxact:field>
```

```
<ipxact:alternateRegisters>
  <!-- LINK: alternateRegister: see 6.11.4, Alternate register -->
  <ipxact:alternateRegister>
    <ipxact:name>Alternate1</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:alternateGroups>
      <ipxact:alternateGroup>AltRegGroup</ipxact:alternateGroup>
    </ipxact:alternateGroups>
    <!-- LINK: alternateRegisterDefinitionGroup: see 6.11.5, Alternate
register definition group -->
    <ipxact:access>read-only</ipxact:access>
    <ipxact:field>
      <ipxact:name>F</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
      <ipxact:bitWidth>32</ipxact:bitWidth>
    </ipxact:field>
  </ipxact:alternateRegister>
</ipxact:alternateRegisters>
</ipxact:register>
<!-- 8 registers combined in an array with 32 bit gap -->
<!-- LINK: registerFile: see 6.11.6, Register file -->
<ipxact:registerFile>
  <ipxact:name>RegisterArray</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:dim>8</ipxact:dim>
  <ipxact:addressOffset>0x200</ipxact:addressOffset>
  <ipxact:range>0x10</ipxact:range>
  <ipxact:register>
    <ipxact:name>RegArrayEntry</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:addressOffset>0x0</ipxact:addressOffset>
    <ipxact:size>32</ipxact:size>
    <ipxact:field>
      <ipxact:name>MandatoryField</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:bitOffset>0</ipxact:bitOffset>
      <ipxact:bitWidth>32</ipxact:bitWidth>
    </ipxact:field>
  </ipxact:register>
</ipxact:registerFile>
</ipxact:addressBlock>
<ipxact:addressUnitBits>8</ipxact:addressUnitBits>
</ipxact:memoryMap>
<ipxact:memoryMap>
  <ipxact:name>SimpleMapWithBank</ipxact:name>
  <!-- Serial bank with two memory blocks of 1 k units of 32-bit data. -->
  <!-- The only address specified is 0x10000, but this causes address block
-->
  <!-- ram0 and ram1 to be mapped to addresses 0x10000 and 0x11000
respectively. -->
  <!-- LINK: addressBank: see 6.9.5, Bank -->
  <ipxact:bank bankAlignment="serial">
    <ipxact:name>SerialBank</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:baseAddress>0x1000</ipxact:baseAddress>
    <ipxact:addressBlock>
      <ipxact:name>ram0</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:range>0x1000</ipxact:range>
      <ipxact:width>32</ipxact:width>
    </ipxact:addressBlock>
    <ipxact:addressBlock>
      <ipxact:name>ram1</ipxact:name>
      <ipxact:range>0x1000</ipxact:range>
      <ipxact:width>32</ipxact:width>
```

```
</ipxact:addressBlock>
</ipxact:bank>
</ipxact:memoryMap>
<ipxact:memoryMap>
    <ipxact:name>SimpleMapWithSubspace</ipxact:name>
    <!-- Address space from master interface 'Master' mapped into slave
interface -->
    <!-- SlaveForSubspaceMap at address 0x10000 -->
    <!-- LINK: subspaceMap: see 6.9.9, Subsapce map -->
    <ipxact:subspaceMap masterRef="Master">
        <ipxact:name>SubSpace</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:baseAddress>0x10000</ipxact:baseAddress>
    </ipxact:subspaceMap>
</ipxact:memoryMap>
<ipxact:memoryMap>
    <ipxact:name>MapForMemory</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:addressBlock>
        <ipxact:name>MemoryBlock</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:baseAddress>0x0</ipxact:baseAddress>
        <ipxact:range>2**10</ipxact:range>
        <ipxact:width>32</ipxact:width>
        <ipxact:usage>memory</ipxact:usage>
        <ipxact:access>read-write</ipxact:access>
    </ipxact:addressBlock>
</ipxact:memoryMap>
</ipxact:memoryMaps>
<!-- LINK: model: see 6.12.1, Model -->
<ipxact:model>
    <ipxact:views>
        <ipxact:view>
            <ipxact:name>RTLview</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:displayName>RTL View</ipxact:displayName>
            <ipxact:description>Simple RTL view of a component.</ipxact:description>
            <ipxact:envIdentifier>*:Synthesis:</ipxact:envIdentifier>
            <ipxact:componentInstantiationRef>VerilogModel</
ipxact:componentInstantiationRef>
        </ipxact:view>
        <ipxact:view>
            <ipxact:name>TLMview</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:displayName>TLM View</ipxact:displayName>
            <ipxact:description>Simple TLM view of a component.</ipxact:description>
            <ipxact:isPresent>TLMModelsAvailable</ipxact:isPresent>
            <ipxact:envIdentifier>*:Simulation:</ipxact:envIdentifier>
            <ipxact:componentInstantiationRef>TLMModel</
ipxact:componentInstantiationRef>
        </ipxact:view>
    </ipxact:views>
<ipxact:instantiations>
    <!-- LINK: instantiationsGroup: see 6.12.2, instantiationsGroup -->
    <!-- LINK: componentInstantiation: see 6.12.3, componentInstantiation -->
    <ipxact:componentInstantiation>
        <ipxact:name>VerilogModel</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:language>verilog</ipxact:language>
        <ipxact:moduleName>sample</ipxact:moduleName>
        <!-- LINK: moduleParameters: see 6.12.6, Module parameters -->
        <ipxact:moduleParameters>
            <ipxact:moduleParameter type="bit">
                <ipxact:name>dual_mode_reg_value</ipxact:name>
            </ipxact:moduleParameter>
            <ipxact:vectors>
```

```
<ipxact:vector>
    <ipxact:left>3</ipxact:left>
    <ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
</ipxact:vector>
</ipxact:vectors>
<ipxact:value>comp_dual_mode?4'hf:4'h0</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:moduleParameter>
</ipxact:moduleParameters>
<ipxact:fileSetRef>
    <ipxact:localName>VerilogFiles</ipxact:localName>
</ipxact:fileSetRef>
</ipxact:componentInstantiation>
<ipxact:componentInstantiation>
    <ipxact:name>TLMModel</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:language>SystemC</ipxact:language>
    <ipxact:moduleName>sample</ipxact:moduleName>
    <ipxact:moduleParameters>
        <ipxact:moduleParameter type="bit">
            <ipxact:name>dual_mode</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:value>comp_dual_mode</ipxact:value>
        </ipxact:moduleParameter>
        <ipxact:moduleParameter parameterId="vdp" resolve="generated"
type="bit">
            <ipxact:name>view_dependent_param</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:value>0</ipxact:value>
        </ipxact:moduleParameter>
    </ipxact:moduleParameters>
    <ipxact:fileSetRef>
        <ipxact:localName>SystemCFiles</ipxact:localName>
    </ipxact:fileSetRef>
</ipxact:componentInstantiation>
</ipxact:instantiations>
<ipxact:ports>
    <!-- LINK: port: see 6.12.7, Component ports -->
    <ipxact:port>
        <ipxact:name>slv_data</ipxact:name>
    <!-- LINK: wire: see 6.12.8, Component wire ports -->
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
        <ipxact:vectors>
            <ipxact:vector>
                <ipxact:left>15</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:vector>
        </ipxact:vectors>
        <ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
            <!-- LINK: wireTypeDef: see 6.12.9, Component wireTypeDef -->
            <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
                <ipxact:typeName>logic</ipxact:typeName>
                <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
            </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
        </ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
    <!-- Default upper 8 bits since the interface only uses 8 bits -->
    <ipxact:drivers>
        <!-- LINK: driver: see 6.12.10, Component driver -->
        <ipxact:driver>
            <ipxact:range>
                <ipxact:left>15</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>8</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:range>
            <ipxact:defaultValue>8'h0</ipxact:defaultValue>
```

```

        </ipxact:driver>
    </ipxact:drivers>
</ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:name>mst_data</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>
        <ipxact:vectors>
            <ipxact:vector>
                <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:vector>
        </ipxact:vectors>
    <ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
        <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
            <ipxact:typeName>logic</ipxact:typeName>
            <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
        </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
    </ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
    </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:name>slv_addr</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
        <ipxact:vectors>
            <ipxact:vector>
                <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
            </ipxact:vector>
        </ipxact:vectors>
    <ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
        <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
            <ipxact:typeName>logic</ipxact:typeName>
            <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
        </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
    </ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
    <ipxact:constraintSets>
<!-- LINK: constraintSet: see <a href="#">6.12.13, Component wire port constraints -->
        <ipxact:constraintSet>
<!-- Port driven by high strength sequential cell for synthesis --&gt;
            &lt;ipxact:driveConstraint&gt;
<!-- LINK: cellSpecification: see <a href="#">6.12.15, Load and drive constraint
cell specification -->
                <ipxact:cellSpecification cellStrength="high">
                    <ipxact:cellClass>sequential</ipxact:cellClass>
                </ipxact:cellSpecification>
            </ipxact:driveConstraint>
<!-- Port timing requirements for synthesis --&gt;
<!-- LINK: timingConstraint: see <a href="#">6.12.14, Port timing constraints -->
            <ipxact:timingConstraint clockName="clk">60</
        <ipxact:timingConstraint>
            </ipxact:constraintSet>
        </ipxact:constraintSets>
    </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<ipxact:port>
    <ipxact:name>mst_addr</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:wire>
        <ipxact:direction>out</ipxact:direction>

```

```
<ipxact:vectors>
  <ipxact:vector>
    <ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>0</ipxact:right>
  </ipxact:vector>
</ipxact:vectors>
<ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
  <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
    <ipxact:typeName>logic</ipxact:typeName>
    <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
  </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
</ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
<ipxact:constraintSets>
  <ipxact:constraintSet>
    <!-- Port drives 2 high strength sequential cells for synthesis -->
    <ipxact:loadConstraint>
      <ipxact:cellSpecification cellStrength="high">
        <ipxact:cellClass>sequential</ipxact:cellClass>
      </ipxact:cellSpecification>
      <ipxact:count>2</ipxact:count>
    </ipxact:loadConstraint>
    <!-- Port timing requirements for synthesis -->
    <ipxact:timingConstraint clockName="clk">40</
  ipxact:timingConstraint>
  </ipxact:constraintSet>
</ipxact:constraintSets>
</ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- parity port exists in RTL view with default data type -->
<ipxact:port>
  <ipxact:name>slv_parity</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:wire>
    <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
    <ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
      <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
        <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
      </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
    </ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
  </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- clock port exists in RTL view with default data type -->
<ipxact:port>
  <ipxact:name>clk</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:wire>
    <ipxact:direction>in</ipxact:direction>
    <ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
      <ipxact:wireTypeDef>
        <ipxact:viewRef>RTLview</ipxact:viewRef>
      </ipxact:wireTypeDef>
    </ipxact:wireTypeDefs>
  </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- LINK: clockDriver: see 6.12.11, Component driver/clockDriver -->
<ipxact:driver>
  <ipxact:clockDriver>
    <ipxact:clockPeriod>5</ipxact:clockPeriod>
    <ipxact:clockPulseOffset>2.5</ipxact:clockPulseOffset>
    <ipxact:clockPulseValue>1</ipxact:clockPulseValue>
    <ipxact:clockPulseDuration>2.5</ipxact:clockPulseDuration>
  </ipxact:clockDriver>
</ipxact:driver>
```

```

        </ipxact:drivers>
        </ipxact:wire>
</ipxact:port>
<!-- reset port exists in RTL view with default data type --&gt;
&lt;ipxact:port&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:name&gt;reset&lt;/ipxact:name&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:wire&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:direction&gt;in&lt;/ipxact:direction&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:wireTypeDefs&gt;
            &lt;ipxact:wireTypeDef&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:viewRef&gt;RTLview&lt;/ipxact:viewRef&gt;
            &lt;/ipxact:wireTypeDef&gt;
        &lt;/ipxact:wireTypeDefs&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:drivers&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:driver&gt;
            &lt;ipxact:singleShotDriver&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:singleShotOffset&gt;2&lt;/ipxact:singleShotOffset&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:singleShotValue&gt;1&lt;/ipxact:singleShotValue&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:singleShotDuration&gt;5&lt;/ipxact:singleShotDuration&gt;
            &lt;/ipxact:singleShotDriver&gt;
        &lt;/ipxact:driver&gt;
    &lt;/ipxact:drivers&gt;
    &lt;/ipxact:wire&gt;
&lt;/ipxact:port&gt;
<!-- status port exists in all views with default data type --&gt;
&lt;ipxact:port&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:name&gt;status&lt;/ipxact:name&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:wire&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:direction&gt;out&lt;/ipxact:direction&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:vectors&gt;
            &lt;ipxact:vector&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:left&gt;7&lt;/ipxact:left&gt;&lt;ipxact:right&gt;0&lt;/ipxact:right&gt;
            &lt;/ipxact:vector&gt;
        &lt;/ipxact:vectors&gt;
    &lt;/ipxact:wire&gt;
&lt;/ipxact:port&gt;
<!-- anotherPort port exists in all views with default data type --&gt;
&lt;ipxact:port&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:name&gt;anotherPort&lt;/ipxact:name&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:wire&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:direction&gt;in&lt;/ipxact:direction&gt;
        &lt;ipxact:vectors&gt;
            &lt;ipxact:vector&gt;
                &lt;ipxact:left&gt;3&lt;/ipxact:left&gt;&lt;ipxact:right&gt;0&lt;/ipxact:right&gt;
            &lt;/ipxact:vector&gt;
        &lt;/ipxact:vectors&gt;
    &lt;/ipxact:wire&gt;
&lt;/ipxact:port&gt;
<!-- slv_transaction port exists in TLM view only --&gt;
&lt;ipxact:port&gt;
    &lt;ipxact:name&gt;slv_transaction&lt;/ipxact:name&gt;
&lt;!-- LINK: transactional: see <a href="#">6.12.17, Component transactional port type -->
    <ipxact:transactional>
        <ipxact:initiative>requires</ipxact:initiative>
        <ipxact:transTypeDefs>
            <!-- LINK: transTypeDef: see 6.12.19, Component transactional port
            type definition -->
            <ipxact:transTypeDef>
                <ipxact:typeName>sampleTLMtype</ipxact:typeName>

```

```
        <ipxact:viewRef>TLMview</ipxact:viewRef>
        </ipxact:transTypeDef>
        </ipxact:transTypeDefs>
        </ipxact:transactional>
    </ipxact:port>
    <!-- mst_transaction port exists in TLM view only -->
    <ipxact:port>
        <ipxact:name>mst_transaction</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:transactional>
            <ipxact:initiative>provides</ipxact:initiative>
            <ipxact:transTypeDefs>
                <ipxact:transTypeDef>
                    <ipxact:typeName>sampleTLMtype</ipxact:typeName>
                    <ipxact:viewRef>TLMview</ipxact:viewRef>
                </ipxact:transTypeDef>
            </ipxact:transTypeDefs>
        </ipxact:transactional>
    </ipxact:port>
    </ipxact:ports>
</ipxact:model>
<ipxact:componentGenerators>
    <!-- LINK: componentGenerator: see 6.13, Component generators -->
    <ipxact:componentGenerator>
        <ipxact:name>SimpleComponentGenerator</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:description>Simple TGI based component generator</ipxact:description>
        <ipxact:parameters>
            <ipxact:parameter parameterId="genParm1" prompt="Parm 1"
type="shortint" resolve="user">
                <ipxact:name>genParm1</ipxact:name>
                <ipxact:description>First generator parameter.</ipxact:description>
                <ipxact:value>1</ipxact:value>
            </ipxact:parameter>
            <ipxact:parameter parameterId="genParm2" prompt="Parm 2"
type="shortint" resolve="user">
                <ipxact:name>genParm2</ipxact:name>
                <ipxact:description>Second generator parameter.</ipxact:description>
                <ipxact:value>2</ipxact:value>
            </ipxact:parameter>
        </ipxact:parameters>
        <ipxact:apiType>TGI_2014_BASE</ipxact:apiType>
        <!-- By convention, generator invoked and passed parameters as follows:
-->
        <!-- generator.sh -genParm1 <value> -genParm2 <value> -->
        <ipxact:generatorExe>../bin/generator.sh</ipxact:generatorExe>
    </ipxact:componentGenerator>
</ipxact:componentGenerators>
<!-- LINK: choices: see 6.14, Choices -->
<ipxact:choices>
    <ipxact:choice>
        <ipxact:name>bitsize</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:enumeration text="32 bits">32</ipxact:enumeration>
        <ipxact:enumeration text="64 bits">64</ipxact:enumeration>
    </ipxact:choice>
</ipxact:choices>
<ipxact:fileSets>
    <!-- LINK: fileSet: see 6.15.1, File sets -->
    <ipxact:fileSet>
```

```
<ipxact:name>VerilogFiles</ipxact:name>
<!-- LINK: file: see 6.15.2, file -->
<ipxact:file>
  <ipxact:name>../src/component.v</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:fileType>verilogSource</ipxact:fileType>
  <ipxact:isStructural>true</ipxact:isStructural>
</ipxact:file>
<ipxact:file>
  <ipxact:name>../src/component.v</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:fileType>verilogSource</ipxact:fileType>
</ipxact:file>
</ipxact:fileSet>
<ipxact:fileSet>
  <ipxact:name>SystemCFiles</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:file>
    <ipxact:name>../src/component.C</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:fileType>systemCSource-2.2</ipxact:fileType>
  </ipxact:file>
</ipxact:fileSet>
</ipxact:fileSets>
<ipxact:whiteboxElements>
<!-- LINK: whiteboxElement: see 6.16, White box elements -->
<ipxact:whiteboxElement>
  <ipxact:name>ImportantInternalSignal</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:description>Defines access point for forcing sim values</ipxact:description>
  <ipxact:whiteboxType>signal</ipxact:whiteboxType>
  <ipxact:driveable>true</ipxact:driveable>
</ipxact:whiteboxElement>
</ipxact:whiteboxElements>
<ipxact:cpus>
<!-- LINK: cpu: see 6.18, CPUs -->
<ipxact:cpu>
  <ipxact:name>cpuDefn</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:addressSpaceRef addressSpaceRef="simpleAddressSpace"/>
</ipxact:cpu>
</ipxact:cpus>
<ipxact:otherClockDrivers>
<!-- LINK: otherClockDriver: see 6.12.16, Other clock drivers -->
<ipxact:otherClockDriver clockName="virtualClock1">
  <ipxact:clockPeriod>10</ipxact:clockPeriod>
  <ipxact:clockPulseOffset>5</ipxact:clockPulseOffset>
  <ipxact:clockPulseValue>1</ipxact:clockPulseValue>
  <ipxact:clockPulseDuration>5</ipxact:clockPulseDuration>
</ipxact:otherClockDriver>
</ipxact:otherClockDrivers>
<ipxact:resetTypes>
<!-- TODO: MISSING definition of resetType in document -->
<ipxact:resetType>
  <!-- LINK: resetType: see 6.19, Reset type -->
  <ipxact:name>SOFT</ipxact:name>
  <ipxact:displayName>Soft Reset</ipxact:displayName>
</ipxact:resetType>
</ipxact:resetTypes>
<ipxact:description>Example component used in the IP-XACT standard.</ipxact:description>
<!-- LINK: parameters: see C.18, parameters -->
<ipxact:parameters>
  <!-- LINK: parameters: see C.19, attributes -->
```

```
<ipxact:parameter parameterId="TLMModelsAvailable" prompt="TLM Models Available" type="bit" resolve="user">
    <ipxact:name>TLMModelsAvailable</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:displayName>TLM Models Available</ipxact:displayName>
    <ipxact:description>Set to true if TLM simulation models are available.</ipxact:description>
    <ipxact:value>0</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
<ipxact:parameter parameterId="comp_dual_mode" prompt="Dual Mode Supported" type="bit" resolve="user">
    <ipxact:name>comp_dual_mode</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:description>Indicates dual mode support is desired.</ipxact:description>
    <ipxact:value>1</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
<!-- Parameter leveraging an enumeration 'choice' -->
<ipxact:parameter parameterId="addrBits" choiceRef="bitsize" prompt="Address Bits" type="shortint" resolve="user">
    <ipxact:name>addrBits</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:value>32</ipxact:value>
</ipxact:parameter>
</ipxact:parameters>
<!-- LINK: assertions: see C.2, assertions -->
<ipxact:assertions>
    <ipxact:assertion>
        <ipxact:name>ArbitraryAssertion1</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:description>Arbitrary assertion to show syntax. Must evaluate to true.</ipxact:description>
        <ipxact:assert>TLMModelsAvailable || !comp_dual_mode</ipxact:assert>
    </ipxact:assertion>
</ipxact:assertions>
<!-- LINK: vendorExtensions: see C.24, vendorExtensions -->
<ipxact:vendorExtensions>
    <!-- Simple example showing elements from a separate name space added via vendorExtensions. -->
    <!-- The namespace must be defined (xmlns:<ns>=<URL>) at top or within first usage. -->
    <sampleNS:extraElement xmlns:sampleNS="http://www.nosuchURL.org/Schema">
        <sampleNS:anotherElement sampleNS:attributeName="XYZ"/>
    </sampleNS:extraElement>
</ipxact:vendorExtensions>
</ipxact:component>
```

## I.7 design

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example design used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document.
-->
<!-- LINK: design: see 7.1, Design -->
<ipxact:design xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
    index.xsd">
<ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
```

```

<ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
<ipxact:name>SampleDesign</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
<!-- Two RTL instances (U1, U2), and 1 TLM instance (U3) -->
<ipxact:componentInstances>
    <!-- LINK: componentInstance: see 7.2, Design component instances -->
    <ipxact:componentInstance>
        <ipxact:instanceName>U1</ipxact:instanceName>
        <ipxact:componentRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample">
            name="SampleComponent" version="1.0">
            <ipxact:configurableElementValues>
                <ipxact:configurableElementValue referenceId="comp_dual_mode">0</
            ipxact:configurableElementValue>
            </ipxact:configurableElementValues>
        </ipxact:componentRef>
    </ipxact:componentInstance>
    <ipxact:componentInstance>
        <ipxact:instanceName>U2</ipxact:instanceName>
        <ipxact:componentRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample">
            name="SampleComponent" version="1.0">
        </ipxact:componentRef>
    </ipxact:componentInstance>
    <ipxact:componentInstance>
        <ipxact:instanceName>U3</ipxact:instanceName>
        <ipxact:componentRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample">
            name="SampleComponent" version="1.0">
        </ipxact:componentRef>
    </ipxact:componentInstance>
</ipxact:componentInstances>
<ipxact:interconnections>
    <!-- Simple master to slave interface connection -->
    <!-- LINK: interconnection: see 7.3.1, interconnection -->
    <ipxact:interconnection>
        <ipxact:name>TwoIntfs</ipxact:name>
        <!-- LINK: activeInterface: see 7.4, Active, hierarchical, monitored, and
        monitor interfaces -->
        <ipxact:activeInterface componentRef="U1" busRef="Master"/>
        <ipxact:activeInterface componentRef="U2" busRef="Slave"/>
    </ipxact:interconnection>
    <!-- Broadcast interface from a slave (one to many connection) -->
    <ipxact:interconnection>
        <ipxact:name>BroadcastConnection</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:activeInterface componentRef="U1" busRef="Slave"/>
        <ipxact:hierInterface busRef="Slave0"/>
        <ipxact:hierInterface busRef="Slave1"/>
    </ipxact:interconnection>
    <!-- Export Master interface -- will be used for TLM to RTL conversion -->
    <ipxact:interconnection>
        <ipxact:name>ExportTLM</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:activeInterface componentRef="U3" busRef="Master"/>
        <ipxact:hierInterface busRef="TLMMaster"/>
    </ipxact:interconnection>
    <!-- LINK: monitorInterconnection: 7.3.2 monitorInterconnection -->
    <!-- Monitor interface connection -->
    <ipxact:monitorInterconnection>
        <ipxact:name>MonitorConnection</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:monitoredActiveInterface componentRef="U2" busRef="Slave"/>
        <ipxact:monitorInterface componentRef="U2" busRef="Monitor"/>
    </ipxact:monitorInterconnection>

```

```
</ipxact:interconnections>
<ipxact:adHocConnections>
    <!-- Simple two pin connection. Range not mentioned on anotherPort -->
    <!-- which implies all bits are connected -->
    <!-- LINK: adHocConnection: see 7.5, Design ad hoc connections -->
<ipxact:adHocConnection>
    <ipxact:name>SimpleWire</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:portReferences>
        <!-- LINK: internalPortReference: see 7.6, Port references -->
        <ipxact:internalPortReference componentRef="U1" portRef="anotherPort"/>
        <ipxact:internalPortReference componentRef="U2" portRef="status">
            <ipxact:partSelect>
                <ipxact:range><ipxact:left>7</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>4</
ipxact:right></ipxact:range>
            </ipxact:partSelect>
        </ipxact:internalPortReference>
    </ipxact:portReferences>
</ipxact:adHocConnection>
    <!-- Tie input bits to a constant -->
<ipxact:adHocConnection>
    <ipxact:name>TieOff</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:tiedValue>3'h2</ipxact:tiedValue>
    <ipxact:portReferences>
        <ipxact:internalPortReference componentRef="U2" portRef="anotherPort">
            <ipxact:partSelect>
                <ipxact:range><ipxact:left>2</ipxact:left><ipxact:right>0</
ipxact:right></ipxact:range>
            </ipxact:partSelect>
        </ipxact:internalPortReference>
    </ipxact:portReferences>
</ipxact:adHocConnection>
    <!-- Tie output bits to open -->
<ipxact:adHocConnection>
    <ipxact:name>TieOpen</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:tiedValue>open</ipxact:tiedValue>
    <ipxact:portReferences>
        <ipxact:internalPortReference componentRef="U1" portRef="status"/>
    </ipxact:portReferences>
</ipxact:adHocConnection>
</ipxact:adHocConnections>
</ipxact:design>
```

## I.8 designConfiguration

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example designConfiguration used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document.
-->
<!-- LINK: designConfiguration: see 10.2, designConfiguration -->
<ipxact:designConfiguration xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-
instance" xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
index.xsd">
    <ipxact:vendor>accellera.org</ipxact:vendor>
    <ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
```

```

<ipxact:name>SampleDesignConfiguration</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
<ipxact:generatorChainConfiguration vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
    name="SampleGeneratorChain" version="1.0">
    <ipxact:configurableElementValues>
        <ipxact:configurableElementValue referenceId="genParm1">7</
        ipxact:configurableElementValue>
    </ipxact:configurableElementValues>
</ipxact:generatorChainConfiguration>
<!-- LINK: interconnectionConfiguration: see 10.3,
    interconnectionConfiguration -->
<ipxact:interconnectionConfiguration>
    <ipxact:interconnectionRef>ExportTLM</ipxact:interconnectionRef>
    <ipxact:abstractorInstances>
        <!-- LINK: abstractorInstance: see 10.4, abstractor instance -->
        <ipxact:abstractorInstance>
            <ipxact:instanceName>U_tlm2rtl</ipxact:instanceName>
<ipxact:abstractorRef vendor="accellera.org" library="Sample"
    name="SampleAbstractor" version="1.0"/>
            <ipxact:viewName>default</ipxact:viewName>
            </ipxact:abstractorInstance>
        </ipxact:abstractorInstances>
</ipxact:interconnectionConfiguration>
<!-- Select RTL for U1, U2, and TLM for U3 -->
<!-- LINK: viewConfiguration: see 10.5, viewConfiguration -->
<ipxact:viewConfiguration>
    <ipxact:instanceName>U1</ipxact:instanceName>
    <ipxact:view viewRef="RTLview"/>
</ipxact:viewConfiguration>
<ipxact:viewConfiguration>
    <ipxact:instanceName>U2</ipxact:instanceName>
    <ipxact:view viewRef="RTLview"/>
</ipxact:viewConfiguration>
<ipxact:viewConfiguration>
    <ipxact:instanceName>U3</ipxact:instanceName>
    <ipxact:view viewRef="TLMview">
        <ipxact:configurableElementValues>
            <ipxact:configurableElementValue referenceId="vdp">1</
            ipxact:configurableElementValue>
        </ipxact:configurableElementValues>
    </ipxact:view>
</ipxact:viewConfiguration>
</ipxact:designConfiguration>

```

## I.9 generatorChain

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<!--
// Example generatorChain used to show schema elements defined by the
// IP-XACT standard. Links within this file refer to schema figures in
// the standard definition document
-->
<!-- LINK: generatorChain: see 9.1, generatorChain -->
<ipxact:generatorChain xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
    xmlns:ipxact="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0"
    xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.accellera.org/XMLSchema/IPXACT/2.0/
    index.xsd">

```

```
<ipxact:vendor>accelera.org</ipxact:vendor>
<ipxact:library>Sample</ipxact:library>
<ipxact:name>SampleGeneratorChain</ipxact:name>
<ipxact:version>1.0</ipxact:version>
<!-- Include generators with the indicated group names -->
<!-- LINK: generatorChainSelector: see 9.2, generatorChainSelector -->
<ipxact:generatorChainSelector>
    <ipxact:groupSelector multipleGroupSelectionOperator="and">
        <ipxact:name>HDLAnalysis</ipxact:name>
        <ipxact:name>HDLElaboration</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:groupSelector>
</ipxact:generatorChainSelector>
<!-- Include generator with the indicated VLNV -->
<ipxact:generatorChainSelector>
    <ipxact:generatorChainRef vendor="accelera.org" library="Sample"
        name="SampleGeneratorChainForReference"
        version="1.0"/>
</ipxact:generatorChainSelector>
<!-- Include component generator with the indicated group name -->
<!-- LINK: componentGeneratorSelector: see 9.3, generatorChain component
    selector -->
<ipxact:componentGeneratorSelector>
    <ipxact:groupSelector>
        <ipxact:name>DocGeneration</ipxact:name>
    </ipxact:groupSelector>
</ipxact:componentGeneratorSelector>
<!-- Define a generator explicitly within the generator chain -->
<!-- LINK: generator: see 9.4, generatorChain generator -->
<ipxact:generator hidden="false">
    <ipxact:name>myGenerator</ipxact:name>
    <ipxact:displayName>My Generator</ipxact:displayName>
    <ipxact:description>This is my generator</ipxact:description>
    <ipxact:phase>100.0</ipxact:phase>
    <ipxact:parameters>
        <ipxact:parameter parameterId="genParm1" prompt="Parm 1" type="shortint"
            resolve="user">
            <ipxact:name>genParm1</ipxact:name>
            <ipxact:description>First generator parameter.</ipxact:description>
            <ipxact:value>1</ipxact:value>
        </ipxact:parameter>
    </ipxact:parameters>
    <ipxact:apiType>TGI_2014_BASE</ipxact:apiType>
    <ipxact:transportMethods>
        <ipxact:transportMethod>file</ipxact:transportMethod>
    </ipxact:transportMethods>
    <ipxact:generatorExe>../bin/run.sh</ipxact:generatorExe>
</ipxact:generator>
<ipxact:chainGroup>implementation</ipxact:chainGroup>
<ipxact:displayName>Sample Generator Chain</ipxact:displayName>
<ipxact:description>Example generator chain used in the IP-XACT standard.</
    ipxact:description>
```



# Consensus

WE BUILD IT.

Connect with us on:

-  **Facebook:** <https://www.facebook.com/ieeesa>
-  **Twitter:** @ieeesa
-  **LinkedIn:** <http://www.linkedin.com/groups/IEEESA-Official-IEEE-Standards-Association-1791118>
-  **IEEE-SA Standards Insight blog:** <http://standardsinsight.com>
-  **YouTube:** IEEE-SA Channel